This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

https://books.google.com

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES
3 3433 00686398 3

CHRONICLE.

1915-1916

Digitized by Google

Oxfordshire
VWZH
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

Stanford's Geog.l Estab.t

Digitized by Google

THE OXFORDSHIRE & BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY CHRONICLE, 1915–1916.

AN ANNUAL RECORD OF THE FIRST AND SECOND BATTALIONS, FORMERLY THE 43RD AND 52ND LIGHT INFANTRY.

TOGETHER WITH THE

WAR RECORDS

OF THE

OTHER BATTALIONS OF THE REGIMENT.

Compiled and Edited

BY

LIEUT.-COLONEL A. F. MOCKLER-FERRYMAN.

VOLUME XXV.

From the 1st August 1915 to the 30th June 1916.

London:

EYRE AND SPOTTISWOODE, Ltd.

Government and General Publishers,

EAST HARDING STREET, E.C.4.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
414153 A
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R 1929 L

Digitized by Google

INTRODUCTION.

THE events of only eleven months are dealt with in this volume, because it was thought advisable to leave the battle of the Somme, which opened on the 1st July 1916, to be described in the next volume.

The following is a brief summary of the operations in the various theatres in which battalions of the Regiment were fighting between the 1st August 1915 and the 30th June 1916 :—

MESOPOTAMIA.

The 1st Battalion, with the 6th (Indian) Division, remained at Amara until the 2nd September 1915, when it began to move up the Tigris, to take part in the operations for the capture of Kut-el-Amara. On the way thither the Turks were encountered in a strongly entrenched position, from which, after heavy fighting at Es Sinn, they were driven with severe loss. General Townshend then captured Kut-el-Amara, and remained there preparing for the possibility of a further advance. This commenced a little later, and on the 22nd November was fought the battle of Ctesiphon, within a few miles of Baghdad. Outnumbered by the reinforced enemy, Townshend was obliged to withdraw his force, and, by the 3rd December, was back in Kut. On the 7th December the place was invested by the

Digitized by Google

Turks, and, in spite of every effort to relieve it, remained besieged until the 29th April 1916, when the garrison was starved into surrender.

The accounts given in this volume are mostly from private sources, since all official documents were destroyed at the time of the surrender, and communication between Kut and the outside world during the siege was restricted to such wireless dispatches as General Townshend was able to get through. Even the number of men of the Battalion who were made prisoners of war was for a long time uncertain, although it is now known that the total was 7 officers and 297 other ranks, not including men attached to the Battalion from other regiments to the number of some 65 of all ranks.

In the attempt to relieve the beleaguered garrison, a portion of the 43rd, organized as a Provisional Battalion, fought desperately until practically wiped out.

SALONIKA.

Amongst the first troops to proceed from France to Salonika, after Bulgaria had joined the Central Powers, were the 7th (Service) and 8th (Service) Battalions of the Regiment, arriving at their destination at the end of November 1915. Here they joined Mahon's small British force, acting in conjunction with General Sarrail's three French Divisions, who were endeavouring to lend aid to the retreating Serbian army. This proved a complete failure, and the Battalions were employed, up to the summer of 1916, in forming an entrenched camp, to cover Salonika.

Digitized by Google

FRANCE AND FLANDERS.

In this theatre, during the eleven months under review, there were the following battalions of the Regiment: 2nd, 5th and 6th (Service), and the 1/4th and 1/1st Bucks (T.F.). In August 1915 there were also present the 7th and 8th (Service) Battalions, but, as mentioned above, they were transferred, before the end of the year, to Salonika, while the 2/4th and 2/1st Bucks arrived on the Western Front in May 1916. The sequence of events on this front may be summed up as follows: After the heavy fighting at Hooge and elsewhere during the early summer of 1915, the British force recuperated and prepared for a great offensive. Thus passed August and the greater part of September, and in the last week of the latter month the battle of Loos was fought, as described at length in the 2nd Battalion Record. The following months witnessed no extensive operations, the long winter being passed, for the most part, in the dreary monotony of trench life. The diary of each battalion tells its own tale of the particular part of the line which it held during this inclement season, and of the training undergone in the spring and early summer in preparation for the great offensive on the Somme.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Regimental Diary of the War, 1915–16	1
The Army List, 1st August, 1915	24
Services of Officers Extra-Regimentally Employed	29
Former Officers of the Regiment Employed or Re-employed	33
Officers Commanding Battalions of the Regiment between 1st August 1915 and 30th June 1916	38
Record of the 1st Battalion	40
Record of the 2nd Battalion	196
The Depôt	280
Territorial Force Battalions :—	
1/4th Battalion Record	284
2/4th Battalion Record	315
1/1st Bucks Battalion Record	320
2/1st Bucks Battalion Record	331
Service Battalions :—	
5th Battalion Record	334
6th Battalion Record	402
7th Battalion Record	421
8th Battalion Record	438
Roll of Honour	449
Obituary, 1915–16	473
List of Subscribers	475
Illustrations :—	
Municipal Offices at Amara	41
Arab Shops in Amara Bazaar	43
Steamer "P. 2," Parent Ship for 17th Brigade	48
H.M.S. "Comet"	49
The Great Arch at Ctesiphon	87
Old Bridge of Boats, Baghdad	122
Scene in Baghdad City	133

Digitized by Google

ILLUSTRATIONS (*cont.*): PAGE

Major L. J. Carter 156
Lieut.-Colonel A. J. F. Eden 194
The Theatre, Bethune 198
Support Trenches, Givenchy 199
52nd Scouts 200
Cleaning up "Birmingham Arcade" 201
Some of the 52nd Pioneers 202
École de Jeunes Filles, Bethune 205
Lieut.-Colonel Eden 207
Captain Ponsonby and Lieut-.Colonel Eden . . . 209
Lieut. and Quartermaster Warnock and Lieut. Ridout . 210
B Company N.C.O.'s in Smoke-helmets . . . 217
German Shells Bursting over New Trench, Givenchy . . 227
In Beuvry 231
Men's Billets at Bethune 235
Captain Fowke at Entrance to "Guards' Club," Cuinchy 237
In Cuinchy Trenches 239
"Kingsclere," Cuinchy 242
Small Cemetery at Cuinchy 243
Officers' Dug-out in Festubert Breastworks . . . 249
Sniping from Front Line Trenches 255
Dinners in the Trenches 263
Ruined Church at Richebourg St. Vaast . . . 267
Captain Fowke in Scottish Trench, Givenchy . . 269
Lieut. T. E. Withington 270
2nd Lieut. G. Field 271
2nd Lieut. L. A. Vidal 273
Lieut. D. A. D. Sewell 275
The Band of the 1st Battalion at the Depôt . . 282
N.C.O.'s, 2/4th Battalion 317
Officers, 2/4th Battalion 319
Officers of 1/1st Bucks in Trench Kit 325
Railway Wood 335
Machine-gun Firing at Aeroplane 336
Firing a Periscopic Rifle 337
Ypres Square 340
Ypres Cathedral 345
Trench Catapult 347
"Toby" Mortar 367
Ruins of the Water Tower, Ypres 369

Digitized by Google

ILLUSTRATIONS (*cont.*):

	PAGE
Canal Bank Dug-outs, Ypres	377
Trench Mortar	381
Grande Place, Arras	386
Hôtel de Ville, Arras	387
Captain H. H. Cobb	397
2nd Lieut. Le Messurier using a Periscope	399
Lieut.-Colonel E. D. White	402
Vlamertinghe	417
Ruins of Ypres	419
Lieut.-Colonel F. J. Newton-King	423
Officers of the 7th Battalion	425
Captain C. P. Ker	433
Captain and Adjutant L. J. Ellis	435
Captain C. F. K. Carfrae	450
Captain J. W. Backhouse	451
Captain J. H. Courtis	453
Captain F. M. Davenport	453
Captain the Hon. J. C. W. S. Foljambe	455
Major C. E. Forrest, D.S.O.	456
2nd Lieut. T. F. H. Fremantle	457
Captain S. F. Hammick	459
2nd Lieut. E. R. G. Hughes	460
Captain A. N. Carew Hunt	461
2nd Lieut. C. Hurst-Brown	462
Lieut. J. M. H. Jackson	463
Lieut. J. S. Kearsley	464
Captain R. O. Logan	466
Lieut. P. F. Newton-King	467
Captain A. W. N. Ponsonby	467
Major R. V. Simpson	468
Captain F. C. W. Wynter	471

MAPS:

Mesopotamia	*Frontispiece*	
Battle of Es Sinn	*facing page*	68
Battle of Ctesiphon	,, ,,	88
Defences of Kut-el-Amara	,, ,,	99
Operations for the Relief of Kut-el-Amara	,, ,,	147
Northern France and Part of Belgium	,, ,,	197
Western Front from Bethune to St. Quentin	,, ,,	428
Neighbourhood of Ypres	,, ,,	448

Digitized by Google

THE

OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY.

DIARY OF THE WAR.

AUGUST 1915 to 30 JUNE 1916.

Battalions of the Regiment in existence during this period :—

1st Battalion—Mesopotamia.
Provisional Battalion (for 1st Battalion)—Mesopotamia.
2nd Battalion—France.
3rd Battalion (Reserve)—England.
1/4th Battalion (T.F.)—France.
2/4th Battalion (T.F.)—England and France.
3/4th Battalion (T.F. Reserve)—England.
1/1st Bucks Battalion (T.F.)—France.
2/1st Bucks Battalion (T.F.)—England and France.
3/1st Bucks Battalion (T.F. Reserve)—England.
5th (Service) Battalion—France.
6th (Service) Battalion—France.
7th (Service) Battalion—France and Salonika.
8th (Service) Battalion (Pioneers)—France and Salonika.
9th (Service) Battalion (Reserve)—England.
1st Garrison Battalion—India.

Digitized by Google

AUGUST.

1	Su	1*st Bn.* at Amara, Tigris, preparing to move forward. 2*nd Bn.* in Cuinchy trenches. 1/4*th Bn.* Hebuterne trenches. 5*th Bn.* in trenches near Menin Road, Ypres. 6*th Bn.* billeted at Bailleul.
2	M	2*nd Bn.* in billets at Annequin.
3	Tu	
4	W	
5	Th	
6	F	1/4*th Bn.* billets at Sailly. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches.
7	S	2*nd Bn.* marched to reserve billets Bethune.
8	Su	
9	M	
10	Tu	5*th Bn.* to camp near Vlamertinghe, having lost since the 1st killed 16 men, wounded 3 officers and 66 men.
11	W	6*th Bn.* in trenches under instruction.
12	Th	
13	F	1/1*st Bucks Bn.* from Hebuterne trenches to Sailly-au-Bois.
14	S	
15	Su	2*nd Bn.* to Givenchy trenches. 1/4*th Bn.* Hebuterne trenches.
16	M	

Digitized by Google

AUGUST.

17 Tu	*6th Bn.* to reserve billets at Oultersteene.
18 W	
19 Th	
20 F	*5th Bn.* returned to trenches near Ypres.
21 S	**Italy declared war on Turkey.** *2nd Bn.* in billets at Le Quesnoy. 1/*4th Bn.* to billets in Hebuterne. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches.
22 Su	
23 M	*5th Bn.* to camp near Vlamertinghe.
24 Tu	*2nd Bn.* in trenches; 1/*4th Bn.* to trenches.
25 W	*6th Bn.* to billets at Estaires
26 Th	
27 F	
28 S	*2nd Bn.* returned to Bethune, having lost 33 men in last 4 days
29 Su	
30 M	
31 Tu	

Digitized by Google

SEPTEMBER.

1 W	
2 Th	1*st Bn.* steamed up Tigris to Ali Sherki.
3 F	1*st Bn.* disembarked at Ali-al-Gharbi. 2*nd Bn.* to Le Quesnoy.
4 S	1/1*st Bucks Bn.* in Hebuterne trenches.
5 Su	1/4*th Bn.* to billets at Courcelles. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* from Hebuterne trenches to Bus-les-Artois.
6 M	2*nd Bn.* to Givenchy trenches. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to billets at Couin.
7 Tu	5*th Bn.* back to trenches near Ypres.
8 W	2*nd Bn.* returned to Le Quesnoy.
9 Th	
10 F	2*nd Bn.* to Givenchy trenches.
11 S	
12 Su	1*st Bn.* commenced to march to Sheikh Saad.
13 M	2*nd Bn.* to billets in Oblinghem and Vendin.
14 Tu	1*st Bn.* reached Sheikh Saad.
15 W	1*st Bn.* continued advance up right bank of Tigris. 5*th Bn.* to camp near La Lorri Château.
16 Th	1*st Bn.* reached Sannaiyat.

Digitized by Google

SEPTEMBER.

17	F	*2nd Bn.* to Le Quesnoy in reserve billets. *1/4th Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches.
18	S	*1/1st Bucks Bn.* in Hebuterne trenches; *8th Bn.* left Warminster for France.
19	Su	*2nd Bn.* to Givenchy trenches; *8th Bn.* arrived at Havre.
20	M	*8th Bn.* by rail to Longueau (Amiens), and thence marched to Clery-Saulchoix.
21	Tu	*2nd Bn.* returned to Le Quesnoy. *7th Bn.* left Warminster for Folkestone.
22	W	*6th Bn.* to trenches. *7th Bn.* reached Boulogne and moved by rail and road to billets at Briquemesnil and Saisseval.
23	Th	*2nd Bn.* to Givenchy trenches. *5th Bn.* went into trenches.
24	F	*7th Bn.* marched to Ferrières.
25	S	*1st Bn.* 700 strong, at Sannaiyat, shelled by Turks. *2nd Bn.*, BATTLE OF LOOS; lost 3 officers and 33 men killed, 5 officers and 124 men wounded, 1 officer and 69 men missing. *5th Bn.* attacked Bellewaarde Farm, near Ypres, and lost 13 officers and 463 men killed and wounded; *8th Bn.* to Villers-Brettonneux.
26	Su	*1st Bn.* marched up Tigris to Chahela Mounds. *5th Bn.* to La Lorri Château. *7th Bn.* in billets at Fouilloy.
27	M	*1st Bn.* marched at night towards Turks' position. *2nd Bn.* still in Givenchy trenches.
28	Tu	*1st Bn.* at BATTLE OF ES SINN; casualties, 3 officers and about 85 other ranks. *2nd Bn.* to Bethune. *6th Bn.* to billets.
29	W	*1st Bn.* with 17th Brigade, remained to clear up battlefield; remainder of Division pursued Turks, and captured Kut-el-Amara. *2nd Bn.* to Essars. *1/4th Bn.* to billets at Courcelles. *1/1st Bucks Bn.* to Couin.
30	Th	*7th Bn.* at Méaulte and Bécordel commenced trench instructions.

Digitized by Google

OCTOBER.

1 F	*2nd Bn.* moved from Essars to Vermelles.
2 S	*1st Bn.* half marched to Kut; remainder clearing battlefield. *2nd Bn.* to trenches near Hulluch; *8th Bn.* to Warfusée-Abancourt.
3 Su	*6th Bn.* returned to trenches.
4 M	*1st Bn.* encamped at Kut-el-Amara. *2nd Bn.* to billets at Beuvry.
5 Tu	**Italy declared war on Bulgaria.** *8th Bn.* on fatigue near Morcourt.
6 W	*7th Bn.*, while undergoing trench instruction, lost 10 men killed and 1 officer and 25 men wounded in one platoon.
7 Th	
8 F	*1st Bn.* commenced to march from Kut to Aziziyeh.
9 S	*6th Bn.* to billets. *7th Bn.* to billets at Fouilloy.
10 Su	*1st Bn.* reached Aziziyeh; *2nd Bn.* to Cambrin trenches.
11 M	*1/4th Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches.
12 Tu	*1/1st Bucks Bn.* in Hebuterne trenches.
13 W	*2nd Bn.* a small party assisted in attack on Hohenzollern Redoubt. *5th Bn.* to Railway Wood trenches, near Ypres.
14 Th	**Bulgaria at war with Serbia.** *6th Bn.* to trenches.
15 F	**Great Britain declared war on Bulgaria.**
16 S	

Digitized by Google

OCTOBER.

17 Su	*5th Bn.* in trenches had 2 officers and 13 men killed, 54 men wounded or missing.
18 M	*2nd Bn.* to billets at Bethune, having lost since the 10th 1 officer and 12 men killed, 2 officers and 19 men wounded.
19 Tu	1/*4th Bn.* to billets at Courcelles. *5th Bn.* to position west of Ypres. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Couin.
20 W	*6th Bn.* in billets on La Bassée Road.
21 Th	*2nd Bn.* to billets near Gonnehem: *8th Bn.* to billets at Villers-Brettonneux.
22 F	*2nd Bn.* to billets in Censé la Vallée area. *5th Bn.* to billets about Herzeele, having lost during the last tour of the trenches 2 officers and 92 men killed, wounded, or missing.
23 S	*7th Bn.* with 78th Brigade at Bertangles.
24 Su	*7th Bn.* in training at Bertangles.
25 M	1/*4th Bn.* marched to Acheux for inspection by H.M. the King and President Poincaré.
26 Tu	*6th Bn.* returned to the trenches; *8th Bn.* to St. Gratien.
27 W	1/*4th Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches. *5th Bn.* sent a party to Abeele for review by H.M. the King and the Prince of Wales; *8th Bn.* to Morlancourt.
28 Th	1/1*st Bucks Bn.* in Hebuterne trenches.
29 F	*2nd Bn.* to billets at Annequin and Cambrin.
30 S	
31 Su	

Digitized by Google

NOVEMBER.

1 M	
2 Tu	*2nd Bn.* moved into Boyan trenches.
3 W	*8th Bn.* at St. Gratien.
4 Th	1/*4th Bn.* to billets at Courcelles. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Couin.
5 F	
6 S	*2nd Bn.* to billets at Beuvry.
7 Su	*2nd Bn.* moved to Annezin.
8 M	
9 Tu	*7th Bn.* marched to Longueau and entrained for Marseilles.
10 W	*7th Bn.* in train *en route* for Marseilles.
11 Th	*2nd Bn.* to Annequin. *7th Bn.* embarked at Marseilles for Salonika.
12 F	*2nd Bn.* to Bethune. 1/*4th Bn.* and 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches.
13 S	*2nd Bn.* to billets in Gonnehem (Brigade in rest). *7th Bn.* sailed for Marseilles.
14 Su	*6th Bn.* moved to Estaires.
15 M	*8th Bn.*, under orders for Salonika, entrained at Longueau (Amiens) for Marseilles.
16 Tu	

Digitized by Google

NOVEMBER.

17 W	1*st Bn.* marched from Aziziyeh to El Kutunia. 8*th Bn.* sailed from Marseilles for Salonika.
18 Th	7*th Bn.* arrived at Alexandria (Egypt).
19 F	1*st Bn.* marched to Zeur. 5*th Bn.* to huts at Poperinghe. 7*th Bn.* sailed from Alexandria.
20 S	1*st Bn.* marched to Lajj. 1/4*th Bn.* to billets at Courcelles. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Couin. 7*th Bn.* arrived at Port Said (Egypt), and went into rest camp.
21 Su	1*st Bn.* marched towards Turkish position at Ctesiphon. 2*nd Bn.* to billets at Annequin. 5*th Bn.* to trenches near Potijze Wood. 7*th Bn.* re-embarked at Port Said.
22 M	1*st Bn.* BATTLE OF CTESIPHON. 7 officers killed and 6 wounded; casualties in other ranks, about 450. 2*nd Bn.* to Cuinchy trenches. 7*th Bn.* sailed from Port Said.
23 Tu	1*st Bn.* commenced withdrawal from Ctesiphon. 6*th Bn.* to trenches near Fleurbaix.
24 W	1*st Bn.* evacuating wounded to Lajj. 5*th Bn.* to huts at Brandhoek. 8*th Bn.* arrived at Salonika.
25 Th	1*st Bn.* bivouacked at Lajj. 8*th Bn.* marched to camp at Lembet.
26 F	2*nd Bn.* to billets at Cambrin. 7*th Bn.* arrived at Salonika, disembarked, and marched to camp at Lembet.
27 S	1*st Bn.* night march from Lajj.
28 Su	1*st Bn.* reached Aziziyeh. 1/4*th Bn.* and 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches. 6*th Bn.* to billets in Fleurbaix.
29 M	1*st Bn.* evacuating stores from Aziziyeh.
30 Tu	1*st Bn.* marched south to Um-al-Tumman. 2*nd Bn.* to Cuinchy trenches.

Digitized by Google

DECEMBER.

1 W	1*st Bn.* engaged in rearguard fighting all day. 6*th Bn.* to trenches near Fleurbaix.
2 Th	1*st Bn.* continued march towards Kut.
3 F	1*st Bn.*, with the remainder of 6th Division, reached Kut.
4 S	1*st Bn.* engaged in improving defences of Kut. 2*nd Bn.* to billets at Bethune.
5 Su	
6 M	2*nd Bn.* to Cuinchy trenches. 1/4*th Bn.* to billets at Courcelles. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Couin.
7 Tu	1*st Bn.* Turks completed investment of Kut-el-Amara.
8 W	1*st Bn.* Commencement of the Siege of Kut.
9 Th	
10 F	2*nd Bn.* to billets at Beuvry.
11 S	
12 Su	2*nd Bn.* to Cuinchy trenches.
13 M	
14 Tu	2*nd Bn.* to billets at Beuvry. 1/4*th Bn.* and 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches. 7*th Bn.* moved camp to Lajna (Salonika).
15 W	7*th Bn.* digging trenches on Langaza Plain.
16 Th	2*nd Bn.* to Cuinchy trenches. 8*th Bn.* to Galeku Bridge, etc., repairing damage to railway.

Digitized by Google

DECEMBER.

17 F	*8th Bn.* road-making to Jajladzik, etc.
18 S	
19 Su	
20 M	*2nd Bn.* to billets at Annequin North (in reserve).
21 Tu	
22 W	*2nd Bn.* to Cuinchy trenches. 1/*4th Bn.* to billets at Courcelles. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Couin.
23 Th	
24 F	6*th Bn.* in trenches near Fleurbaix. *7th Bn.* moved camp to Watercress Gully (Salonika).
25 S	1*st Bn.* heavily engaged in repelling Turkish attack on Kut. *5th Bn.* in huts at Herzeele.
26 Su	*2nd Bn.* to billets at Annequin North.
27 M	*2nd Bn.* moved to Bethune.
28 Tu	*2nd Bn.* to billets at Cottes. 1/*4th Bn.* and 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches.
29 W	6*th Bn.* in billets at Fleurbaix.
30 Th	*5th Bn.* to trenches near St. Jean.
31 F	1*st Bn.* besieged in Kut (Mesopotamia). *2nd Bn.* at Cottes (France).

Digitized by Google

JANUARY.

1	S	1*st Bn.* besieged in Kut.
2	Su	6*th Bn.* in trenches at Rue Pettilon
3	M	1/4*th Bn.* to billets at Courcelles. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Couin.
4	Tu	
5	W	
6	Th	
7	F	
8	S	
9	Su	1/4*th Bn.* and 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches.
10	M	
11	Tu	6*th Bn.* to billets at Bac St. Maur.
12	W	6*th Bn.* to Doulieu.
13	Th	6*th Bn.* to Morbecque (reserve billets).
14	F	
15	S	1/4*th Bn.* to billets at Courcelles. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Couin.
16	Su	

Digitized by Google

JANUARY.

17 M	2*nd Bn.* moved from Cottes to Bethune and billeted at Essars.
18 Tu	
19 W	
20 Th	
21 F	1/4*th Bn.* and 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to trenches. 7*th Bn.* moved camp to Jajladzik (Salonika). 8*th Bn.* to camp near Gil Tepe.
22 S	6*th Bn.* to billets near Saint Sylvestre Cappel.
23 Su	
24 M	
25 Tu	1/1*st Bucks Bn.* in Hebuterne trenches; had 2nd Lieut FURLEY killed.
26 W	2*nd Bn.* to trenches at Festubert.
27 Th	1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to billets at Couin.
28 F	1/4*th Bn.* to Courcelles.
29 S	
30 Su	2*nd Bn.* to billets about Festubert Village (in support).
31 M	

Digitized by Google

FEBRUARY.

1	Tu	*5th Bn.* to trenches. *8th Bn.* to Tumba Camp, for work on Langaza Plain.
2	W	1/*4th Bn.* and 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches.
3	Th	*2nd Bn.* to trenches.
4	F	
5	S	*6th Bn.* to rest camp near Waton.
6	Su	
7	M	*2nd Bn.* to billets at Festubert.
8	Tu	
9	W	
10	Th	
11	F	*2nd Bn.* moved to Bethune. *6th Bn.* relieved the *5th Bn.* at Elverdinghe Château.
12	S	*6th Bn.* assisted in repelling enemy's attacks, and had 25 casualties.
13	Su	
14	M	1/1*st Bucks Bn.* in support at Hebuterne Keep.
15	Tu	*Prov. Bn.* (of 1*st Bn.*), 400 strong, joined the force for relief of Kut at Wadi. *2nd Bn.* moved to Les Harrisoirs. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Courcelles and Sailly.
16	W	

Digitized by Google

FEBRUARY.

17	TH	*2nd Bn.* to billets at Busnes.
18	F	
19	S	1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches.
20	SU	
21	M	
22	TU	
23	W	
24	TH	
25	F	
26	S	*2nd Bn.* moved, by road and rail, to billets in Petit Sains.
27	SU	*2nd Bn.* to Angres trenches (near Bully Grenay) in relief of French. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Courcelles and Sailly-au-Bois.
28	M	
29	TU	

Digitized by Google

MARCH.

1 W	*5th Bn.* moved to Arras.
2 Th	*2nd Bn.* to billets about Bully Grenay (Corons d'Aix). 1/*1st Bucks Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches (J Sector).
3 F	
4 S	*2nd Bn.* to billets at "Fosse 10."
5 Su	
6 M	*Prov. Bn.* marched towards Es Sinn for relief of Kut. *2nd Bn.* to Angres trenches. *6th Bn.* in trenches since 2 March; lost 7 men killed and 2 officers and 17 men wounded.
7 Tu	
8 W	*Prov. Bn.*, with Kut relief force, attacked Dujailah Redoubt.
9 Th	*Prov. Bn.*, with Kut relief force, withdrew to Wadi.
10 F	*2nd Bn.* to billets at "Fosse 10." 1/*1st Bucks Bn.* to Sailly-au-Bois.
11 S	
12 Su	
13 M	
14 Tu	*Prov. Bn.* in trenches opposite El Hannah. *2nd Bn.* to Angres trenches. 1/*1st Bucks Bn.* to G. Sector Hebuterne trenches.
15 W	*6th Bn.* in trenches near Essex Farm.
16 Th	

Digitized by Google

MARCH.

17	F	
18	S	
19	Su	2*nd Bn.* to billets at Hersin. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Hebuterne.
20	M	2*nd Bn.* moved to billets at Divion.
21	Tu	1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Sailly
22	W	
23	Th	
24	F	
25	S	
26	Su	1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to J Sector, Hebuterne trenches.
27	M	
28	Tu	2*nd Bn.* by train to Hersin.
29	W	
30	Th	
31	F	6*th Bn.* returned to the trenches.

Digitized by Google

APRIL.

1 S	
2 Su	*2nd Bn.*, by rail and road, to Camblain-Chatelain. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* from Hebuterne trenches to Bayencourt.
3 M	*6th Bn.* to billets at Trois Tour Château.
4 Tu	*Prov. Bn.*, with Kut relief force, moved up to trenches opposite El Hannah.
5 W	*Prov. Bn.* in support during assault on El Hannah position. *2nd Bn.*, by rail and road, to Delatte for training.
6 Th	*Prov. Bn.*, with Kut relief force, assaulted Sannaiyat, losing 5 officers killed and 7 wounded, and about 250 other ranks casualties.
7 F	
8 S	1/4*th Bn.* to billets at Bayencourt, on relief, in K Sector, Hebuterne, by 1/1*st Bucks Bn.*
9 Su	
10 M	
11 Tu	*6th Bn.* moved into trenches.
12 W	*2nd Bn.* moved to Hersin.
13 Th	
14 F	
15 S	
16 Su	*2nd Bn.* moved to Bully Grenay. 1/4*th Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches, in relief of 1/1*st Bucks Bn.*, to Bayencourt.

Digitized by Google

APRIL.

17	M	6*th Bn.* to billets at Poperinghe.
18	Tu	
19	W	
20	Th	2*nd Bn.* to Angres trenches. 8*th Bn.* commenced a week's training march through part of Macedonia.
21	F	1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to G Sector, Hebuterne trenches.
22	S	
23	Su	
24	M	2*nd Bn.* to billets at "Fosse 10."
25	Tu	1/4*th Bn.* to billets at Bayencourt. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Coigneux.
26	W	6*th Bn.* to rest camp, Beaumaris, Calais, for training.
27	Th	
28	F	2*nd Bn.* to Angres trenches.
29	S	1*st Bn.* Surrender of Kut; 9 officers and about 300 men of the Regiment taken prisoners.
30	Su	

Digitized by Google

MAY.

1	M	*Prov. Bn.* (Mesopotamia). Truce with Turks while arranging evacuation of sick and wounded prisoners of war. 1/4*th Bn.* in billets at Bayencourt. 5*th Bn.* in billets at Arras.
2	Tu	2*nd Bn.* from Angres trenches to billets at Bully. 1/4*th Bn.* and 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches.
3	W	1/4*th Bn.* lost 2 officers killed, 1 officer and 4 men wounded.
4	Th	6*th Bn.* at No. 6 Camp, Beaumaris, Calais. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Coigneux.
5	F	2*nd Bn.* returned to trenches.
6	S	6*th Bn.* marched from Calais to Zutkerque.
7	Su	6*th Bn.* to Bollezeele.
8	M	1/4*th Bn.* to huts at Couin Château. 6*th Bn.* to Herzeele.
9	Tu	7*th Bn.* returned to Jajladzik after an eight days' training march.
10	W	2*nd Bn.* to billets at "Fosse 10." 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches.
11	Th	
12	F	2*nd Bn.* moved to Hersin.
13	S	
14	Su	
15	M	
16	Tu	1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to billets at Couin.

Digitized by Google

MAY.

17	W	
18	Th	*2nd Bn.* marched to Camblain-Chatelain. *1/4th Bn.* and *1/1st Bucks Bn.* to billets at Beauval.
19	F	*1/4th Bn.* re-equipped with short rifles. *6th Bn.* moved to Poperinghe.
20	S	
21	Su	*2nd Bn.* to billets at Divion. *6th Bn.* to trenches near Ypres.
22	M	
23	Tu	
24	W	
25	Th	*2nd Bn.* marched to the Bois de Verdrel, and went into tents. *2/4th Bn.* and *2/1st Bucks Bn.* embarked for France. *6th Bn.* by rail and road to Vlamertinghe.
26	F	*2nd Bn.* to Gouy-Servins. *2/4th Bn.* and *2/1st Bucks Bn.* arrived at Havre, and entrained for Merville.
27	S	*2/4th Bn.* to billets at Arrewage.
28	Su	
29	M	
30	Tu	*7th Bn.* went into training camp three miles north of Langaza.
31	W	*1/4th Bn* to billets at Oneux, for training. *1/1st Bucks Bn.* to Neuville.

Digitized by Google

JUNE.

1 Th	
2 F	*2nd Bn.* to Berthouval trenches (Vimy Ridge). *6th Bn.* to billets in Ypres.
3 S	*6th Bn.* returned to trenches (Zillebeke). *2/4th Bn.* to Laventie, for trench instruction at Fanquissart.
4 Su	*1/4th Bn.* moved to billets at Argenvillers, where also the *1/1st Bucks Bn.* arrived. *8th Bn.* to Rahmanli, to work on defences south of Doiran.
5 M	**Lord Kitchener lost at sea on voyage to Russia.**
6 Tu	*2nd Bn.* from trenches to support about Cabaret Rouge, etc.
7 W	*1st Bn.* (previously *Prov. Bn.*) moved down the Tigris to Amara, to refit; *2/1st Bucks Bn.* from Laventie, to trenches near Fanquissart.
8 Th	*6th Bn.* to billets at Poperinghe.
9 F	
10 S	*2nd Bn.* returned to the trenches. *1/4th Bn.* moved to billets at Mezerolles. *1/1st Bucks Bn.* marched to Occoches (20 miles).
11 Su	*1/4th Bn.* and *1/1st Bucks Bn.* to Couin.
12 M	*1/4th Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches. *2/4th Bn.* to Arrewage. *1/1st Bucks Bn.* to bivouacs at Sailly-au-Bois.
13 Tu	
14 W	*2nd Bn.* to huts at Camblain l'Abbé.
15 Th	*2/4th Bn.* in trenches at Fanquissart.
16 F	*1/4th Bn.* to bivouacs on the Courcelles-Coigneux Road on relief in Hebuterne trenches by *1/1st Bucks Bn.* *6th Bn.* to billets in Ypres.

Digitized by Google

JUNE.

17 S	1/4*th Bn.* in bivouacs west of Sailly. 6*th Bn.* to Zillebeke trenches.
18 Su	2*nd Bn.* to billets in Estrée-Cauchie.
19 M	
20 Tu	
21 W	
22 Th	2*nd Bn.* held annual Waterloo Sports. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Couin.
23 F	6*th Bn.* to billets in Ypres.
24 S	
25 Su	
26 M	1/4*th Bn.* moved bivouacs to ground between Couin and St. Leger.
27 Tu	2*nd Bn.* to billets at Villers-au-Bois.
28 W	2/4*th Bn.* carried out a raid, in which 2nd Lieut. ZEDER and 8 men were killed and 30 men wounded.
29 Th	1/4*th Bn.* carried out a raid on enemy trenches at night. 5*th Bn.* carried out a raid on Beaurains trenches.
30 F	7*th Bn.* in camp at Dremiglava (Salonika).

Digitized by Google

THE ARMY LIST.—1ST AUGUST, 1915.

THE OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY.

Regimental Dist. No. 43. [No. 7 District.]

The United Red and White Rose.

"Quebec, 1759," "Martinique, 1762, 1794," "Havannah," "Mysore," "Hindoostan," "Vimiera," "Corunna," "Busaco," "Fuentes d'Onor," "Ciudad Rodrigo," "Badajoz," "Salamanca," "Vittoria," "Pyrenees," "Nivelle," "Nive," "Orthes," "Toulouse," "Peninsula," "Waterloo," "South Africa, 1851-2-3," "Delhi, 1857," "New Zealand," "Relief of Kimberley," "Paardeberg," "South Africa, 1900-02."

Agents—Messrs. Cox & Co.

Regular and Special Reserve Battalions.
Uniform—Scarlet. Facings—White.

1st Bn. (43rd Foot) | **3rd Bn.** (Oxford Mil.) | **Depôt** .. .. *Oxford.*
2nd ,, (52nd ,,) | **Record Office** .. *Warwick.*

Territorial Force Battalions.

4th Bn. .. .. *Oxford* | **Buckinghamshire Bn.** .. *Aylesbury.*

Service Battalions .. **5th Bn.** | **6th Bn.** | **7th Bn.** | **8th Bn.**
2nd Reserve Battalion .. .. **9th Bn.**

Allied Regiment of Canadian Militia.
52nd Regiment (Prince Albert Volunteers.) ***Prince Albert, Saskatchewan.***

Allied Regiment of Dominion of New Zealand.
6th (Hauraki) Regiment.

Colonel .. .. **M.** Colvile, Hon. Lt.-Gen. *Sir* F. M., *K.C.B.*, ret. pay [R] .. 14 Sept. 13.

Officer Commanding Depôt .. Cuyler, Lt.-Col. *(temp.) Sir* C., *Bt.*, Maj. Res. of Off. .. 6Aug.14
Maul, Maj. H. C., T.F. Res. .. .. 13Mar.15 | Knox, Capt. *(temp.)* H.V., *late* Capt. R.Garr.R. 8Jan.15 to 3Sept 14

Adjutant .. .. Pearson, Maj. C. C., Res. of Off. 6Aug.14
Quarter-Master .. Carnell, Qr.-Mr. *(hon. capt.)* C., Res. of Off. 8Aug.14
Attached .. .. Maul, Capt. H. C., 3rd Bn. .. .. —

1st and 2nd Battalions. (Regular.)

Lt.-Colonels.

s. 2Davies, H. R. *(temp. Brig.-Gen.)* 18Sept.11
bt.-col. 18Feb.15
1Lethbridge, E. A. E., *D.S.O.* 25Oct.13

Majors.

2Ruck-Keene, H. L., *D.S.O.* 14Sept.07
(3) 2Darell-Brown, H. F., 18Sept.07
5Cobb, C. H. 18Sept.07
29Nov.09
1Hyde, A. C. 16Dec.08
2Eden, A. J. F. 18Sept.11
bt. lt.-col. 3June15
(temp. lt.-col. 26 Mar. 15)
s. Marriott-Dodington, W., *p.s.c.* 23Oct.11
1Carter, L. J. 28June13
Pope-Hennessy, L. H.R., *D.S.O., p.s.c. [l]* 25Oct.13
26Mar.06

Captains.

1Stapleton, F.H., *p.s.c.* 11Sept.02
Clayton, E.R., p.s.c. 11Sept.02
v. Frith, C. H. 22Nov.02
1Forrest, C. E., *D.S.O.* 22Feb.03
t. Ballard, J. A. 23June03
1Henley, C. F. 30Oct.04
s. Bayley, A. G., p.s.c. 30Oct.04
s. Brooke-Popham, H. R. M., D.S.O., *p.s.c.* [F]9Nov.04
bt. maj. 3June13
s. Wood, H. L. 14Apr.05
s. Fuller, J. F. C. 21June05

Captains—contd.

w.a. Keyworth, R. D. 9Oct.05
s. Weatherby, J. T., D.S.O., *p.s.c.* 30Dec.05
bt.-maj. 18Feb.15
s. Sullivan, G. A. 28Dec.08
1Simpson, R. V. 28Dec.08
2Kirkpatrick E. H., 13Feb.09
bt.-maj. 18Feb.15
2Higgins, C.G. *(t)* 13Feb.09
e.a. *Tunnard, L.* 22Jan.10
e.a. *Pollock, J. A.* 22Jan.10
2Ponsonby, A. W. N. 22Jan.10
2Dillon, H. M., *D.S.O.* 17May10
(5) 1Logan, R. O. 10Nov.10
1Morland, W. E. T. 22Jan.14
c.o. Parr, B. C. 14Mar.14
Stephens, R. 14Mar.14
1*Poljambe*, Hon. *J.C.W.S., Adjt.* 14Mar.14
t. Bartlett, A.J.N. 22Mar.14
f.c. Bourke, U. J. D. 18Apr.14
2Blewitt, G. 18Apr.14
f.c. Holt, F.V., D.S.O. 25July14
(5) Sanderson, A.E. 25July14
(5) Carfrae, C. F. K. 5Aug.14
(2) Scott, L. F., *Res. of Off.* —
(2) Hammick, S. F. *Res. of Off.* —
(2) Chichester, C. O., *Res. of Off.* 5Aug.14
(2) North, A. K., *3 Bn.*
(2) Fitzgerald, C., *3 Bn.*
(2) Jackson, H. N., *3 Bn.*
1Whittall, G. E. 8Jan.15
c.o. Portal, J. L. 17May15
2*Crosse, R. B.*, D.S.O., *Adjt.* 17May15
Boyle, C. R. C. 17May15
Terry, W. E. C. 10June15
Tolson, W. G. 10June15
5*Peget, B. C. T.* 10June15
Powell, J. J. 10June15

Captains—contd.

(5) *Plowden, G. F.* 10June15
Davenport, F. M. 10June15
Courtis, J. H. 10June15
Southey, J. A. 10June15
Munday, S. C. B. 10June15

Lieutenants.

Paris, A.C.M. (Empld. under Admy.) 14Aug.13
2Barnes, C. S., *D.S.O.*, 8Oct.13
2Brett, R. J. 25Oct.13
1Wynter, F.C.W. 22Mar.14
2Owen, R. M. *(temp. capt. 22 June 15)* 18Apr.14
1Birch-Reynardson, H. T. 25July14
(9) Hanbury-Williams, C. F. R. 6Aug.14
(2) Wingfield, M. ff. R., *3 Bn.* —
2Boardman, J. H. 17Sept.14
1Horan, K. 17Sept.14
(2) Warner, C. J., *3 Bn.* —
(2) Fowke, C. A. F., *3 Bn.* —
2Titherington, G. W., 8Jan.15

2nd Lieutenants.

*1Kearsley, J. S. 10Dec.13
2†Barron, C. A. 23Jan.14
2Withington, T. E. 23Jan.14
*2Newton-King, P. F. [L] 25Feb.14
(2) Chippindale, F.W.C. *Spec. Res.* —
2*Sewell, D. A. D.* 8Aug.14
*2Rendell, R. D. 12Aug.14
(2) *Wyld, J.W.G. 15Aug.14
(2) *Whitfeld, E. H. 15Aug.14
†Bailie, C.W.H. *(attd. Rif. Brig.)* 15Aug.14

2nd Lieutenants—contd.

(2) Johnston, J. L., *3 Bn.*
(2) Miniffie-Hawkins, S.M., *3 Bn.*
(2) Chevallier, C. T., *3 Bn.*
(2) Ridout, P. M., *3 Bn.*
(2) Carew Hunt, A. N., *3 Bn.*
(2) Webster, P. L. C., *3 Bn.*
2Mead, J. W. 10Oct.14
2Cardy, A. G. 17Oct.14
(2) Eighteen, W. J. 4Nov.14
1Mason, A. E. 7Nov.14
Lovelock, R. C. 7Nov.14
1Naylor, G. 7Nov.14
Murphy, D. 7Nov.14
Brown, F. 7Nov.14
2Field, G. 9Nov.14
2Dean, C. 9Nov.14
2Wooding, W. W. 9Nov.14
2Kite, R. B. 11Nov.14
2Barnard, W. L. 11Nov.14
2Belgrave, J. D. 16Dec.14
2Hurst-Brown, C. 16Dec.14
2Littledale, W. J. 16Dec.14
2Hughes, E. R. G. 23Dec.14
2Baker, C. B. *(temp.)* 1Jan.15
2Martin, V. C. *(temp.) (attd. Rif. Brig.)* 1Jan.15
(3) Slade-Baker, J B. 13Jan.15
(3) Clarke, N. G. 18Jan.15
2Solomon, J. B. *(temp.)* 27Jan.15
2Horley, C. R. *(temp.)* 27Jan.15
(2) Pendavis, H. V. *D.S.O.* 31Jan.15
2Peploe, K. 17Feb.15
2Grant, J. G. 6Mar.15
(3) Fanning, V. E. 16June15
(3) Smyth, H. E. F. 16June15
(3) Tyrwhitt-Drake, T. 14July15

* Temporary lieutenant 15 Nov. 14.

† Temporary lieutenant 3 Jan. 15.

Digitized by Google

THE OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY—**Regtl. Dist. No. 43**—*contd.*

1st and 2nd Bn.—*contd.*

Adjutants.

2Crosse, R. B. *D.S.O. capt.* 1Mar.13
1Foljambe, *Hon.* J. C. W. S., *capt.* 6May13

Quarter-Masters.

r. *King, T.* 24Nov.07
hon. maj. 24Nov.12
1Ivey, T. 22Sept.03
hon. capt. 22Sept.13
5Roberts, F.M., *hon. lt.* 25Aug.14
2Warnock, A., *hon. lt.* 19Mar.15

Special Reserve.

Lieutenants.

MacKeown, S.E. (*attd. Rif. Brig.*) 12Dec.14
Button, G. T. (*H.*) 10Dec.14

2nd Lieutenant.

(2) Chippindale, F.W.C. 5Aug.14

3rd Battalion. (Reserve,)

(See page xl. *as to honorary Army rank granted on account of Militia embodiment.)*

Hon. Colonel.

s. *Marlborough*, Rt. Hon. *C. R. J.*, Duke of K.G., TD. (*Lt.-Col. ret. T.F.*) (*temp. Lt.-Col. in Army*) 14June08

Lt.-Colonel.

Higgins Bernard, F. T. (Q) (*H*) 31Mar.12

Major.

p.s. Blyth, J., *hon. l.c.* (*H*) 5May06
✕Paske, G. F., *hon. l.c.* (*Hon. Capt. in Army* 2 *Nov.*00) (*H*) 12Sept.06
r.e. ✕Darell-Brown, H. F. 18Sept.07

Captains.

s. ✕*Fitz-william, W. C. de M.*, Earl, K.C.V.O., D.S.O., *hon. m.* (*Bt. Lt.-Col. W. Rid. R.H.A.*) 11Apr.06
p.s. Barrington, *Hon.* W. R. S., *hon. m.* (*H*) 6Jan.07
(2) North, A. K., *late* 2nd Lt. A.S.C. 4June02
Godsal, P. (*H*) 7June02
✕Cardwell, C. A., Capt. ret. pay (*H*) (8) 7Apr.06
Salkeld, R. E. (*Dist. Commr., E. Africa Prote.* 12 *July* 06) 12July06
p.s. Dashwood, R. H. S., Capt. ret. pay (*H*) (8) 1Dec.07
(2) Fitzgerald, C., Lt. ret. pay 8May11
(2) Jackson, H. N., Lt. ret. pay 14Aug.13
d. Maul, H.C. (*H*) 10Oct.14
p.s. Tatton, R. H. G. (*H*) (*attd. D. of Corn. L.I.*) 10Oct.14

Lieutenants.

✕Spencer, A. V. (*D.S.O.*) (*H*) 5Mar.10
(2) Wingfield, M.ff.R., *late* 2nd Lt. Oxf. & Bucks L.I. 27Aug.14

Lieutenants—contd.

(2) Warner, C.J. 26Sept 14
Smith, J. N. (*Asst. Dist. Offr. N. Provs. Nigeria*, ‡ 1 *Jan.* 14 ‡ 19 *Sept.* 10) 29Oct.14
(2) Fowke, C. A. F. 10Dec.14
Evetts, A. F. 24Apr.15
Rawson, H. W. H. 10May15

2nd Lieutenants.

Tuck, D. J. (*attd. D. of Corn. L.I.*) 8Aug.14
(2) Johnston, J. L. 15Aug.14
Newbolt, J. F. (*attd. D. of Corn. L.I.*) 15Aug.14
Goodwyn, L. J. (*attd. Yorks. L.I.* 15Aug.14
Quinn, J. W. (*attd. D. of Corn. L.I.*) 15Aug.14
(2) Minific-Hawkins, S. M. 15Aug.14
Walters, F.P. (*attd. Yorks L.I.*) 15Aug.14
(2) Chevallier, C. T. 15Aug.14
(2) Ridout, P. M. 15Aug.14
(2) Carew Hunt, A. N. 15Aug.14
(2) Webster, P.L.C. 15Aug.14
Wood, A. W. 15Aug.14
Vidal, L. A. (*attd. D. of Corn L.I.*) 15Aug.14
Slocock, C. H. B. (*on prob.*) 2Dec.14
Williams, T. P. (*on prob.*) 16Dec.14
Radford, H. D. H. (*attd. E. Kent R.*) 30Dec.14
McConnell, R. I.. (*attd. Rif. Brig.*) 30Dec.14
Griffith, E. N. (*on prob.*) 2Jan.15
Dashwood, H. G. (*attd. Rif. Brig.*) 8Jan.15
w.a. *Rowe, W. C.* (*on prob.*) 27Feb.15
Riddle, A. E. S. (*on prob.*) (*attd. E. Lanc. R.*) 30Mar.15
Foreshew, C. E. P. (*on prob.*) 31Mar.15
Foreshew, T. W. C. (*on prob.*) 31Mar.15
Griffith-Williams, M. S. (*on prob*) 3Apr.15
Strickland, R. (*on prob.*) 9Apr.15
Stephens, C. G. (*on prob.*) 11Apr.15
Widcombe, C. I. (*on prob.*) 17Apr.15
Huggard, G. C. (*on prob.*) 18Apr.15
Lawrence, W. G. (*on prob.*) 20Apr.15
Atkins, C. (*on prob.*) 23Apr.15
Griffin, S. J. (*on prob.*) 23Apr.15
Coles, W. T. (*on prob.*) 23Apr.15
Fitzgerald, R. A. (*on prob.*) 25Apr.15
Truman, A. H. (*on prob.*) 4May15
Gardner, A. E. (*on prob.*) 3May15
Webster-Jones, A. O. W. (*on prob.*) 9May15
Adams, H. C. (*on prob.*) 14May15
Brett, F. S. (*on prob.*) 16May15
Riley, C. H. (*on prob.*) 19May15
Rance, W. (*on prob.*) 20May15
May, R. A. (*on prob.*) 28May15
Davenport, C. T. (*on prob.*) 29May15
Tunnard, T. E. (*on prob.*) 29May15

2nd Lieutenants—contd.

‡Kellet, J. A. 10June15
‡Davis, A. H. 11June15
‡Watts, L. R. 11June15
‡Milford, T. R. 11June15
‡Campbell, H. D. C. 14June15
‡Seccombe, P. 14June15
‡Fussell, J. W. H. 14June15
‡Rock, L. J. 17June15
‡Holiday, W.G. 24June15
‡Crocombe, F.R. 26June15
‡Roberts, B F. 26June15
‡Wardle, B.C.C. 26June15
‡Reddy, T. H. 26June15
‡Ionides, T. A. 14July15
‡Scott, J. H. F. 24July15
‡Lester-Smith, W. C. 24July15
‡Rose, J. J. T. 24July15
‡Walden, H. R. 31July15

Adjutant.

✕Frith, C. H., Capt. Oxf. & Bucks. L.I. 17Sept.12
(*Capt. in Army* 22 *Nov.*02)

Quarter-Master.

✕King, T., *hon. maj.*

⊗4th Battalion. (Territorial).

"South Africa, 1900-01." St. Cross Road, Oxford.

Hon. Colonel.

North, W. H. J., Lord, TD. *late* Lt. 1 L.G. 9Jan.05

Lt.-Colonels.

2*p.s.* Ames, W. H. TD ⊗ (Q), *hon. c.* *8Sept.14
11June04
3*p.* Stockton, A., TD, (*H*) (8)⊗ *30Apr.15
30Nov.09
✕Dugmore, W. F.B.R., *D.S.O.*, Capt. ret. pay (*Res. of Off.*) *3May15

Majors.

1*p.s.* Schofield, F. W. (*H*) (Q) (*Lt.-Col.* ‡ *Jan.* 15) ✠ 1Apr.08
1*p.* Ovey, R. L.⊗ 30Nov.09
Beaman, G. P. R. Maj. ret. Ind. Army. *27Sept.14
2✕Slessor, A. K., Capt. ret. pay. *Adjt.*⊗ *29Sept.14
2Seymour, G. W., *late* Capt. R. Ir. Fus. ✠ *30 Sept.14

Captains.

p.s. 1Rowell, R. R. S. (*Maj.* 18 *Dec.* 14)⊗ 20Dec.15
1*p.s.* Rose, D. M. (*H*)⊗ 20Dec.05
1*p.s.* Fortescue, E. C. ✠ 1Apr.08
c.p.s. Fox, T. S. W. (*H*) 1Dec.09
1Conybeare, J. J. ✠ *5Aug.14 4Dec.12
1*p.* Coleman, E.G. ⊗ *5Aug.14
1Hadden, E. W. R. ✠ 2Sept.14

Lieutenants.

Twisleton-Wykeham-Fiennes, Hon. *L. J. E., f.c.* (*Capt. 27 Oct. 14*)⊗ 1June13
1Jones, F. B. (*Capt.* 13 *May* 15)⊗ 1Jan.14
1*Long, B.* (*H*) (*Capt.* 15 *May* 15), (*Brig. M.G. Offr.*)⊗ 1Jan.14

Lieutenants—contd.

1Pickford, P.⊗ 1Jan.14
1Treble, J. N. (*Capt.* 28 *Oct.* 14)✠ 21Jan.14
2Brucker, A.H. (*Capt.* 9 *Dec.* 14)✠ 14Sept.14
2Gray, W. T., *late* Lt. Impl. Yeo. (*Capt.* 9 *Dec.* 14)⊗ 14Sept.14
2Bennett, H.J. (*Capt.* 9 *Dec.* 14)✠ 14Sept.14
2Davenport, H. N. (*Capt. 9 Dec.* 14)⊗ 14Sept.14
2Cuthbert, R.F. (*Capt.* 9 *Dec.* 14)✠ 14Sept.14

2nd Lieutenants.

Taylor, F. W. (*Jun. Supt., Educn. Dept., Nigeria* 17 *June* 14) 25July12
2Jee, A. C. (*Capt.* 9 *Dec.* 14) 1May13
1Vyner, C.J.S. (*Lt.* 2 *Sept* 14)✠ 1Nov.13
1Grisewood, A. A. (*Lt.* 9 *Jan.* 15)⊗ 1Nov.13
3Barton, C. J. (*Lt.* 13 *July* 15)⊗ 1Apr.14
1Rose, G. K. (*Lt.* 9 *Jan.* 15)✠ 6Aug.14
1Griffin, I. E. (*Lt.* 9 *Jan.* 15)⊗ 8Aug.14
2Abraham, R. L.⊗ 27Aug.14
1Deacon, H.J. (*Lt.* 9 *Jan.* 15)✠ 2Sept.14
1Cranmer, J. E. A.✠ 2Sept.14
2Stockton, J. G.⊗ 2Sept.14
1Wilsdon, H. A. (*Lt.* 13 *May* 15)✠ 2Sept.14
1Wayman, W. A.⊗ 2Sept.14
1Brooks, B. B. B.⊗ 2Sept.14
1Gibson, A.K.⊗ 12Sept.14
1Grisewood, F. H.⊗ 12Sept.14
2Barnett, J. C. L., *s.* (*Lt. 9 Dec.* 14) 14Sept.14
2Richardson, M. C. (*Lt. 9 Dec.* 14)⊗ 14Sept.14
2Davis, A.G.A. (*Lt.* 9 *Dec.* 14)✠ 14Sept.14
2Boyle, R. F. R. P. (*Lt.* 9 *Dec.* 14)⊗ 14Sept.14
2Doyne, P. D. (*Capt.* 9 *Dec.* 14)⊗ 14Sept.14
2Mareon, C. S. W.✠ 14Sept.14
2Harris, H.T.T. (*Capt.* 9 *Dec.* 14)⊗ 14Sept.14
2Bridges, E.E.✕ 14Sept.14
2Smith, B. H. (*Lt.* 9 *Dec.* 14)✠ 14Sept.14
Brown, D. C. 14Sept.14
2Brown, K. E.✕ 14Sept.14
2Sanderson, J. F. B.✠ 6Oct.14
1Greenwell, G. H.⊗ 8Oct.14
3Andrews, A. N. (*Capt.5June*15)⊗ 8Oct.14
1Edmunds, M. W.⊗ 8Oct.14
2Scott, W. D. 11Jan.15
1Cooper, M. C. 16Jan.15
2Simpson-Hayward, G. H. 20Jan.15
2Parsons, C. R. 20Jan.15
2Strang, M.⊗ 21Jan.15
1Fortescue, T. R.⊗ 23Jan.15
2Hall, T. N.⊗ 1Feb.15
2Etty, J. L. 1Feb.15
2Tiddy, R.J.E.✕ 10Feb.15
2Procter, A.W.⊗ 19Feb.15
2Mitchell, J.G.⊗ 20Feb.15
1Craig, C. C. 5Mar.15
2Judson, H. L. 9Mar.15
1Lake, R. St G. 9Mar.15
1Mason, C. R. 19Mar.15

‡ ‡ On probation.

Digitized by Google

THE OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY—Regtl. Dist. No. 43—*contd.*

4th Bn.—*contd.*

2nd Lieutenants—contd.
3Wood, G. R. (*Capt. 1 May 15*) ⊗ 1May15
3Hunt, A. S. (**Lt. 1 May 15*) ⊗ 1May15
2Zeder, J. H. 1May15
3Stockton, H. O. ✠ 2May15
3Gamlen, J. C. B. ✠ 6May15
3Stevenson, G. H. (**Lt 6 May 15*) ⊗ 6May15
3Hunter, L. W. ⊗ 6May15
3Lakin, C. ✠ 6May15
3Stainer, C. L. (**Lt. 6 May 15*) ✠ 6May15
2Greey, F. L. 12May15
2Shepherd, G. H. G. ✠ 15May15
2Shepherd, J. G. ⊗ 15May15
Hunt, R. N. C. 19May15
3Wallace, W. J. L. 1June15
2Morden-Wright, H. 10June15
Palmer, G. H. E. 12June15
2Miller, J. G. R. 19June15
Smith, E. E. 5July15
Moberley, W. H. 17July15 1May15
Wrong, H. H. 20July15
Callender, J. C. 23July15
Scarby, H. R. 23July15
Blake, J. E. 24July15
Coombs, H. E. 24July15

Adjutants.
1⚔Ballard, J. A. Capt. Oxf. & Bucks L.I. 9May14
3⚔Slessor, A. K. *maj.* ⊗ 27Apr.15

Quarter-Masters.
1*p.s.*⚔Bridgewater, A. A., *hon. m.* ⊗ 30Dec.05
2Hobbs, W. A., *hon. lt.* ⊗ 24Nov.14
3King, W. G., *hon. lt.* 1May15

Medical Officers.
1Summerhayes, Maj. J. O., R.A.M.C. (T.F.) (*attd.*) ⊗ 25Apr.15 8Feb.13
2Howard, Capt. V., R.A.M.C. (T.F.) (**Maj. 17 Jan. 15*) (*attd.*) ⊗ 5Aug.14 29May12
Meikle, Capt. R. W., R.A.M.C. (T.F.) (*attd.*) 14Sept.14
Gauntlett, Lt. H. L., R.A.M.C. (T.F.) (*attd.*) 1Apr.13

Chaplains.
Cary-Elwes, *Rev.* A., *M.A.*, Chapl. 4th Class (T.F.) (*attd.*) 1Apr.08 14Mar.08
Smith, *Rev.* E. F., *M.A.*, Chapl. 4th Class (T.F.) (*attd.*) 1Apr.08 28Mar.06
Streatfeild, *Rev.* F., Chapl. 4th Class (T.F.) (*attd.*) 10Oct.14

[Uniform—*Scarlet* Facings—*White.*]

Cadet Units affiliated.
Cowley Cadet Corps.
Burford Grammar School Cadet Corps.

⊗Buckinghamshire Battalion. (Territorial.)

"South Africa, 1900-02."
Aylesbury.

Hon. Colonel.
Lt.-Colonels.
p.s. Fremantle, Hon. T. F., VD. (*T*) (*H*), *s.* 24Mar.06

Lt.-Colonels—contd.
2*p.* Williams, H. M., VD. (*t*) *14 Aug.14 18Apr.11
1Doig, C. P. *9Mar.15

Majors.
c. Hooker, J. H. 17Oct.11
2Cnadwick, J., TD. ✠ 18Apr.14
3Gilbey, A., VD. (*Lt.-Col. and Hon. Col. ret. Vol.*) (*to command Bn.*) *11Apr.15

Captains.
1⚔Hawkins, L. C. (*Hon. Lt. in Army* 18 *June* 01) (**Maj.* 1Sept.14) ✠ 31Aug.01
1*p.s.* Reynolds, L. L. C. ✠ 18July03
2*p.* Barrett, H. L. C. 19Mar.04
1*Baker, A.B.L., s.* 19June12
1*p.s.* Crouch, L. W. (Q) (*H*) ⊗ 19June12
2*p.s.* Addington, J. G., *Lord* (*H*) ⊗ 20Sept.13
1Birchall, E. V. D. ✠ 5Oct.13
Mitchell, C. J., Capt. Res. of Off., *s.* ✠ (**Maj. 1 Sept.* 14) 18Apr.14
2*p.s.* Christie-Miller, G. ⊗ *5Aug.14 5Aug.07
2*p.s. Vernon, S. R.* (*Capt. ret. T.F.*) *s.* *5Aug.14 21Jan.11
1Bowyer, G. E. W. ⊗ 1Sept.14
2*p.* Hankin, G. T. (q) () ⊗ *3Nov.14 17July08
2⚔*Harling, R. W.*, Capt. ret. pay, (*Res. of Off.*) *s.* *11Nov.14
⚔Pembroke, A. B., Capt., Res. of Off. (*Hon. Maj. ret. Spec. Res.*) (*Hon. Capt. in Army* 11 *June* 01) *Adjt.* *14Apr.15

Lieutenants.
Littledale, E. H. ✠ (*temp. Lt. R.E.*) 1July11
1Crouch, G. R. (*s*) (**Capt. 1 Sept.* 14) ⊗ 19June12
1Hall, P. A. (*H*) (**Capt. 1 Sept.* 14) ⊗ 17Sept.12
1Reid, N. S. (**Capt. 12 Sept.* 14) ✠ 17Sept.12
1Jackson, G. G. (**Capt. 1 Sept.* 14) ✠ 6Nov.13
1Combs, H. V. (**Capt. 21 May* 14) ✠ 12Feb.14
1(*p.*) Vernon, A. S. (*Capt. 6 June* 15) ⊗ *5Aug.15 12Sept.02
1Viney, O. V. (**Capt. 6 June* 15) ⊗ 18Sept.14
c. Buckmaster, R. A. 2Sept.14
2Fremantle, *Hon.* W. ✠ *21Sept.14

2nd Lieutenants.
2Green, B. (**Lt. 1 Sept.* 14) ✠ 24June14
2Simpson, G. H. (**Capt. 5 May* 15) 22July14
2List, A. P. (**Capt. 10 Oct.* 14) 5Aug.14
1Kennish, A. C. E. F. (**Lt. 28 Feb.* 15) ✠ 5Aug.14
1Backhouse, J. W. (**Lt. 1 Sept.* 14) ✠ 1Sept.14
1Reynolds, F. G. B. (**Lt. 21 Apr.* 15) ✠ 1Sept.14
Bowen, M. 1Sept.14
2Wyllie, G. A. ✠ 2Sept.14
1Norwood, R. C. 2Sept.14

2nd Lieutenants—contd.
1Brown, A. D. B. (**Lt. 6 May* 15) ✠ 2Sept.14
2Young, R. E. M. ✠ 2Sept.14
1Woollerton, E. N. C. (**Lt. 6 May* 15) ⊗ 2Sept.14
1Hobert-Hampden, G. M. A. (**Lt. 6 May* 15) ⊗ 2Sept.14
1Wright, E. L. (**Lt. 3 Sept.* 14) ✠ 3Sept.14
1Earl, F. D. (**Lt. 1 July* 15) ✠ 5Sept.14
c. 2Stewart-Liberty, I. (*Capt. 25 July* 15) ✠ 6Sept.14
1Hill, J. S. B. (**Lt. 10 Sept* 14) ⊗ 10Sept.14
2Stevens, G. C. ✠ 21Sept.14
2Buckmaster, H. S. G. (**Capt. 5 May* 15) 21Sept.14
2Rolleston, J. M. ✠ 21Sept.14
2Hughes, R. T. ✠ 21Sept.14
1Gregson-Ellis, R. G. ✠ 21Sept.14
2Cummins, W. A. ✠ 30Sept.14
2Troutbeck, G. L. ✠ 20Oct.14
2Ranger, V. W. H. ✠ 20Oct.14
2Phipps, C. P. ✠ 31Oct.14
2Chadwick, D. G. ✠ 31Oct.14
2Firminger, J. E. ✠ 31Oct.14
2Church, H. (**Capt. 25 July* 15) ✠ 31Oct.14
2Greene, W. A. (**Lt. 13 July* 15) ✠ 2Dec.14
2Symonds, R. F. ✠ 24Dec.14
1Wright, P. L. ✠ 4Feb.15
1Neave, G. V. ✠ 18Feb.15
2Hales, J. B. ✠ 20Feb.15
2Letts, E. M. ✠ 20Feb.15
3Bishop, S. D. ✠ 20Feb.15
2Atkinson, G. W. ✠ 20Feb.15
2Williamson, N. B. 20Feb.15
2Newbery, B. J. ✠ 19Mar.15
1Pullman, H. J. ✠ 23Mar.15
2Fordham, O. 23Mar.15
3Gilbey, A. R. (**Lt. 28 July* 15) 5May15 22Jan.15
Chapman, A. F. 31May15
Chapman, J. P. 1June15
3Godfrey, A. P. 2June15
3Rowland, R. 8June15
2Wells, P. E. 9June15
3Hall, K. 15June15
Irby, G. N. 19June15
2Long, E. W. (**Lt. 20 June* 15) 20June15
Hudson, R. B. 20June15
Vaughan, F. G. 17July15
Sanford, J. C. 21July15
Furley, R. B. 23July15

Adjutants.
1Bartlett, A. J. N. Capt Oxf. & Bucks. L.I. 25Feb.18
⚔Pembroke, A. B. *Capt.* 14Apr.15

Quarter-Masters.
2Waller, D., *hon. lt.* ✠ 26Sept.1914
1⚔Nicol, E., *hon. lt.* 17Feb.15
3Inder, H. J., *hon. lt.* 8May15

Medical Officers.
2*p.* Baker, J. C., *Surg.-Capt.* 23Oct.07 23Apr.04

Chaplains.
Wethered, *Rev.* O. H. *M.A.*, TD. Chapl. 2nd Class (T.F.) (*attd.*) 2June12 2June07

Chaplains—contd.
Whitechurch, *Rev.* V. L., Chapl. 4th Class (T.F.) (*attd.*) 2Dec.14
Phipps, *Rev. Canon* C.O., *M.A.*, Chapl. 4th Class (T.F.) (*attd.*) 2Dec.14

[Uniform—*Dark Grey.* Facings—*Scarlet.*]

Cadet Units affiliated.
Aylesbury Grammar School. Cadet Corps.
Slough Secondary School Cadets.

5th (Service) Battalion.

In Command.
Cobb, Maj. (*temp. Lt.-Col.*) C. H., Oxf. and Bucks. L.I. 19Aug.14 20Nov.00

Major.
(*2nd in Command.*)

Majors.
Webb, W. F. R. (*temp.*) (*Capt. 22 Punjabis*) 13Mar.15

Captains.
Logan, Capt. R. O., Oxf. & Bucks L.I. 21Aug.14 19Nov.10
Sanderson, Capt. A. E., Oxf. & Bucks L.I. 25Aug.14 25July14
Carfrae, Capt. C. F. K., Oxf. & Bucks. L.I. 29Aug.14 5Aug.14
Webb, A. W. T. (*temp.*) (*Lt. Ind. Army*) 1Oct.14
Plowden, Capt. G. F., Oxf. & Bucks. L.I. 1Oct.14 10June15
Barwell, N. F. (*temp.*) 26Apr.15
Cobb, H. H. (*temp.*) 20Apr.15

Lieutenants.
Maude, E. W. (*temp.*) 1Oct.15
Cooke, B. K. (*temp.*) 1Oct.14
Birch, W. R. (*temp.*) 1Oct.14
Crawford, C. B. (*temp.*) 1Oct.14
Ridge-Jones, A. (*temp.*) 7Oct.14
Day, H. J. T., 9 Bn.
Jury, C. R., 9 Bn.
Bird, S. H., 9 Bn.
Newman, L. S. M., 9 Bn.
⚔Walker, A. C., 9 Bn.
Sweet-Escott, L. W. (*temp.*) 13May15
Clarke, H. F. (*temp.*) 20May15
Jackson, J. M. H. (*temp.*) 20May15

2nd Lieutenants.
Fenwick, J. S. (*temp.*) 22Aug.14
Lee, L. S. (*temp.*) 26Aug.14
Beckingham, W. T. (*temp.*) 22Sept.14
Fremantle, T. F. H. (*temp.*) 30Sept.14
Walter, C. H. (*temp.*) 10Oct.14
Curry, P. A. (*temp.*) 2Dec.14

Digitized by Google

THE OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY—**Regtl. Dist. No. 43**—*contd.*

5th Bn.—*contd.*

2nd Lieutenants—contd.

Bleeck, J. (*temp.*) 4Dec.14
Le Messurier, H. A. (*temp.*) 30Dec.14
Carter, K. V. (*temp.*) 10Mar.15
Cupper, H. J. (*temp.*) 20Mar.15

Adjutant.

Paget, Capt. B. C. T., Oxf. & Bucks L.I. 14Sept.14
(*Temp. Capt. in Army* 1 *Oct.* 14)

Quarter-Master.

Roberts, F. M., *hon. lt.* 25Aug.14

6th (Service) Battalion.

In Command.

White, Lt.-Col. E. D. 6Sept.14
23Oct.11

Majors.

(*2nd in Command.*)

Childers, Maj. E. M., Res. of Off. 5Sept.14

Majors.

Davy, Maj. J. D. W., Res. of Off. 22Oct.14
Foljambe, *Hon. G.* W. F. S. (*temp.*) (*Capt. Res. of Off.*) 22Oct.14

Captains.

Vyner, R. J. (*temp.*) 23Sept.14
Williams, R. M. (*temp.*) 11Oct.14
Osborne, J. E. (*temp.*) 22Oct.14
Pears, T. (*temp.*) 5Jan.15
Bryant, J. E. (*temp.*) 18Jan.15
Stephens, H. E. (*temp.*) 5Feb.15

Lieutenants.

Anderson, E. J. (*temp.*) 22Oct.14
Milne, J. T. (*temp.*) 30Dec.14
Boissier, J. S. (*temp.*) 30Dec.14
Baines, A. B. (*temp.*) 5Feb.15
Smith, H. V. (*temp.*) 5Feb.15
Hunt, R. L. G. (*temp.*) 5Feb.15
Shaw, E. A. (*temp.*) 5Feb.15
Lack, V. J. F. (*temp.*) 5Feb.15
Middleditch, G. E. (*temp.*) 26Mar.15
Johnston, C. F. (*temp.*) 5July15

2nd Lieutenants.

Rogers, R. B. (*temp.*) 19Sept.14
Fagan, B. W. (*temp.*) 13Nov.14
Sutherland, H. J. (*temp.*) 16Nov.14
Gossett, A. C. V. (*temp.*) 23Nov.14
Burn, D. C. (*temp.*) 27Nov.14
Southam, F. (*temp.*) 27Nov.14
Whitlock, F. W. (*temp.*) 2Dec.14
Brooks, E. W. (*temp.*) 22Dec.14
Goodwyn, C. C. (*temp.*) 22Dec.14

2nd Lieutenants—contd.

Benson, C. S. (*temp.*) 22Dec.14
Clutsom, C. A. (*temp.*) 22Dec.14
Smith, A. W. (*temp.*) 26Dec.24
Boissier, G. D. (*temp.*) 29Dec.14
Walker, T. (*temp.*) 29Dec.14
McIlroy, W. E. C. (*temp.*) 25Jan.15
Tubbs, A. (*temp.*) 9Apr.15
Bell, R. H. (*temp.*) 26Apr.15

Adjutant.

Quarter-Master.

Brazier, W., *hon. lt.* (*temp.*) 22Sept.14

7th (Service) Battalion.

In Command.

Newton-King, Lt.-Col. (*temp.*) F. J. 22Jan.15

Major.
(*2nd in Command.*)

Major.

Wheeler, C. (*temp.*) 9Feb.15

Captains.

⚔Martin, G. B. (*temp.*) 17Dec.14
Debenham, F. (*temp.*) 17Dec.14
Ellis, L. J. (*temp.*) *Adjt.* 1Jan.15
Guise, J. (*temp.*) 15Feb.15

Lieutenants.

Phelps, W. (*temp.*) 10Oct.14
Pemberton, R. B. (*temp.*) 3Nov.14
Wicks, C. L. (*temp.*) 17Dec.14
Miller, G. C. (*temp.*) 17Dec.14
Stahlschmidt, F. A. D. (*temp.*) 17Dec.14
Cave-Brown-Cave, C. A. (*temp.*) 20Feb.15
Salvesen, C. A. (*temp.*) 1Mar.15
Royal-Dawson, O. S. (*temp.*) 5Apr.15

2nd Lieutenants.

Bowman, T. (*temp.*) 22Sept.14
Streatfeild, R. C. (*temp.*) 22Sept.14
Keble, J. H. C. (*temp.*) 17Oct.14
Ker, C. P. (*temp.*) 24Oct.14
Peirson, N. J. (*temp.*) 4Nov.14
Baker, C. P. (*temp.*) 9Nov.14
Symonds, S. L. (*temp.*) 14Nov.14
Garland, W. (*temp.*) 24Nov.14
Henry, H. A. (*temp.*) 24Nov.14
Riley, E. (*temp.*) 27Nov.14
Northcote, D. S. (*temp.*) 27Nov.14
Simpson, B. L. (*temp.*) 27Nov.14
Hathaway, T. W. (*temp.*) 28Nov.14
Ditchburn, A. H. (*temp.*) 2Dec.14

2nd Lieutenants—contd.

Hoey, J. T. S. (*temp.*) 7Dec.14
Young, W. A. (*temp.*) 18Dec.14
Thomas, A. L. (*temp.*) 24Dec.14
Boor, A. P. (*temp.*) 28Dec.14
Andrews, P. E. (*temp.*) 3Jan.15
Molyneux, P. L. (*temp.*) 11Jan.15
Green, C. H. (*temp.*) 25Jan.15
Manning, C. A. W. 25Jan.15
Walding, T. W. (*temp.*) 25Jan.15
Blake, W. T. (*temp.*) 25Jan.15
Arnett, M. G. (*temp.*) 1Mar.15
Shaw, J. W. (*temp.*) 27Mar.15
Holiday, A. S. (*temp.*) 1Apr.15
Robinson, H. W. (*temp.*) 7Apr.15
Riley, G. W. (*temp.*) 9Apr.15
Bobby, A. S. (*temp.*) 28Apr.15

Adjutant.

Ellis, Capt. L. J. (*temp.*) 1Jan.15

Quarter-Masters.

Powell, T., *hon. lt.* (*temp.*) 2Jan.15

8th (Service) Battalion. (Pioneers.)

In Command.

Justice, Bt. Col. C. Le G., Ind. Army 19Sept.14
11May07

Major.
(*2nd in Command.*)

Llewellyn, F. (*temp.*) 30Oct.14

Major.

Darnley, R. (*temp.*) 10May15

Captains.

Burt, A. E. (*temp.*) 14Nov.14
Lowe, A. H. (*temp.*) 14Nov.14
Tardrew, C. G. (*temp.*) 1Mar.15
Dunthorne, R. G. (*temp.*) 1Mar.15
Eales, T. F. J. (*temp.*) 1Mar.15
Bartrum, G. (*temp.*) 10May15
Garden, C. A. (*temp.*) 11May15

Lieutenants.

Leman, S. C. (*temp.*) 14Nov.14
Thompson, H. W. A. (*temp.*) 14Nov.14
Payne, E. H. (*temp.*) 1Mar.15
Edwards, A. R. (*temp.*) 1Mar.15
Forwood, L. L. (*temp.*) 1Mar.15
Morris, G. P. (*temp.*) 1Mar.15
Maul, G. B. (*temp.*) 1Mar.15
Groocock, H. L. (*temp.*) 15Mar.15
Giffard, W. L. (*temp.*) *Adjt.* 1May15

Lieutenants—contd.

Rayner, C. S. W. (*temp.*) 10May15
Medcalf, E. F. (*temp.*) 11May15

2nd Lieutenants.

Straight, F. S. (*temp.*) 5Nov.15
Calder, A. (*temp.*) 13Nov.14
Benjamin, A. F. (*temp.*) 6Dec.14
Haggen, G. L. (*temp.*) 7Dec 14
Amery, G. D. (*temp.*) 10Dec.14
Elliott, N. W. (*temp.*) 23Dec.14
Pierce, W. M. (*temp.*) 7Jan.15
Smith, J. E. P. (*temp.*) 7Jan.15
Watts-Watts, T. N. (*temp.*) 9Jan.15
Jee, R. (*temp.*) 11Jan.15
Bartrum, G. (*temp.*) 22Jan.15
Brimblecombe, P. Y. (*temp.*) 29Jan.15
Rose, G. S. (*temp.*) 24Feb.15
Edwards, A. H. (*temp.*) 26Feb.15
Sheppard, C. W. (*temp.*) 1Mar.15
Curtis, H. E. (*temp.*) 10Mar.15
Shaddock, W. H. (*temp.*) 13Apr.15
Taafe, C. (*temp.*) 13July15

Adjutant.

Giffard, Lt. (*temp.*) W. L. 1May15

Quarter-Master.

Woollen, W., *hon. lt.* (*temp.*) 9Nov.14

9th (Reserve) Battalion.

In Command.

Major.

(*2nd in Command.*)

Majors.

⚔Benson, C.B., *D.S.O.*, (*temp.*) (*Capt. Res. of Off.*) [L] 28Dec.14
Crum, A. S. (*temp.*) (*Hon. Capt. in Army* 25*Jan.*01) 6May15
10Oct.14

Captains.

Williams, C. H. (*temp.*) 28Dec.14
Hogan, C. J. (*temp.*) 28Dec.14
Knighton, G. G. (*temp.*) 28Dec.14
Skinner, J. H. McI. (*temp.*) 28Dec.14
Inman, H. J. (*temp.*) 7Jan.15
Evans, A. G. (*temp.*) 14Jan.15
Labouchere, A. M. (*temp.*) 20Jan.15

Lieutenants.

Hanbury-Williams, Lt. C. F. R., Oxf. & Bucks L.I. 6Aug.14
(5) Day, H. J. T. (*temp.*) 3Nov.14
Lardner, G. S. (*temp.*) 1Dec.14
Jacob, V. V. (*temp.*) 14Dec.14

Digitized by Google

THE OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY—**Regtl. Dist. No. 43**—*contd.*

9th Bn.—*contd.*

Lieutenants—contd.

(5) Jury, C. R. (*temp.*) 15Dec.14
(5) Bird, S. H. (*temp.*) 28Dec.14
Foot, E. L. (*temp.*) 28Dec.14
Calderon, G. (*temp.*) 9Jan.15
Rattray, S. (*temp.*) 18Jan.15
(5) Newman, L. S. M. 19Jan.15
Higgins, D. S. (*temp.*) 2Feb.15
Davies, G. H. (*temp.*) 18Mar.15
(5) ⚔Walker, A. C. (*temp.*) 23Apr.15

2nd Lieutenants.

Melliss, A. P. J. (*temp.*) 22Sept.14
Bowman, J. (*temp.*) 22Sept.14
Statt, C. C. (*temp.*) 22Sept.14
Chown, L. G. (*temp.*) 5Oct.14
Bennett, P. C. H. (*temp.*) 16Oct.14
Bousfield, G. W. J. (*temp.*) 23Oct.14
Paton, J. E. F. (*temp.*) 23Oct.14
Shadbolt, H. J. (*temp.*) 27Oct.14
Galloway, A. G. A. (*temp.*) 29Oct.14
Willock, B. P. 9Nov.14
Ford, W. O. 9Nov.14
Dick, J. G. (*temp.*) 19Nov.14
Morris, C. G. N. (*temp.*) 24Nov.14
de Pass, G. P. B. (*temp.*) 24Nov.14
Robinson, E. L. D. (*temp.*) 24Nov.14
Guy, G. R. (*temp.*) 30Nov.14
Barnes, R. M. (*temp.*) 7Dec.14
Whitehead, H. M. (*temp.*) 7Dec.14
Davidson, M. C. (*temp.*) 9Dec.14
McConnell, R. L. (*temp.*) 11Dec.14
Simpkin, W. (*temp.*) 11Dec.14

2nd Lieutenants—contd.

Lyle, G. S. La W. (*temp.*) 14Dec.14
Allsopp, A. T. W. (*temp.*) 18Dec.14
Peel, R. (*temp.*) 18Dec.14
Gibbons, A. G. (*temp.*) 22Dec.14
Coales, J. L. (*temp.*) 22Dec.14
Higham, T. F. (*temp.*) 22Dec.14
Muriel, W. G. (*temp.*) 22Dec.14
Barnes, D. T. (*temp.*) 22Dec.14
Harrison, N. S. (*temp.*) 23Dec.14
Beaver, H. A. (*temp.*) 23Dec.14
Hoole, L. R. (*temp.*) 30Dec.14
Punch, J. S. C. (*temp.*) 5Jan.15
Campbell, N. P. (*temp.*) 15Jan.15
Sparg, V. C. (*temp.*) 22Jan.15
Carr, H. J. (*temp.*) 24Jan.15
Haward, G. (*temp.*) 25Jan.15
Swift, H. L. (*temp.*) 25Jan.15
Cockell, G. B. (*temp.*) 26Jan.15
Thomas, T. (*temp.*) 26Jan.15
Bradley, G. (*temp.*) 26Jan.15
Lund, F. N. (*temp.*) 26Jan.15
Scott, R. M. (*temp.*) 30Jan.15
Campbell, C. B. (*temp.*) 23Feb.15
Stukeley, A. T. W. (*temp.*) 26Feb.15
Parsons, F. S. (*temp.*) 26Feb.15
Banham, G. W. R. (*temp.*) 26Feb.15
Chappell, E. F. (*temp.*) 6Mar.15
Hill, H. A. (*temp.*) 10Mar.15
Sims, H. V. (*temp.*) 10Mar.15
Greene, G. S. (*temp.*) 11Mar 15
Johnson, F. H. (*temp.*) 13Mar.15
Fuller, A. W. F. (*temp.*) 17Mar.15

2nd Lieutenants—contd.

Barrell, E. G. (*temp.*) 20Mar.15
Hutchins, W. T. (*temp.*) 25Mar.15
Coombes, J. C. (*temp.*) 7Apr.15
Frieake, G. M. (*temp.*) 7Apr.15
Bartlett, J. C. (*temp.*) 7Apr.15
Grosvenor, G. R. (*temp.*) 14Apr.15
Creswell, R. A. (*temp.*) 22Apr.15
Parkinson, E. B. (*temp.*) 22Apr.15
Allday, E. C. J. (*temp.*) 3May15
Norman, B. A. K. (*temp.*) 3May15
Cox, T. J. (*temp.*) 5May15
Henry, B. J. (*temp.*) 5May15
Bedford, D. E. (*temp.*) 6May15
Spurge, H. W. (*temp.*) 12May15
Ware, W. I. B. (*temp.*) 12May15
Best, J. H. (*temp.*) 12May15
Johnson, D. L. (*temp.*) 12May15
Ramsay, A. H. (*temp.*) 12May15
Field, H. T. C. (*temp.*) 12May15
Freeth, E. (*temp.*) 12May15
Garrard, G. F. (*temp.*) 12May15
Wilmot, D. A. T. (*temp.*) 12May15
Coulthard, E. F. (*temp.*) 13May15
Phillips, G. W. (*temp.*) 20May15
Cook, E. C. (*temp.*) 28May15
Wilsdon, R. G. (*temp.*) 28May15
Tees, E. S. L. (*temp.*) 3June15
Carew-Hughes, C. F. (*temp.*) 10June15
Hoole, S. W. (*temp.*) 10June15
Turner, A. G. (*temp.*) 10June15
Daye, A. J. (*temp.*) 10June15
Weston-Webb, H. (*temp.*) 10June15

2nd Lieutenants—contd.

Winder, J. F. E. (*temp.*) 10June15
Marsh, V. B. (*temp.*) 10June15
Middleditch, A. W. (*temp.*) 10June15
Mitchelson, A. (*temp.*) 10June15
Orr, H. W. (*temp.*) 10June15
Wilson, W. G. (*temp.*) 10June15
Walker, J. (*temp.*) 11June15
Wordsworth, O. B. (*temp.*) 11June15
Peel, D. K. McL. (*temp.*) 24June15
Banks, C. M. (*temp.*) 12July15
Dunn, H. J. (*temp.*) 12July15
Davies, H. (*temp.*) 12July15
Malcolm, R. G. (*temp.*) 12July15
Thomas, M. V. (*temp.*) 12July15
Walker, H. S. (*temp.*) 12July15
Anderson, F. E. (*temp.*) 12July15
Chater, E. H. (*temp.*) 13July15
Deane, W. (*temp.*) 13July15
Baskett, E. G. (*temp.*) 13July15

Adjutant.

Quarter-Master.

Baker, A. C., *hon. lt.* (*temp.*) 23Oct.14

Attached.

2nd Lieutenants.

Osmand, G. (*temp.*) 10Sept.14
Farrer, L. H. St. G. (*temp.*) 13Nov.14
Gray, G. G. (*temp.*) 22Dec.14
Harris, T. N. C. (*temp.*) 12Jan.15
Harris, A. D. V. (*temp.*) 12Jan.15
Prodger, S. E. (*temp.*) 14Jan.15
Copeman, H. G. H. (*temp.*) 25Jan.15
Bell, V. G. (*temp.*) 6Mar.16

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS OF THE 1ST AND 2ND BATTALIONS EXTRA-REGIMENTALLY EMPLOYED BETWEEN 1ST AUGUST 1915 AND 30TH JUNE 1916.

MAJOR H. L. RUCK-KEENE., D.S.O. Serving with the 3rd (Reserve) Battalion.

MAJOR H. F. DARELL-BROWN. Serving with the 3rd (Reserve) Battalion.

MAJOR C. H. COBB. Temp. Lieut.-Colonel, in command of the 5th (Service) Battalion, until 24th August 1915, when invalided; Dispatches, 30th November 1915 and January 1916; to half-pay on account of ill-health, 19th February 1916.

MAJOR W. MARRIOTT-DODINGTON, *p.s.c.* Special Appt. (graded as G.S.O. 2nd Grade) since 3rd July 1915; G.S.O. 2nd Grade, 4th October 1915; Dispatches (Dardanelles); Brevet Lieut.-Colonel, 2nd May 1916; Brig.-Gen. Comg. 161st Brig. June 1916.

MAJOR L. H. R. POPE-HENNESSY, D.S.O., *p.s.c.* G.S.O. 2nd Grade since 15th July 1915; Spec. Appt. Ministry of Munitions (graded as Staff Captain), 18th January 1916; G.S.O. 2nd Grade, 41st Division, 21st March 1916.

CAPTAIN F. H. STAPLETON, *p.s.c.* D.A.Q.M.G. 6th (Indian) Division, since 24th April 1915; promoted Major, 1st September 1915. *See* 1st Battalion Roll of Officers.

CAPTAIN E. R. CLAYTON, *p.s.c.* Brigade-Major; promoted Major, 1st September 1915; G.S.O. 2nd Grade, 2nd January 1916; Dispatches; awarded D.S.O.

CAPTAIN C. H. FRITH. D.A.A.G., 20th January 1916; promoted Major 1st September 1915.

CAPTAIN J. A. BALLARD. Adjutant 1/4th (T.F.) Battalion; promoted Major, 1st September 1915; to command of 17th R. Welsh Fusiliers (temp. Lieut.-Colonel), 15th November 1915; Dispatches, January 1916.

CAPTAIN A. G. BAYLEY, *p.s.c.* Brigade-Major; promoted Major, 1st September 1915; G.S.O. 2nd Grade, 5th February 1916; Dispatches; awarded D.S.O., June 1916.

Digitized by Google

CAPTAIN AND BREVET-MAJOR H. R. M. BROOKE-POPHAM, D.S.O., *p.s.c.* Royal Flying Corps; G.S.O. 1st Grade (temp. Lieut.-Colonel); promoted Major, 1st September 1915; Brevet Lieut.-Colonel, June 1916; temp. Brigadier-General; Dispatches; French Legion of Honour (Officer); Russian Order of St. Stanislas, 2nd Class.

CAPTAIN H. L. WOOD. Brigade-Major 97th Infantry Brigade since 8th January 1915; promoted Major, 1st September 1915; Dispatches, June 1916. For previous services *see* 2nd Battalion.

CAPTAIN J. F. C. FULLER, *p.s.c.* G.S.O. 3rd Grade; promoted Major, 1st September 1915; G.S.O. 2nd Grade, 9th February 1916.

CAPTAIN R. D. KEYWORTH. Promoted Major, 1st September 1915; posted to 5th (Service) Battalion, 5th October 1915; Second in Command; invalided to England, December 1915.

CAPTAIN AND BREVET-MAJOR J. T. WEATHERBY, D.S.O., *p.s.c.* G.S.O. 2nd Grade; promoted Major, 1st September 1915.

CAPTAIN G. A. SULLIVAN. Assistant Provost Marshal (D.A.A.G.); promoted Major, 1st September 1915; Dispatches; awarded D.S.O., January 1916; Belgian Order of Leopold (Chevalier), February 1916.

CAPTAIN C. G. HIGGINS. Promoted Major, 1st September 1915; to command of 17th Royal Fusiliers, 31st December 1915 (temp. Lieut.-Colonel); Dispatches; awarded D.S.O., January 1916.

CAPTAIN L. TUNNARD. Egyptian Army; promoted Major, 1st September 1915.

CAPTAIN J. A. POLLOCK. Egyptian Army; promoted Major, 1st September 1915.

CAPTAIN R. O. LOGAN. 5th (Service) Battalion; Company Commander; *killed*, 17th October 1915.

CAPTAIN W. E. T. MORLAND. G.S.O. 3rd Grade, 6th (Indian) Division, since 16th June 1915; Dispatches twice; awarded M.C. and D.S.O.

CAPTAIN B. C. PARR. On service in West Africa, with N. Nigeria Regiment.

Digitized by Google

CAPTAIN R. STEPHENS. A.D.C. to H.E. the Commander-in-Chief in India, September 1915.

CAPTAIN A. J. N. BARTLETT. Adjutant 1/1st Bucks Battalion; Instructor 3rd Army Infantry School, 10th November 1915; Dispatches, January 1916; to command 1/4th (T.F.) Battalion, 4th June 1916 (temp. Lieut.-Colonel).

CAPTAIN U. J. D. BOURKE. (Temp. Major) Squadron Commander, R.F.C.; Dispatches.

CAPTAIN G. BLEWITT, M.C. Staff Captain, since 18th July 1915; Brigade-Major, 13th February 1916; Brevet-Major, June 1916; Dispatches.

CAPTAIN F. V. HOLT, D.S.O. (Temp. Major) Squadron Commander, R.F.C.

CAPTAIN A. E. SANDERSON. 5th (Service) Battalion; Company Commander; invalided to England, 18th August 1915; to Army Signal Service, 14th December 1915.

CAPTAIN C. F. K. CARFRAE. 5th (Service) Battalion; Company Commander; *killed*, 25th September 1915.

CAPTAIN G. E. WHITTALL. Embarkation Staff Officer (D.A.Q.M.G.), Mesopotamia, since 12th May 1915.

CAPTAIN J. L. PORTAL. Serving with 1st King's African Rifles (with General Northey's Force in Nyasaland); Dispatches.

CAPTAIN C. R. C. BOYLE. Adjutant 6th (Service) Battalion; temp. Major, 11th March 1916.

CAPTAIN W. E. C. TERRY. G.S.O. 3rd Grade, since May 1915; attached G. S. 27th Division, B.E.F., 3rd October 1915; G.S.O. 3 (Operations) XI. Army Corps, B.E.F., 5th November 1915; Staff Captain H.Q. Advanced Base, L. of C., B.E.F., 31st January 1916.

CAPTAIN B. C. T. PAGET. Adjutant, 5th (Service) Battalion; awarded Military Cross, 18th November 1915; Brigade-Major, 42nd Infantry Brigade, 27th November 1915; Dispatches, January 1916.

CAPTAIN G. F. PLOWDEN. Serving with 5th (Service) Battalion; 42nd Brigade Machine-Gun Company, 16th February 1916; awarded the Military Cross, June 1916.

Digitized by Google

CAPTAIN A. C. M. PARIS. Employed under the Admiralty (temp. Captain Royal Marines) as G.S.O. 3rd Grade, since 28th February 1915; promoted Captain, 18th October 1915.

CAPTAIN C. S. BAINES, D.S.O. Staff Captain Ministry of Munitions, 18th August 1915; promoted Captain, 18th October 1915.

CAPTAIN R. J. BRETT. Promoted Captain, 18th October 1915; to Army Signal Service, 27th October 1915. For previous services, *see* 2nd Battalion.

LIEUT. C. F. R. HANBURY-WILLIAMS. Employed on Recruiting Duties.

LIEUT. J. W. G. WYLD. Staff Captain, 13th February 1916; temp. Captain, 13th April 1916.

LIEUT. D. A. D. SEWELL. Adjutant Infantry Base Depôt, 10th February 1916.

LIEUT. C. W. H. BAILIE. Attached for duty to 2nd Rifle Brigade, since 8th May 1915; Transport Officer, 19th July 1915.

2ND LIEUT. R. C. LOVEROCK. Asst. Embarkation S.O. (Staff Captain), Mesopotamia, since 20th July 1915; promoted Lieutenant, 18th August 1915; temp. Captain, 6th October 1915.

2ND LIEUT. J. B. SOLOMON. Royal Flying Corps; Dispatches, June 1916.

Digitized by Google

FORMER OFFICERS OF THE 1ST AND 2ND BATTALIONS EMPLOYED OR RE-EMPLOYED BETWEEN 1ST AUGUST 1915 AND 30TH JUNE 1916.

I.

ACTIVE LIST.

MAJOR-GENERAL SIR J. HANBURY-WILLIAMS, K.C.V.O., C.M.G. Temp. Lieut.-General, General Staff, attached to Headquarters of the Russian Army; awarded Russian Order of St. Vladimir, 3rd class, with Swords.

MAJOR-GENERAL R. FANSHAWE, C.B., D.S.O., *p.s.c.* Divisional Commander B.E.F. (48th S. Midland Division), since 30th May 1915; Dispatches four times.

BREVET-COLONEL (TEMP. BRIGADIER-GENERAL) H. R. DAVIES. Brigade Commander (3rd Infantry Brigade), since 23rd February 1915; promoted Colonel, 18th September 1915; awarded C.B., 3rd June 1916; Dispatches twice.

LIEUT.-COLONEL E. D. WHITE. Commanding 6th (Service) Battalion; Dispatches; awarded C.M.G., 3rd June 1916

II

RETIRED LIST

LIEUT. A. D. R. ALDRED. Lieut. ret. pay; temp. Captain, Royal Engineers.

CAPTAIN THE HON. C. A. J. ANNESLEY. Lieut. ret. pay; Captain, 1st Dragoons (Spec. Res.).

CAPTAIN C. B. BENSON, D.S.O. Res. of Off.; temp. Major, 9th (Service) Battalion; Brigade-Major, 30th September 1915.

Digitized by Google

CAPTAIN E. T. C. BOWER. Ret. pay; Special Appointment, Censor (graded as Staff Lieutenant), since September 1914; graded as G.S.O. 3rd Grade, 10th December 1915.

MAJOR C. J. BOYLE. Ret. pay; Royal Defence Corps.

CAPTAIN C. A. CARDWELL. Ret. pay; Captain, 3rd Battalion; temp. Major, Superintendent Remount Depôt; D.A.A.G., 1st December 1915; Staff Captain, 10th April 1916.

MAJOR C. O. CHICHESTER. Ret. pay; late Captain, 2nd Battalion; duty at Base, B.E.F.; Major commanding Depôt of Special Brigade, 16th January 1916.

MAJOR E. M. CHILDERS. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Second in Command 6th (Service) Battalion; to command of 20th Divisional School of Instruction, 11th March 1916.

COLONEL P. T. CLARK. Ret. pay; Commandant Officers' School of Instruction, Dover: invalided, November 1915.

MAJOR G. N. COLVILE, D.S.O. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; temp. Lieut.-Colonel commanding 7th D.C.L.I. since 27th July 1915.

MAJOR A. S. CRUM. Hon. Captain in the Army; late Lieutenant, 2nd Battalion; Major, Second in Command, 9th (Reserve) Battalion.

CAPTAIN H. R. S. COTTON. Ret. pay; employed on Recruiting Duties.

MAJOR SIR C. CUYLER, Bart. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; temp. Lieut.-Colonel, commanding Depôt, Oxford.

COLONEL THE HON. A. E. DALZELL, C.B. Ret. pay; Brigade-Commander (graded at A.A.G.).

MAJOR J. D. W. DAVY. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; temp. Lieut.-Colonel, commanding 15th (Service) Battalion Hampshire Regiment, 18th February 1916.

CAPTAIN G. DRAGE. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; temp. Major, 7th R. Munster Fusiliers; temp. Lieut.-Colonel commanding same Regiment, 18th August 1915; served in Dardanelles (Suvla Landing); Dispatches; in the Retreat from Serbia; awarded the Serbian Order of the White Eagle, 4th Class.

Digitized by Google

COLONEL R. ECCLES. Ret. pay; commanding 9th King's Liverpool Regiment, since 18th June 1915; *died*, 30th October 1915.

MAJOR R. M. FEILDEN. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; employed under Sudan Administration, as Governor of Bahr-el-Ghazal; Dispatches; awarded Egyptian Order of the Nile, 3rd Class.

CAPTAIN C. FITZGERALD. Ret. pay; 3rd Battalion, late Lieutenant 2nd Battalion; served with 2nd Battalion in France, December 1914; re-posted to 1st Battalion in Mesopotamia, December 1915.

CAPTAIN THE HON. G. W. F. S. FOLJAMBE. Ret pay; Res. of Off.; Major, 6th (Service) Battalion; Major, Second in Command, 21st Battalion K.R.R.C. (Yeoman Rifles), 19th November 1915.

CAPTAIN S. F. HAMMICK. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; at home, *wounded*, from 2nd Battalion in France; re-posted at 1st Battalion in Mesopotamia, December 1915; *wounded* at Sannaiyat, 6th April, and *died of his wounds* at Basra, 18th April 1916.

CAPTAIN R. E. U. HERMON-HODGE. Late Lieutenant, 1st Battalion; Captain (temp. Major), Q.O. Oxfordshire Hussars.

LIEUT.-COLONEL R. G. H. HUGHES. Ret. pay; Second in Command, 19th (Service) Battalion Lancashire Fusiliers; Draft Conducting Officer, 6th September 1915.

CAPTAIN W. C. HUNTER. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Spec. Appointment, D.A.A.G.; Officer in charge Prisoners of War Section, since January 1915; Dispatches, 30th April 1916.

COLONEL F. G. L. LAMOTTE. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Commander No. 3 Section Portsmouth Defences (temp. Brigadier-General).

MAJOR R. C. LUARD. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Assistant Embarkation Staff Officer.

MAJOR C. J. MITCHELL. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; late Captain, 2nd Battalion; Major, Bucks Battalion; Staff Captain, since February 1915; G.S.O. 3rd Grade, 21st April 1916.

MAJOR G. F. MOCKLER. Ret. pay; Special Appointment (Cable Censor), graded as Staff Lieutenant 1st Class, since April 1915.

Digitized by Google

LIEUT.-COLONEL A. F. MOCKLER-FERRYMAN. Ret. pay; G.S.O. 1st Grade, 63rd Division.

CAPTAIN G. S. F. NAPIER, *p.s.c.* Ret. pay; G.S.O. 2nd Grade, 60th Division; H.Q. Staff of Grand Duke Nicholas, commanding the Armies of the Caucasus, May 1916; awarded Russian Order of St. Anne, 3rd Class, with Swords.

MAJOR F. J. NEWTON-KING. Late 1st Battalion; temp. Lieut.-Colonel commanding 7th (Service) Battalion; invalided from Salonika, April 1916.

CAPTAIN H. C. NISBET. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; D.A.Q.M.G. 53rd Division, Dardanelles; D.A.Q.M.G. 4th Mounted Division, 2nd Cyclist Division, 31st March 1916.

CAPTAIN J. E. OSBORNE. Late Lieutenant 2nd Battalion: Captain, 6th (Service) Battalion; temp. Major, 19th November 1915; Second in Command, 11th March 1916.

MAJOR R. L. OVEY. Late 2nd Battalion; Second in Command, 1/4th Battalion; O.C., 145th Brigade Bombing School, since 23rd July 1915; to command of 1/4th Battalion (temp. Lieut.-Colonel), 28th November 1915; Dispatches; D.S.O., January 1916; invalided, May 1916.

MAJOR R. C. R. OWEN, C.M.G. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; employed under Sudan Administration as Governor of Mongalla.

CAPTAIN W. OWEN. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Chief Recruiting Officer, 43rd Recruiting Area, Oxford; Assistant Officer, Infantry Record Office, London, 20th March 1916.

MAJOR C. PARR. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Assistant to Officer in Charge, Infantry Record Office, Shrewsbury.

MAJOR C. C. PEARSON. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Second in Command and Adjutant, Depôt, Oxford.

CAPTAIN R. E. SALKELD. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., 61st Division, since January 1915; Second in Command, 2/5th Gloucestershire Regiment (temp. Major), 26th April 1916.

CAPTAIN L. F. SCOTT. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; serving with 2nd Battalion, *q.v*,

Digitized by Google

MAJOR E. A. STANTON. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Military Secretary to the Governor-General and Commander-in-Chief, Dominion of Canada; temp. Lieut.-Colonel.

CAPTAIN L. E. S. WARD. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Commanding British Forces in East Africa, August and September 1914; G.S.O. 1st Grade, Combined East African and Indian Forces, September–December 1914; G.S.O. 2nd Grade, E. African Forces and Indian Exped. Forces B and C, January–April 1915; commanding 172nd Brigade R.F.A., May 1915 (temp. Lieut.-Colonel); Dispatches, February 1916; awarded D.S.O.

MAJOR R. E. WATT. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; G.S.O. at G.H.Q., 3rd Echelon (France), since May 1915; Infantry Record Office, Exeter, 20th August 1915; transferred to Record Office, Warwick, January 1916.

CAPTAIN C. J. WILKIE. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; temp. Lieut.-Colonel, commanding 17th (Service) Battalion Welsh Regiment.

LIEUT. M. ff. R. WINGFIELD. Late 2nd Lieutenant, 2nd Battalion; Lieutenant, 3rd Battalion; at home *wounded* from 2nd Battalion; promoted Captain, 3rd Battalion, 6th November 1915; placed on half-pay list on account of ill-health, 30th April 1916

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS COMMANDING BATTALIONS OF THE REGIMENT

BETWEEN 1ST AUGUST 1915 AND 30TH JUNE 1916.

1st Battalion – –	Lieut.-Colonel E. A. LETHBRIDGE, D.S.O.
[*Provisional Battalion*, Major L. J. CARTER.]	
2nd Battalion – –	Lieut.-Colonel A. J. F. EDEN.
3rd Battalion (*Special Reserve*)	Lieut.-Colonel F. T. HIGGINS-BERNARD.
1/*4th Battalion* (*T.F.*) –	Lieut.-Colonel W. F. B. R. DUGMORE.
	Lieut.-Colonel R. L. OVEY.
	Lieut.-Colonel A. J. N. BARTLETT
2/*4th Battalion* (*T.F.*) –	Colonel W. H. AMES, T.D.
3/*4th Battalion* (*T.F. Reserve*)	Lieut.-Colonel A. STOCKTON, T.D.
1/1*st Bucks Battalion* (*T.F.*)	Lieut.-Colonel C. P. DOIG.
	Lieut.-Colonel L. C. HAWKINS.
2/1*st Bucks Battalion* (*T.F.*)	Lieut.-Colonel H. M. WILLIAMS, V.D.
	Lieut.-Colonel J. B. MUIR.
3/1*st Bucks Battalion* (*T.F. Reserve*)	Colonel A. GILBEY, V.D.
5th (*Service*) *Battalion* –	Lieut.-Colonel C. H. COBB.
	Lieut.-Colonel W. F. R. WEBB.
6th (*Service*) *Battalion* –	Lieut.-Colonel E. D. WHITE.
7th (*Service*) *Battalion* –	Lieut.-Colonel F. J. NEWTON-KING.
8th (*Service*) *Battalion* –	Colonel C. LE G. JUSTICE.
	Lieut.-Colonel B. CRUDDAS.
9th (*Service*) *Battalion* (*Reserve*)	Colonel J. R. DYAS.
1st Garrison Battalion –	Lieut.-Colonel R. P. J. CODRINGTON.
The Depôt – – –	Lieut.-Colonel Sir C. CUYLER, Bart.

Digitized by Google

THE 1ST BATTALION
OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY
IN
MESOPOTAMIA.
1st August 1915 to 30th June 1916.

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 1ST BATTALION, 1915–16.

THE MESOPOTAMIAN CAMPAIGN.

(*See Map* 1.)

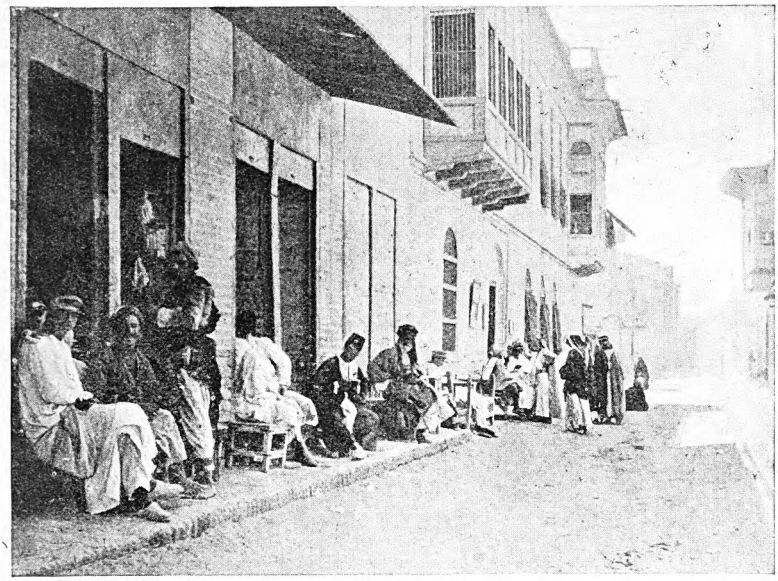
DURING the Euphrates operations, referred to in the last volume, Nur-ud-Din, the Turkish Commander-in-Chief at Kut, had been making demonstrations towards Amara, and Sir John Nixon now resolved on an immediate advance up the Tigris, with Kut-el-Amara as the objective, by the 6th Division, under General Townshend. How successfully this was carried out under the most trying circumstances, how the battle of Es Sinn was fought and won, and how the routed Turks evacuated Kut-el-Amara, are matters which are described by eye-witnesses in fullest detail in the diaries printed in the following pages. From the 1st August until the end of the year General Townshend and his gallant Division stand out as the central figures in the Mesopotamian Campaign. Advancing from Kut they drove the enemy before them to within a distance of thirty miles of Baghdad, and then (22nd November), pinning him to his strong position at Ctesiphon, fought him for three days with the greatest valour, and captured his trenches and several of his guns, only to be robbed of complete victory by insufficient numbers to meet the heavily reinforced Turks. That the enemy had been severely punished is vouched for by the fact that General Townshend was able to break off the engagement and effect the withdrawal of his whole force, together with the wounded and such Turkish prisoners (between 1,300 and 1,400) as had been taken, to the river at Lajj, nine miles from the battlefield. This took place on the night

Digitized by Google

of the 25th/26th November, and at Lajj the force remained until the following night, while the wounded were being sent down the river.

FROM LIEUT. BIRCH-REYNARDSON'S DIARY.

August 2nd.—Amara. We heard this evening that the Turks at Fillai-fillah did not wait for General Delamain, but fired a few rounds from their guns, and then cleared. The 117th go up to Ali-al-Gharbi to-morrow.



MUNICIPAL OFFICES AT AMARA.

August 4th.—A statement of the Nasiriyeh casualties came in to-day: 15 officers killed, and 30 wounded; other ranks about 600 killed and wounded, but we hear that nearly 2,000 went sick from the awful heat. The 24th Punjabis suffered most heavily, and are said to have been bogged in the marshes, and then fired into from the rear by so-called friendly Arabs, losing all their officers except Colonel Climo and one subaltern. No Arabs are friendly if they get the chance of being anything else. One can only judge them by the way they have let the Turks down every time.

Digitized by Google

August 5th.—General Hoghton arrived to-day to command our Brigade.

August 7th.—The 73rd Battery, the Howitzers, and the Norfolks returned from Nasiriyeh to-day. Davenport left for India on sick leave.

August 8th.—Busy with machine-guns, skirmishing drill, etc. There is a rumour that the Turks are withdrawing from Kut to Ctesiphon. Stapleton is in hospital with enteric.

August 10th.—Foljambe, Courtis, and Kearsley went off in "L. 2," a little telegraph launch, to sketch down the Bateera (or Bithaira) Canal. They stuck on the mud, and had to walk about 12 miles home across the desert, which they did not enjoy. I got orders to embark with the Machine-Gun Section and two guns to-morrow evening, 20,000 rounds, to act as escort to a reconnaissance to Ali-al-Gharbi. Arab rifle thieves busy in camp.

August 11th.—Inspected by Brigadier-General Hoghton. The 110th Mahrattas arrived. A squadron of 7th Lancers left for Ali-al-Gharbi.[1]

August 12th.—Got the guns on board "T. 2" last night, and started at 4 a.m. to-day. Strong north wind, and it was actually cool—almost cold. There were on board General Fry, Colonel Evans (G.S.O. 1), Colonel Hehir (A.D.M.S., 6th Division), Colonel Chitty (D.A.A.G.), Winsloe (C.R.E.), and Morland (G.S.O. 3). We steamed all day through flat, desert country; the river, with low mud banks, yellower than ever. Passed Kumait, where the 22nd Punjabis were lately in camp, and Ali Sherki, where there is a cool-looking grove of willows, and a fine tomb with a dome of glazed yellow and blue tiles.

We reached Ali-al-Gharbi at 5.30 p.m., and went ashore. Heard from Cochran (Political) that Yussuf Nureddin (brother of the Turkish cavalry commander), a sly old dog, who used to live at Amara, is catching and hanging all our spies. At Sheikh Saad, 30 miles higher up, 200 Turks and 4 guns are reported; and at Kut various estimates—probably 10 battalions and 16 guns—but it is said that they are ready to withdraw to Ctesiphon.

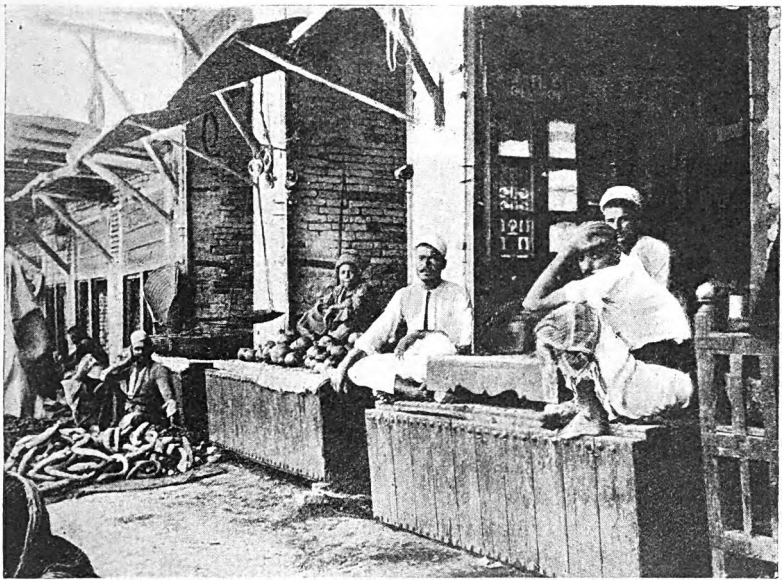
I dined on board with Colonel Chitty. All the others are dining ashore with General Delamain.

[1] Properly, Imam Ali-Gharbi.

Digitized by Google

August 13*th*.—Returned to Amara, leaving Ali-al-Gharbi at 9.30 a.m., and doing the 90 odd miles in 8 hours. We had a following wind, and found it very hot. Powell tells us that they started work to-day with the new field wireless set, which has a range of 300 miles by day, and can get Bushire (in the Gulf) at any time.

August 14*th*.—Have been ordered to train two more Machine-Gun Sections, as we are to have 6 guns per battalion. The difficulty will be to get the men. The "Sumana" brought up two more 4.7 inch guns.



ARAB SHOPS IN AMARA BAZAAR, 1915.

August 15*th*.—The first half of the 120th Rajputana Infantry arrived yesterday, and the remainder come to-morrow.

August 17*th*.—A Brigade exercise in the morning; the Machine-Gun Section of all three regiments brigaded together, under Courtis, who is now to command permanently the Brigade machine-guns. The 22nd Punjabis have their section with them at Ali-al-Gharbi.

August 18*th*.—Some days ago we had been told that we were going to move forward up river almost at once; now we hear that India has not yet given leave for us to go beyond this place (Amara).

Digitized by Google

FROM CAPTAIN J. J. POWELL'S DIARY.

August 20th.—Davenport arrived back from Basra, as he is practically all right, and will not be invalided to India after all. The Arabs here are very busy now picking the dates, the bulk of which go to Basra for the European market.

August 21st.—The 20th Punjabis are leaving Kalaat Salih, and are going up to Ali-al-Gharbi, to join the 16th Brigade. They will be relieved by the 2/7th Gurkhas, who are very weak, having lost many men from disease. The 22nd Punjabis will rejoin our Brigade, when we go to Ali-al-Gharbi. The 1/4th Hants are to garrison this place when we move forward.

August 22nd.—Our "Evinrude" boat (and one engine), which was stolen from us at Kurna, has been found and returned. The engine is in a hopeless state, so we are sending it down to Basra for repair. The boat was found in the marshes below Kalaat Salih, and brought in by marsh Arabs. The Germans escaped in it from the "Marmaris," when she was driven ashore and set on fire by our sloops on 1st June. Most of the occupants of the boat were killed by the Arabs; but a few, who managed to get away, gave themselves up.

August 23rd.—"T. 2" arrived from up-river in the evening with General Hoghton, who was not much impressed with Ali-al-Gharbi —a hot and dusty place, with no trees to speak of. The enemy's cavalry are supposed to have come down to within nine miles of it, and a certain amount of sniping goes on there every night. Above Ali-al-Gharbi the river becomes very bad, as there are many shoals and sand-banks, which are continually shifting; in fact, until the rains start in October, the river has no fixed channel.

August 24th.—H.M.S. "Comet" went up to Ali-al-Gharbi, having failed to get there yesterday, owing to the wind, which kept blowing her on to the bank. She cannot steam much more than 4 knots up stream, and is not too easy to manage, as she has fixed paddles, which makes turning difficult. She has been on the river for years, and before the war was the yacht and guardship of the British Political Agent at Baghdad.

August 25th.—Tug "Sherin" brought up two more aeroplanes. More are coming, as new machines have arrived from home. The Jaipur Transport Corps left to-day for Ali-al-Gharbi. It is getting very hot again, as the wind has dropped. The 1/4th Hants arrived

Digitized by Google

in the evening, and are only 170 strong, as they had to send a great number of their men back to India after the march up the Kharkeh River, with General Gorringe, in April. The 63rd Battery R.F.A. also arrived.

FROM LIEUT. BIRCH-REYNARDSON'S DIARY.

August 26th.—There are a large number of boats on the river now, so we are hoping for a move on. We played the west bank at rounders this afternoon, and were defeated. We have just heard of a House of Commons speech (as reported in the "Times"), on the subject of comforts for the troops in Mesopotamia. As far as Basra is concerned, it may be all right, but elsewhere all that was said is quite untrue and utter nonsense. We once had ice for a fortnight, but since then the machine has been out of order. Potatoes we have not seen for many months now.

August 27th.—Aeroplanes much in evidence, flying over the aerodrome on the west bank; also practising artillery observation, the Volunteer Artillery (Eurasian) doing the shooting.

We received a draft of 197 men, mostly reservists from India, others from T.F. battalions of Somerset, Border, and Wilts. Also 3 officers from those regiments—Mellor, Wilson, and Heawood.

August 28th.—General Townshend arrived from India. Davenport's birthday dinner.

August 29th.—Stapleton left on sick leave to India. Heard that Horan has been granted six months' sick leave home, and that the Colonel is still sick in India.

August 31st.—Drew 12 mules for the machine-guns, and not at all bad ones. General Townshend came round to the mess, and was very interesting about future plans.

September 1st.—We are to leave to-morrow. Very busy, but all going well. A draft of 250 men have arrived for the 1/4th Hants.

September 2nd.—Courtis and I started off with the mules and horses at 6 a.m., and had them all embarked on "P. 1" by 6.45 without any trouble. The Regiment was on board by 8.30. An awful day, with a tearing, scorching wind, and the ship frightfully crowded. We got to Ali Sherki by dark (7.30 p.m.), and tied up for the night to the left bank, just above the village. Anyone who liked was allowed to sleep ashore, but I personally preferred the deck.

Digitized by Google

September 3rd.—All on board again by 4.30 a.m., and we were off by 5.30. A scorching north-west wind again. At 9.30 a.m. our starboard barge bumped the bank, and we ran aground, and could not get off, against the wind, for four hours. The air was thick with sand, and one could scarcely breathe. Eventually we arrived at Ali-al-Gharbi at about 5 p.m., disembarked, and bivouacked on the shore below the town. We had a good deal of difficulty in getting off the horses and mules, as there is no pier, and the ramp down to the shore was very steep. We hear that there is a considerable amount of sniping into the 22nd Punjabis' camp here. A man was killed last night.

September 4th.—We have got a walled garden and a piece of open desert at the north end of the town for our camp—not a bad place. All day spent in pitching camp. I have got the mules and horses in a small, mud-walled yard in rear, which is quite safe from snipers.

In the evening Courtis, Mundey, Kearsley, Hyde, Wilson, and self went about 2 miles up-river after sand-grouse, of which there are a tremendous number here. We evidently went to the wrong place, as comparatively few came over, and we got only 11 brace.

September 6th.—This morning a small force, consisting of 1 squadron of the 7th, 1 section of guns, the 20th Punjabis, and 104th Rifles, went out to try and round up some mobile cavalry that has been hanging about. They do not seem to have had much success, and suffered severely from the heat, the 20th losing two dead and several sick.

At 3 p.m. we collected a party of 10 guns, and took each side of the river after sand-grouse, getting 52 brace.

We are now in E.P. Tents, 2 officers to each. Quite comfortable, but frightfully hot. Yesterday it was up to 121°, which is a bit thick.

September 9th.—We were informed two days ago that we are to march on the 12th, and are to have camel transport, the camels being supplied by local Arabs. None have come in so far, and Arabs who possess camels are said to be trekking for the desert for all they are worth. I have been trying for the last month to get a pony from the Remount, but without success, so to-day, in desperation, I bought a little beast from an Arab for ten guineas. Bag this day 48 brace of sand-grouse.

September 11th.—Aeroplane reconnaissance reports no Turks between here and Sheikh Saad, our destination. Unfortunately,

Digitized by Google

the aeroplane, on landing, got smashed up. It is an old, slow Maurice Farman, but we have none to spare. The transport of our Brigade for the march consists of 100 camels, 200 donkeys, and 4 cows. It will march separately, under a large escort.

September 12th.—Started at 5 a.m. and marched till 9 a.m., with one halt. Our casualties from heat were 24; the Dorsets many more, including two deaths. It was after 10 a.m. before we started pitching camp, as there was a lot of delay. "P. 2," our parent ship, which follows us by river, was very late in arriving with tents and stores. General Townshend came round in the evening.

September 13th.—Marched at 4.15 a.m., and had a long trek over bad country, and travelled a good deal too fast—our Brigade leading. We halted for the day at 8 a.m., and there was again a long delay in selecting the camping ground. We are one march from Sheikh Saad, and hearing that the place was evacuated, General Townshend went on there in the "Comet."

September 14th.—Marched at 3.45 a.m., and at 8 a.m. halted for the day at Sheikh Saad. Very hot day; we had 12 men down with heat-stroke. As soon as we had pitched tents, the most awful sand-storm came on with a scorching wind, the sand getting into one's eyes, nose, ears, and throat. The ship, with officers' mess stores, was blown on to the bank, and we got nothing up until the evening.

The aeroplane reports Es Sinn very nearly evacuated, so we are to press on to-morrow, instead of halting 8 days here to complete our concentration, as originally intended.

September 15th.—Marched at 3.45 a.m., halted for the day at 8, and got into camp at 10.30 a.m.; 6 men sick. Our cavalry patrols in touch with enemy's cavalry. All the mules are getting sore backs.

September 16th.—Marched at 4.15 a.m., and had a short march to Sannaiyat, 12 miles short of Es Sinn. We have been marching on the right bank of the river all the way from Ali-al-Gharbi. The report that the Turks have evacuated their position at Es Sinn is quite wrong. They are there in force, and this morning one of our reconnoitring aeroplanes was shot down and landed in their lines. Rather serious, as it was the best of the remaining machines, and a pilot and observer (Treloar and Atkins) have gone, too. The "Comet" saw the whole thing, but could not help. Here we halt for probably 10 days—a welcome rest for the men after their hard work in the scorching heat.

Digitized by Google

STEAMER "P. 2," PARENT SHIP FOR 17TH BRIGADE.
Off Sannaiyat, September 1915.

September 17th.—There was some sniping last night. Two of the Dorsets and two natives were hit. We bagged one Arab. We had a "long lie" this morning, which was very pleasant. Mundey, who has been definitely attached to the R.F.C., arrived by aeroplane. Nur-ud-Din Pasha, the Turkish general, sent a letter down last night, asking for the kits of Treloar and Atkins to be sent up before they left for Baghdad. He added that they dined with him last night, and would be properly treated. The kits were sent.

September 18th.—The force has now to stand to arms at 4 o'clock each morning for a couple of hours. It is considered quite likely that the Turks will attack us here, but we are not to make any defences except some shallow lying-down trenches, the idea being to "foster the offensive spirit," i.e., if the Turks make any sign of coming for us, we are to go for them in the open. Our piquet line is about 1,500 yards to the front.

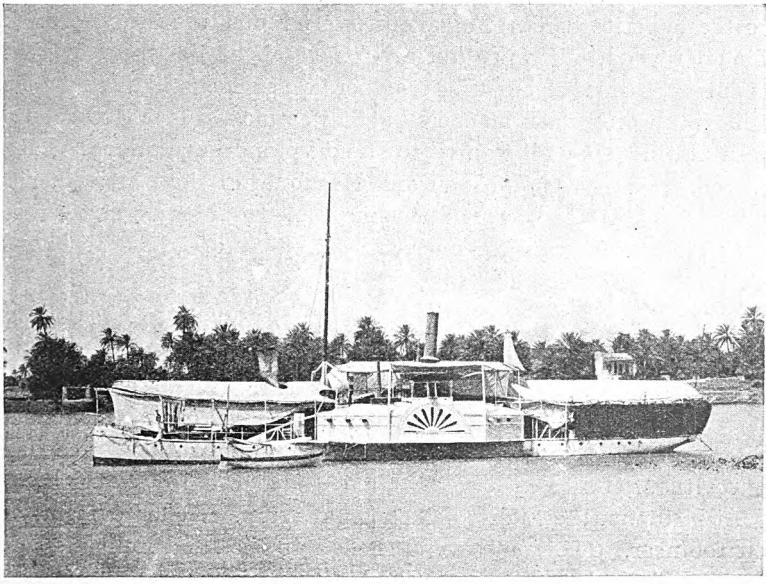
To-day we have at last heard something more about our extra machine-gun section, which seemed to have been forgotten. We are to get 4 or 6 guns, but this is leaving things to the eleventh hour with a vengeance.

Digitized by Google

We have got up our mess stores, soda-water factory, and some coffee-shop stores, so we are, for the time being, in comparative luxury. The Bishop of Lahore arrived late at night with the mails.

September 19th.—Just as we were opening our mail and thinking of breakfast, we were ordered to stand-to. Great excitement, and we stood. Then the order came to fall-out, but to stand by, with equipment on. So, with loins girded, we returned to our breakfast, and had just finished, when we were ordered out again. We moved about a mile from camp, but were then sent back disconsolate. Later we heard that the trouble arose from a flock of sheep being mistaken in the mirage for Turks; but the discovery was not made until the heavy guns had put about 50 shells into them. The men are delighted, and say that there will be mutton for dinner to-morrow! The Bishop held a large open-air service in the evening, and preached a very fine sermon.

September 20th.—The day before yesterday a reconnaissance of the 7th Lancers and 20th Punjabis went up the left bank, got in touch with the enemy, and captured an officer and three men; but to-day a patrol of the 7th Lancers got scuppered and cut up by Arabs, only one of their number getting away.



H.M.S. "COMET."

Digitized by Google

I have seen a map of the Es Sinn position, which looks as if it would be a tough nut to crack. It lies astride the river, and apparently there are some 12 miles of trenches and redoubts, and 32 gun-emplacements.

September 21st.—Rather heavily sniped last night; a bullet through my tent and into the ground near my bed. I was sleeping outside. One of the most disagreeable duties one has to perform here is at the Observation Post, with eyes glued to field-glasses. What with the constant sand-storms and mirage, it is almost impossible to see anything.

September 23rd.—The Machine-Gun Brigade paraded this morning for a final polish-up. No further news of the extra guns.

September 24th.—Seaplanes arrived, and have been scudding about. They look huge and heavy, and seem very slow climbers. They have come from East Africa, where they took part in the destruction of the "Koenigsberg," in the Rufiji River. We are to march early the day after to-morrow, and are the strongest unit in the force—about 700 rifles.

September 25th.—About 4.30 this morning, while we were standing-to, fire was suddenly opened on us from guns apparently close to the opposite bank. For about five minutes the fire was brisk, direction good, but range (luckily for us) about 100 yards over. I counted 7 shrapnel bursting together, which looks like Q.F. guns. All tents were struck at once, but it was most difficult to get the men down. They all wanted to stand up and have a look. Later in the morning Sir J. Nixon and Headquarter Staff arrived, also some motor ambulances, and machine-guns mounted on motor-cars.

We are putting all kits on board the ships to-night, after which we shall have one blanket apiece.

September 26th.—We started at 5 a.m. and marched, on the right bank, for about two hours, when we reached Chahela Mounds, about 6,000 yards from the enemy's position. The march was quite uneventful, except for two land-mines exploding, one of which killed a sergeant of the Dorsets. We could see our planes being shelled, but without effect.

At 2.30 p.m. they started shelling our camp. We are evidently a bit too near. They put several shells into the 22nd Punjabis, and went precious close to some of the ships, especially the old "Comet." One 15-lb. shell fell just short of our mess, and just missed Mun

Digitized by Google

(103rd), who was walking towards us. Fortunately it was a "dud." Soon afterwards a 40-lb. shell burst right over us, but, though bits flew among the dinner, it did no harm.

BATTLE OF ES SINN.

Captain J. J. Powell's Account.

(*See Sketch Map, No.* 2.)

Aeroplane reconnaissance discovered the following information regarding the Turkish position: Lying astride the River Tigris, some six miles below Kut-el-Amara, it faced north-east, and guarded a deep loop of the river. On the south or right bank, the position extended for at least five miles, and ended at the Dujailah Redoubt, a large and strong work, protecting the right flank. Between the river and this redoubt the ground was very heavily entrenched; near the bank small works, connected by a series of fire and communication trenches, had been thrown up; next, at a distance of about a mile and a half from the bank, were a few gun-emplacements, enfilading the long reach of the river down towards Saffa; and thence the position ran south-east along the line of a broad and solidly-banked dry canal, with one or two smaller dry water-courses in rear. At the bottom of the loop in the river stood a small fort, in the vicinity of which were huts and tents for the Turkish garrison of this part of the position.

On the north, or left bank, the position was divided into three distinct sections, separated by marshes. The first section extended from the obstruction which had been placed in the river to the Horse-shoe Marsh, a distance of about 1,500 yards, and had one strong work in the centre, with flanking trenches running out on either side, and having a very efficient system of communication trenches to the rear. In this section had been observed several gun-emplacements (as shown on the map), so sited as to command the river approach, and co-operate in dealing with a possible attack on the right-bank position. The central section, closing the gap between the Horse-shoe Marsh and the Suwada Marsh (a distance of about 1½ miles), was perhaps the strongest part of the line, being protected by rifle pits and wide stretches of barbed-wire entanglement. The trenches were very deep and narrow, with a parapet of barely 9 inches, so gradually sloped to the front as to have the appearance of being on the ground level, thus affording an excellent

Digitized by Google

field of fire, and making the trenches difficult to locate. Gun-emplacements had also been seen in this section, but only a few guns had been observed, as the Turks ran them under cover on the approach of our aircraft. Lastly, the whole of the foreground for a considerable distance had been most carefully cleared of brushwood and grass. The third section, situated to the north-west of the Suwada Marsh, consisted of four self-contained works, surrounded by several bays of barbed-wire entanglement, and connected by fire trenches, with a perfect maze of communication trenches in rear, which in parts ran back a mile behind the position and joined up successive lines of trenches. Between the Suwada Marsh and the southernmost work of this section (a distance of some 1,100 yards) there were only a few rifle pits and machine-gun emplacements. According to aeroplane reports there were several gun positions in this section. At one time the small marsh (Ataba) lying to the south-west of the Suwachi Marsh almost touched the northernmost work, but it had been gradually drying up, and there was a considerable tract of dry ground between the work and the marsh. The weakness thus resulting to their left flank had been realized by the Turks, who were building a second line of redoubts echeloned to the rear.

About two miles below Kut the enemy had thrown a bridge across the river, thus providing communication between the two portions of the position; and close to the bridge several large camps had been located—evidently the position of the reserves.

So much for what was known of the position prior to the battle.[1] I will now pass to the plan of operations.

First day (*September 26th*).—The 18th Brigade to go by river up to Nakhailat, accompanied by the heavy guns on barges; disembark on the left bank below Nakhailat, under cover of the fire of the heavy guns. A few of the cavalry, the 104th, and nearly all the transport to march up the left bank as far as Nakhailat, and thence proceed to the east corner of the Suwada Marsh. There to halt and form a post to protect the right flank of the force, and suitable for a starting point for further operations.

The remainder of the force to proceed to the Mounds east of Chahela, on the right bank, and there encamp. Their parent ships to follow up the river, and anchor about 1½ miles below the camp.

[1] The enemy's force was thought to consist of 1,600 cavalry, 24 guns of various alibre, 6,000 infantry, and some 500 Arab tribesmen.—J. J. P.

Digitized by Google

Later in the day demonstrations to be made on the right bank, to induce the enemy to expect attack on his right flank. Simultaneously the 18th Brigade to move up the left bank to within 5,000 yards of the centre section of the enemy's position on that bank.

Second day (*September 27th*).—The 18th Brigade to push on up to within 3,500 yards of the section of the enemy's position between Horse-shoe Marsh and the river. There to entrench, with a view to covering the heavy guns coming up into prepared positions during the night.

The troops encamped on the right bank to move out and make further demonstrations on that side of the river, but to withdraw, without becoming seriously engaged, at dusk.

The pontoon bridge, brought up from Sannaiyat, to be got ready during the day, and thrown across the river close to the camp as soon as it was dark.

Leaving the tents in the camp standing in full view of the enemy, the troops on the right bank (less the 30th Brigade), under General Delamain, to cross the bridge after dark, march out to the post at the corner of the Suwada Marsh, and there halt.

Third day (*September 28th*).—At 2 a.m. the march to be resumed, leaving behind the second-line transport in charge of half the 117th and picking up the 104th, to the place of deployment, about 5,500 yards east of the northernmost work of the enemy's position.

The northern section was then to be attacked as follows: Part of the force to make a frontal attack on the redoubt second from the north; the remainder to march round the left flank of the position, and attack the northernmost redoubt in flank, thereby rolling up the whole of the northern section before the Turkish reserves (near the bridge below Kut) could come up.

With the commencement of the above attack, the 18th Brigade, covered by the fire of the heavy guns R.G.A., and some 4.7-inch Q.F. guns in horse barges on the river, to move forward against the centre section, in order to distract the enemy's attention from the flank attack. Then, as soon as the northern section had been carried, if the enemy had not already fled, the centre section to be attacked from front and flank.

The 30th Brigade (370 men of the 2/7th Gurkhas, and half 76th Punjabis) to remain on the right bank, to protect the camp, bridge, and shipping from possible enemy attacks on that bank.

Digitized by Google

An aeroplane to destroy, if possible, the Turkish bridge, and thus prevent the enemy from moving reinforcements from one bank to the other.

Lieut.-Commander Cookson's River Column (H.M.S. "Comet," "Shaitan," and "Sumana") to assist in the operations as far as possible with their 12-pounders and machine-guns.

Headquarters on S.S. "Mejidieh," anchored near Nakhailat.

September 26th.—Marched out of Sannaiyat camp at 5 a.m., 17th Brigade in rear, with only 6 miles to go. Before we left a detached post on the lines of communication was established at Sannaiyat, and consisted of all the weak men of the force, with a few others, and one gun of the Volunteer Battery. We reached the mounds east of Chahela at 7.30 a.m., and as we are to be here for the next two days, set to work to entrench the camp forthwith. Half the tents were pitched, later, all along the perimeter, to make the force appear to the Turks to be larger than it really is. While the entrenching was in progress the Dorsets dug over some Turkish mines, which exploded, but luckily only one sergeant was killed. One of our remaining aeroplanes capsized in landing, and is now out of action. The ships came up and anchored about a mile below the camp, out of range of the enemy's guns, which began to shell us in the afternoon. Very little damage was done, and only a few men were hit. As a result of this, and in expectation of being shelled at night, "funk pits" were dug for all troops. In the evening the 103rd were sent out about a mile south of the mounds, to protect our flank, with orders to remain out until relieved by a force which is going out early in the morning to demonstrate on that flank.

The 18th Brigade disembarked from their ships, pushed up the left bank, and have occupied some high ground west of Chahela, meeting with very little opposition, but coming under fire from some of the Turkish guns. The 104th and their column have reached the corner of Suwada Marsh without opposition, are establishing themselves there, and are forming a depôt for the force, with two days' complete rations.

September 27th.—During the night the camp was shelled, but no damage was done, beyond one or two casualties, as the troops were in the trenches, previously dug. At about 4 a.m. the 43rd, 119th, one squadron of cavalry, and two guns R.F.A., under Colonel Darley (119th), moved out to the mounds occupied during the night

Digitized by Google

by the 103rd, who now returned to camp. We had orders to show ourselves as much as possible, but on no account to be drawn into an action with the enemy, as we were there merely to induce the Turkish general to believe that the attack was coming on his right flank. As soon as it was light the guns opened fire, to cover the advance of our demonstration, and to allow the 18th Brigade to carry on the advance begun yesterday on the left bank. The demonstration remained out until noon, and then returned to camp.

Meanwhile the 18th Brigade made good the ground up to within 3,000 yards of the centre section of the left bank position, and drove in the enemy's advanced troops, with very little opposition, and not having more than 30 casualties. Having gained the required ground, they dug themselves in, so as to be ready to cover the landing of the heavy guns (two 4-inch of the 104th R.G.A., and two 5-inch of the 86th R.G.A.) at night, and their advance to the emplacement to be dug for them as soon as it became dark. The Turks contented themselves with dropping occasional shells on the 18th Brigade during the day, but without much effect.

At 5 p.m. part of the 16th Brigade (Dorsets and 20th Punjabis) went out up the right bank, and commenced to entrench in full view of the enemy, with the object of strengthening the idea that the right-bank position was going to be attacked. They rejoined the force at dark, by which time the working parties had completed the roads down to the bridge, which was then thrown across.

At 7 p.m. the 17th Brigade fell in and marched off to the bridge, and commenced to cross in rear of the artillery. There was a certain amount of delay in getting the transport across, and checks were frequent, since the roads on either side of the bridge were steep and heavy with sand, and silent movement was essential. The roadway of the bridge had been covered with earth and straw to deaden the sound, and small searchlights played on the river above the bridge to detect any mines which the enemy might float down.

Having crossed to the left bank we formed up at Nakhailat, and then marched out towards the corner of the Suwada Marsh, where the 104th (Colonel Clery) had formed the post, and prepared bivouac grounds for the whole of Column "A," as our force was called. Davenport led the Brigade, and we reached Clery's Post at 9 p.m. Loads were removed from the mules, and the animals were sent off to water, but only a few would drink, as the water of the marsh was brackish. A little later the remainder of the transport

Digitized by Google

arrived, and we got some food; but sleep was out of the question, owing to the intense cold. We walked about to keep ourselves warm, and the strictest silence was maintained. The empty tents, which we had left standing at the Chahela camp, drew the enemy's fire, and were heavily shelled throughout the night.

September 28th.—Column "A" marched off at 2 a.m. across the enemy's front to the point of deployment. We moved in two columns, at about 200 yards interval, with a small advanced guard, and the scouts of the 43rd in front as a guard for Matthews (R.E.), who was leading the Column, with Davenport, checking the distance covered. The night was very still, and nothing was to be heard, except an occasional rattle of the packs on the mules, or the distant sound of artillery wheels in rear. At about 4.45 a.m. scouts were sent out to pick up the Suwachi Marsh, which was soon discovered quite close at hand. We marched up along the edge of the marsh for a short distance, and at 5 a.m. we halted at the point of deployment. Our exact position on the ground was not certain, as no landmarks were visible, and the situation of the marsh did not appear to correspond altogether with its outline on the aeroplane map—probably due to the fact that, like all these marshes, it had been drying up for some time.

The whole force now formed up as follows: On the left the Dorsets, half the 117th Mahrattas, the 22nd Company Sappers and Miners, the 63rd Battery R.F.A., the Hants Howitzer Battery, and a battery of six Maxims in A.T. carts (General Delamain), ready to make the frontal attack on the second work. On the right General Hoghton, with the 17th Brigade (43rd, 22nd Punjabis, 103rd Mahrattas, 119th Infantry) and two Battalions of the 16th Brigade (20th and 104th Punjabis), to move farther round to the flank and attack the northernmost work from the north-west.

Between the Suwachi Marsh and the latter work the map showed a small circular marsh (Ataba), and it had been intended that General Hoghton's force should move to the south of this, and then take the work in flank. But the marsh was farther south than we had imagined, and we marched round to the north of it, instead of to the south, with the result that we found ourselves in rear of the work instead of on its flank. As soon as all of us were round the marsh, we formed up for attack, and the Cavalry Brigade (7th Lancers and 16th Cavalry, with two machine-guns mounted on motor-cars), who had accompanied us, took up a position far out on our

Digitized by Google

flank, to protect it, and to reconnoitre to the west and towards Kut-el-Amara. We saw no more of them during the day.

In the meanwhile, owing to the delay caused by our long march, General Delamain's frontal attack was badly held up, but the 43rd, 22nd, and 119th relieved the situation by immediately moving to the attack of the northernmost work. At the same time the machine-guns and the 104th were sent out to deal with a counter-attack which was developing on our right flank; but this was soon stifled, and the enemy surrendered. These proved to be a party of Turks engaged in building a new redoubt in rear of the northern-most work, to protect the flank, now exposed by the drying up of the small circular marsh. As we advanced to the attack the 22nd was obliged to halt and face to the south, to meet another counter-attack, so the 103rd was ordered up to take their place in the attack. The 20th was then sent to support the 22nd. Shortly after this General Delamain's force, together with the 119th, and assisted by the 76th Battery R.F.A., carried one redoubt; and the 43rd, attacking it in rear, carried the other, after very heavy fighting, the Turks hanging on to their trenches in the most dogged manner. It was found that several of the communication trenches were fire-trenches, and each work was self-contained, with barbed wire all round.

By 1 p.m. the whole of the northern section of the position was in our hands, and such Turks as remained were made prisoners.

The Dorsets had had fairly heavy casualties, nearly all their officers being wounded, but mostly only slightly. The 43rd had Meldon wounded, and a few men killed and wounded, while the 119th had Nicholson killed and Taylor wounded.

As soon as the works had been cleared the 119th were left behind to garrison them, and General Delamain took all the other regiments of Column "A," except the 22nd, 20th, and 104th, and moved to the west of the Suwada Marsh.

General Hoghton, with the 22nd, 20th, and 104th, pushed down in the direction of the river, to deal with counter-attacks which were developing from that quarter, the 76th and 82nd Batteries R.F.A. assisting him with their fire. I, as Signalling Officer, accompanied General Hoghton, and thus for the time being was away from the Regiment. There was great difficulty in finding out what was going on in other parts of the field, as the telephone wire was continuously being cut by Arabs, who, we heard later on, hung about in rear of the fight, doing what damage they could, and cutting off any small parties of our men they came across. This difficulty in maintaining

Digitized by Google

communication was constant throughout the day; for a time we kept the telephone working with Headquarters, but the Arabs cut the line time after time, in spite of the fact that linesmen were continuously patrolling it. Visual communication, except within brigades, was impossible on account of mirage; and eventually recourse had to be had to aeroplanes.

About this time ammunition began to run short, and General Hoghton sent for the Brigade reserve. The enemy withdrew in front of our advance, but he brought his new Q.F. guns into action, which caused some casualties in our ranks, until our guns forced them to retire.

At about 3 p.m. a message was received from General Delamain, in which he said that he was hard pressed in front, and wished General Hoghton to join up with him, and re-form. He also said that he had had no news of General Fry and the 18th Brigade.

Consequently, at about 3.30 p.m., General Hoghton began to draw off towards the west of the Suwada Marsh, to join General Delamain. On seeing this movement, the Turks opened a heavy artillery fire on our ammunition carts, with the result that several ponies were killed, and some of the carts knocked over, but the remainder succeeded in withdrawing.

At about 4 p.m. General Hoghton's battalions were in touch with General Delamain's force; and then an aeroplane brought a message from General Fry to the effect that he was held up, and could not get on until we came to his assistance. General Delamain replied that we would start at once, and would endeavour to come in on the enemy's flank, starting our attack at about 5.30 p.m.[1] Orders were given out, and soon after 5 p.m. we moved off in a south-south-easterly direction, not too fresh, and suffering from want of water, since none had been procurable during the day, the marsh water being too brackish to drink.

After going a short distance we saw, about a mile away, a large force of the enemy moving up as if to reinforce the Turks opposite General Fry. No doubt they had been sent out to make a counter-attack on us after dark. We immediately wheeled round to our right and faced south-west, so as to get into a suitable formation

[1] Captain Powell, being with the Brigade Signal Section, speaks with first-hand knowledge of the messages received and sent; while others who have described the fight, being unaware of these messages, knew no reason, at the time, for the movements which followed. From the receipt of General Fry's message appears to have resulted the final defeat of the Turks at Es Sinn.—ED.

Digitized by Google

for attack. Our guns promptly opened fire on the enemy, and soon silenced his four guns, but had to cease firing fairly soon, as it was getting too dark to distinguish friend from foe. The maxim battery also came into action, and covered the advance of the infantry. The wheel completed, the whole force began to advance; 17th Brigade on the left, with the 43rd and 22nd in front line, and 103rd in support; 16th Brigade on the right, with the Dorsets and 104th leading. The men, who a few minutes before could hardly move from sheer exhaustion and thirst, suddenly revived, and commenced to advance at top speed in the best of style.

Before we had gone far we were met by a very heavy fire, but, thanks to the failing light, their aim was rather high, and, consequently, most of our casualties occurred at some distance from the enemy's position and amongst the supports. The 103rd were ordered up to reinforce the first line, as a gap was starting between the 43rd and 22nd. I was sent off to get them up. It was dark before we approached close to the position, but as soon as we were near enough we charged. I was still with the 103rd, when I was hit within about ten yards of the position.

As soon as the position was carried the force halted, and as a further advance in the dark was out of the question, arrangements were made to meet possible attacks during the night.

I was bandaged up by Private Stevens (one of the Regimental Signallers), and was then carried back for more than a mile by him and Corporals Purseglove, Ballard, Oliffe, and Cave. One of them went on, to try to find the ambulance, but it had moved. A little later some more wounded of the Regiment were found, and I was left with them. A few Turks came wandering past us, and these, including an officer, were captured by our escort. At about 11 p.m. Foljambe and Startin found us and brought out some mule rugs to cover us up, as the night was becoming very cold. Heard that poor Simpson had fallen in the beginning of the attack, being hit clean through the forehead and killed instantaneously. The total casualties in the Regiment are supposed to be about 85.

September 29th.—In the early morning nearly all the wounded were collected and taken to the spot where the Brigade had spent the night. We were conveyed there in carts, and we spent the remainder of the day lying in a ditch. All the prisoners were also brought in to this spot, and a strong escort left in charge. At about 8 a.m. the force marched off, to fight its way to the river and get water, no one having had any for 36 hours. The river was

Digitized by Google

reached without opposition, and every available receptacle was filled with water. At about 10.30 a.m. *packhals* reached us. Simpson was buried before the Brigade marched off.

The 18th Brigade were ordered to embark on their ships, and take up the pursuit of the enemy, who was retiring towards Baghdad, with our cavalry following them. The 16th Brigade set out on the march to Kut-el-Amara, which was reported to have been evacuated, while the 17th Brigade went into camp on the river bank, about two miles above the Es Sinn position.

In the evening all the wounded were carried down to the camp by the river, and placed in the ambulance.

The 22nd Punjabis went into camp at our resting-place of the day, with orders to send out search parties, to bring in any wounded who might still be lying out concealed in the high grass. The 119th rejoined the Brigade to-day, from the captured works which they had been garrisoning since yesterday morning.

September 30th.—A lot of wounded were found and brought in yesterday, and a good many dead were decently buried, but in several cases not before the Arabs had mutilated the bodies. Heard that the 18th Brigade, in their ships, had stuck for 24 hours off Kut, and so were unable to assist the cavalry, who, consequently, were forced to keep at a respectful distance from the Turks. The latter, it is reported, have recovered from their defeat here, and are now making a most orderly retirement up the river, which would never have happened if the 18th Brigade's ships had not run aground.

All the wounded have been taken over by No. 1 Field Ambulance, and I was moved into my own tent, which my servant, Kirby, had pitched for me amongst the ambulance tents. The men have been most attentive to me since I was hit, moving me with the greatest care, and doing everything in their power to make me comfortable.

Lieut. Birch-Reynardson gives, in his Diary, the following description of the Battle of Es Sinn, in which he commanded the Machine-gun Section of the Regiment:—

September 27th.—There was some shelling last night. We paraded at 4.45 am., with the 119th, and marched off, the two Machine-gun

[1] Captain Powell was sent down the river on October 2nd, reached Basra on the 7th, and Bombay on the 27th; embarked on the Hospital Ship "Madras" on November 24th; and arrived at Southampton on December 17th—just eleven weeks after receiving his wound.—Ed.

Digitized by Google

Sections being on the left flank. After a little our force deployed in two lines; I, with the two Machine-gun Sections, was on the left; and about 500 yards on my left was the squadron of cavalry, dismounted, with patrols out in front and on the left flank. Fighting soon commenced, some distance away on our right—evidently the 18th Brigade driving in the enemy's advance troops, with much rifle fire, and our heavy guns helping.

We, ourselves, did not succeed in drawing the enemy's fire, as we had been intended to do; and by 7.30 a.m. the rifle-fire on our right had dropped, only the artillery duel continuing. Nothing further happened, and at 11.45 a.m. we got orders to move back to camp in artillery formation.

We paraded again at 6.30 p.m., in the dark, and after a long wait, owing to the 16th Brigade transport getting hung up on the boat bridge, we got across. We marched in column of route, no talking or smoking allowed; but the Jaipur Transport made the most fearful noise; one cart out of every four had squeaky wheels, and most of the native drivers who were not coughing or sneezing were carrying on lively conversations at the top of their voices. Some got out of place and marched on our left flank, i.e., between the column and the enemy's position. A dense cloud of sand and dust, which looked in the moonlight like white steam, hung over the column as we marched along.

At 9.30 p.m. we reached Clery's Post (an advanced post held by the 104th, commanded by Colonel Clery), where we halted and formed a square with the horses and mules in the centre. The men were allowed to sleep. There was great difficulty in getting a feed for the animals, but at about 11 p.m. this was managed, after which I slept until 1.15 a.m.

September 28th.—Paraded at 1.15 a.m. and marched off, the 16th Brigade leading. It was a very close morning, and the men were very sleepy, so that, whenever we halted, they dropped off, and we had to rouse them hurriedly when we got on the move. The transport had been left at Clery's Post, and the column moved very silently. Twice I fell asleep while I was actually marching.

At 5.30 a.m. we deployed into artillery formation, and began moving west, as the sun rose. We had previously been marching north-west.

At 6 a.m. the enemy's cavalry (about 2 squadrons) opened fire on our cavalry, who got their machine-guns going and drove them off. We appeared to have lost direction a bit, as, instead of being

Digitized by Google

between the marshes, we found ourselves north of the round one (Ataba Marsh) on the left of the enemy's position.

7.30 a.m.—As I write there is heavy firing away to our left, but we have done nothing so far, except a certain amount of shelling of a redoubt about 3,000 yards away. Directly to our front some 300 or 400 enemy infantry have appeared, and have moved into a trench. On our west their cavalry, about 500, are facing ours. They have now (7.45 a.m.) moved away to the right, with patrols out in front; our two armoured cars have just passed, going after them.

Almost immediately one of the cars unfortunately broke an axle.

At about 8 a.m. Hibbert (Brigade-Major) came up to where we were halted, on the west of the line, and told Courtis (commanding the machine-guns of the Brigade) that the 17th Brigade was going to attack the northernmost redoubt, and that the machine-guns were to support the attack from the west flank. Courtis pointed out to him a half-finished work to the west, and told him that we had just seen 400 men go into it, so Hibbert said that we had better take them on the way, and then shove on and help the Brigade. So off we went, in artillery formation, over ground as flat as a billiard-table, towards our objective. I remember wondering how a brigade of 6 machine-guns took a position on its own.

The Turks let us get quite close—800 yards—and then opened on us, luckily firing high. The men got the guns into action at once, and very smartly. Upstone's gun was the first in the Brigade to open fire. There was great difficulty in getting the mules away to the rear; they had not been under fire before, and it had the effect of making them stick their toes into the ground and refuse to move. Two were hit at once. Corporal Barford and Mills were also hit almost at the same time.

After about 5 minutes pumping as hard as we could a white flag appeared on their parapet, but as Miles was hit almost immediately afterwards, we took no notice. Then Sarson's battery gave them some shrapnel to go on with, which was just what we wanted; but one was a bad premature burst and nearly had my Machine-gun Section, which was on the left. Shells were altogether more than the Turks bargained for, and they tried to leave their trench. This was the one and only time we had a good target, and they lost heavily, until they turned and ran back to the trench. White flags now went up in earnest—about five of them, so we ceased fire. But we were in a dilemma; we could not trust these people to allow us to

Digitized by Google

get up and walk across to take them prisoner, so things looked rather at a deadlock. Luckily the 104th saw how matters stood, and came up from our left and took over the show. They found that the place was a half-finished redoubt, and took 109 prisoners. There were also about 50 killed and wounded. Some of the prisoners were sent over to act as stretcher-bearers for our wounded. I talked to one of them, and he told me that they were an Arab Battalion, and that he and most of them came from Baghdad, having been enlisted four months ago.

After this we straightened up as quickly as possible, and then trekked across to join the Brigade, and were ordered to push on into the firing-line with the 20th and 22nd Punjabis and 104th, who were advancing southwards, to the west of the front line of redoubts. Just before we got up to them we unfortunately crossed the Brigade Staff and Signal Section, and for a time were the object of attention from the Turkish guns, and the place was thick with shrapnel. I had my Machine-gun Section in very open artillery formation, and we were extraordinarily lucky, only losing Pearce. The other sections were less fortunate.

We swung right-handed and got in rear of the 22nd, who were advancing rapidly against a certain amount of rifle-fire, though not heavy.

Here we had to wait for a bit to get up our rear mules. Then we were ordered to separate, and each section to get into the firing-line wherever it could. This made matters quite hopeless for the machine-guns, as we could not get the firing-line to wait for the guns to get into action. Three times the firing-line advanced and masked our fire just as we had mounted our guns. The men were dead beat man-handling the guns and ammunition in these three attempts to get into action, so we had to give it up.

The firing-line got on quite well until it reached two small heaps of earth—evidently range-marks, and then the enemy's artillery started shooting, very straight, and bursting low. The 22nd Punjabis were ordered to retire, and came back out of it rapidly. The fire was pretty hot, and they lost heavily, shell-bodies and fuses bumping about all over the place. One of the latter missed my legs by inches, and downed a man in front of me. I believe we should have done better to have gone straight on, but, as it was, we went away back, and left the right open.

This was about 11.30 a.m., and there was a certain amount of confusion, with a general mix-up of killed, wounded, and

Digitized by Google

ammunition-boxes. General Hoghton came along soon afterwards, and ordered every available man to be shoved in here. Then we advanced again, after our artillery had shelled theirs, and stopped their nonsense, and we advanced farther than we had been before, without any opposition.

We (i.e., the 104th, 22nd, 20th, and Machine-gun Brigade) waited here for some time without doing anything. Then we fell back again for about 400 yards, I believe because our left was now in the air. After a short halt, at about 1 p.m., we advanced, the 1st Line carts with their ammunition being close up to us, and the guns (limbered up) just in rear. This produced another outburst of hate from the enemy's guns, and they dropped shells right into the transport, which was knocked endways; the Machine-gun Brigade came off better, losing only two men and one mule—the latter a direct hit. But the gun teams in rear caught it, and several horses were laid out.

By this time water was becoming rather a pressing question, and we were ordered back to a marsh to our left rear. It was surrounded by bog, and we could not get the horses and mules near enough to drink without the risk of losing them. As soon as the wretched beasts saw the water, they made straight for it, and we had the greatest difficulty in stopping them, but not before one mule got bogged up to the girths, and was extricated only by off-loading at once.

It was now about 4 p.m., and we sat down and waited. Everyone was worn out with thirst and hunger, and most of the men fell asleep directly. It became necessary to get water somehow, and we heard that we were to make for the river, but no one was quite clear as to what was ahead. At 5.15 p.m. (almost sunset) we moved off, the 16th and 17th Brigades in artillery formation, the Machine-gun Brigade in rear of the centre, and the field-guns and howitzers further in rear. After marching for about a mile, heavy rifle-fire was opened on us from half-right. We, in rear, halted, and were ordered to lie down at once, while the two infantry brigades deployed to the right. The machine-guns then got into action between the two brigades, and in the dusk we caught sight of some of the enemy, about 900 yards away, in knee-deep grass. The Turkish guns now commenced firing, and ours immediately replied, shooting splendidly at close range. The whole sky-line was lit up by the flashes and flames of the bursting howitzer shells.

Digitized by Google

Before long the firing-line started advancing rapidly, and the machine-guns had to cease fire, pack up, and follow. As we did so the enemy's fire grew hotter, though it seemed to be somewhat high, but the Machine-gun Section had Wooding and 4 mules killed. The two brigades pushed on at a tremendous pace, and, without stopping, carried out what was practically a charge of over 1,000 yards, thus leaving our machine-guns well behind. It was now quite dark.

Soon we heard a cheer, and saw a blaze of fire ahead of us; then there was silence, and it was evidently all over for a bit.

When we got up to the Brigade we found them in a sunken road or water-cut filled with the enemy's dead and wounded, our guns having caught them badly. I reported to General Hoghton, who ordered me to distribute the Machine-gun Sections to their regiments.

Sentries were posted every six yards, and machine-guns mounted on the farther bank of the sunken road, and we were ready for all emergencies.

We had imagined in the first instance that this sunken road was the river bank, and we fully expected that we should at last get water; but, as a matter of fact, no one knows exactly where we are, or where the river is. Moreover, we have failed to get into communication with either Headquarters or the 18th Brigade. The Regiment has lost 3 officers, poor Simpson killed, and Powell and Meldon wounded, and about 100 men. The Dorsets lost 9 officers (mostly slightly wounded); the 103rd 4 officers (wounded); the 119th 1 officer died of wounds, and 2 officers wounded. The 103rd and 119th are said to have done very well. Casualties in the ranks not at present known.

September 29th.—It turns out that we were a mile short of the river last night. A lot of the men drank from a marsh near our halting-place, but it was pure Epsom salts. Courtis and I had a tin of Liebig, someone else had a tin of Nestlé's milk, and another some brandy, so we made a mixture of all three, and thought it the best thing we had ever had. Davenport, Hind, and I lay down near the guns with a gun-sheet over us, but it was too cold to sleep. Winter had come in one night, and it was bitter. The Turkish wounded must have felt it terribly; all night we could hear them calling out somewhere away in front, and we got in as many as we could. There were occasionally false alarms during the night, but nothing happened, and most fortunately for us, as, what with hunger and thirst and the heat of the day, everyone was nearly

Digitized by Google

exhausted. Men would listen to an order, and appear to take it in, but in many cases were quite incapable of understanding the meaning of the words which they heard.

Soon after dawn this morning an aeroplane dropped a message to report Turks in full retreat, and Kut evacuated. Leaving the 22nd Punjabis as guard over the 4 guns, prisoners, etc., that we had captured, we formed up and marched to the river. Never shall I forget our first drink from it. The lips of most of the men of the Regiment are scorched black.

Here we found a lot of stores: bags of flour, biscuits (Swallow and Ariel), bully beef, and jam. We drank tea and slept all the morning, and at about noon the 18th Brigade, with some captured Turkish guns, passed by on the way to Kut.

At 4 p.m. we marched down stream, and went into camp at a spot which had evidently been some Turkish Divisional Headquarters, where we found a fine long table, with benches and chairs, which were immediately commandeered for the mess. At 6 p.m. our ship ("P. 2") rolled in, with tents, etc.

Later Sir John Nixon rode round, and told us that the 16th and 18th Brigades were to pursue, and the 17th would go on as soon as sufficient transport was available. But it appears that the Turks have carried out a raid, round our left flank, towards Sheikh Saad, and have sunk the coal and oil barges which were on their way up. This probably accounts for the small number of enemy cavalry seen yesterday.

From C.-S.-M. Shilcock's Narrative.

On the morning of 27th September 1915 the 17th Brigade, of which the 43rd formed part, moved out of camp at about 5 o'clock to make a demonstration on the right bank of the Tigris, whilst the 18th Brigade took up a position on the left bank, from which they were to make a holding attack the next day.

There was plenty of gun-fire between our boats and naval guns on the river and the Turks, but no rifle-fire on the right bank, though considerable on the other.

The Turks' position was astride the river, and there were over 20 square miles of trenches.

We got back to camp late in the afternoon, and at 6 p.m., leaving the tents standing, with a few details to look after the camp, we

Digitized by Google

crossed the river by a pontoon bridge, and marched until 10 p.m., when we halted until 1 a.m., and snatched what sleep we could.

Previous to going out the Battalion had been told to collect any vessels which would hold water, and take them with us filled, because we should get no more water until we reached the river again, and no one could say when that would be.

At 1 a.m. 28th September we moved on again, and marched until dawn, when we got into artillery formation, and moved round by a large marsh. About this time we heard a few shots fired, and found that it was a skirmish between our cavalry and the enemy's scouts. The 16th Brigade, of which the 2nd Dorset Regiment formed part, had orders to attack a redoubt, which was nearly on the enemy's left, while the 17th Brigade went farther round his flank.

The rifle-fire was now becoming furious, and although we were still spectators, and had not fired a shot, the Dorsets and their Brigade were in the thick of it. A lot of shots fell amongst the 17th Brigade whilst they were lying down awaiting orders.

Soon we were ordered to move and wheel to the left towards the redoubt which the 16th Brigade were attacking, P and S Companies in the front line, and R and Q in the second line.

On getting within about 400 yards of the redoubt some of Q Company, under Captain F. M. Davenport, got up to some communication trenches, captured two Krupp guns, and killed or captured the gunners. Soon after this the order came down to fix bayonets and charge; but the Turks, when they saw that it was all up, stood up, and held the butts of their rifles in the air as a token of surrender.

After collecting the prisoners we moved away a bit for a rest, and then, later on in the afternoon, we marched towards the river to get some water.

During the action we had seen a large mass of troops moving about in the direction of Kut-el-Amara, but, owing to the mirage, could not tell who they were, and could not fire, as they might have been our own cavalry. It turned out, however, that it was another large force of the enemy, and during our march to the river they commenced to shell us.

The G.O.C. took us back a bit, so that we could replenish our ammunition supply and make dispositions for the attack; and, at about 4 p.m., we started again, and soon came under heavy rifle-fire. So, after extending, we proceeded by rushes, a company at a time, until we got to close range, when we had to fix bayonets and carry on.

Digitized by Google

It was now getting late, and by the time we had got to their trenches it was dark, and, not knowing their strength, we had to halt in the captured trenches.

During this action we captured about 1,800 prisoners and ten guns, and the 43rd had 85 casualties.

Lieut. Birch-Reynardson's Diary continued.

September 30th.—Rode into Kut with Wynter, and found that all rumours of further captures by the 18th Brigade were quite untrue; in fact, the Brigade in their ships had stuck on the mud, and had only just got off when we arrived there.

Kut is a wretched place, and the dust awful. There is a good minaret and some nice houses on the front. It looks about the same size as Amara, but I believe is much smaller.

On the way back we found a wounded Turk, who had been lying out three days without water. Luckily we saw the motor-ambulance car, and managed to get it and put him in.

October 1st.—The 17th Brigade is now engaged in clearing up the Es Sinn ground, burying dead, collecting arms, etc.—a horrible job. This morning I rode out to look at some of the redoubts and adjacent trenches. The latter were beautifully dug and sited, and at every 50 yards there was a recess in the parados containing large jars of water. The redoubts were provided with dug-outs and wells, and had wire in front and on the flanks, as well as land-mines and three rows of "trous-de-loups." The head-cover was made of cement or concrete, and appeared to be whitewashed, though probably this was the result of the sun-bleaching and cement. The overhead cover consisted of spars, brushwood, and earth—no corrugated iron. The fire-trenches were traversed every 7 paces; the communication trenches, of which there must be many miles, were quite 9 to 10 feet deep, and fitted with sign-posts where necessary.

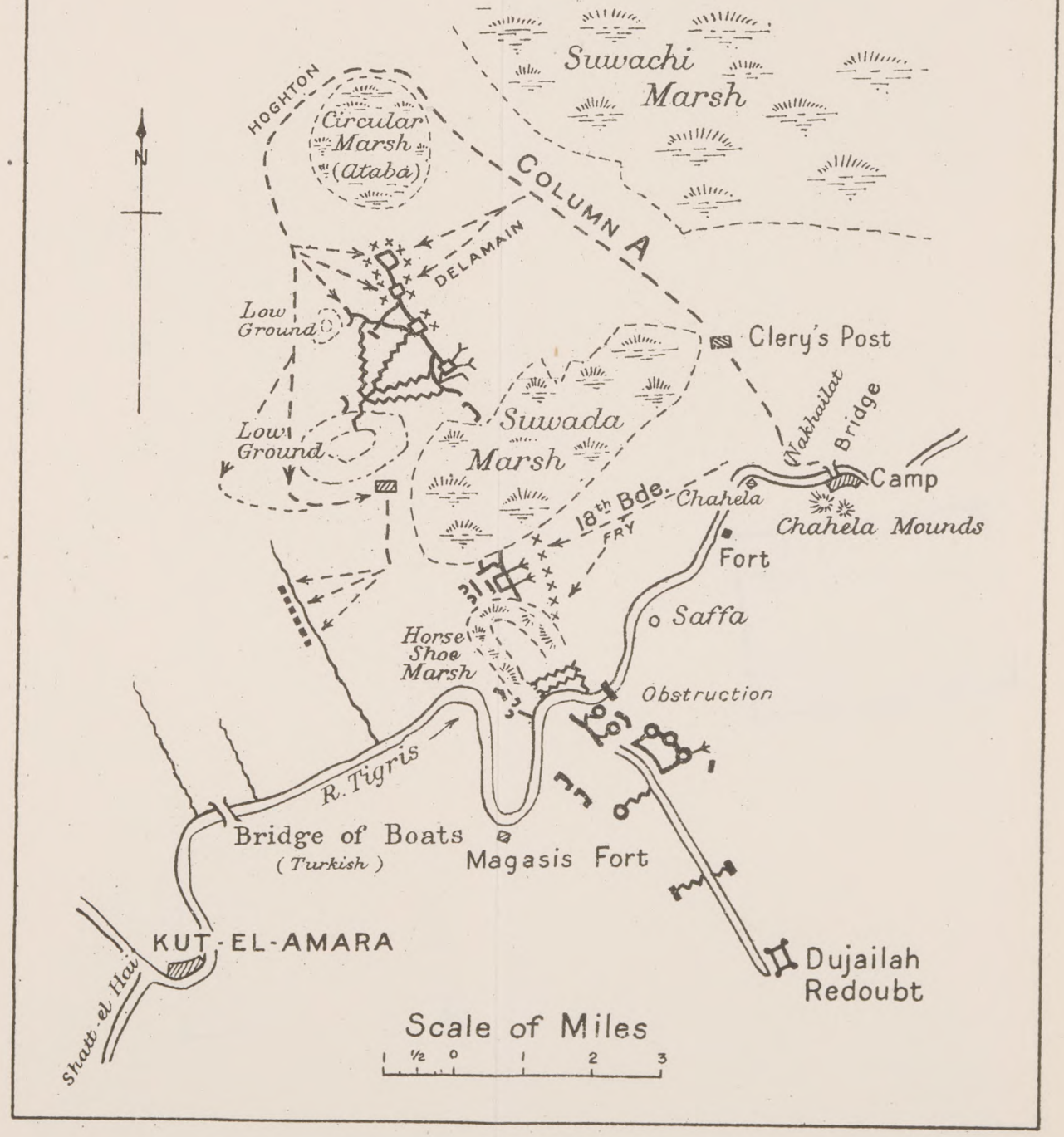
October 2nd.—Half the Battalion is to march to Kut and camp on the north of the town, while the other half, with headquarters, machine-guns, mule-cart transport, and one section of guns (under Reynolds), is to cross the bridge to the other bank of the river, and complete the clearing up of the battlefield on that side.

We had great difficulty in crossing the bridge below Kut, which was very rotten even for a Turkish bridge. The medical cart, with its mules, went through, after which all transport was man-handled

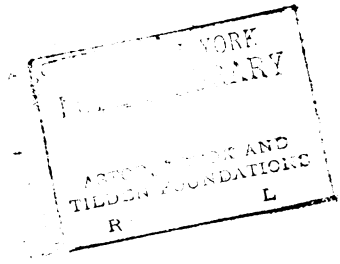
Digitized by Google

MAP 2

ROUGH SKETCH
OF
ES SINN



Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

across. The idea of taking the guns across was given up. After crossing we had an eight-mile march to the position, and the day was very hot; then came further trouble in getting the transport across the maze of communication trenches. At 3.15 p.m. we halted on the river bank and bivouacked, the officers taking up their quarters in an iron barge, which had formed part of the obstruction placed by the Turks in the river.

October 3rd.—The sand-flies last night were awful, and the weather, from extreme cold at night last week, has suddenly turned hot again.

We spent the whole day in clearing up; but we are rather late, as the looting Arabs appear to have been here before us.

I looked over two of the redoubts, which are stronger even than those on the other bank, with very well-concealed sunk wire, staked pits, and mines. The approach to every redoubt is exposed to a cross-fire from adjacent redoubts, and at 200 yards distance there is absolutely nothing visible. Behind this line of redoubts rose the double line of the high-level canal (dry), like two small ranges of hills, about 100 yards apart. Between the two, and behind the second range or bank, were gun-emplacements—some strongly bricked and cemented—also many dug-outs, and extensive and well-made, regular horse-lines. The trenches were well supplied with water by an aqueduct, fed by a large centrifugal pump and engine far in rear. The redoubts either had wells, or could obtain water from the river by means of communication trenches or covered ways. This position extends into the desert continuously for five miles, being bent slightly back on the west, and with its extreme flank resting on a very strong redoubt (Dujailah), some six miles away, which I did not visit. Each of the redoubts which I saw had accommodation for 30 to 50 rifles and one machine-gun emplacement.

October 4th.—At 7 a.m. we started back, and had great difficulty in getting two old brass muzzle-loading guns (which we had found) over the bridge. But the men managed in the end to haul them over, and at 11 a.m. we reached Kut and got back to the remainder of the Regiment. We hear that we shall soon go on, and that the Turks have made good their retreat to Ctesiphon (Sulman Pâk), some 30 miles from Baghdad.

October 5th.—The 18th Brigade, who have gone on, have halted at Aziziyeh,[1] about 50 miles from here, and this morning the

[1] *See* Map No. 1.

Digitized by Google

16th Brigade and all the artillery started off for the same destination. Some Arabs, who had been caught looting the dead, were tried to-day, and two were sentenced to death. It is thought that, after the fight on the 28th, many of the unfortunate wounded were murdered by Arabs.

October 7th.—No definite orders for us, though there is an idea that we may leave to-morrow. The flies here are too awful for words; everything is black with them.

Six guns went out this afternoon and got 20½ brace of sand-grouse.

October 8th.—After many orders and counter-orders we started at 7 a.m. We have got very little transport, and such as we have seems to be in an awful muddle.

As we went along we passed several signs of the Turkish retreat: corpses of horses, camels, and of a few men. There were also abandoned wagons, and in one place several field-gun shells, which seemed about 13-lb., and their bases were marked "Karlsruhe, 1913."

We marched until noon, very hot, and the dust awful. A dozen men fell out. We heard, soon after reaching our camping-ground on the river bank, that Quartermaster-Sergeant White, 20 convalescent men, the Orderly Room Staff, as well as all the sweepers and bheesties, who were to have travelled up on the "Mejedieh," had been turned off at the last moment and left behind at Kut.

October 9th.—Last night we were told that we had 20 miles to march to-day, as we were urgently needed at Aziziyeh. Marched from 5.30 a.m. to 9.30 a.m., when we halted, off-loaded, and rested; but the sun is very hot again now. We started again at 1 p.m., and marched till 7.45 p.m.—an awful trek. We were supposed to reach our bivouac at 5 p.m., but, in trying a short cut, left the road, lost our bearings, and went wandering off into the night, as it seemed for ever. We knew that we had to strike the river again, and continually thought that we saw it, only to find time after time that it was a mirage, or, later on, moonlight on a pale patch of sand. The men were very cheery, and marched splendidly until dark, but the last six miles or so was too much for them. Many had to fall out, some of whom did not turn up at all to-night. When, at last, we reached the camping-ground, the ships had not come in, and there was no food until late, when most of the men were too tired to eat. We hear that we have got to push on to Aziziyeh (25 miles) to-morrow,

Digitized by Google

as the 16th and 18th Brigades are going to attack next day, and will not wait for us.

October 10th.—The men who fell out yesterday were all in this morning. Several of them were complaining of stiff legs or indigestion, which we discovered later were the first symptons of beri-beri.

We got away at 6 a.m., everyone looking very done up, and my Machine-gun Section short-handed. Marched until 1 p.m.; frightfully hot. We now heard that we were within a mile of the river. This was quite wrong, and meant that we had lost direction again—but anything for water.

We halted by the river for an hour and a half; tea was made for the men, and did them a lot of good; and the animals were watered. We marched again at 2.30 p.m., luckily over good hard desert and decent going; but a good many men fell out, complaining of pains in the stomach and dysentery. At 5.30 p.m., when we were beginning to wonder if we should ever arrive, we saw some carts coming towards us, and found that they had been sent out from Aziziyeh to bring us water, and to pick up men who had to fall out. Each cart had a large canvas *chagal*, and one was told off to each company, whose men formed up to receive half a cup each. We were told that two more miles would take us into camp, and the men marched off singing. Soon, however, they began to curse the man who had told them that it was only two miles, for, halting continually, we stumbled along another five miles in the dark.

When at last we did get in, we made inquiries about to-morrow's attack. No one knew anything about it, or had ever heard it mentioned. Evidently the whole story told to us last night was a put-up job to make the men march, which has made us all very sick, as of course the men would have done it without being told that cock-and-bull story.

I got the mules watered, picketed, and fed, then fed myself; and then Wynter, Mellor, and I scratched holes in the dust, covered ourselves with every available coat, and, lying down in a bunch, slept like logs.

October 11th.—We are a filthy-looking crowd this morning, everybody caked with dust, and looking sleepy and stiff. There was a sharp attack by Arabs on the camp of the 110th, on the other side of the river, last night, but not one of us heard a sound. The 110th had 10 casualties, and the Arabs carried off a lot of rifles. The latest news is that we are not going on to Baghdad, but are to

Digitized by Google

clear out some Turks (estimated at 3,000, with guns and cavalry) who are at Kutunia, 7 miles or so from here. This is a dreadful place—open scrub desert—a dust-storm all day long—atmosphere like pea-soup—dysentery rife.

October 12th.—General Townshend came round this evening and told us that he wanted us to make ourselves comfortable and get up all our tents and heavy kit, as no forward movement on a large scale will be made until he has been reinforced from France, and that this will take two or three months, during which time we are to stop here. The Turks are reported to have left Kutunia, and gone back to Zeur, about 12 miles.

October 15th.—Having got leave to go down to Basra to see a dentist and to purchase stores for the Regiment, I left on the "Sumana," on which also General Fry and other officers were travelling.

October 20th.—Arrived at Basra at 9 p.m., having transferred into the "Salimi" at Kut on the 17th. About Kurna we found that the country had undergone an extraordinary change. Where we attacked over the floods last May, *jowari* 12 feet high is now growing luxuriantly, and Norfolk and Tower Hill are quite hidden by the crops.

October 29th.—I remained at Basra until to-day, staying at the R.E. mess (formerly the Turkish Naval Commandant's quarters), and transacted much business. Twelve months of British occupation have done a great deal for this place. There are new roads everywhere, and the old roads clean; new bridges, new quays, electric light and fans, ice, fewer pariah dogs, and other marks of civilization; while small Arab boys, in postman's uniform, dash about on red bicycles.

Embarked 30 packing-cases of stores and 27 large sacks of sugar on board the "Julnar," and left at 5 p.m.

November 5th.—Arrived at Kut, and saw Mundey, who has flown over Ctesiphon, and who showed me some photographs of the position. It looks the same sort of thing as Es Sinn, but stronger.

November 8th.—Left Kut in the "Mejedieh" at 6 a.m. I had had to transfer everything from the "Julnar," which was a most tedious job. The new monitor "Firefly" passed Kut on its way up-river two days ago.

Digitized by Google

November 10th.—Reached Aziziyeh last night, and got up to camp this morning. I found that it had been moved right back from the river, and farther up-stream, behind the village. Colonel Lethbridge has been back with the Regiment for some time.

November 11th.—The 18th Brigade left early for El Kutunia. We are to go shortly.

November 13th.—While I have been away the sickness has been very bad, and has now been diagnosed as beri-beri. Sergeant Stevens died of it, and amongst others Sergeant Badby has had it slightly, but is nearly all right again. It is very hard to keep the Machine-gun Section in working order, with men going sick every day and the gun numbers having to be changed continually. The following order was published to-day :—

"SPECIAL 6TH DIVISIONAL ORDER.

"13TH NOVEMBER 1915.

"Before commencing our next advance, I wish to summarize the work of the brave soldiers of the 6th Division and troops attached, British and Indian, whom I am so proud to have commanded in now two distinct operations. First let me take the Kurna-Amara operations, wherein the mission given to me by Sir John Nixon was to defeat the Turks in position north of Kurna and occupy Amara, 90 miles north—as formidable a mission, I may say, as any General could possibly desire, without considering the nature of the fighting in a flooded country resembling a vast sea, and where the heat was terrible.

"You made short work of the Kurna action, where I calculated on at least two days' hard fighting; and in the pursuit we conquered some 90 miles of territory for Government, and practically destroyed the force of Turks some 6,000 strong, with 13 guns, in addition to taking by the collar a defensive position, the strength of which might well have cost us terrible loss of life, and where victory might well be considered doubtful.

"Our next operations were the advance on Kut-al-Amarah, in which you followed up the Turks under a fierce sun from Amara, some 170 miles along the Tigris.

"The mission given to me was to defeat the Turks, some 10,000 strong, with 30 guns, entrenched in one of the strongest positions I have ever seen, and of the most modern type, astride of the Tigris, some 7 miles down river of Kut-al-Amarah, and of about

Digitized by Google

12 miles in extent. You know what my plan of battle was at Kut-al-Amarah. I designed that wide strategic movement, like the cast of a net, round the enemy's extreme left flank and rear, in order to make the victory a most decisive one, and so end the campaign there on that day; and so it would have happened had not darkness saved the Turks from annihilation. But I would like to tell you that also I was to spare my brave troops from the heavy losses of a frontal attack against such strong defences, and so I hope I was forgiven the thirst and fatigue suffered by the splendid troops of Generals Hoghton and Delamain that day, and the long inaction under a heavy fire of the calm and steadfast men of the 18th Brigade who, as part of my plan, had to contain and pin the enemy down in front, in order that the turning manœuvre would be a success. I went through no anxiety that day, though it seemed so long, for I knew the worth of the men I was commanding. Nurradin Pasha fared in the battle as most Generals do who seek by extensive fortified lines to supply the want of training and hardihood in his troops. Lines may prevail against undisciplined troops and savages, but never when the assailants are the better soldiers. But Nurradin is apparently not satisfied with his first experiment, and wishes to try it again.

"Such is a brief summing-up of our labours since I have commanded you, and you had earned great distinction before I arrived in this country. I think you will all be able hereafter, when you see home again, to say with pride that you belonged to the force in Mesopotamia, for at last the British public are beginning to understand that this country is the key to India—and not Egypt.

"Finally, our general direction is Baghdad, and our principal objective is the bulk of the enemy's forces in the field and to destroy it, and to do this I ask you now to support me again in another effort, all of us united heart and soul in accordance with the greatest of all the principles of war, viz., that of economy of force.

"CHARLES TOWNSHEND, Major-General,
"Commanding 6th Division.

"Camp Aziziyeh."

November 15th.—We are to leave to-morrow. Final preparations completed in a tearing gale and sand-storm.

November 16th.—When we were all ready to march we were told that we could not go till to-morrow. It appears that the barges carrying oil for the ships are aground forty miles down the river.

Digitized by Google

November 17th.—After waiting for orders for some hours, we got off at 1 p.m. and marched to El Kutunia, a Turkish advanced post, which had been evacuated before one of our reconnaissances in force. The 18th Brigade are here. We camped for the night on the left bank of the river. There was some sniping to-night.

November 18th.—We crossed the river by pontoon bridge, and went into bivouac on the right bank. To-day is a day of rest, with leisure to wash and sleep. To-morrow the 17th Brigade is to march up this bank, and the 18th Brigade up the left bank, to attack the Turks at Zeur, their advanced position; that is to say, if they wait for us, which we hardly expect them to do.

November 19th.—At 8 o'clock last night we were told that a large body of the enemy was working down the right bank from Zeur. We were all turned out, and two battalions were sent out to the front, while the Regiment formed up in reserve on the river bank. The men were allowed to lie down, and, later, to remove their equipment.

At 5 a.m. we were pushed out about two miles to the front, where we proceeded to dig like fun until 2.30 p.m., and were then ordered to knock off for dinners—the men's first meal to-day. But at 2.50 p.m. Cock (Brigade-Major) galloped up with orders to fall in and march immediately. Dinners had to be left, and by 3.30 the Brigade moved off, which was pretty smart work. We marched until dark over very bad ground, and then halted, with the Battalion in mass. We thought and hoped that we should stay here for the night, but half an hour later we moved off again in column of route, and marched until 11.30 p.m. No one seemed to know what was happening or where we were going. It was an intensely dark night; as often as not we were off the road, and crashing about through head-high liquorice bushes. Occasionally, when the moon rose, we caught sight of the river, and once we saw some rockets far away to the north. Everyone was too dead beat to talk, and it was extraordinarily silent. Then, at last, we reached the river and got down on to the shore, along which we trudged through soft sand about a foot deep. We could now see lights ahead of us, so we knew that we were getting near home; and at 11.30 p.m. we arrived at Zeur, from which the 16th and 18th Brigades had driven the enemy, after a cavalry skirmish, this morning.

November 20th.—Slept till 6.30 a.m. At 10.30 we moved across the pontoon bridge to the left bank, where camel and donkey transport and A.T. carts were re-distributed. Camels carried the

Digitized by Google

men's blankets, 40 per camel in two rolls; donkeys and cows were loaded with the tools; reserve ammunition in first-line carts; rations, "British-warms," and coats in second-line carts. Marched, at 12.30 p.m., to Lajj, 8 miles, where we camped, washed, and had a quiet sleep.

November 21st.—Everyone looks rested and altogether fitter to-day. Paraded at 10.30 a.m., and marched 1½ miles along the Baghdad road. From here we got our first glimpse of Ctesiphon, but we could not see much, except a pale violet shape, apparently floating over the desert—mirage, as usual.

Started again at 3 p.m., and marched until 6, when we halted. Nothing had happened so far, except one or two of those beastly little land-mines had gone off. At 6.30 p.m. we managed to water the beasts safely—probably a last chance.

Marched at 9 p.m., with orders to shove on and dig ourselves in when at 2,000 yards from the enemy's position, opposite the Arch. Our Brigade is to do the holding attack.

11.30 *p.m.*—I am writing this by the light of a brilliant moon. We have halted, and the original order has been changed. We are told to lie down here until dawn; mules and horses to be picketed. I have been trying to make the native syces muffle their pickets with sand-bags, but they seem to prefer to make a row. It is very cold, but everyone is quite cheery.

BATTLE OF CTESIPHON.[1]

(With the Machine-guns.)

November 22nd.—Fell in at 6 a.m., and marched at 6.20. Heavy guns opened at 7, before sunrise. A gorgeous orange sky.

8.30 *a.m.*—We have halted, and I have the mules in a nullah, under cover, just in rear of S Company (Forrest's). Ctesiphon Arch is 2,500 yards by the range-finders—a wonderful ruin of tremendous size. There has been no sign or sight of the enemy, and, according to map, we ought to be already in their first-line trenches. The map must be wrong.

9 *a.m.*—The guns have ceased fire. We are going to advance in two lines of half-companies in fours. Machine-gun Section to follow in rear of S Company. Q and P Companies in first line; S and R in second line; 100 yards interval, and 450 yards distance.

[1] *See* Sketch Map No. 3.

Digitized by Google

Here the Diary breaks off. Subsequently Lieut. Birch-Reynardson continued it :—

We advanced, for about 1,000 yards, over ground intersected by small nullahs some two or three feet deep. At, I should think, about 9.45 a.m. the enemy made his first sign by firing two groups of three shots each from a machine-gun on our left flank. This appeared to be the curtain-raiser, and soon afterwards shells began to arrive.

The 17th Brigade was quickly deployed, and luckily found some cover in a long ditch running parallel to the enemy's trenches, which were only about 400 yards in front of the Arch, instead of over a mile (according to the aeroplane map). From the ditches in which we were the range to the Arch was 1,200 yards.

Just to the left (S.W.) of the Arch we could see the entanglements in front of a redoubt, and thence a trench appeared to run to some high mounds or banks. Here were two machine-guns, and on the top of the mounds was a tin-roofed blockhouse or observation post.

We remained in this position for about an hour, or perhaps less, replying to the enemy's fire, from which we suffered very few casualties, though his shrapnel fire soon increased in volume and, by degrees, in accuracy. I heard afterwards that our guns could see nothing at this stage, because of a hopeless mirage.

The Brigade now got sudden orders to advance at right angles to its existing position, towards the work on the left of the enemy's position—the "vital point"—in front of which the force detailed for its capture was hung up and in urgent need of reinforcement.

This meant a march right across the enemy's front, at a distance of not more than 1,000 yards. It was an opportunity for the Turks, and they took it. Every available gun, machine-gun, and rifle was turned on to the ground over which the 17th Brigade marched. It was absolutely open and devoid of cover, and, consequently, the losses were very heavy indeed. But the steadiness of the advance was wonderful. The 22nd Punjabis and the 119th Infantry were particularly noticeable in the way in which they went ahead, as if nothing out of the common was happening—and it was trying work, as it was not a case of an exciting charge, but just a march across an open, bullet-swept plain.

Some 200 yards from the enemy's trenches south of V.P. (the "vital point") was a shallow ditch or irrigation channel, and this was reached by the survivors of the Brigade at about 12.30 p.m.

Digitized by Google

I came across Courtis, very badly wounded, and he asked me to take a message to the Colonel; so, leaving Sergeant Badby in charge of my Machine-gun Section, I went up to the firing line, and was hit almost at once. After this I knew very little of what was happening on the actual battlefield.

The Turks commenced to flood our ditch, and the wounded had a thin time of it, trying to keep their heads below the low bank and their mouths above water. Those who were badly wounded would have drowned had they not been held up. Nearly everyone who showed his head over the edge of the bank here was hit by a sniper, and soon there were very few unwounded men in this part. Those who could still use their rifles had little ammunition left, so things did not look too bright.

Luckily the enemy was not giving us any shrapnel, otherwise we should have had a bad time, as the ditch was wide, and only some 2½ feet deep. A howitzer was dropping heavy H.E. shells fifty yards beyond us, making the ground shake, and sending up great columns of dark green smoke; but we were again fortunate, in that the wind was the other way. How long we lay here I do not know, but some time in the afternoon the " vital point " and the redoubts opposite to us were captured, and we could at last be taken from the water, which was icy cold and by now red with blood.

About sixty of us were laid out on the edge of the ditch, and our first field-dressings were put on. One good Samaritan chopped up an emergency ration and boiled some cocoa, which was very welcome to us after lying in the cold water. We were all shivering and shaking as if we had the ague, and for the first time blessed the warm sun of Mesopotamia. In the distance passed some Turkish prisoners, who willingly parted with some coats for us, and stretcher-bearers brought more coats and a few blankets from the captured trenches.

Night came on, and it became very cold. Some time after dark stretchers were brought, and we were carried to a spot near a dressing-station, and there put into a deep trench. I can remember being lifted out and taken to the dressing-station to have my wound dressed—an unpleasant experience—and then being replaced in the trench. Later, the Padre (Spooner) came along, but after that I can remember little until well on in the next day (November 23rd). It must have been about midday, as the sun was right over the trench, when someone, I think the Padre, gave me some brandy

Digitized by Google

and tinned milk. The next I remember was early in same evening, when the battle seemed to be coming nearer again.

I heard a voice above the trench give orders for all wounded who could walk to get back. Carts, the voice said, were coming for us non-starters. The sounds of strife now began to get unpleasantly near, shrapnel burst close to our trench, and bullets came bouncing in. Suddenly there was a sound of galloping horses, and we heard shouts of *Dushman ata* ("the enemy is coming"). The shouts came from a few sowars—lost sheep without a shepherd—galloping back with the funks on board. Unfortunately, the transport carts for us had just arrived, and these the fugitive sowars successfully panicked. There were sounds of jolting and bumping, and the creaking of wheels, which gradually faded away in the distance. Then a voice said, "And what about these in the trench, sir?" And the reply came, "Oh, we can't move them now that those —— carts have gone; they'll have to stay."

So we, six of us, in the trench stayed, and a doctor and the Padre with us. I remember I was quite awake now. There was a tremendous rifle-fire from in front, and bullets were whizzing over the trench and thudding into the parapet—evidently a determined counter-attack going on. The Padre was busy making a white flag, in case it should be wanted, for there was nothing else for it, as we were all helpless cases. When he had finished that, he came and spoke to each of us, and then proceeded to stand on the parapet under heavy fire, and give us the news, just as if he were on the stand of a race-meeting, and we down in the crowd below. The last piece of news which I remember was: "They're 300 yards away, but it's all right—we're giving them h-ll!"

They got no farther. By now it was almost dark—the sky deep blue, and the stars looking very large and yellow. Suddenly, against the blue of the sky, appeared a shadow. It seemed to hang on the edge of the trench for ages, and then rolled down almost on the top of me, and became a Turk. I was not at all sure what he meant to do next, but as he came towards me I asked him what he wanted. He said that he was wounded and wanted water. I told him that I had none, but that he had better stay in the trench. However, he thought not, and disappeared again into the night. I hope he got his drink.

The rest of the night is but a dim recollection of star-shells and the crash of a battery firing close by, with an almost constant rattle of musketry.

Digitized by Google

When we awoke in the morning (24th November) everything was still, and we were told that we were to be moved. Soon, just as the sun rose, at about 7.15, the first carts arrived, and we were put into them. But we had to wait what seemed an interminable age until other carts were collected from the next Field Ambulance, so that we could all be formed up together. A few spent bullets moaned plaintively through the air as we waited. The only transport available consisted of A.T. carts, which have no springs, and are nothing more than iron frames on wheels, drawn by two ponies or mules. I was on a stretcher at the bottom of a cart, and two soldiers, one with a head wound and the other with a shattered ankle, were squeezed in beside me, hanging on as best they could. At last we got off. The desert surface here was like a ploughed field, and as hard as concrete. Over this we crashed and bumped for four hours in our springless carts; every few hundred yards a ditch had to be crossed, when the iron bottom of the cart seemed to rise up and hit one a smashing blow in the back; and, in addition, the ponies every now and then broke into a bucketing trot.

The Padre led us, and if it had not been for him we should have been much longer reaching Lajj, where the ships were. All through the last three days he had been with us, looking after us, feeding us, and reassuring us, with his cheeriness and coolness, when things looked bad, and showing absolute disregard for his own safety all along; his was a splendid example. I am glad to say that he was afterwards awarded the Military Cross.

At last, in the afternoon, we arrived at Lajj, and were embarked on the "Blosse Lynch" for down-river. We thought that we should be at Basra anyhow in a week, and we felt better for the thought. Lucky is it sometimes that we cannot foreknow the future!

The boat was crammed with wounded, and we lay like sardines up on the deck from stem to stern; there were some straw mattresses, but not enough to go round, and the deck was mightily hard for those without them. On the morning of the 25th we moved into the stream, two barges (also full of wounded) were lashed alongside, and then we made a start. That afternoon, when near Aziziyeh, we had to stop, as some paddle-blades were broken by a choppy cross sea, and we lay to all night. It rained hard, and soon water was pouring through the single awning, swamping the deck on which we lay, and wetting all the blankets. This was most unfortunate, as there was no possibility of drying them until next day, and there were no spare ones. On the afternoon of the 26th we arrived at

Digitized by Google

Kut, and that night were transferred to the "P. 2," as the "Blosse Lynch," being a shallow-draught boat, was wanted up-stream again. On the "P. 2" there were more stretchers, and the worst cases could now be put on these, which was a very great change for the better after the hard deck.

We began now to learn something of our casualties, which had been heavy. Most of the Indian regiments had only two or three British officers left. The three British regiments had lost about two-thirds of their numbers. Of the officers with the 43rd, Hyde, Forrest, Davenport, Courtis, Wynter, Kearsley, and Hind were killed, while Foljambe, Murphy, Webber, Hazell, Wilson, and myself were wounded. Of other ranks barely 160 were left on the morning of the 23rd November out of about 600.

Early on the 27th we started off down river, but in the afternoon, when just short of Sheikh Saad, two friendly Arabs came off in a canoe, and warned us to proceed no farther, as there was a large force of Arabs waiting for us round the corner. These we soon saw, and as we were without any form of protection or escort, it was thought advisable to turn back; so back we plugged to Kut, and arrived there next day, the 28th. On the morning of the 29th we started again, this time as part of a big convoy of ships, preceded by H.M.S. "Butterfly," a new monitor, and also provided with a small escort of Indian troops. It was thought that we should get through without trouble, but, in case of accidents, our kit-bags, valises, etc., were piled up on the port side, to serve as a protection to the stretcher cases; walking cases were to go down into the iron barges on either side.

Our luck was clean out. Just before we reached the dangerous bend a *shimal* sprang up, and blew the monitor on to the bank. All the ships behind were held up, and soon we were all aground. This happened at about 12 noon, and at 1 p.m. the Arabs came. They opened fire at a range of some 900 yards, and until 5 p.m. we were sniped without intermission. The escort landed and went out to keep the Arabs back, but there was none too much ammunition, and the monitor was too close into the bank to use her 4-inch gun, though her 6-pounder and a machine-gun were able to keep down the enemy's fire. On our ship we had one man killed and five wounded, and I do not know how the other ships fared. It was not very pleasant lying behind our parapet of kit-bags (probably not bullet-proof) wondering what would happen next, and what we should do if the Arabs got on board—for we were close up against

Digitized by Google

the bank. At last, just before dark, the monitor got off, and dispersed the Arabs with her 4-inch gun; but they could be seen collecting again a little farther down. The channel in front of us was difficult, and it was evident that we could not stay where we were. With feelings almost of despair we heard that we were to return again to Kut.

We arrived there on the morning of the 30th November, and did not make a fresh start until the 2nd December. In the meanwhile half a battalion of infantry and a section of mountain guns had been sent down to deal with the Arabs; and this time we got through safely, although we stuck on the mud just below Sheikh Saad, and had to stop for the night. It seemed as if our journey would never end.

There were only two doctors, an assistant surgeon, a British orderly, and four native sweepers to deal with all the cases on the ship and two barges. How many cases there were I do not know, but I do know that, although the doctors worked all day and most of the night, never seeming to eat and hardly ever to sleep, the worst cases could, as a rule, be dressed only every other day. The doctors were perfectly wonderful, contending with every difficulty, working continuously on a crowded deck, without any of the conveniences of a hospital ship, and doing everything possible for our comfort. Fortunately we had been able to buy at Kut chickens, eggs, and some vegetables, on which we depended to help out the ration bully-beef—now quite uneatable to many. Bread ran short before we reached Amara, and those who could manage to do so ate biscuit.

On the afternoon of the 3rd we ran hard aground below Ali-al-Gharbi, and stuck there until next morning, when we succeeded in getting off, and arrived at Amara that night. Here all the slighter cases were to have been evacuated, but the hospital accommodation was found to be hopelessly inadequate, and only those in need of an immediate operation were removed.

We started again on the afternoon of the 5th, and, though losing a lot of time continually running aground, we managed to get off every time, and by the morning of the 6th we were just above Kurna, with the prospect of reaching Basra that night. But our engines now had an accident, and, after the necessary repairs had been effected, we could proceed only at half speed, and it was 4 p.m. on the 7th when at long last we got to Basra.

After some delay we were transferred to barges, but these did

Digitized by Google

not leave the ship until 7 p.m., and then, owing to a mistake on someone's part, our barge was towed to the bank near the hospital, where, for a space of some two hours, Arab coolies proceeded, across our prostrate and very weary forms, to unload medical stores from the barge.

But in the end came paradise! At 10 p.m. we were alongside the hospital ship "Varela," and by 10.30 we found ourselves in brightly-lit and clean wards, with swing cots, white sheets, electric fans, and gentle nurses. We knew that at last all was well, and that we were awake in heaven, after fifteen days of the very worst nightmare.

Next morning by 6 a.m. we had up-anchored, and by 11 were at the mouth of the river, heading our course for India. Mesopotamia dropped below the skyline and became a thing of the past, and we were not sorry to say good-bye. We had sampled all its seasons and five hundred miles of its marshes and plains. Most of us agreed with somebody's remark: "Well, it was five hundred miles too much." [1]

Company-Sergeant-Major Shilcock gives the following description of the Battle of Ctesiphon, in which he took part :—

We left bivouac before daylight, and just after dawn commenced digging. Whilst we were digging our trenches our 5-inch and 4-inch batteries and a monitor on the river were bombarding the enemy's position; but, as no reply came, we concluded that he had retired on Baghdad. Soon, however, we heard heavy rifle and artillery fire a long way to our right, which told us that our other brigades were in action, and through our glasses we could see parties of Turks moving about in their positions.

When the G.O.C. 17th Brigade came up he gave orders to the effect that, instead of remaining where we were, we were to go up to assist the others. The 43rd advanced in two lines, P and Q in the front line, and R and S in support. When we had advanced a short distance towards the great Ruin, we were ordered to change direction and move along the enemy's front, the objective being a large redoubt.

[1] On the 14th December Captain Birch-Reynardson arrived at Colaba Hospital, Bombay, where he remained for a fortnight, and was then conveyed to England in the hospital ship "Madras." He was promoted Captain, 25th November 1915.—ED.

Digitized by Google

All grass in front of the position had been burnt, except a patch here and there, which was used by the enemy as a range mark; posts also had been set up for the same purpose. When we were advancing over this burnt ground our khaki uniforms showed up very plainly, and, when near any of the above-mentioned marks, our casualties were heavy.

The fighting was very severe, but eventually we turned the enemy out and captured his position.

During the action we took 11 guns, 8 in one place and 3 in another. These guns were taken and retaken by us three times, and finally, having no horses to remove them, they were abandoned, after we had destroyed the breech of each.

The Turks retired, leaving a large number of prisoners in our hands, but in the afternoon, having been reinforced from Baghdad by about 2½ Divisions, they attacked about 4 p.m., and tried to drive us out. They did not succeed in doing so, and they lost very heavily, reports stating that they had about 5,000 casualties.

At Roll-call that evening 137 of the 43rd answered their names. About 600 went into action. All our wounded were got to the river on the 24th, when General Townshend retired, and, after very heavy fighting, arrived at Kut-el-Amara on the 3rd December.[1]

The following notes on the British force and on the Turkish position at Ctesiphon[2] were put together afterwards by Captain Birch-Reynardson :—

At the time of the advance on Ctesiphon there were in Mesopotamia still only the two Divisions, viz. : the 6th and the 12th, and it is interesting to note that the 12th Division (less the 30th Infantry Brigade, which was with the 6th Division) was guarding the lines of communication and the whole country in rear of us, having detachments at Ahwaz (Persia) on the right, at Basra in the centre to Nasiriyeh (Euphrates) on the left, and up-stream (Tigris) at Kurna, Kalaat Salih, Amara, Ali-al-Gharbi, Sannaiyat, Kut, and Aziziyeh. It is also noteworthy that the artillery of the 12th Division consisted of no more than the 23rd and 30th Mountain Batteries and an Indian Volunteer Battery of old 15-pounders. Now the distance from Basra to Ahwaz, by the Karun River, is 150 miles; to Nasiriyeh, by the Shatt-el-Arab and Euphrates, 135 miles; and to Aziziyeh, by the Tigris, 400 miles.

[1] C.-S.-M. Shilcock was wounded at Ctesiphon and invalided to England. He did not, therefore, take part in the retirement to Kut. [2] *See* Sketch Map No. 3.

Digitized by Google

The 6th Division consisted of the same units as had fought at Es Sinn, their casualties having been made good by drafts. The 30th Brigade (12th Division) was now up to strength; "S" Battery, R.H.A., had joined the Cavalry Brigade, while the Naval Flotilla had been increased by the new monitor "Firefly," put together at Abadan, and carrying a 4-inch, a 6-pounder, and a machine-gun. This was the force which advanced on Ctesiphon.

As regards the Turks opposed to us: We knew for certain that they numbered 7,000, with about 40 guns, including, report said, three batteries of Krupp Q.F. and some heavy guns; but before the battle, probably by November 18th, unknown to us, they had been very heavily reinforced, and were able to meet our attack with probably as many as four Divisions, if not even six. Their position at Ctesiphon was, as at Es Sinn, astride the river, and though resembling it in some ways, it was decidedly stronger and had been prepared for a long time. It was also a fairly good natural position, and, unlike the Es Sinn lines, did not depend on the vagaries of temporary floods for the protection of its flanks. But in rear of it flowed the Diala River, provided with only two bridges, and in this fact seemed to lie our chance of a haul.

Briefly, the position may be described as follows: The Tigris hereabouts flows approximately north and south, but having, as the map shows, three considerable loops, which played an important part in the Turkish plans. The first loop is a bend to the south-west two miles deep, and within it, on the left bank, stands the great ruin of Ctesiphon Arch, with the enemy's first line just in front of it. The second bend runs north-east, and then curls, by the west, to north at the third bend, where there is an almost hair-pin bend due east. At this last bend is the confluence of the Tigris and the Diala. Between the first and the third bend the distance is twelve miles as the crow flies, and twenty-five by the river's course.

On the left bank the enemy's first line extended from the bottom of loop 1 for about six miles in a north-easterly direction, and consisted of trenches with redoubts at close intervals, the left flank resting on high ground, whereon was erected a large and strongly-fortified redoubt—the Vital Point. On this (left) bank were some 22 gun-emplacements, of which 12 were round about the large redoubt on the left flank. Eight guns were about the centre of the position, and one was just south-west of the Arch, which itself stood a little in rear of and about three-fourths of the way down the line.

Digitized by Google

A mile in rear of the first line was the second line, its right resting on the river, and its left almost directly behind the large redoubt, while gun-emplacements had been prepared slightly in rear of the left flank of the second line. Half a mile farther in rear, at the beginning of loop 2, was a bridge across the river.

On the right bank the ground was tremendously broken and cracked, being, in fact, dry, sun-baked marsh, and was further cut up by mounds and old canals, running out into the desert towards the south. Here there appeared to be 14 guns, and great use had been made of the broken ground, every canal and mound having been put into a state of defence. There was no regular line of redoubts, but the defences extended for about four miles towards the south, with the right flank bent back towards the west. As a matter of fact the enemy knew quite well that he had little to fear on this side of the river, as the ground was so cracked and fissured as to be impassable. The second line on this bank was more advanced than on the left bank, and consisted of entrenchments on the slopes of long water-cuts, running westward into the desert for about four miles. There were also gun-emplacements, but these were probably alternative positions.

The enemy's next line was right away back on the far bank of the Diala River, which, as I have already mentioned, was bridged at two points—close to its junction with the Tigris, and a mile and a half farther up-stream. Each of these bridges was covered by trenches in rear, as was also a ford across the Diala two miles or so higher up; but it was doubtful if this ford was passable.

The line of retreat was evidently along the left bank of the Tigris and across the Diala by the two bridges and the ford, the enemy troops on the right bank probably being intended to cross to the left bank by the Tigris bridge, although there did exist a rough track all along the right bank to what appeared to be an entrenched high-level canal. The main caravan route ran along a ridge two miles or so beyond the left of the enemy's position, and crossed the Diala by the lower bridge, the distance from which to Baghdad is 23 miles.

The above description of the position is not, of course, from a personal view of the ground, but, from what could be made out before the battle, from the official maps which had been compiled from aircraft reports and photographs. The description may not be accurate, but it contains all that we knew of the position when we advanced to the attack.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

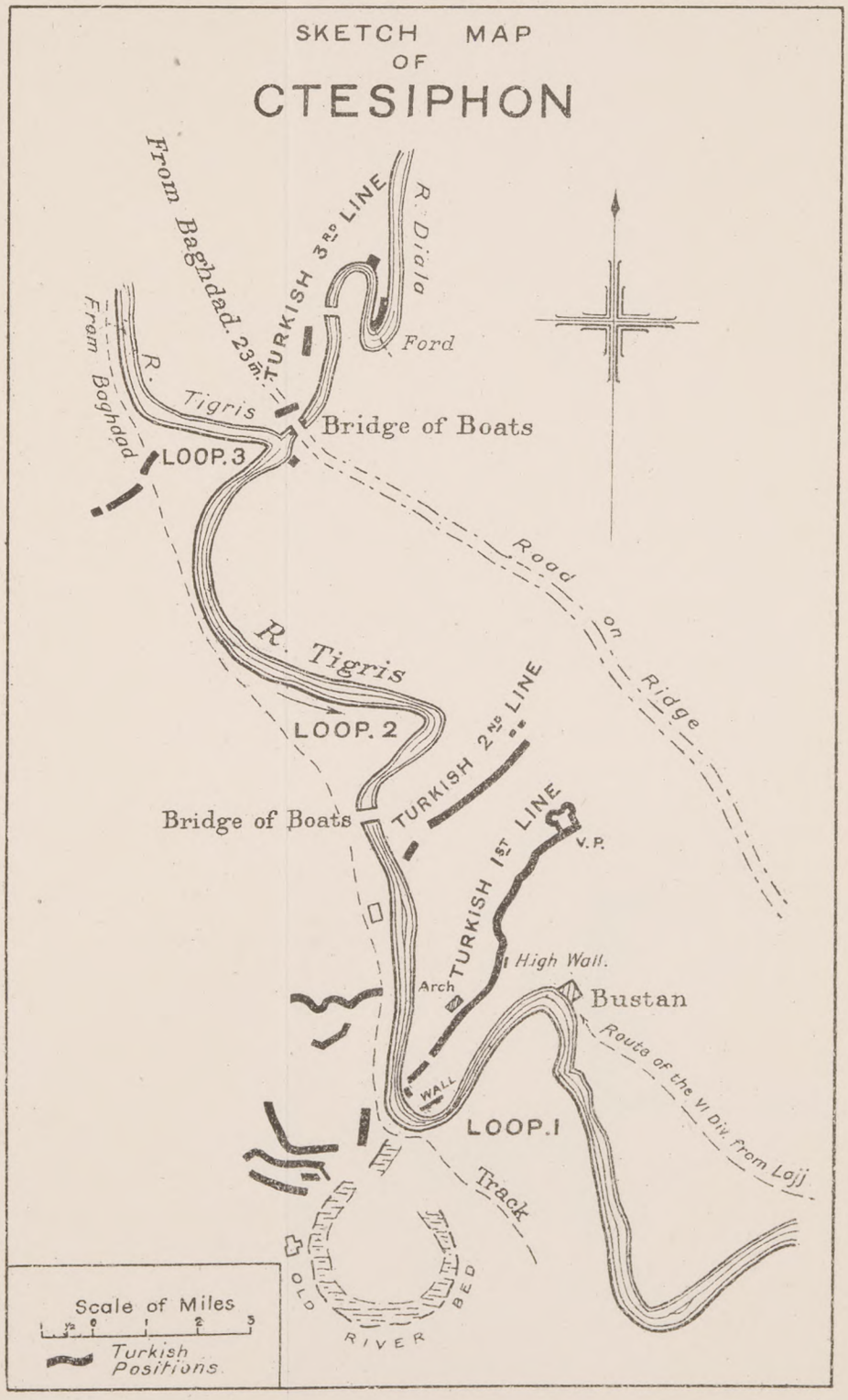
With regard to the plan of operations: As at Es Sinn, our force was divided into three columns; the main attack to be pushed in against the large redoubt (Vital Point), on the enemy's left flank, by the 16th Brigade and two battalions of the 30th Brigade; the 18th Brigade, on their right, was to make a turning attack; and on the extreme left the 17th Brigade was to deliver a holding attack against the enemy's right (on the left bank), opposite the Arch; while the Cavalry Brigade, with a battalion of the 30th Brigade in carts, was to make a wide turning movement round and behind the left of the position, with the object of cutting off the enemy's retreat across the Diala. The right bank was to be left alone. This is a brief outline of the scheme; but, owing to the fortunes of war, by which I was prevented from seeing much of the fight, my account of it is perforce rather vague.[1]

There is one matter to which I have not referred—the Arch as an enemy observation post. How far or how much the Turks could see from its top I cannot say, but it must have been invaluable to them for observing our approach and dispositions on the morning of the attack. Bets were made as to whether our heavy batteries would knock it endways, but they refrained, and the Ctesiphon Ruins still stand, though, perhaps, we paid a somewhat high price for their preservation.

[1] An officer of the Regiment present at the battle, on the Staff, writes: "The main attack got in, but, instead of swinging round to clear the enemy trenches facing the 17th Brigade, they went on in pursuit of the fugitive Turks, and thus came up against the enemy second line. The 17th Brigade were unable to get through unaided, so were brought round to the Vital Point and taken on to reinforce the 16th and 30th Brigades. But their losses had been already so heavy that the numbers the Brigade could bring into the fight were less than the strength of a battalion."

In Kut and Captivity, by Major E. W. C. Sandes, M.C., R.E., contains a full description of the Battle of Ctesiphon.—ED.

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R

Digitized by Google

THE WITHDRAWAL FROM CTESIPHON.

(*See Map No.* 1.)

Lajj offered no possibilities for defensive action even for a strong force. The 6th Division had lost upwards of 4,000 out of a total of 11,000 in the battle of Ctesiphon, and there was no hope of receiving immediate reinforcements. General Townshend, therefore, decided to withdraw farther down the river, and early on the 28th November the Division reached Aziziyeh unmolested, save for some Arab sniping during the night march. It was now settled that the retreat should continue as far as Kut-el-Amara, the situation of which place in a loop of the river had many advantages as a halting-place for the weary troops until reinforcements should arrive. So the retreat was continued from Aziziyeh, the 30th Brigade [1] having been sent on ahead to Kut. The pursuing Turks now drew nearer, and soon our rearguards were heavily engaged. Fierce fighting took place on the 30th November and 1st December, and the 30th Brigade had to be recalled to relieve the pressure. These matters will be fully dealt with in the accounts of eye-witnesses which follow; suffice it to say here that Townshend extricated his force, and, after arduous marching, brought it into Kut on the 3rd December, with a loss during the retirement of barely 400 of all ranks.

Siege of Kut-el-Amara.

The Turkish prisoners taken at Ctesiphon, as well as our wounded, had been evacuated to Basra, and on the 5th December the Cavalry Brigade and the transport animals were sent down to Ali-al-Gharbi. Aware that

[1] The 30th Brigade belonged to the 12th Division, but was attached to the 6th Division for the Ctesiphon operations, and remained with it during the Siege of Kut.

Digitized by Google

he could expect no relief until fresh troops should arrive from overseas, and aware also that the Turks, in increased numbers, were hemming him in, Townshend prepared to stand a siege. The place had practically no defences, for although during the absence of the 6th Division up river a scheme of defence was mooted, for one reason or another little or nothing was done. There had been built a so-called fort consisting of mud walls, useless against artillery, and three or four equally useless block-houses, joined by a barbed-wire cattle fence, stretching across the neck of the river's loop. All this had to be altered, and henceforward strenuous digging went on day and night. Fortunately the enemy gave us time, for though he drew gradually nearer on the north, he did not force an attack. By the 7th December, however, Kut was completely invested, and from that time only wireless messages told the outside world what was happening to the besieged garrison. From these it was learned that, on the 8th December, Nur-ud-Din went through the formality of calling on General Townshend to surrender; on the 9th drove in the British detached post on the right bank of the river, and then, for several days, bombarded Kut from all sides, and pushed infantry attacks against the northern defences, to be repulsed with heavy losses on each occasion. After the 12th December the enemy abandoned these costly attacks, and settled down to a bombardment and sapping operations, the particular objective being the Fort at the north-east corner of the defensive line. Between the 14th and 18th successful sorties were made by the garrison, and it was not until the night of the 23rd/24th December that the Turks again made any strenuous effort to renew the assault.

On that night and the following day the Fort was subjected to heavy concentrated fire, with the result

Digitized by Google

that the parapet was breached, and the Turks effected an entry. The success, however, was only momentary, for a counter-attack immediately ejected them, and they left behind them some 200 dead. Not content with this rebuff, the enemy returned to the attack a little later, and at midnight (24th/25th) again entered the Fort. "The enemy," said General Townshend, in his wireless report, "effected a lodgment in the northern bastion, were ejected, came on again, and occupied the bastion. The garrison (Oxford Light Infantry and 103rd Mahrattas) held on to an entrenchment, and were reinforced by the 48th Pioneers and the Norfolk Regiment. The enemy vacated the bastion on Christmas morning, and retired into trenches from 400 to 900 yards in the rear, although the attack had been made from trenches only about 100 yards from the breach. The rest of Christmas Day passed quietly. The fort garrison, in excellent spirits, reoccupied the bastion. The enemy's casualties estimated at about 700, our own at 190 killed and wounded."

This was the last attack made on Kut, for Nur-ud-Din, assured by the German Marshal, Von der Goltz, of the impossibility of the garrison breaking out, left sufficient troops to contain it, and on the 28th December commenced moving strong forces down to Sheikh Saad, in order to frustrate any attempt on the part of the British to relieve the beleaguered garrison.

During the four long months which followed the "gallant 6th Division," locked up securely, withstood with patience and resolution all the rigours of a siege—wondering often if the floods would prove a greater enemy than the Turks, yet hoping always that relief would come at any moment. Time after time were they disappointed, for the Turks, reinforced frequently, beat back every attempt of the relieving force to hew its

Digitized by Google

way through, until at the end of April 1916 Kut was starved into surrender, and the 6th Division made prisoners of war.

The following description of the retirement from Ctesiphon and the Siege of Kut-el-Amara was written in 1916, after his exchange as a prisoner of war, by Lieut. G. L. Heawood, 2/4th Wiltshire Regiment, who was attached to the 1st Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire Light Infantry, and commanded Q Company from the 24th November 1915 until the surrender of Kut. We give his account first, because the time at which it was written down was nearest to the events recorded. The other accounts, also written from memory, were put together at somewhat later times.

Lieut. Heawood's Narrative.

On the evening of the 23rd November[1] the British force bivouacked at a spot about the centre of what had been the Turkish first line. The spot was called High Wall, from the fact that there was a high and thick wall there forming three sides of a square, which the Turks had improved into a redoubt. Within the redoubt I remember seeing a very ancient mortar, on which there were some curious figures and letters. Ctesiphon Arch stood out about a mile away, and, with its surroundings, presented a most picturesque scene.

The Turks had retired for at least two miles, but there were still Arab horsemen about, and these began to hover around us as dusk came on. All that night and the following day our wounded (of which there were immense numbers) were collected and evacuated to Lajj, our base camp by the river, some eleven miles in rear.

Early on the morning of the 25th there was some slight trouble with Arabs, but a few shells from our guns dispersed them, and for the rest of the day we settled down to digging additional trenches. From the top of the High Wall one obtained a good view of the

[1] Unfortunately, I was not present during the attack on the 22nd, as I was at Lajj with the boats, and could not get up to Ctesiphon until the battery wagons came down t re-fill.—G. L. H.

Digitized by Google

country to the north, and during the afternoon we could see in the distance large Turkish forces moving away towards the east. So far we subordinates knew nothing of the plans for the future, but at 6 p.m. orders were issued for a move in an hour's time, and all available carts with the force were redistributed to units. Anything that could not be taken with us was to be buried or destroyed, and the usual night-march regulations were to be stringently enforced—absolute silence, and no lights. By 7 p.m. we were on the move, and after some delay in getting units into their proper order of march, we settled down to our trek back to Lajj, where we eventually arrived at about midnight. Then followed the wearisome process of telling off the troops to their respective bivouacs, which was no easy matter in the dark, and was made worse by a heavy downpour of rain. Happily the cooks, who had marched ahead, had tea ready for us, and, better still, the blankets had not been unpacked before the rain came on, so only the outer ones were wet. Warm tea and warm blankets helped us a lot. The Regiment bivouacked for the night about the north-east corner of the camp, but it was well on into the early hours of the morning before we had settled down and posted sentries on our part of the perimeter.

The 26th was spent in what seemed to us rather an aimless sort of way. Schemes for outposts were being got out; boats of wounded sent down the river; our cavalry out keeping touch with the enemy cavalry; but no one quite knew what was going to be done next. Late in the afternoon we took up a line of outposts, my company furnishing three piquets, so we had little rest that night. Next morning, however, we were relieved, and the cavalry and small day-groups of infantry kept a look-out. At midday (27th) we received our orders to march, and the advance parties got off about 2 p.m. We ourselves were among the last to move, and did not clear the camp until quite near dusk. Our cavalry still remained away on our flank and rear, and aeroplanes had been on the move up to the last moment; moreover, to further induce the Turks to believe that we were staying at Lajj, a considerable number of tents were left standing. The night's march was a particularly dreary one, although, as matters turned out, it proved quite successful. Many things contributed to make it dreary: we had not been told how far it was proposed to go; we did not know what excitements there might be in store for us on the way; it was a densely dark night, the wind was getting up, and the clouds of the rainy season gathering round; halts were somewhat frequent; and once or twice we were

Digitized by Google

sniped at by Arabs, in spite of our flank guards. When at last day broke, matters became pleasanter, and at about 8 a.m. (28th) we approached Aziziyeh, where we had spent a month in camp on our way up to Ctesiphon. General Townshend and his Staff stood at the entrance to the camp, and saw every regiment march in, and by 9 a.m. we had settled down in bivouac, and were glad of breakfast. We must have covered a very good 25 miles since leaving Lajj, and the fatigue of the march was immensely increased by the slow pace and the many unavoidable halts.

Most of that day and the following night we rested, and the 29th was spent chiefly in refitting the men and trying to evacuate stores from Aziziyeh. Much stuff had, of course, to be abandoned, as most of the boats had gone down-stream with wounded; but a certain amount was floated down the river, while things that could not be saved were destroyed.

On the morning of the 30th we made a very early start, all arrangements having been made the day before. Apparently there was an impression that we were becoming tolerably safe from a close pursuit; also, what with the fighting at Ctesiphon and the long night march to Aziziyeh, everyone was more or less tired out. Whether these were the reasons or not, I cannot say; but we were given a march of only 8 miles or so, and went into bivouac on the river bank, about a mile beyond some mounds marked on our map as Um-al-Tumman (Umm-ath-Thumma), which soon after came to be known as "Ummle-Tummle," and, finally, as "Rumble-Tumble," but all this was after it had become identified with the most adventurous part of the retirement. Soon after we got in we started digging trenches round the camp, and others in the camp for shelter, and by nightfall everything was looking fairly bright. Ample food had been brought with us from Aziziyeh, and I remember that at "drumming-up" that evening my company had any amount of bacon frying. There was also plenty of straw and hay close to our lines, which were in part of a deserted Arab village; so we had soft beds. Besides all this, we had received reinforcements before leaving Aziziyeh—half a battalion of the West Kents and the 14th Hussars, freshly arrived in the country—a welcome addition to the Indian Cavalry. So far there was every promise of our getting down to Kut by easy stages, but it was not to be, for just as we were settling down to a comfortable night, we heard the boom of a gun, and presently the distant rattle of musketry, followed by the bursting of a shell, evidently fired in our direction. This

Digitized by Google

was the end of our comfortable night, for we were ordered into the trenches forthwith, and though nothing particular happened, spasmodic shelling went on throughout the night. Instead of getting away next day, we had to remain, as some of the steamers had run aground, and the enemy was reported to be coming down the banks in force.

Almost before daylight on the 1st December the transport moved out of camp towards the south. The 17th Brigade had been told off as rearguard, and I found myself extending my company out along the northern part of the camp, and watching masses of our cavalry moving away eastward into the desert in the grey light of early morning. The column was barely clear of the camp before it became evident that we were going to be attacked; bullets began to fall, but not very well aimed, although, as a matter of fact, a man of my company was wounded. After a while things became more lively, and we fell back a little on to our two support companies, who were lining a magnificent nullah about 100 yards behind us. The companies of the other regiments fell back also, and soon the whole of the 43rd were extended along this nullah, covering the retirement of the other units. Meanwhile, our artillery was doing good work in keeping the enemy back, and we remained in position until his skirmishers had come within a few hundred yards, when we withdrew through the 22nd Punjabis, who were lined out ready to cover our withdrawal to another nullah 120 yards or so behind. These alternate retirements continued for some distance across some very open desert, the 22nd Punjabis, with whom we worked all through, behaving splendidly. The other two regiments on our right retired in a similar manner, and, with each retirement, we gradually increased the distance between ourselves and the Turks. The enemy's shrapnel fire was rather trying, as it burst very accurately; but we were remarkably fortunate in casualties, having very few, and being able to get nearly all the wounded back to the field ambulance.

After crossing the open stretch of desert we rejoined our guns, and held on while they limbered up and got away to a fresh position in rear. This manœuvre—first the guns retiring and then ourselves—went on for some little time, and, whenever we had to wait for the guns to get back, the Turks pushed in closer, though we left them behind again whenever we retired. At last we so increased the distance, that it became safe for us to retire in artillery formation, but even then we had occasionally to form a firing line in a nullah. So the day went on, and we were beginning to think that there would

Digitized by Google

be no end to it, when, much to our relief, we were reinforced by the 30th Brigade, who had been sent on two nights before in advance of the main body to Kut, but had been ordered back when the trouble began. They now co-operated with our Brigade, and before very long we reached a bend in the river, where we halted for about half an hour, while our wounded were put on a boat and sent off.

Meanwhile, much had been going on on the river itself, though, of course, unknown to us, fighting our way across country. It appears that the boats remaining at Aziziyeh, in order to accompany us down stream, weighed anchor at daylight. They could not start earlier, owing to the particularly bad sand-banks which infest the reach of the river hereabouts, making rapid progress even by day quite out of the question.[1] As it was, we lost at least two barges here—one an aeroplane barge, and the other an ordnance one. On the latter, most unfortunately for us, were all our regimental orderly-room papers and documents—a most serious loss, which produced endless work after reaching Kut, as all company papers had gone, including pay-sheets, nominal-rolls, etc. The two gunboats seem to have hung on too long, and the "Firefly" was knocked out by a shell through her boiler, after her commander had been wounded. The "Comet" stood by to help her, and took off her crew, but almost immediately ran aground, and soon shared the fate of the "Firefly," though not before the wounded had been transferred to a barge and towed away by a small tug. The crews got ashore and eventually joined our column, amongst them being Colour-Sergeant H. Gibbs, the Machine-gun Sergeant of the "Firefly," who had been lent from the Regiment for this duty, and who afterwards became C.-Q.-M.-S. of Q Company.

However, to return to the river-bend at which we had halted. It was obviously not a spot at which to make a long stay, much as we desired a good rest, and soon we were on the road again, the 17th Brigade still in rear, though now more or less closed up, as our cavalry were protecting our flanks and rear. The track now lay inland across the desert, which, except for scattered low scrub bushes, was bare and dry. All the regimental horses (even the Colonel's) had been sent on with the transport, so everyone had to foot it. Occasionally a transport-cart, or one of the three motor-cars which were in the country, turned back to pick up stragglers;

[1] Coming down from Baghdad subsequently, as a prisoner of war, I made a personal acquaintance with this part of the river, our steamer and the two barges attached to it all sticking fast for twenty-four hours.—G. L. H.

Digitized by Google

for, as the day advanced, it became more and more difficult to keep the men going, in spite of their knowledge that if they dropped out they would have a short shrift from the merciless Arabs. I think that the poor little Gurkhas (belonging to the 30th Brigade) suffered most, as they are not built for forced marching, and they had had more than their share since they had been turned back to help us in the morning. Still, I may say here that they stuck it heroically, and the 30th Brigade lost not a single man taken prisoner all the way back to Kut.

Later, we were encouraged by the announcement that, after seven more miles, we should halt on the river bank, get water, and rest for three hours. Our spirits revived, and, after a rather weary drag, we found ourselves close in to the river again, near a clump of trees. Mules were off-loaded, water-drawers detailed, and equipment loosened. But fate was against us once more. Before the water-parties had reached the stream there was a rattle of musketry, and, though the offenders were only Arabs, our machine-guns were unable to suppress the firing. Our prospect of water and a rest had vanished, and within half an hour we were off again, on another slow night march. The night was black, and it was impossible to see men at any distance in front of one; consequently the pace averaged barely two miles an hour. Obstacles, such as dry nullahs or clumps of low scrub, constantly caused checks to the column, and it was no easy matter to keep even one's company closed up, especially as the men were more or less done up and only half awake. In this way we plodded slowly on until, at about 2 a.m. (2nd December), we saw bivouac fires ahead, and were told that we might lie down, as we were, in column of route. Food was not forthcoming, as the transport was a long way ahead; water, we were promised we should get soon after we started again. It was a bitter night, with a strong north wind, and our cotton uniform did not help us to keep out the cold. Three of us tried to make a fire, but it would not burn, so we gave up the idea, and sat round and dozed—but not for long, for soon the order came to be ready to move in five minutes. The mules were loaded up, and we were off again.

Soon after starting we passed over a brick bridge which spanned a large dry watercourse, and this the sappers blew up as soon as the column was clear, thereby creating a considerable obstacle to the immediate passage of enemy guns. We now moved across the desert in parallel columns of companies, with the cavalry covering our

Digitized by Google

inland flank and our rear. For breakfast the men were allowed to eat their emergency rations, but the promise of water remained only a promise. It grew harder and harder to keep the men going, as they were quite ready to fall out, and prepared to risk everything for a rest and a drink of water; but the N.C.O.'s were magnificent, and it was due to them that we managed to get along. Twice we approached the river and had to go on, but at last we actually halted at a watering-place, and the water-parties got down to the river bank. Even then it was questionable whether we should get our drink, as Arabs began sniping from the opposite bank. Our machine-guns were soon at work, however, sweeping all visible ground, and the 18-pounders unlimbered and gave them a few well-directed shells — things which the Arab dislikes intensely.

We had a rest of nearly three hours, and the men had time to "drum-up," i.e., make cocoa and boil up their emergency rations in their mess-tins. When we got under way again, we had about 9 miles to go to reach the outskirts of Kut, but dusk came on before we saw any signs of the place. The cavalry were drawn in, and we put out flank guards; then carts came out, some to pick up the most footsore of the tired men, and others with food—a somewhat scanty allowance, but most welcome. We waited for some time, and wondered why, until we learned that we would not enter the place until daylight, when we could go right in, and take up our allotted quarters without any trouble.

Quite early next morning (3rd December) we covered the last two miles, and, marching straight to our camping-ground, had a good hot breakfast, rolled ourselves up in our blankets, and slept until midday.

Of the next few weeks the chief memory that remains is one of digging. We seem to have dug all day and every day—in the glare of the sun, in the darkness of the night, and in the moonlight. We commenced these labours on our first afternoon, for although we were not technically surrounded for another three or four days, we prepared for the siege which was known to be inevitable. The ships with our wounded and the Turkish prisoners were all sent away down river, only the "Sumana," with one or two tugs and the 4.7-inch gun barges, remaining at Kut. Then the cavalry (less one squadron) were dispatched down to Ali-al-Gharbi, and on the 7th December we were invested. I will now give a description of Kut and the defences when the siege commenced.

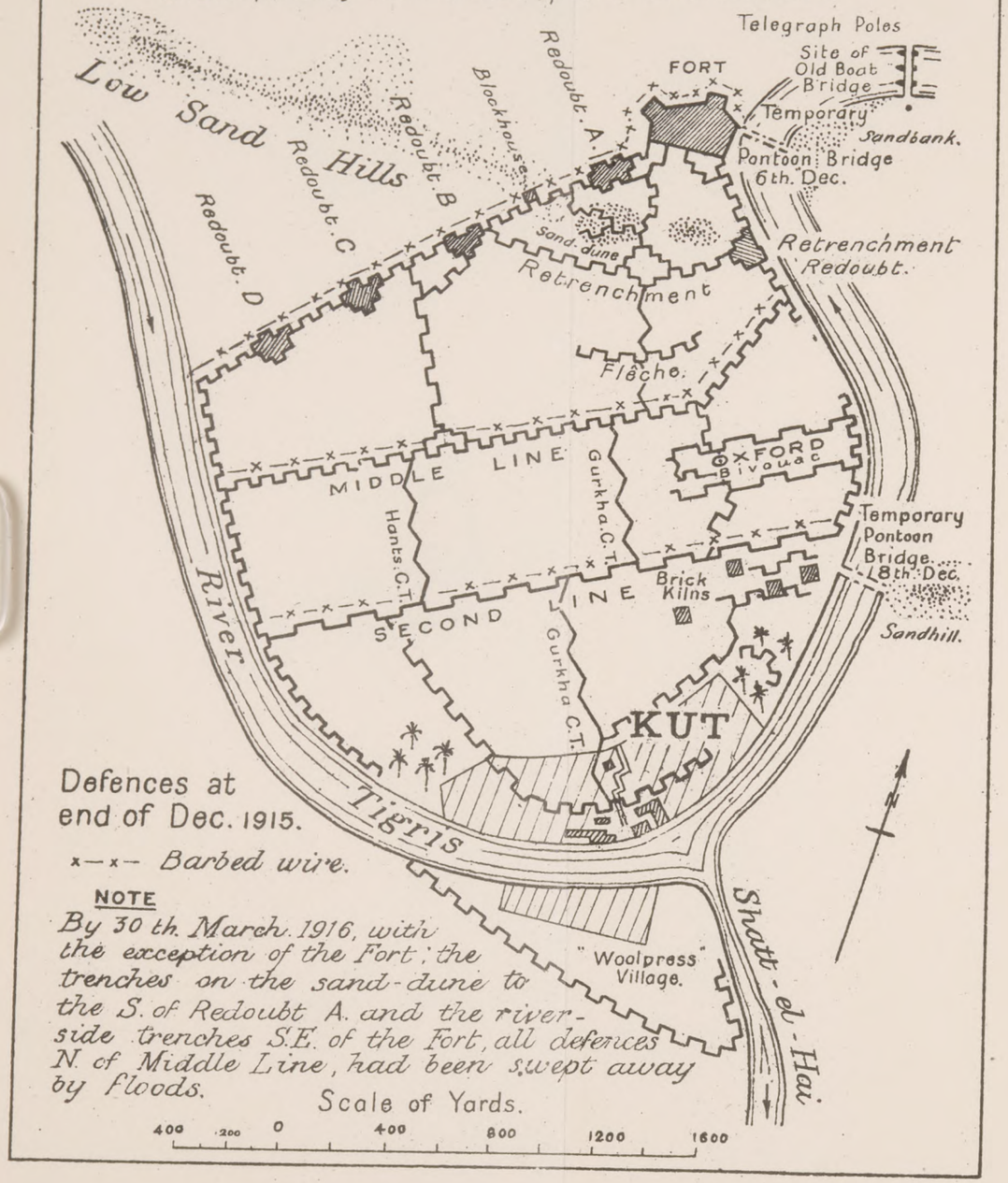
Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R

Digitized by Google

ROUGH PLAN OF THE DEFENCES OF KUT-EL-AMARA

Drawn (mostly from memory) by Lt G.L. Heawood



Digitized by Google

The town lies at the apex or toe of a horse-shoe bend of the river, and contains some very respectable buildings, including a covered-in bazaar, a caravanserai, the Sheikh's house, two mosques (one with a fine minaret), and other large public and private buildings. These are all built of hard, mud bricks, have several stories, and generally a courtyard in the centre, with much woodwork, some of it quaintly carved. There are palm gardens scattered about the town, and large palm groves at either end, while on the outskirts to the north-east are some old brick-kilns, solidly built, in the shape of small, squat towers, with broad and hollow bases. These eventually were much used by the artillery. Opposite the town, and on the other side of the Tigris, the Shatt-el-Hai flows out southwards to the Euphrates, though it dries up in the summer. South-west of Kut, and in the angle formed by the Tigris and the Hai, stands a small village (whose name I never saw in writing, but pronounced something like Woolpress), close to which was an old liquorice factory, with some liquorice stacks a little farther west.

North-east of the Hai, and two or three miles down the right bank of the Tigris, is another small Arab village, with more liquorice stacks, and close by there was a Turkish bridge of boats (by means of which the telegraph wires crossed the river), which, of course, we removed. Across the neck of the river bend (i.e., across the heel of the horse-shoe), a line of five block-houses, with barbed wire in the intervals and a large mud fort at the north-east end, had been put up after our original advance from Kut as a protection against Arab raiders. That was all we found by way of defences when we commenced preparations for the siege. In one respect we were certainly fortunate: large stores of grain were found in and about the town, and, of course, materially lengthened the siege.

The above defence arrangements might have been all very well against Arabs, but as the block-houses had nothing more than loop-holed walls above ground-level, they were quite useless against Turks with artillery; they were demolished, and a line of strong redoubts substituted. The Fort, however, was left standing, as it was so big that to get rid of it would have entailed too much work and a waste of explosives; but it was strengthened considerably with dug-outs, trenches, and overhead cover. As a matter of fact, it proved very useful, though attracting a good deal of the enemy's attention.

G 2
4141534
Digitized by Google

On the 4th December General Townshend issued the following :—

[1] "SPECIAL ORDER. PROCLAMATION TO THE TROOPS.

"I intend to defend Kut-al-Amarah, and not to retire any further; reinforcements are beginning to be sent up from Basra to relieve us. The honour of our Mother Country and the Empire demands that we all work heart and soul in the defence of this place. We must dig in deep, and dig in quickly, and then the enemy's shells will do little damage. We have ample food and ammunition, but Commanding Officers must husband the ammunition, and not throw it away uselessly.

"The way you have managed to retire some 80 or 90 miles under the very noses of the Turks is nothing short of splendid, and speaks eloquently for the courage and discipline of this force."

On our first afternoon the Regiment dug trenches for about four hours along the river bank between the Fort and the brick kilns. That is to say, we entrenched our bivouac ground, and that night we only found river piquets, the remainder of us sleeping in the new trenches, where we were secure from sniping from the opposite bank of the river. Next morning we completed these trenches and added some improvements; but this was not to be our permanent home, for in the evening another regiment relieved us, and we dropped back to two dry watercourses, more or less at right angles to our former trenches. This new line faced north, with its right adjoining the southern end of the previous line, and its left on the track from the town to the Fort. The 63rd Battery R.F.A. dug themselves in on our left. During the early part of this night we improved and made habitable these two parallel watercourses, and subsequently we improved them still further, as they became our headquarters until the end of the siege. In the front line there were three companies, R on the left, P on the right, and Q in the centre, while S Company was in the rear watercourse, or trench, behind Q and P Companies. The trenches were eventually roofed over, as were also the various dug-outs (between the two lines of trenches), such as the mess, dressing-station, orderly-room, quartermaster's stores, men's cookhouse, Company Officers' quarters, etc. Nominally,

[1] This Order and General Townshend's Communiqués (printed further on) were copied into a note-book by an officer in Kut, who was subsequently exchanged as a prisoner of war. He succeeded in bringing his note-book away with him, and, on reaching India, had type-written copies made of the entries.—G. L. H.

Digitized by Google

this was our bivouac ground, and it was the place to which we always came back, though we really seldom occupied it, as we were generally digging, or working, or holding trenches elsewhere. At this time the nights were very cold: bitter north-west winds, with an occasional frost; and the days also were quite chilly.

The next bit of work we commenced was a communication trench to the Fort, while other regiments dug trenches along the barbed wire on the old block-house line. But that was before we were cut off from the outside world. From the 7th December business began in earnest; most movements above ground had to be done at the double, and all digging was got down a rough three feet by night, earth being thrown up on whichever side seemed most exposed, and then completed by day. The Turks started in by drenching the place with shells; I do not know how many hundred they fired at us in these early days; and a little later, when they got closer, they swept all the flat ground with machine-gun fire.

I think it was on the night of the 7th/8th that the enemy made his first attack—in actual fact more like a reconnaissance in force. He made for the Fort and adjacent trenches, and three of our companies went up and manned the trenches which we had originally dug from the Fort southwards along the river. A few men of the Regiment were wounded, but the attack soon dwindled, and we returned to our bivouac quite early in the night. It must have been the next day or the day after that an attempt was made, before the Turks closed in on the east, to establish a bridge-head post on the right bank of the river opposite the brick-kilns. The bridge of boats was towed to this point in the early morning, and a small force (from the 30th Brigade) was put across, while we assisted by lining the river bank just south-east of our bivouac. The attempt, however, was a failure owing to the resistance offered and the fire which the Turks kept up on the bridge. The withdrawal of the party was effected, and the bridge was partly recovered and partly demolished. After this the only post which we had on the right bank of the river was round the place which I write "Woolpress" in trenches across the angle between the Hai and the Tigris.

From this time onwards the Turks were continually advancing and making preliminary attacks on our northern front, while we used to man our trenches, generally for 48 hours in and 24 hours out, though the latter period was usually harder than the former, as it was mainly spent in digging communication trenches and making our portion of the inner defences, or what was known as

Digitized by Google

"Middle Line." The Turks made no actual assault during these early weeks, but they drew closer in, and we had some very anxious nights, especially on one occasion when we got a regular alarm of a night attack and the artillery fired star shells, etc., for some time. During the daytime they occupied themselves with shelling our various defences and the town, sweeping our trenches repeatedly with machine-gun fire, and sniping with the greatest accuracy. It was, I think, on December 11th that poor Brown, who commanded P Company, was killed by a sniper's bullet in the head, and we lost several men in a similar way—happily, all quite instantaneous. But in the very narrowed circle within which we were living, losses like these were felt deeply, and Brown had always been the most lively member of the mess. We suffered also from shrapnel, for the enemy, being all round us, was able to fire into our rear from across the river.

Throughout December (and, indeed, almost up to the bitter end) everyone had the most absolute confidence in a speedy relief. General Townshend was, of course, always extremely, perhaps excessively, optimistic; and I think that even the pessimists could not threaten us with a later date than the end of January. Calculating on what we were told from time to time of the situation, we fully made up our minds that we should be relieved, if not by Christmas Day, at any rate within the following week or so. This particular time of year, we argued, being cold and still dry, was the very best for a force to operate in this country; the 6th Division had succeeded in advancing, even in September, over this very bit of country; our force at Kut was undeniably holding up a considerable enemy force, and thus giving material help to the relief column, even before the time came for us to sally out and join hands with them. In those days no one ever dreamed of our being so reduced in numbers and in strength of body as to make a sally all but impossible. Food and ammunition were then ample, though always regarded as precious and non-renewable. The hospitals, from the fact that a base depôt for medical stores had been established at Kut when we advanced on Ctesiphon, were well supplied; and any drugs, etc., that did run out before the end were replenished by aeroplanes.

As Christmas approached, the Turks kept pushing their trenches nearer on the north, and both they and ourselves became a bit enterprising. We raided their advanced trenches one night, and brought back some Arabs who were digging for them; while just

Digitized by Google

before Christmas their shelling grew more intense. All this pointed to their making a big effort soon, but we buoyed ourselves up with the thought that the relief force could not be very much longer.

On the night of the 23rd/24th there was almost continuous firing, and on the morning of Christmas Eve the enemy delivered an assault on the Fort. The Regiment moved up there and took over one side, but the Turks did not assault again until nightfall. They kept up intermittent shelling, however, during the day, and Naylor (S Company Commander) was wounded in the face by shrapnel. From about dusk they assaulted and bombed all through the night, principally at a point just to the right of Q Company. The Turks managed to obtain a footing in one bastion of the Fort, and against them a hasty barricade, of bhoosa bales, store-tins, flour-bags, and anything that came handy, was run up. The enemy was on one side and our people on the other, and a bombing match went on here during most of the night, all the heavier casualties of Christmas occurring at this spot.

Towards daybreak the Turks gave it up as a bad job, and began to withdraw, when, from where I was, we were able to fire at them as they retired round the bastion. Then came daylight, and we were able to take stock of our position. Turkish dead and seriously wounded lay thick right up to our trenches. We made an attempt to bring them in; but the Turks, from their trenches barely a hundred yards away, opened a heavy rifle-fire on us until we desisted. Our men succeeded in passing out water and food to them, but many died within a few yards of us, without our being able to do anything for them. For some reason the Turks themselves would not succour their wounded, as we saw some of them crawl back and get right on to their parapet, only to remain there for want of a helping hand from their friends. Presumably, they were afraid that we would fire on them if they showed themselves, though, of course, we had no such intention. We lost a number of men killed and wounded, and Mellor (commanding R Company) was seriously wounded in the wrist by a bomb. The few Turks captured were sent down to Kut, and as the morning advanced we began to feel confident that the enemy had more or less shot his bolt.

This was Christmas Day, though it did not seem much like it, except that the afternoon was quite peaceful and quiet—in fact, almost uncannily so. By the evening, however, although we had no more assaults, there was a certain amount of liveliness—rifles, machine-guns, and artillery, the latter firing at almost regular

Digitized by Google

intervals throughout the night. After dark another effort to bring in the wretched Turkish wounded was made, and with considerable success. We got in all except those who could not be moved without a stretcher, and the use of stretchers was out of the question, as it was impossible to take them out and back even through the ruined walls of the Fort. Besides the wounded, our search parties brought in a certain number of unwounded and slightly wounded Turks, who were evidently anxious to surrender.

That night there was a lot of work to be done in the matter of reorganizing our lines and repairing the damage done by the bombardment and assault, and the work took days to finish really satisfactorily. The mud walls had either great holes or huge breaches, and piles of débris lay about in every direction. Roofing timbers, corrugated iron, equipment, stores, and everything else were lying buried under heaps of bricks and rubbish, thus completely blocking the old trenches, which in many parts were entirely obliterated. The most difficult task of all was getting out fresh barbed wire, practically the whole of the old wire having been destroyed by the bombardment. On the northern front in most places the enemy's trenches varied in distance from ours from eighty yards to only about fifteen yards (at the advanced saphead), and in these circumstances it was no easy matter to wire our front. At the worst places we made "spiders," and pushed them out over the parapet, but elsewhere there was nothing for it but to crawl out and use a muffled mallet as best we could. The days and nights now were all much the same—by day, deepening old trenches, clearing out after rain, or digging new trenches; by night, completing work which could not be done with safety in daylight. There was now always a Regimental Officer on watch all night, his duty being, in addition to looking after his own company, to walk up and down the whole regimental line, with a Véry pistol in his hand, ready to let off coloured lights or rockets. There were four of us available for this duty, and it was carried out in four-hour watches. As we were at work all day until late in the evening, this was rather a strain, but when Naylor returned from hospital we were able to get one night in four off duty, though frequently a very disturbed night, and always a short one, as we stood to arms each morning at 5.30.

The rough sketch [1] which I have made shows approximately how the defences were shaping themselves by the end of the year.

[1] Sketch Map No. 4.

Digitized by Google

Of course, there were a great many more minor trenches which I have been unable to put in, especially on the extreme west, which I never had an opportunity of visiting before the floods washed all the defences away.

The week following Christmas was somewhat tense, but in reality uneventful. The Turks were still as close as ever, and at first their sniping rather worried us, but we soon got the upper hand at that game. The nights were sometimes a bit noisy, but by the end of the week we came to the conclusion that they were not intending another big assault, for we observed their columns behind their trenches moving in the distance across the desert in the direction of the Es Sinn positions, from which they had been turned out just three months before. The people in the Fort observation-tower used to make careful notes of all these movements, and a confidential diary of what had been going on was sent round to us each evening. The rough road along which these Turkish troops moved from west to east was just within distant artillery range, but owing to the necessity of conserving ammunition, and to the length of the range, our guns did not fire at them often. Once or twice we tried rifle and machine-gun fire from the front line, but it was quite valueless. While these movements were in progress, and just after they ceased, the Turks sniped and shelled rather more vigorously than usual, presumably in order to show us that they were still in strength opposite to us.

The next excitement was the appearance of two aeroplanes (German Fokkers), which were very good, giving us any amount of trouble right to the end, and never being hit. Soon afterwards we had the cheering sight of our own machines coming up from down-stream, but they never managed to time their flight so as to meet and settle matters with the Fokkers.

With the first week of January came the news of the first failure of the relief force. From what we heard they appear to have fought a sort of general encounter battle at Sheikh Saad, and gained a victory at the expense of heavy casualties. Then they won another fight rather more easily at Orah Ruins, but after pushing on quite close up to Es Sinn, were unable to obtain, or, rather, maintain, a foothold in the Turkish trenches, owing to the fearful weather, and were forced to retire to a position on the Wadi Canal, a little above Orah.

We had seen this wet weather coming on just before the New Year, and though at first there were only a few falls of rain, they

Digitized by Google

were sufficient to make our trenches most unpleasant; but this was only the beginning of a very bad time for us, about which I shall have plenty to say further on. For the relief force the continuance of the rain and the rising of the river meant ruin. Twice more during January they endeavoured to fight their way through to us, but they got little or no nearer, as the following told us :—

"COMMUNIQUÉ TO THE TROOPS.

"The relieving force under General Aylmer has been unsuccessful in its efforts to dislodge the Turks entrenched on the left bank of the river some 14 miles below the position at Es Sinn, where we defeated them in September last, when the Turkish strength was greater than it is now. Our relieving force suffered severe loss, and had very bad weather to contend against—they are entrenched close to the Turkish position. More reinforcements are on the way up river, and I confidently expect to be relieved some day during the first half of the month of February.

"I desire all ranks to know why I decided to make a stand at Kut during our retirement from Ctesiphon. It was because as long as we hold Kut the Turks cannot get their ships, barges, stores, and munitions past this place to attack Amara, and thus we were holding up the whole of the Turkish advance. It also gives time for our reinforcements to come up river from Basra, and so restore success to our arms; it gives time to our Allies the Russians, who are now over-running Persia, to move towards Baghdad, which a large force is now doing. I had a personal message from General Baratoff, in command of the Russian Expeditionary Force in Persia, telling me of his admiration of what you men of the 6th Division and troops attached have done in the past few months, and telling me of his own progress on the road from Kermanshah towards Baghdad.

"By standing at Kut I maintain the territory we have won in the past year at the expense of much blood, commencing with your glorious victory at Shaiba, and thus we maintain the campaign as a glorious one, instead of letting disaster pursue its course down to Amara, and perhaps beyond.

"I have ample food for 84 days, and that is not counting the 3,000 animals which can be eaten. When I defended Chitral 20 years ago, we lived well on *atta* and horseflesh, but, as I repeat above, I expect confidently to be relieved in the first half of the month of February.

Digitized by Google

"Our duty stands out clear and simple. It is our duty to our Empire, to our beloved King and Country, to stand here and hold up the Turkish advance as we are now doing; and with the help of all, heart and soul, together we will make this defence to be remembered in history as a glorious one. All in England and India are watching us now, and are proud of the splendid courage you have shown; and I tell you, let all remember the glorious defence of Plevna, for that is what is in my mind.

"I am absolutely calm and confident as to the result; the Turk, though good behind a trench, is of little value in the attack. They have tried it once, and their loss in one night in their attempt on the Fort was 2,000 alone; they have already had very heavy losses from General Aylmer's musketry and guns, and I have no doubt they have had enough.

"I want to tell you all that, when I was ordered to advance on Ctesiphon, I officially demanded an Army Corps, or at least two Divisions, to do the task successfully. Having pointed out the grave danger of attempting to do this with one Division only, I had done my duty. You know the result and whether I was right or not, and your name will go down to history as the heroes of Ctesiphon, for heroes you proved yourselves in the battle. I perhaps by right should not have told you of the above, but I feel I owe it to you all to speak straight and openly, and take you into my confidence, for God knows I felt our heavy losses and the sufferings of my poor, brave wounded, and shall remember it as long as I live; and I may truly say that no general I know of has been more loyally obeyed and served than I have been in command of the Sixth Division.

"These words are long, I am afraid, but I speak straight from the heart, and you will see that I have thrown all officialdom overboard. We will succeed—mark my words—*but save your ammunition as if it were gold.*

"CHARLES TOWNSHEND, Major-General,
"Commanding 6th Division.

"Kut-al-Amarah.
"26th January 1916."

All this while the weather was the most disheartening possible—wet, with about one day in three fine, and, of course, when it rained it poured, everything getting flooded with rainwater and buried in

Digitized by Google

mud. The ground was so low that drainage was well-nigh impossible; the whole place became water-logged at once, and, to make matters worse, the Turks, who were on slightly higher ground, were able to drain a good deal of their surface water down on to us. But the actual rain which fell on our camp was a small matter compared with the river floods, which were shortly to add to our troubles. The Tigris hereabouts rises rapidly at this season, and the water is decidedly higher than the surrounding country. The Arabs combat the floods by building a continuous bund (or bank) along the river's edge, each individual landowner continually watching the water and repairing his portion of the bund; but we ourselves were quite unable to attend to such matters, for the very good reason that during the daytime the Turkish fire prevented all work on the exposed river bank. At one time things got so bad that the people in the north-west section of the defence were flooded out and forced to retire to Middle Line, leaving rather a queer line of defence in that quarter, though it did not really matter just then, as the Turks opposite to them were flooded out also, and the whole country was such a sea of mud and water that it was practically impossible for the enemy to advance over it. Communication trenches, dug-outs, and everything else fell in from time to time, and had to be made up again, thus giving us additional labour.

In spite of these various troubles we were neither miserable nor gloomy; in fact, we were in the best of spirits. We were then living in the Fort, and we were never idle, as there was always plenty of digging and repairing to be done, inside and around, both by day and by night. When off duty we managed to amuse ourselves in one way or another, though, perhaps, the amusement was of a very mild form. The walls of our mess dug-out gradually assumed a most artistic appearance at the hands of a Major (of the Signals) who was attached to us. By polishing with a brick a very fine surface could be got to the sandy clay, and on this he achieved grand effects in the mural fresco line—drawings of all sorts, often suggested by advertisements, etc., in old "Graphics," while running right round was a decorative frieze of purely conventional pattern. At one time we had a plague of frogs in the mess, and these interested us a good deal, especially when they attempted to climb up steps in the wall. Then we always had the relief force speculation to fall back upon—on what day and at what hour it would make its appearance, concerning which each of us had his own ideas. As to myself, in my more serious and sedentary moments I read Aristotle, of

Digitized by Google

which I possessed one small, well-thumbed volume; I studied Urdu, with the aid of an old conversational grammar, and found it most useful in my dealings with Indian troops; and, finally, our Acting Adjutant (Mason) gave me lessons in shorthand, in which he was an expert. Occasionally we heard very distant shelling going on down-stream, and wondered what was happening; sometimes we watched the Turkish caravan route, away north; and there was always the excitement of looking out for the daily arrival of our aeroplane from down-river, with, perhaps, a message to be dropped for Headquarters, to be marked down as it fell, and retrieved, if possible, sometimes after dark. And each evening came the Fokkers, no less assiduous in their attentions than the Turkish guns. Such was life in those days.

During the first fortnight of February we started in earnest to fight the floods, by making bunds. It was decided that, if the floods became impossibly bad, we should hold in strength only Middle Line and the Fort, with, perhaps, the near sand-dunes (which would, of course, be above flood level). For the present, however, while making Middle Line the principal defence, we were to hold the line from the Fort to Redoubt B in strength, dig a series of trenches in echelon from Redoubt B to a point farther west in Middle Line, and man these during the dark. Accordingly, Redoubt B, which, with the trenches on either side of it, had been flooded out, was reconstructed, though not on exactly the same site as before; and, as it was to be made a strong point, with its left "in the air," it was ordered to be garrisoned by a company of British Infantry from our Brigade, as well as by some Indian troops. It happened that Q Company was first on the roster for detached duty; so one evening, quite unexpectedly, and at short notice, we were ordered down there, and took over from the Indian regiment then in occupation. There, or in the corresponding position in the line, the Company remained until the end of the siege—a satisfactory arrangement, in that it saved us the trouble of constant moves. As for Redoubt B, it was immediately decided to strengthen it to the uttermost, so as to make it capable of all-round defence in the event of the enemy attacking and breaking through the very weak echelon trenches. From this time, therefore, my narrative deals almost entirely with the doings of Q Company. The remainder of the Regiment (P, R, and S) I may, however, say, occupied the Fort until the end of the siege, and throughout worked continuously and arduously at the defences and at bund-building to resist the

Digitized by Google

floods. With them, in the Fort, were the 103rd Sirmoor Sappers, and, latterly, the 67th Punjabis.

As time went on Redoubt B grew out of comparatively nothing into quite a good work, complete with dug-outs and other modern contrivances.[1] For the first week or ten days we were given a working-party of 100 men (from other regiments) every night, and sappers were provided to do the all-round wiring. We, ourselves, of course, worked by day, and as many as could be spared from out-post duty worked by night. My own duties were not light; various authorities came up by day to inspect the place, discuss details, and authorize fresh improvements; and then I had to see that these were carried out. However, for me this period of the siege was certainly the most interesting of any, and the men fully appreciated the construction of a defensive fort of their own, which they themselves were to hold against all comers to the last.

Perhaps luckily, though at the time we thought unluckily, we never had to put the place to the test of an attack. Sniping went on fairly constantly, and we had an excellent observation point, as well as good positions for our snipers and machine-guns, of which we had one at first and another later on. By day the redoubt was more or less isolated, as the fire-trench adjacent on the east was only lightly manned, though farther east the blockhouse and trenches thence to Redoubt A were always fully manned. By night, however, we were well linked up with the other defences, when the echelon trenches and the Retrenchment were occupied. The weather was comparatively fine now, and I think I may truly say that we almost enjoyed life for the time being.

About the 26th February we discovered that something was on. We received very confidential instructions in detail as to what we were to do in the event of certain further orders being received, and soon afterwards, at midnight one night, a further message arrived. This, though brief enough, looked like business, and was to the effect that in the early morning a company of machine-guns would concentrate in Redoubt B; that later some other troops would come up; and that, when further orders came, I was to take my company to join the Regiment at a certain point, ready to move out. At 6 a.m. a tremendous cannonading could be heard in progress away down-stream. This continued almost without intermission for about a couple of hours, after which it gradually lessened,

[1] We had then plenty of material (wood, iron, matting, etc.) which we used for all kinds of devices.—G. L. H.

Digitized by Google

and then became spasmodic. Excitement and expectation, of course, ran high. We diagnosed the situation from the sounds which we heard; we imagined that the relief force had delivered the assault at 8 a.m., and we calculated the exact time at which we should be called upon to sally out. We waited all day, but, alas! we waited in vain; and at dusk, by way of consolation, we were told that the bombardment had been very successful, and that much movement had been observed and noted! So we returned to our several positions to wait once more.

About ten days after this, things again began to flutter—very secretly and confidentially. I got more hypothetical orders; and late on the evening of the 8th March I received the message for which I had been waiting. We spent a portion of that night getting ready; before it was light a comparatively small number of an Indian regiment took over the Redoubt, and we joined the remainder of the Battalion, from the Fort, as it reached the main communication trench on our side. We reached Kut just about daybreak, to find that almost two brigades had been concentrated there, leaving the trenches only lightly manned; and immediately afterwards we heard a heavy cannonade beginning down-stream, but much nearer and in a more southerly direction than on previous occasions. Presently there was a loud explosion in the river quite close to us, caused, we heard afterwards, by the blowing up of a mine, which our people had floated down in hopes of demolishing the Turkish bridge across the Shatt-el-Hai—apparently without success.

We spent that day cooped up in an old stable-yard, in a somewhat restless state, occasionally climbing up to the one safe coign of vantage on a wall, from which little could be seen, owing to a very thick mirage. This entertainment was varied by the receipt from time to time of orders, explanatory of what we were going to do if General Aylmer did actually break through, and our manner and order of trying to cross the river. Towards evening the mirage cleared a little, when we could see plenty of smoke, and the cannonade became intense again. Our investing Turks also gave us a reminder of their presence by dropping a few shells in Kut, but the result was only one casualty; and the day finished with the usual message of news, reassuring, but very ambiguous. We interpreted it in the most hopeful spirit possible, and settled down where we were for the night, glad at any rate to get a night off duty, as it were.

Next day there was a repetition of the cannonade down-stream, but it died away, and left us, if not actually gloomy, at any rate

Digitized by Google

more anxious and pensive as the day dragged on. At nightfall we knew all that we needed to know when we received orders to resume the *status quo ante* of our trenches, and we were back in position before it was really dark. We found that the Turks had just sent a white flag across, near Redoubt B, with a message; and we heard later that it was to say that surely honour was satisfied by the present length of the siege, and we could honourably surrender. A rather similar message was sent in just about the beginning of the siege, and I believe that both messages were very suitably replied to.

"COMMUNIQUÉ TO THE TROOPS AT KUT.

"As on a former occasion, I take the troops of all ranks into my confidence again and repeat the two following telegrams received from General Aylmer, from which they will see that our relieving force has again failed to relieve us :—

"'*1st Telegram. 8th March.*

"'To-day's operations terminated in a gallant but unsuccessful attempt to storm Dujailah Redoubt. Troops pushed home attack and carried out the operation with great gallantry, but the enemy was able to mass reinforcements which arrived from left bank at Magasis and Shumran, and we were unable to break through. Unless the enemy retires from his present position on the right bank, which does not seem probable, we shall be unable to maintain ourselves in present position, owing to lack of water; and unless the enemy evacuates the Es Sinn position, we shall be obliged to withdraw to our previous position at Wadi.'

"'*2nd Telegram. 8th March.*

"'We have been unable to break through to relieve you to-day, and may have to withdraw to Wadi to-morrow, but hope to make another attack before long and relieve you at an early date. Please wire movements of enemy, who, in any case, suffered most severely, as their repeated counter-attacks have been repulsed with heavy loss.'

"I know you will all be deeply disappointed to hear this news. We have now stood a three-months' siege in a manner which has called upon you the praise of our beloved King and our fellow-countrymen in England, Scotland, Ireland, and India, and all this

Digitized by Google

after your brilliant battles of Kut-al-Amarah and Ctesiphon, and your retirement to Kut, all of which feats of arms are now famous. Since 5th December 1915 you have spent 3 months of cruel uncertainty, and to all men and all people uncertainty is intolerable; as I say, on the top of all this comes the second failure to relieve us. And I ask you also to give a little sympathy to me who have commanded you in these battles referred to, and who, having come to you as a stranger, now love my command with a depth of feeling I have never known in my life before. When I mention myself, I would couple the names of the Generals under me whose names are distinguished in the Army as leaders of men.

"I am speaking to you, as I did before, straight from the heart, and, as I say, ask your sympathy for *my* feelings, having promised you relief on certain dates on the promise of those ordered to relieve us—not their fault no doubt—do not think that I blame them—they are giving their lives freely and deserve our gratitude and admiration.

"But I want you to help me again as before. I have asked General Aylmer for the next attempt, which must be made before the end of this month, to bring such numbers as will break down all resistance and leave no doubt of the issue. Large reinforcements are reaching him, including an English Division of 17,000 men, the leading Brigade of which must have reached Wadi by now—that is to say, General Aylmer's Headquarters. In order, then, to hold out, I am killing a large number of horses so as to reduce the quantity of grain eaten every day, and I have had to reduce your ration. It is necessary to do this in order to keep our flag flying—I am determined to hold out, and I know you are with me in this, heart and soul.

"CHARLES TOWNSHEND, Major-General,
"Commanding 6th Division.

"Kut-al-Amarah,
"10th March 1916."

"COMMUNIQUÉ TO THE TROOPS.

"Message from General Sir Percy Lake, K.C.M.G., C.B., D.S.O., dated 10th March 1916 :—

"'I can realize to the full and sympathize most deeply with the disappointment which both you and your command must feel at

Digitized by Google

our recent failure to relieve you. Rest assured, however, that we shall not abandon the effort, and that for the next attempt the maximum force will be employed.'

" Kut-al-Amarah,
" 11th March 1916."

I believe, as a matter of fact, that this attempt was much nearer a success than appears; and, but for a few misfortunes, might have been the most brilliant success imaginable, as the effort in the new quarter took the Turks completely by surprise. Afterwards, in Baghdad, I discussed the fight with Turkish officers, who told me that the whole day was absolute touch and go with them, and that if our people had known exactly how the Turks were situated, nothing could have saved them from a disaster. Had they been driven from their position on the right bank they could retreat only by the bottle-neck of the bridge over the Hai, and by a ferry across the Tigris, both more or less under our artillery fire, and the former the possible objective of the Kut garrison, issuing out to complete the Turkish rout. However, speculations as to what might have happened are of little use, and at the time we knew no details of what had actually taken place. All that we knew was that we had got to settle down again in the full consciousness of the fact that there had been another failure to relieve us. It would be entirely wrong to make out that we were not disappointed; we were bitterly so, for we realized that the failure of so strenuous an attempt meant a very considerable delay before another could be made.

As shadowed in the communiqué given above, from now onwards rations were largely reduced, and continued to lessen week by week until the end of the siege. In December the food was plentiful and excellent; but with the New Year it became what might be called frugal, without any luxuries whatever, and with only an occasional extra (butter, etc.) served out about twice a week. Early in January we began to eat horses and mules, and this was the only meat for the remainder of the siege. From the middle of January a sort of brown bread had been issued, and the size of the loaf gradually decreased; but the rations could be supplemented to a certain extent by purchasing *dahl*, *chuppatties*, and such-like things from the Arab population, but now this was stopped.

Happily, in three or four days' time heavy rain came to divert our thoughts from the outlook. Hitherto the downpour of one night

Digitized by Google

had been sufficient to necessitate a lot of cleaning up and draining to make the trenches habitable. Now, a night's storm was liable to cause a regular flood, which, combined with the river rising, was really serious. I should explain that, although heavy rain caused the river to rise, what affected the rise most was the melting of the snow on the mountains at the head of the Tigris. Thus we never knew what a day would bring forth; we would recover from a rain flood, and be enjoying finer and warmer weather, when suddenly we would notice that as the heat steadily increased so the river steadily rose.

This particular flood of rain was the most serious that we had had since January, and at that time Q Company was in the Fort—on higher ground. It flooded the whole of Redoubt B up to the firing platforms (about 2 feet), so that we were only just able to find more or less dry sleeping places for the men. The echelon trenches were even worse, and could not be occupied by night, and only half the Retrenchment was habitable. But so long as communication was not interrupted (as it was sometimes for an hour or two, owing to the wires getting draggled in the mud), there was no cause for alarm, as the ground was so sloshy that an attack would have been very difficult, as well as very noisy. We spent the better part of two days cleaning up the Redoubt, and a tiresome job it was. We baled out the water with old tins, but the place was so low-lying that half the water came back again. Then we tried soaking up the water by throwing down earth into it; but that was not a great success, as digging out the saturated earth was very heavy work. At last we borrowed a pump from the sappers, and got on better, though we had to drain the trenches by sections, filling them up every here and there, and then redigging them. But, in the end, we succeeded, which was the main point.

Soon after, the river began to rise visibly, and we had very restless nights, not only from having to watch the approaching flood-water, but also from the telephone, which brought agitated messages from Headquarters and from various other parts, both of warning and of anxious inquiry. A party had to be always at hand to block up a trench wherever an inrush of water seemed imminent. One never knew where it was coming, for it percolated for immense distances through the extraordinarily porous soil, and also through rat-holes. The Arabs' method of "bunding" the river banks was far too elaborate for the time and labour at our disposal; they make their bunds of great thickness, and thoroughly rammed with a core

Digitized by Google

of heavy damp mud, besides being well keyed into the earth; but we could not manage all this, and we had to make the best trench bunds we could to meet sudden emergencies.

Several dry but anxious days passed, and then one night we saw the flood coming on at the rate of about a yard an hour. I watched it on and off from 11 p.m. to 3 a.m. It advanced quite steadily, and was on far too wide a front to check; so, when it reached our barbed wire, I sent a message to Brigade Headquarters describing our danger of being flooded out, and asking for instructions. I was authorized to evacuate if the worst should happen, but that I would receive a visit from the Field Engineer of the section in a few minutes. We got everything ready for leaving, and put ammunition, bombs, rockets, etc., on the highest possible spots, when the Field Engineer arrived and examined the water with me. Although it was inside our barbed wire, it appeared now to be changing direction, and passing away to lower-lying ground, where there were trenches of another section. We warned the people there of the approaching danger, dammed up some portions of the Redoubt, and thought that we were safe for the present. But the Field Engineer had hardly left us to make his report to General Hoghton when suddenly, at a spot which we had never suspected, in burst a torrent of water, which nothing on earth could stop. It swept away two trench dams almost before we saw it coming, and it was over our ankles immediately. There was nothing for it now but to clear out; so, leaving a party to fight the flood by throwing up a barricade at the entrance of the Redoubt where the ground was a trifle higher, I took the company back and established it in Middle Line, in accordance with my original instructions. Then, after explaining matters to the Brigadier, I returned to the Redoubt, where we eventually succeeded in preventing the water from getting any farther.

That night we reoccupied the trenches between Redoubt B and the blockhouse on the east, as well as a part of the Retrenchment. The echelon trenches had been completely destroyed, and, in fact, there remained now unflooded in front of Middle Line, only the Fort, a short length of the Retrenchment, and the River Trenches south of the Fort, all of which had been "bunded" up fairly satisfactorily. But the respite was only temporary, for, before many days, we had a much worse flood, against which we fought furiously, until, on the last night of March, we were forced to abandon all hope of saving any of the advanced trenches. At midnight, soaked

Digitized by Google

to the skin, we got back to and occupied the sand-dunes (between the Fort and Middle Line), and as they were above the flood level, we were able to hold on there, although we had fearful struggles to get the place properly entrenched, as the fine, crumbling sand would not stand by itself. Consequently we made mud bricks by day, and revetted the trenches by night, and in the course of time had, I think, quite a satisfactory bit of line, with machine-gun emplacements, barbed wire ("spiders"), etc. Middle Line now became the only real line of defence facing north, everything in front of it having gone, except the Fort and the sand-dunes. The importance of hanging on to these two advanced positions was evident, as if the Turks had succeeded in seizing them they would have dominated Middle Line.

The sand-dune trenches were Q Company's own little show, no one else being there, and the strength of the company was now about 70 men, with two machine-guns. Our chief fear was that we might be shelled, as decent-sized shells would have levelled our heaps of sand at once; but, fortunately, nothing heavier than a pom-pom ever fired directly at us, and they did us no harm. As far as observation went we had probably the best position in the whole place, being able to see the Turkish camps and ships up-stream at Shumran. We used to obtain a certain amount of amusement by watching them through our telescopes, and twice we had the unbounded satisfaction of seeing sections of them flooded out of their camp trenches. From our position we could see away down-stream also, and had some nights of excitement, when the flashes of our artillery could be seen in great strength, and Turkish rockets going up for all they were worth. This was early in April, when the relief force made another unsuccessful attempt to break through to us, as will be seen from what General Townshend wrote in the following :—

"COMMUNIQUÉ TO THE TROOPS, BRITISH AND INDIAN.

"The result of the attack of the Relief Force on the Turks entrenched in the Sannaiyat position is that the Relief Force has not yet won its way through, but is entrenched close up to the Turks —in places some 200 or 300 yards distant. General Gorringe wired me last night he was consolidating his position as close to the enemy's trenches as he can get, with the intention of attacking again. He had had some difficulty with the floods, which he had

Digitized by Google

remedied. I have no other details. However, you will see that I must not run any risk over the date calculated to which our rations would last, namely, 15th April, as you all understand well that digging means delay, though General Gorringe does not say so.

"I am compelled, therefore, to appeal to you all to make a determined effort to eke out our scanty means, so that I can hold out for certain till our comrades arrive, and I know I shall not appeal to you in vain.

"I have, then, to reduce your rations to 5 ounces of meal for all ranks, British and Indian.

"In this way I can hold out till the 21st April, if it becomes necessary; I do not think it will become necessary, but it is my duty to take all the precautions in my power.

"I am very sorry I can no longer favour the Indian soldiers in the matter of meal, but there is no possibility of doing so now. It must be remembered that there is plenty of horseflesh, which they have been authorized by their religious leaders to eat, and I have to recall with sorrow, by not having taken advantage of this wise and just dispensation, they have weakened my power of resistance by one month.

"In my communiqué to you on the 26th January I told you that our duty stood out plain and simple; it was to stand here and hold up the Turkish advance on the Tigris, working heart and soul together, and I expressed the hope that we would make this defence to be remembered in history as a glorious one, and I asked you in this connexion to remember the defence of Plevna, which was longer than that of even Ladysmith.

"Well, you have nobly carried out your mission; you have nobly answered the trust and appeal I put to you—the whole British Empire, let me tell you, is ringing now with our Defence of Kut. You will all be proud to say one day, 'I was one of the Garrison of Kut'—and as for Plevna and Ladysmith we have outlasted them also. Whatever happens now we have all done our duty, as I said in my reports of the defence of this place which have now been telegraphed to Headquarters. I said that it was not possible in dispatches to mention everyone, but I could safely say that every individual in this Force had done his duty to his King and Country. I was absolutely calm and confident, as I told you on the 26th January, of the ultimate result, and I am confident now. I ask you all, comrades of all ranks, British and Indian, to help me now in this food question, as I ask you above.

Digitized by Google

"General Sir Percy Lake, the Army Commander, wired to me yesterday evening to say 'There can be no doubt that Gorringe can in time force his way through to Kut; in consequence of yesterday's failure, however, it is certainly doubtful if he can reach you by April 15th.'

"This is an answer to a telegram from me yesterday morning to say that as it appeared to me doubtful that General Gorringe would be here by the 15th April, I had reluctantly still further reduced the rations so as to hold on till 21st April.

"I hope the Indian Officers will help me now in my great need in using commonsense talk with the Indian soldier to eat horseflesh as the Arabs of the town are doing.

"CHARLES TOWNSHEND, Major-General,
"Commanding 6th Division.

"Kut-al-Amarah,
"11th April 1916."

Things went on much as before; the continuous rain was over, but heavy storms, lasting a few hours, used to swoop down upon us, and we had some miserable nights, since our scanty overhead cover gave little protection from the rain. It was just about this time that General Hoghton, our Brigadier, died quite suddenly of some internal complaint.[1] He was one of the nicest men in the whole force, and he never missed a day visiting us in the Redoubt and our position afterwards. It was thought that he had been poisoned by something that he had eaten. Rations were, of course, very short now, and in order to supplement them, parties used to go out in the front at night and cut whatever vegetation appeared wholesome. Possibly he was poisoned by some of this, and a little later on two of our men in the Fort died suddenly—apparently from poisoning—so the Colonel stopped the whole Regiment gathering "green stuff."

The story of the remainder of the siege is soon told, though the last fortnight was rather a long-drawn-out record of hopes deferred, and finally crushed. Throughout the week before Easter Sunday desperate attempts were being made down-stream by the Relief Force. They broke, at great cost, through the successive Turkish positions; but all in vain, for a tremendous counter-attack by the enemy (in which he is known to have lost immense numbers) settled

[1] Colonel Evans, G.S.O.1., succeeded General Hoghton as Brigadier.—G.L.H.

Digitized by Google

for good and all our chance of being relieved. Hoping against hope, we had dragged on a week longer than had been imagined possible. Aeroplanes dropped food for us every day; but their efforts, much as we admired them, could only prolong the trouble by inches. A few aeroplanes, carrying even as much as 300 lb., as some did, could really help very little in providing food for 16,000 mouths—about the number (including the Arab population) beleaguered in Kut.[1] Besides, they had to fly for 20 miles over Turkish ground, continually being attacked, and at least one of our machines was driven down on the return journey.

Finally we were told very secretly on the Wednesday evening after Easter that a boat of foodstuffs would try to run the blockade that night, and we were told off to various duties, with a view to distracting the enemy's attentions. Of course, we realized that it was a forlorn hope. We heard the running escort of rifle and artillery fire, and could actually watch it, until it abruptly ceased at a spot about 4 miles to the east, and we were not slow to guess that the worst had happened.[2] After that it was merely a matter of hours. Negotiations were opened, and General Townshend made the following announcement :—

"COMMUNIQUÉ TO THE TROOPS.

"It became clear after General Gorringe's second repulse on the 22nd April at Sannaiyat, of which I was informed by the Army Commander by wire, that the Relief Force could not win its way through in anything like time to relieve us, our limit of resistance as regards food being the 29th April. It is hard to believe that the large forces comprising the Relief Force now could not fight their way to Kut, but there is the fact staring us in the face.

"I was then ordered to open negotiations for the surrender of Kut, in the words of the Army Commander's telegram, 'the onus not lying on yourself. You are in the position of having conducted a gallant and successful defence, and you will be in a position to get better terms than any emissary of ours . . . The Admiral, who has been in consultation with the Army Commander, considers

[1] Rough estimate of numbers in Kut on the 15th April: British, 2,700; Indian troops and followers, 10,500; Arab population, 3,000; total, 16,200. The total weight of supplies dropped by the aeroplanes, working continuously for ten days, was nearly 16,000 lb., which provided a bare 4-oz. ration for four days.

[2] This was the "Julnar," which was captured by the Turks at Magasis.—ED.

Digitized by Google

that you, with your prestige, are likely to get the best terms. We can, of course, supply food as you may arrange.'

"Those considerations alone, namely, that I can help my comrades of all ranks to the end, have decided me to overcome my bodily illness and the anguish of mind which I am suffering now, and I have interviewed the Turkish General-in-Chief yesterday, who is full of admiration at 'an heroic defence of 5 months,' as he put it.

"Negotiations are still in progress, but I hope to be able to announce your departure for India on parole, not to serve against the Turks, since the Turkish Commander-in-Chief says he thinks it will be allowed, and has wired to Constantinople to ask for this, and that the 'Julnar,' which is lying with food for us at Magasis, may now be permitted to come to us.

"Whatever has happened, my comrades, you can only be proud of yourselves. We have done our duty to King and Empire—the whole world knows we have done our duty.

"I ask you to stand by me, with your ready and splendid discipline shown throughout, in the next few days for the expedition of all service I demand of you. We may possibly go into camp, I hope, between the Fort and town along the shore, whence we can easily embark.

"C. V. F. TOWNSHEND, Major-General,
"Commanding the Garrison of Kut.

"Kut-al-Amarah,
"28th April 1916."

"COMMUNIQUÉ TO THE TROOPS.

"The following message has been received by Major-General C. V. F. Townshend, C.B., D.S.O., from the Army Commander :—

"'The C.-in-C. has desired me to convey to you and your brave and devoted troops his appreciation of the manner in which you together have undergone the suffering and hardships of the siege, which he knows has been due to the high spirit of devotion to duty in which you have met the call of your Sovereign and Empire.

"'The C.-in-C.'s sentiments are shared by myself, General Gorringe, and all troops of the Tigris Column.

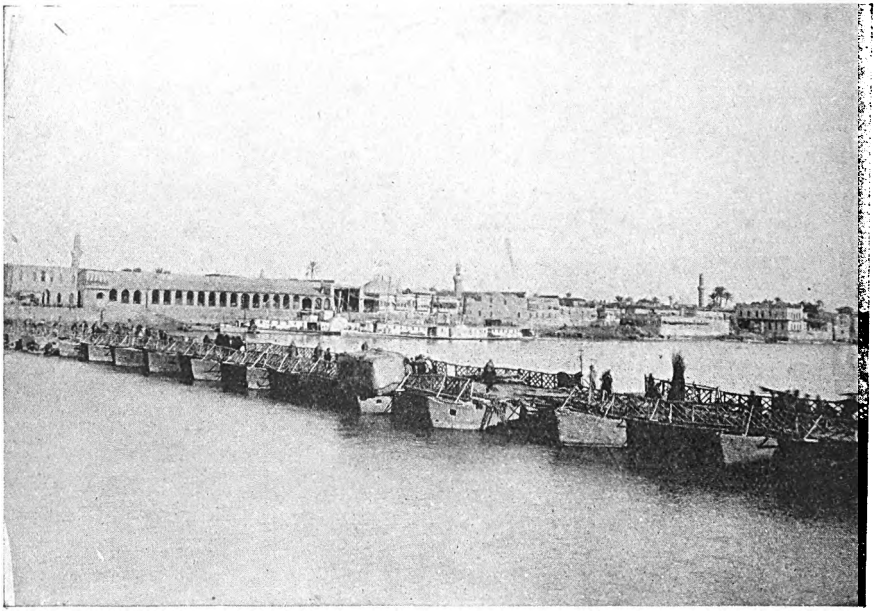
"'We can only express extreme disappointment and regret that our efforts to relieve you should not have been crowned with success.'"

Digitized by Google

"Copy of a telegram from Captain Nunn, C.M.G., D.S.O., R.N., to Major-General C. V. F. Townshend, C.B., D.S.O., dated 29th April :—

"'We, the Officers and Men of the Royal Navy, who have been associated with the Tigris Corps, and many of us so often worked with you and your gallant troops, desire to express our heartfelt regret at our inability to join hands with you and your comrades in Kut.'"

We spent the night in depositing most of our ammunition in the river, and the next early morning in destroying documents, machine-guns, revolvers, etc., while all the forty or more guns had their muzzles blown away one by one, and the wireless apparatus was destroyed. About midday we piled arms, and placed on the ground such ammunition as we had left, and then marched down to the palm-groves near the town. The Turks came in and took over, and by nightfall we were off duty and under sentries. The officers were then separated from the men and taken to Baghdad, except Seconds-in-Command of Regiments, who remained with their men a little longer. But I cannot speak from personal knowledge of what exactly took place, as on the second day after the surrender I was forced to go to hospital with fever (probably para-typhoid),



OLD BRIDGE OF BOATS, BAGHDAD.

Digitized by Google

and while convalescing from that, in Baghdad, I got dysentery. I remained in Baghdad for some months, and then had the good fortune to be exchanged and sent down to Basra with all the other invalid prisoners of war.

Of the fate of the other officers of the Regiment, all I can say is that Morland went away with General Townshend directly the siege was over; Colonel Lethbridge, Major Henley, Startin, Mason, Mellor, and Mundey left Baghdad for the north almost immediately, and, I think, together; Naylor and Ivey were for a time in hospital in Baghdad with me, but the former was sent away north on May 30th, and the latter on June 8th.

I append a few statistics which may be of interest :—

SUMMARY OF CASUALTIES IN THE GARRISON OF KUT-AL-AMARAH, FROM 4TH DECEMBER 1915 TO 28TH APRIL 1916.

	Killed.	Died of Wounds.	Wounded.	Missing.	Died of Disease.	Total.
British Officers ...	9	10	44	1	4	68
Indian Officers ...	8	7	21	1	5	42
British Ranks ...	84	105	351	2	68	610
Indian Ranks ...	369	278	1,253	64	531	2,495
Followers... ...	67	88	289	4	123	571
Total ...	537	488	1,958*	72	731	3,786

* This includes the 488 who died of wounds.

CASUALTIES IN Q COMPANY, 1ST OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY (INCLUDING ATTACHED).

Killed at Ctesiphon.

Captain DAVENPORT.
Captain COURTIS.
Lieut. HIND.
Company-Sergeant-Major H. SHILCOCK
Sergeant BRICKNELL.
Sergeant BADBY.
Sergeant HEINES.
Sergeant BENNETT (2/4th Wilts).
Lance -Sergeant COLLINS.
Corporal TATHAM.
And 18 Men.

Digitized by Google

Wounded at Ctesiphon.

2nd Lieut. HAZEL and 42 N.C.O.'s and Men.

Wounded in the Retirement to Kut.

5 Men.

Missing in the Retirement to Kut.

2 Men.

Killed or Died of Wounds in Kut.

8 N.C.O.'s and Men.

Wounded in Kut.

6 N.C.O.'s and Men.

Total Casualties in Q Company, Ctesiphon and Kut-al-Amarah.

4 Officers and 88 Other Ranks.

NOMINAL ROLL OF N.C.O.'s AND MEN OF THE REGIMENT EXCHANGED AS PRISONERS OF WAR FROM BAGHDAD.

Sergeant MUNN.	Private RISBY.
Corporal THOMSON.	Private EDMUNDS.
Lance-Corporal MUMFORD.	Private MILES.
Private BUNCE.	Private HARROD.
Private HAYNES.	Private NESTOR.
Private ALGAR.	Private NEALE.
Private NUTT.	Private ORCHARD.
Private DAY.	Private HAWKINS.
Private WATERS.	Private FOLLOWS.
Private SANDERSON.	Private CLARIDGE.
Private BULMAN.	Private MARTIN.[1]
Private SHOPLAND.	Private JACKSON.

[1] Died at Shumran.

Digitized by Google

DRAFT OF 40 N.C.O.'s AND MEN OF THE 2/4TH WILTSHIRE REGIMENT ATTACHED TO THE 1ST OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY.

On Detachment at Amara, etc.	6
Killed at Ctesiphon	8
Wounded at Ctesiphon, or in the retirement, and sent down river	17
Besieged in Kut	9
Total	40

NOTE.—Of the nine besieged in Kut, two died in the Turkish camp at Shumran after the surrender, one died a prisoner of war in Baghdad, while one had been wounded both at Ctesiphon and Kut.

I have been able to give the above particulars with the aid of a small note-book (containing the Roll of Q Company and similar information) which I was allowed to bring away with me from Kut. My account of events is a purely personal one, and I think, as far as it goes, fairly accurate, though it had to be written afresh after my release from Baghdad, my diary having been destroyed before the surrender.

Digitized by Google

ANOTHER ACCOUNT OF THE SIEGE OF KUT.

Extract from a letter written by Sergeant A. C. Munn, 43rd Light Infantry, to his mother:—

Gamballa War Hospital, Bombay,
20th September 1916.

My last letter to you was addressed from a place named Aziziyeh, about the middle of October last, and I mentioned then that I would not be in the big scrap at Ctesiphon. Neither was I, and I suppose I was lucky in a way, for out of the nine sergeants in my company only one came out of that terrible fight (7 killed and 1 severely wounded). Yes, I was left at Aziziyeh, not to do duty at the defence post as I told you then, but because I was ill, much too ill to march, with diarrhœa. I had been suffering with this complaint for quite six weeks, and did my duty just the same, as, of course, no one likes reporting sick, and, besides, I did not want to be left out of the big scrap. I paraded with the Regiment the morning they marched off, but was ordered to fall out and go sick at once.

At Aziziyeh we had to work hard to turn the place into a defensive position as quickly as possible, so we were "trenching and barbed-wiring" all day and all night until we'd finished the job, which took, I think, 3 days and nights. On the 4th night we heard the distant sound of guns, and then knew that the boys were "stuck into it." The battle lasted 3 days, and we didn't hear a murmur as to how things were going. On the 4th night, in company with several more fellows, I was sitting on a trench parapet, all of us bemoaning our bad luck in being left out of the fight, when somebody espied two lights, very close together, far away across the desert. We wondered what they could be; we knew it could not be a boat, as the river didn't bend in their direction. Gradually the lights came nearer, and presently we heard the faint but continuous toot of a horn. "A motor," shouted everyone at once, and by this time all the post had crept out to see the mysterious lights. Quickly we threw down the barbed wire gate, and the motor came slowly in, with the awful news that the Division was in retreat, had started marching at 4 o'clock the previous evening, and would be here about 7 a.m. They came in almost to the minute, and I at once rejoined the Regiment, or, rather, what was left of it, for out of

Digitized by Google

the 650 that marched away, only just over 300 came back, and, what's more, only the Colonel and 3 other officers. The remainder were all killed or wounded, mostly killed. It appears the boys put up a wonderful fight, capturing all the Turkish positions, but couldn't hold them in the face of the enormous reinforcements the enemy brought against them. The Division rested for two days at Aziziyeh, and then commenced the terrible retreat to Kut. If I lived to be as old as Methuselah I'd never forget the agony of that awful march, 90 miles of it, and only four hours' halt—no food, no sleep, no water, and my Brigade formed the rearguard the whole of the way, so we were fighting all the time. The hot sun, the sand of the desert, and no respite from the "Terrible Turk." Things got so bad that we were ordered to eat our emergency ration (this order is only given as a last extremity : a court-martial comes to any man who eats his without permission). Lack of water was beginning to tell, so we were marched to the river, and the whole Division was creeping slowly along the river bank awaiting the order to fall out and get a thrice-blessed drink. But it was not to be, the Turk wouldn't have it, but opened a terrific fire, so we had to move away from the river. It was the cruellest instance in the whole of the cruel march. Lord, never have I heard such awful curses come from the lips of man. Honestly, I believe if we had turned and fought the Turk then we'd have torn him to bits. Well, we struggled into Kut somehow, late at night, too late to get any food, but comparatively safe behind barbed wire; so we slept, but not for long. As usual, we stood to arms two hours before dawn, hoping and praying that the Turk would attack now that we were in some sort of a defensive position ; but he was very careful. He'd paid heavily for the victory at Ctesiphon, and guesssed, rightly too, that there was still plenty of fight left in the 6th Division.

From that morning (4th December) the siege commenced. Our first orders were to dig in. We didn't require many orders though, for the Turk raked the whole place with every sort of fire he could command. So every man digged, knowing that his life depended on his getting under cover. (In about three weeks we had turned the whole place into a gigantic rabbit-warren, and it was hardly necessary to get on the face of the earth for anything.) Our (the Regiment's) duties for the first three weeks consisted of manning a redoubt, taking it in turn and turn about, every 48 hours, with a Native Regiment. This was all right when we got to the redoubt (about 2 miles from Kut), but getting there and getting away from

Digitized by Google

it was very difficult, as at this time we hadn't got communication trenches out so far as this. We had to parade for this redoubt at all sorts of hours during the night—3 o'clock, 2, and quarter-past 1—according to the moon, and then had to creep up to it as noiselessly as possible. Altogether, it used to take us about three hours to effect the change. When it wasn't our turn in the redoubt we had to dig, dig—well, if I ever get to England again, I'll touch my hat to every navvy I see. It's no mug's game digging. Whilst I was doing it I often thought of the soft old days, when I used to be fiddling about with a bassoon, sitting in a comfortable chair, and then—well, then I used to go mad for about two minutes, and half bury my "working partner" with solid lumps of wet clay. Of course the Turk was not idle; he, too, was digging in and preparing against any sort of sortie we were likely to make. Moreover, he kept our lines ablaze with shrapnel, and he's got the most efficient snipers on earth. It was courting death to show one's head above ground level—so much so, that, although I lived within 100 yards of one of the mightiest rivers on earth, *I never had a wash or a shave during the whole month of December.* (You'll laugh, I know. There was a time when I once would have been delighted to have found myself in such glorious circumstances, but I wasn't trench-digging in those days.) During this month (December) we took things quite contentedly; we had plenty to smoke, and plenty to eat, and we all fondly hoped to be relieved by Christmas. Talking of "plenty to eat," this was the only time I ever did get anything to eat during my period of active service, but during December we got 1 lb. of bread every day (jam, butter, cheese, and bacon), and on 5 occasions we got potatoes. Yes, during our stay in Mesopotamia we had 10 spuds, 2 each time. Moreover, we actually got beer—2 pints 2 nights running, and that, unfortunately, ended the supply. All this time, although the Turk kept worrying us, he never mustered up enough courage to make a big attack until Christmas Eve, Dad's birthday.

Near the redoubt was a fairly large mud fort manned by 2 regiments of Native Infantry, some Volunteer Artillery from India, and 50 men of R Company of the Oxford and Bucks. It was built quite close to the river bank, and was easily the strongest part of the front line. The enemy commenced an attack on this fort at 10 a.m., 24th. We at this time were out of the redoubt and in the second line, about 1½ mile in rear of the first, so had a good view of the first part of the scrap (we had a much closer view of the second part, but

Digitized by Google

I'm coming to that shortly.) For hour after hour the enemy poured hundreds of shells into the Fort with scarcely a reply from our people; in fact, I thought they had all been killed in the first half-hour. It seemed to me impossible that anyone could have lived through such a bombardment. About 4 o'clock in the evening the guns slackened a bit, and we could see the Turkish Infantry advancing, and we knew that our people were alive, for as soon as they got in range rifles and machine-guns blazed and literally mowed the Turks down. Notwithstanding, he broke through in one place, and we were sent for to reinforce If ever a mile and a half was done in record time we did it that day; we shot along that communication trench like kids racing at a bun struggle. What a sight when we got there! One would think that a miniature earthquake had taken place inside the Fort, and two of the walls were nothing else but big breaches; it was through one of the latter that the enemy broke in, only to be quickly driven out by a double company of Native Infantry. Whether the enemy knew of the reinforcements coming up, I don't know; but the attack suddenly ceased, and we had time to relieve a native regiment that had suffered rather severely. I also found time to forage for something to eat. We'd been standing to arms all day, so had no time to get any food in the second line. I "found" a 1-lb. tin of bully and a small tin of apricot jam. My chum, the Company-Sergeant-Major, also "found" 3 lb. of bread (by the way, I forgot to mention it, but I was acting C.-Q.-M.-S. at the time, as I was senior in the company, all the rest having been killed at Ctesiphon). We sat down in the bottom of a trench and prepared to make a jolly good meal. I had just opened the bully when a shell hit the parapet immediately behind us, and we were both buried under about a ton of dirt. We scrambled out of it somehow, but that shell finished our feed, and it also heralded another terrific bombardment. I crept back on my hands and knees to my place in the firing line, and got well down, very well down, in the trench. As it happened, the sector I was in charge of (we had no officer) was the very place where the Turks had broken through, and, apart from receiving more than special attention from the guns, the trench was half full of Indian and Turkish dead.

After about an hour's bombardment we noticed that all the shells were beginning to fly a little higher, and by this we knew that the infantry were about to attack, and the guns were afraid of hitting their own men. Quickly the order was passed along the line: "Don't fire until they are on the wire." Now, our wire was only

Digitized by Google

about 15 yards in front of us, and in some places the Turkish trenches were only about 10 yards beyond that. We could hear the Turks quite plainly calling on "Allah," and as an instance of how cool our boys were, I heard one say, "Yes, neither Allah nor the devil ,nor all the hosts of Heaven and hell, can save you when you get on our wire."

We hadn't long to wait. With a tremendous shout the Turkish first line came over their parapet and came racing towards us. Not a shot was fired until their first man was on the wire, and then, Oh, Lord ! we gave 'em the "mad minute" (15 rounds fired rapidly takes just one minute). Minute, did I say ? It was all over in one second ; to me they all seemed to fall down together, for all the world as if some invisible giant hand had brushed 'em all over at once. Their second line came over, and the same thing happened to them, but the third line wasn't having any. We saw a head or two bobbing about in their trenches, but they were very careful about coming out in the open.

When the sun had gone down the enemy seemed to find a bit of courage, for we were kept at it all night long. All through the long hours we were firing at the shadowy forms in the dark, but with the dawn the "scrap" drew to a close. I've seen a few dawns in my time, but never a more welcome one than this Christmas morning ; we knew, somehow, that the Turk wouldn't face any more by daylight. At this time the weather was bitterly cold, the nights especially. We used to dress to go to bed. I used to put on a pair of long trousers over my putties and shorts, a British warm coat round my body, a balaclava cap and scarf round my head, mitts and woollen gloves on my hands, all this besides 2 blankets. For a long time no man was allowed to take his boots off. I had mine on continuously from 24th December till 23rd January. We lived in the trenches : some never left them at all until we surrendered (29th April). About this time foodstuff was getting a bit short, but as we expected to be relieved any day, nobody troubled much. I suppose you read of the repeated attempts to get to us by Generals Aylmer and Gorringe ? We could see their shells bursting, and it was almost heartbreaking to learn that they couldn't get through.

About half-way through February the rations were sadly diminishing. Tobacco was out first, and we were smoking anything that would smoke, any green leaves (dried over a fire), tea leaves and sawdust mixed, ginger cut up into small lumps. Tea ran out, and we had ginger water instead (ginger crushed and steeped in

Digitized by Google

boiling water). Milk and sugar had given out long ago, likewise beef and mutton, and all the bully was gone with the exception of two days' emergency rations which were kept back until the very last. An Arab sheikh had stored a large quantity of barley in Kut, so this was promptly commandeered. This gave us 4 oz. of bread per day. We had plenty of horse and mule—too much, I think. I am certain it was through this meat that the men got dysentery, which accounted for a good many deaths. On the 22nd April the barley ran out, so we had to fall back on the emergency ration of biscuits and bully. We made two days' rations do for four, and when these were finished we were fed by foodstuff dropped by aeroplanes for another four days, which brought us to the fateful 29th April. It was impossible to hang out any longer, absolutely impossible. Men were dying by the score daily, and all of us were so weak we could hardly move about ; so the white flag went up at 12 noon that date, one of the blackest in the history of the British Army. Of course, I can't give you a full detail of all that happened during those weary months—it would fill a book ; and, besides, some things won't bear talking about ; but one thing I am positive of : the Turk would never have got us by fighting, no, not if he fought to doomsday. On the 24th–25th December, in the attack on the Fort, he left 2,000 dead outside the walls, and when he attacked the Dorsets and Norfolks respectively he met with just the same reception. Without any swank we cut rings round him in the fighting, but no man can beat hunger. Well, I don't want to experience any more sieges. Apart from the lack of food, we had several other little things to contend with ; the lice, for instance—millions of 'em—caused us more trouble than all the Turks on earth ; and the hard work—we had to build another fort inside the original one, and each man's task was making 250 bricks a day (as the men grew weaker so the task was lightened, until we hadn't strength to make ten). During January and February we got the rains, and the trenches and dug-outs were always ankle deep in slush, so no rest or sleep of any kind. These were only a few of the minor worries and troubles. We met with worse at the hands of the Turk, and I'm coming to them now.

When the enemy took over the Fort we were informed that a big feed was waiting for us in Kut. We got into Kut about 7 o'clock at night, but never a sign of anything to eat. The next day we got nothing also, and at three o'clock in the afternoon we commenced the march to Baghdad, conditionally the hardest march that any men of the army, and at any time, were ever called upon to undertake.

Digitized by Google

Our first halt was at a camp named Shumran, about 10 miles out of Kut. We got in about 8 p.m., and then received our first issue of Turkish rations, 6 brown biscuits. Lord! biscuits! They were made from barley-flour, chaff and dirt, plenty of the latter, and lard. Well, the British Army biscuit is no dough-nut, but it is a sponge cake compared with the Turkish variety. Well, we soaked 'em and ate 'em, and paid the penalty for doing so; for when I woke the lot up the next morning (I was acting C.-S.-M. at the time, my seniors having died during the siege) I found that eight of my men had died during the night. The doctor put their deaths down to having eaten the coarse biscuit whilst the stomach was in a weak state.

At Shumran our officers were taken away from us, and in all we stopped there about a week, and during the week our Regiment lost a great many men [1] (I was chief grave-digger, mourner, and parson to all the poor fellows of my own company who died). Also during this week I managed to contract dysentery, the worst of all diseases a man can get in a tropical country.

We continued the march. Now, the Arabs who escorted us had orders to flog anyone who fell out, so through my dysentery I came in for a goodly share of the flogging. Several poor fellows fell out, and we never saw anything more of them, and when I say several, I mean several, not just one or two. Our rations during the march, which lasted ten days, consisted of 2, and sometimes 3, biscuits per day (2 biscuits would weigh about 3 oz). On one occasion we got a handful of dates, once we got a small sheep per company (panned out to about $1\frac{1}{2}$ oz. mutton per man), and once we got some Arab *chuppaties* in lieu of biscuits. The *chuppaties* were green with mould, but still a welcome change to the biscuits.

We got to Baghdad somehow, Heaven only knows how I managed it, what with no food, the dysentery, and the flogging; you see, each day I had to fall out at least 20 times during the march, and each time I was flogged until I got back to my place in the ranks. After all, it wasn't the flogging so much as the thought that I, a British soldier, should have to take it from a filthy, greasy Arab. Had I been strong enough to hit back it would have meant my being shot instantly.

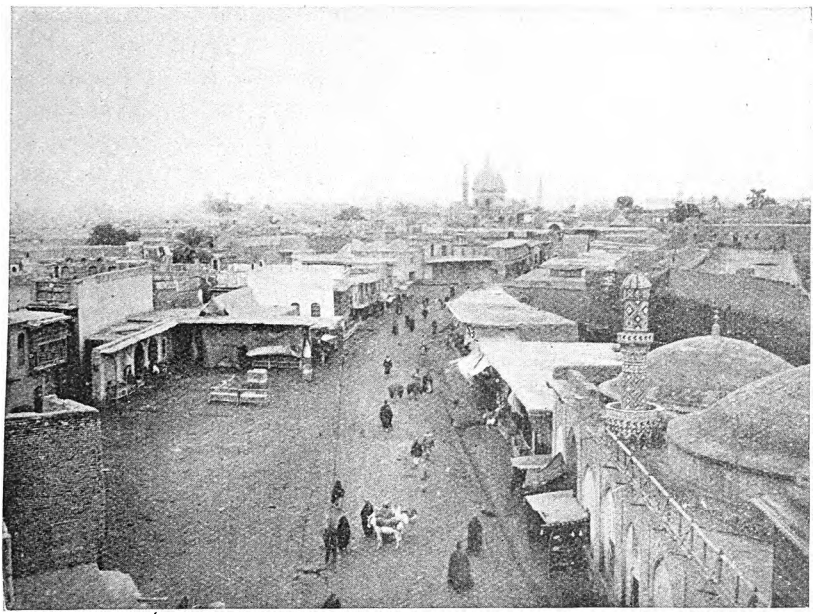
The day after we arrived in Baghdad the American Consul visited us; he's a pukka hero, too. I've often wondered if he will

[1] Several men were left at Shumran, too ill to march with us; altogether 53 men of the Regiment died there.

Digitized by Google

ever receive any recognition for the good he rendered to the British prisoners. He practically ordered that the worst cases were to be taken to hospital without delay. I was one of these, so was taken, on the back of a small donkey, held on by two Bengalis, to the Red Crescent Hospital.

The Division meanwhile continued its journey northward to Mosul, about 90 miles from Baghdad. (Have since heard that they are shifting to Angora, about 1,000 miles N.W. of Baghdad, and God help them! They'll have to march it! Honestly, I don't expect to



SCENE IN BAGHDAD CITY.

see any of the Regiment again.) I hardly know how to describe our treatment in Hospital; the diet I, a dysentery patient, was first put on by a Turkish doctor was 5 loaves of brown bread and 5 cigarettes daily. Later, our own British Medical Officers (prisoners like ourselves) were allowed to attend to us, and things were much better then. In fact, these officers did everything they possibly could for us—spent their own money on us; in fact, one officer, a Captain Clifford, in charge of a small hospital a little way out of Baghdad, went to the length of selling his kit to enable him to buy extra milk

Digitized by Google

for his patients. Finally, it was only through the persistent appeals of a Colonel (Colonel Birch) that we eventually got away.

For three months I suffered with dysentery, and then gradually took a turn for the better, and was put on full diet. Now just look at the full diet: at dawn, about 2 pts. of sloppy rice (rice served with the water it was boiled in); 10 a.m., two and half loaves of brown bread, made of the same stuff as the Turkish biscuits; 12 noon, ½ pt. of cucumber soup, about 3 oz. of rice (served dry), and about 2 oz. of mutton; 6 p.m., the same as at noon. Every day the same without any variation whatever. By the way, the 2½ loaves would weigh about ¾ lb.

Never shall I forget the day when the old Colonel (may he live for ever in Allah's shadow !) brought in the good news of our being exchanged for Turkish prisoners held by our people. We'd heard rumours, of course, but never credited them. Now I'm going to digress for a minute. When I'd got over the dysentery, and felt all right again, I naturally wanted to leave hospital and join my Regiment, at this time with the Division at Mosul; but Captain Cane, the Medical Officer in charge of our hospital, wouldn't let me go on account of the rumour of the exchange, so it is really through the kindness of this officer that I am now sitting comfortably in a Bombay hospital, in the very pink of condition again, and not slogging it across the desert on the road to Angora. I saw Captain Cane several times after the exchange was effected, and I never thanked him—I couldn't, I wouldn't have known how to have expressed myself; but I'd like to be a millionaire, I'd thank him then, even to three-quarters of my kingdom.

The happy day came round, and we were put aboard a river-boat, which was to take us to the British Lines the other side of Kut. Even when we got on the boat we weren't safe, for it also had to take reinforcements down to the Turkish army. It was found that there wasn't room for all of us, so a Turkish doctor inspected us and picked out the strongest cases to remain behind. He picked out about 50 (poor devils, to get so near! I suppose they are now on the way to Angora). By the favour of the gods he missed me altogether, didn't even look at me, otherwise I would have been with them, sure to have been, I had been quite fit for some time. The Turkish boat brought us down to that very Shumran camp, and there anchored for 3 weeks for negotiations to finish. This was a terribly anxious time for us, but one morning we steamed away and were met by a British hospital-boat half-way between

Digitized by Google

the Turkish and our first (firing) lines. Well, I won't dwell on the joys of this British boat. Our first meal was breakfast—porridge, tea, Huntley and Palmer's biscuits. I'll never forget it, the first taste of decent food for eight months. In a short three days we got down to Basra, and almost at once transhipped to the ocean-going Hospital-ship "Varsova," which brought us to Bombay. We had a fine time on this boat, and lived like fighting-cocks. It all seemed like some glorious dream to me. The first morning I was awakened by a nurse asking me if I'd like some milk with an egg beaten up in it. Me, egg and milk! While she was gone for it I bashed my head against the bed-rail to make certain I was awake, and, later, when the Doctor asked me if I could drink a bottle of beer—well—"nuff said." Even now I hardly realize that I'm back in civilization, but I suppose it must be true.

Digitized by Google

NARRATIVE OF THE SIEGE OF KUT-EL-AMARA.

By Colonel E. A. E. Lethbridge, C.M.G., D.S.O.

(See Sketch Map No. 4.)

These notes are written from a purely personal standpoint. They have not been gleaned from jottings made at the time, but were written down from memory very soon after reaching our first place of internment at Yozgad, in Asia Minor. It was next to impossible to smuggle out of Kut any written matter; some individuals did so, but I was not one of those fortunate ones. All official papers were destroyed, so I can give no statistics, and all I am able to supply are just notes of such matters and events as impressed me at the time, and which remained clear-cut amongst a mass of vague memories.

After the battle of Ctesiphon, the officers doing duty with the 43rd were: Lieut.-Colonel Lethbridge, Lieut. Mason,[1] Lieut. Naylor, 2nd Lieut. Brown, 2nd Lieut. Mellor (5th Somersets), 2nd Lieut. Heawood (4th Wilts), and Captain Startin (R.A.M.C.). The strength of the rank and file was about 200. This was increased to about 300 when the Regiment reached Kut, by the rejoining of convalescents from wounds and disease.

Of the other 43rd officers in Kut Captain Morland was on the Staff of the 6th Division, and Lieut. Mundey attached to the Flying Corps, while Major Henley rejoined the Regiment on the 3rd December.

On the morning of the 4th December 1915 the 6th Division marched into Kut-el-Amara, and the 43rd bivouacked south-west of the Fort and about a quarter of a mile from it.

For a proper appreciation of the Siege of Kut-el-Amara, it should be noted that the artillery employed by the Turks consisted for the most part of 40-pr. Krupp guns and 18-pr. Krupps. Neither threw H.E. shells. The 40-pr. shell was filled with a black powder bursting charge; the shell burst on impact, but its effect was not materially very harmful. It made a great noise, caused a good deal of smoke, and its greatest effect was moral. The 18-pr. threw shrapnel of fair quality and some segmental shell which burst on

[1] Lieuts. Mason and Naylor were not immediately engaged in the fight at Ctesiphon, the former being in charge of the Brigade Reserve Ammunition Column, and the latter of the Salvage Section.

Digitized by Google

impact As the siege progressed, the Turks brought into use a more modern field gun, of high velocity, and firing H.E. shell of small calibre. Later the enemy brought up some howitzers, but these again were of small calibre, and did little material damage. Some trench mortars were also used by the Turks, as well as a big old-fashioned bronze mortar, which threw a round shell of large diameter. I never heard that this did any damage. Their guns were accurate enough, but I did not hear much praise of their gunnery from our R.A. officers.

As a digger of trenches, the Turkish soldier is very hard to beat. He is very hard-working and very quick in getting shelter, while particularly skilful in siting his trenches. The way in which he sapped up to our trenches during the siege was worthy of praise. Great importance was attached by the enemy to the use of snipers. They were numerous and very expert, both in making cover for themselves and in choosing advantageous places from which to shoot. I heard it said many times, though I cannot corroborate it from personal observation, that many of their snipers were using telescopic sights. They were good, bold bombers, too, and in this respect were as good as our men.

Now, as to our side of the picture: Our artillery was varied. Four 4.7-inch guns, mounted on small barges ; four 5-inch guns, mounted on carriages ; and four 4-inch guns—all the twelve being old naval guns of a bygone pattern, and taking some twenty minutes to change their target. In addition, we had eighteen 18-pr. field guns and four 4.5-inch howitzers. The foregoing composed the main armament; there were, besides, a few small pieces, not of much account.

Bombs for our soldiers were manufactured, for the most part, on the spot. The same applies to the trench mortar. It speaks much for the ingenuity of the makers that these mortars were of some effect.

Now for a description of the defences of the town of Kut-el-Amara. On our arrival we found practically none, with the exception of the Fort, of which a description will be given later. It seems that there had been a difference of opinion as to the advisability of holding the place and as to the feasibility of doing so. It had been rumoured that a report had been handed in by a specialist on fortification to the effect that it would take 20,000 men to properly hold Kut. As such a force was at no time available for such an enterprise, the matter seems to have been allowed to drop,

Digitized by Google

and defences against an attack only by Arabs taken in hand. In this way the Fort and its three block-houses came into existence. The particular site was decided on because the banks of the Tigris just there were very suitable for the disembarkation of men, animals, and supplies, and the Fort was designed to hold these men, animals, and supplies until they could be forwarded to the expeditionary force up the river. This Fort, then, was a mud-walled enclosure, the walls bullet-proof and of such a height as to give two tiers of fire. As the Arabs had no artillery, the question of defences against guns was not considered. Overhead cover and back traverses were in course of construction, but very little work on these had been carried out when the 6th Division reached Kut-el-Amara on the 4th December. In the same way the three block-houses were bullet-proof enclosures for 6 to 8 men.

The siege may be divided into two phases The first phase extended from the commencement up to the 19th January 1916, and was the active one. During this period the Turks were enterprising and made divers attacks of varying intensity. They pushed their trenches close up to ours ; their rifle fire was heavy day and night; they bombarded frequently; and there was always in the minds of us all that they would assault at any time. From the 19th January to the day of the capitulation the Turks pursued a passive policy. The idea of an attack passed from our minds, as it became evident that the enemy's policy was to keep us within our lines and starve us into surrender.

Our chief enemies then became starvation and water, to be followed at a later period by disease. As the snows in the Caucasus begin to melt, the Tigris becomes over-full and floods its banks. The whole of the ground held by us during the siege would have been covered with water, had not constant " bunding " been carried out. This was done mostly by night; by day the enemy's snipers were very active, especially from the right bank of the river, and the places to be " bunded " were much exposed to this fire. This " bund " building was a hazardous and very important duty, but it was successfully accomplished. And in spite of the river rising to very dangerous flood levels and giving cause for grave anxiety, the water was kept out of our lines. At the height of the floods a sea separated the combatants on the north of Kut.

In the matter of aeroplanes, those possessed by the British in Mesopotamia outnumbered considerably those of the enemy, but the 6th Division in Kut had no serviceable 'planes, and depended

Digitized by Google

entirely on those with the relieving force. Until the 18th February the enemy made no appearance in the air, but on that date his first aeroplane came over, soon to be followed by another. These were both Fokker machines, and much faster than anything possessed by our people, with the result that, though in the minority, the two Turkish 'planes were enabled to go where they pleased and to do as they liked. At first we had no anti-aircraft contrivances, but carriages for guns and machine-guns were soon improvised out of barrels, and a table of sights was worked out by Major Harvey, R.F.A., both of which improvisations were of great use.

Towards the latter end of the siege, the relieving force 'planes were employed in bringing provisions to us in Kut, but the quantities so brought were too small to be of any use.

I will now give particulars of such events of the siege as I remember :—

On the 4th December a bridge was thrown across the Tigris at a point just east of the Fort, and on the 5th the whole of the Cavalry Brigade, together with nearly the whole of the 6th Divisional Transport, crossed by it to the right bank, and made their way down river to Ali-al-Gharbi. The crossing was effected only just in time. The Turks began shelling the bridge in the afternoon, and towards evening the Turkish infantry commenced to close in from the north-east, making things rather unpleasant for the last carts as they crossed. The bridge was then dismantled, and on the 6th December the siege began.

On the 7th December entrenching started in earnest. I may remark here that it struck us all at the time that there did not seem to be any set plan for the defence of the place. Much time was wasted in digging trenches that were subsequently abandoned for others on a different site. This sort of thing leads to endless grumbling amongst the rank and file. However, after a time the main scheme of defence evolved itself. In the particular sector with which the 43rd were concerned, it was decided to hold the Fort as the right of the line, which thence extended eastwards through the three block-houses. A fire trench was excavated; the 17th Brigade was told off to the right sector of this line, and the 16th Brigade the left—up to the Tigris River. Two regiments of the 17th Brigade (103rd Mahratta Light Infantry and 119th Bombay Infantry) were ordered to garrison the Fort; while the 22nd Punjabis and ourselves were to hold the sector of the entrenchment to the east of the Fort, i.e., the part of the line allotted to the 17th

Digitized by Google

Brigade. We and the Punjabis held it in turn—48 hours on duty and 48 hours off, the regiment off duty being the Brigade General Reserve for the time being, in bivouac close to 17th Brigade Headquarters.

On the 8th December the pontoon bridge was again thrown across the Tigris at a spot due east of the town of Kut. I remember that this was a cause of discussion amongst us, for it seemed to point to the fact that the town was to be abandoned, and that the retirement down the river was to be renewed. At this time the Turkish forces were in touch with our defences on the north, but had not yet closed round to the south of the town. The 43rd received orders to cross by it, and to take up a position on the right bank, for the purpose of covering the bridge. This order was subsequently altered, and only one company was sent. Major Henley, with R Company, carried out this duty in the afternoon, and later the same afternoon he was relieved by a double company of the 67th Punjabis.

At daybreak on the 9th December the bridge-head was heavily attacked by the Turks and driven in. To cover the retirement the 30th Brigade was called out, and subsequently the 43rd turned out from its post as General Reserve of the 17th Brigade. The double company of the 67th Punjabis suffered several casualties during its retirement, amongst them being the Company Commander. The dismantlement of the bridge was immediately commenced, and was completed during the night of the 9th/10th December. Whether it was ever intended to use this bridge for the further retirement of the 6th Division I have never heard. If that was the intention, then why send only a company to hold it where a brigade would not have been too much? Again, if it was not intended to use the bridge, why build it?

On the morning of the 10th December, Lieut. Brown was killed in the first-line trenches, and Major Henley and Q.-M.-S. Burbridge were wounded.

During the evening of the 12th December the Turks made an attack on the north-west defences, which lasted about an hour and then subsided.

On the 16th December Lieut. Mellor, with R Company, reinforced the two Indian battalions in the Fort.

On the 22nd December the Turk began a heavy artillery bombardment on the Fort and first-line trenches. We had two men killed and two wounded in the Regiment.

Digitized by Google

On the 23rd the 43rd were relieved by the 22nd Punjabis, and went into General Reserve. Heavy shelling continued throughout the day.

On the 24th December the bombardment increased in intensity, and during the morning an attack was made by the Turks on the Fort. About 1 p.m. the 43rd moved out of bivouac, and was stationed at the junction of the main communication trench and Gurkha communication trench, in order to be handy for reinforcing the Fort if need be. Artillery and rifle fire was very heavy at this time. Shortly after reaching this point, Brigadier-General Hoghton received word from the officer commanding the Fort that one of the Indian regiments there could not be relied on, and asking for a fresh battalion. The 43rd was then sent forward.

The Turkish attack had by this time spent itself. The north-east bastion had become a ruin, and the northern walls on each side of it were much knocked about. Many dead and wounded Turks were lying close up to the walls, and there were also a few dead Turks inside them. On reaching the Fort we were told off to hold the wall of the N.E. bastion as far as East Corner, taking up this line, company by company, as the Indian battalion was withdrawn. By about 4 p.m. this was successfully accomplished. During this period there was heavy artillery fire and intense infantry fire, but no actual attack. The rifle fire of the Turks was very high, most of it clearing the Fort, the bullets falling well south of it.

When we had finally taken over, the disposition of companies was as follows: R company, under Lieut. Mellor, held the barricade across the gorge of the north-east bastion; then came S Company (Lieut. Naylor), then Q Company (Lieut. Heawood); and, lastly, P Company, under Captain Gilchrist (52nd Sikhs), who had been lent to us by the 6th Division.

About 8 p.m. the Turks resumed the attack on the N.E. bastion, and succeeded in driving out of it the 103rd Mahratta Light Infantry. As was previously remarked, the walls of this bastion were a heap of ruins and very difficult to hold, and the Turks attacked it in force. But they never penetrated any farther, for R Company, together with some men of the Bombay Volunteer Artillery Battery, the whole under the command of Major Anderson (Bombay Volunteer Artillery), successfully put a stop to the enemy's progress.

The Turkish attack on the wall east of the bastion, held by S, P, and Q Companies, never came to much. It was delivered in

Digitized by Google

driblets at different times, and the Turks lost heavily from the rifle and machine-gun fire of our three companies. The credit for this success was principally due to Captain Gilchrist, who very skilfully posted machine-guns and riflemen so as to sweep the points of egress from the Turkish trenches. The maintenance of the barricade was at one time a touch-and-go affair; Major Anderson and Lieut. Mellor were both wounded, and several men were killed and wounded. The situation looked so serious that it was thought that it would be necessary to evacuate the barricade and occupy the second-line fire trench, which would then be used as the north face of the Fort. But a timely reinforcement of a double company of the 48th Pioneers, sent from the town of Kut, pulled the balance in our favour, and it was decided to hold on to the barricade. The Turks still kept pressing the attack till about midnight, when they had had enough of it, and desisted from their effort.

It was about this time that the Norfolk Regiment sent up a company, under Lieut. Reed, and this company took over the barricade for the remainder of the night (24th/25th December).

The casualties suffered by the 43rd in this affair amounted to about thirty, besides Lieut. Mellor above mentioned and Lieut. Naylor, late in the afternoon. These losses fell mainly on R Company. They do not appear heavy, but it must be remembered that the strength of companies did not average more than about sixty apiece, and S, P, and Q Companies suffered very slightly.

The morning of Christmas Day broke clear and fine, and the Turks were very quiet for the whole day. From now until the 2nd January nothing of moment occurred There was some heavy shell and rifle fire from the Turks, but otherwise they showed little activity. The defences of the Fort were taken in hand and improved. In place of manning its mud walls, which were useless against artillery fire, trenches were dug close up to the walls, which were loopholed at the ground line. The inner trenches were improved and deepened, and short communication trenches made to connect them with the fire trench.

On the 31st December some Turkish wounded, who had been lying outside our walls since the Christmas fight, were successfully collected and brought into the Fort by a party of our men under Captain Gilchrist. Their wounds were in a fearful state, as can easily be imagined; but, wonderful to relate, every one of them

Digitized by Google

recovered, and they were all handed over to their own people on our capitulation.

On the 3rd January the report was rife amongst all ranks that General Aylmer had left Amara with the relieving force on the 1st January; that he was at Ali-al-Gharbi on this day; and that it was confidently expected that we should be relieved on the 10th of the month.

On the 5th January the Turks made an attack on Woolpress Village, and were repulsed.

On the 12th January Major Henley rejoined from hospital.

On the 14th January the Sheikh Saad action was successfully fought by General Aylmer. This caused great elation, and then followed the success at Wadi on the 16th.

It was about this time that a movement amongst the Turkish troops had become apparent. Marshal Von der Goltz had arrived. It was rumoured that he had been sent from Germany to take over the command of the whole of the Turkish Eastern Front; and on the 18th January the Turkish forces in front of the northern defences of Kut withdrew from immediate contact with our troops and fell back for about 2,000 yards to some redoubts which they had thrown up all round our northern defences. The motive for this rearrangement then became evident, viz: to hold and pen in the garrison of Kut-el-Amara with as few troops as possible, and thus release the bulk of the Turkish forces for opposing the advance of the relieving force. This was the policy of the German Marshal; and then commenced the second phase of the siege.

On the 21st January the advance of General Aylmer's forces was checked at El Hannah.

For the next ten days the weather was atrocious. There was much rain, and the cold was intense; the trenches were knee-deep in water and mud; the river began to rise; and about the 23rd January the first line trenches to a great extent became flooded and untenable. The Turks were in a similar plight. After the noise of the heavy rifle and artillery fire, which had been going on since the commencement of the siege, the quiet that prevailed just about now was very marked.

On the 28th January our rations were 1 lb. of horseflesh and 12 oz. of bread (made of atta). There was no shortage of rations at this period, though there was, of course, a dislike to the horseflesh. Wood for cooking purposes was impossible to get, as the palm-tree is useless for fuel, so oil was taken into use. Fortunately a barge

Digitized by Google

filled with crude oil from the Persian oilfields was amongst the things that had been left in Kut, and after some experiments this was found to be an efficient substitute for wood. It was very dirty, and the cooks became as black as sweeps, but it did its work.

On the 10th February the rations were, meat as before, bread ½ lb., and jam 1 oz.

On the 18th February the first enemy aeroplane appeared—a German Fokker—which dropped a few bombs, but without doing damage.

On the 22nd February the 43rd, together with the remainder of the 17th Brigade, stood by, for the purpose of co-operating with the relieving force to the northwards. Nothing, however, matured in that respect.

During the remainder of February nothing of note happened. There was constant digging, both by day and by night—principally by night—for the upkeep and repair of the defences, and more particularly for the making of " bunds " against the floods. Enemy sniping was constant, and there was some gun-fire.

The health of the 43rd remained good. At this period we had ten men unfit for duty in hospital, and fifteen convalescents, also unfit for duty, but discharged from hospital. Hospital accommodation in Kut was limited, and only the very bad cases were kept there.

On the 2nd March an unusually heavy artillery and aerial bombardment was directed by the Turks on the town of Kut.

On the 8th March General Aylmer made his long-looked-for attack against the Dujailah Redoubt. Whether he wanted to attack or not, it was imperatively necessary that something should be done at once, as the floods were increasing rapidly. The 43rd, 22nd Punjabis, and Sirmoor Sappers and Miners were withdrawn from the Fort and concentrated in the town of Kut, the idea being that, if Aylmer's attack was successful, we were to cross the river south of Kut and fall on the right flank of the retreating Turks. However, by the evening it became apparent that something had gone wrong, and that the Turks had not been shifted. We remained at our place of concentration for the night and for the whole of the next day, and then returned to our old stations—bitterly disappointed.

By the 20th March our bread ration was down to 5 oz.; horseflesh still 1 lb.

On the 26th March Turkish aeroplanes bombed the hospital, killing eleven men and wounding twenty-one.

Digitized by Google

On the 29th March the rations were 4 oz. bread and $1\frac{1}{4}$ lb. horse-flesh. In addition some dried ginger was served out to British troops, and used (boiled) as a substitute for tea. Tobacco was now unobtainable; dried leaves of the apricot tree was the favourite substitute.

On the 22nd April I remember General Gorringe's force attacking the Sannaiyat position. The attack failed; and on the 29th April we capitulated.

The general health of the 43rd varied with the two phases of the siege. It was very good during the first phase, when plenty of work, ample rations, and the hope of a speedy relief kept the men cheerful and well. It was during the second phase of the siege that the health deteriorated. No active fighting, the monotony of the work, and the meagreness of the ration reacted on the minds of all, and towards the end of the siege enteritis made its appearance and carried off many a good and gallant fellow. And those who escaped this disease were mere skeletons of their normal selves.

Digitized by Google

THE ATTEMPT TO RELIEVE KUT.

Summary of Operations.

(*See Sketch Map No. 5.*)

The foregoing descriptions of the Siege of Kut contain frequent references to the efforts of the relieving force to come to the succour of the garrison, and it is evident that the beleaguered troops, receiving little information of what was going on outside, could not understand why such a large force was unable to cut its way through. Yet that force struggled manfully to effect its purpose, and failed not so much on account of the Turkish resistance as by reason of the climatic conditions of a country subject to sudden floods, which, by producing an impassable barrier of water and of mud, shattered all British plans and hopes. There is little doubt that had these unfortunate conditions not supervened, the relief force, which was of considerable strength, would have won its way through.

Before giving the personal experience of officers who fought with the detachment of the Regiment which formed a part of this force, we will summarize the sequence of events, as related in the several official dispatches.

It will be remembered that, when General Townshend established himself in Kut, the Cavalry Brigade and a convoy of transport animals were dispatched south to Ali-al-Gharbi, where, with some infantry and guns sent up from Basra, they formed an advanced post for the relieving force. Major-General Aylmer, V.C., was placed in command of the troops, now being collected about Amara, with instructions to push forward as soon as the concentration of his force was

Digitized by Google

.ted
ıad,
/ere
ved
the

ered
eral
ıad.
the
the
gris
day
the
ıim

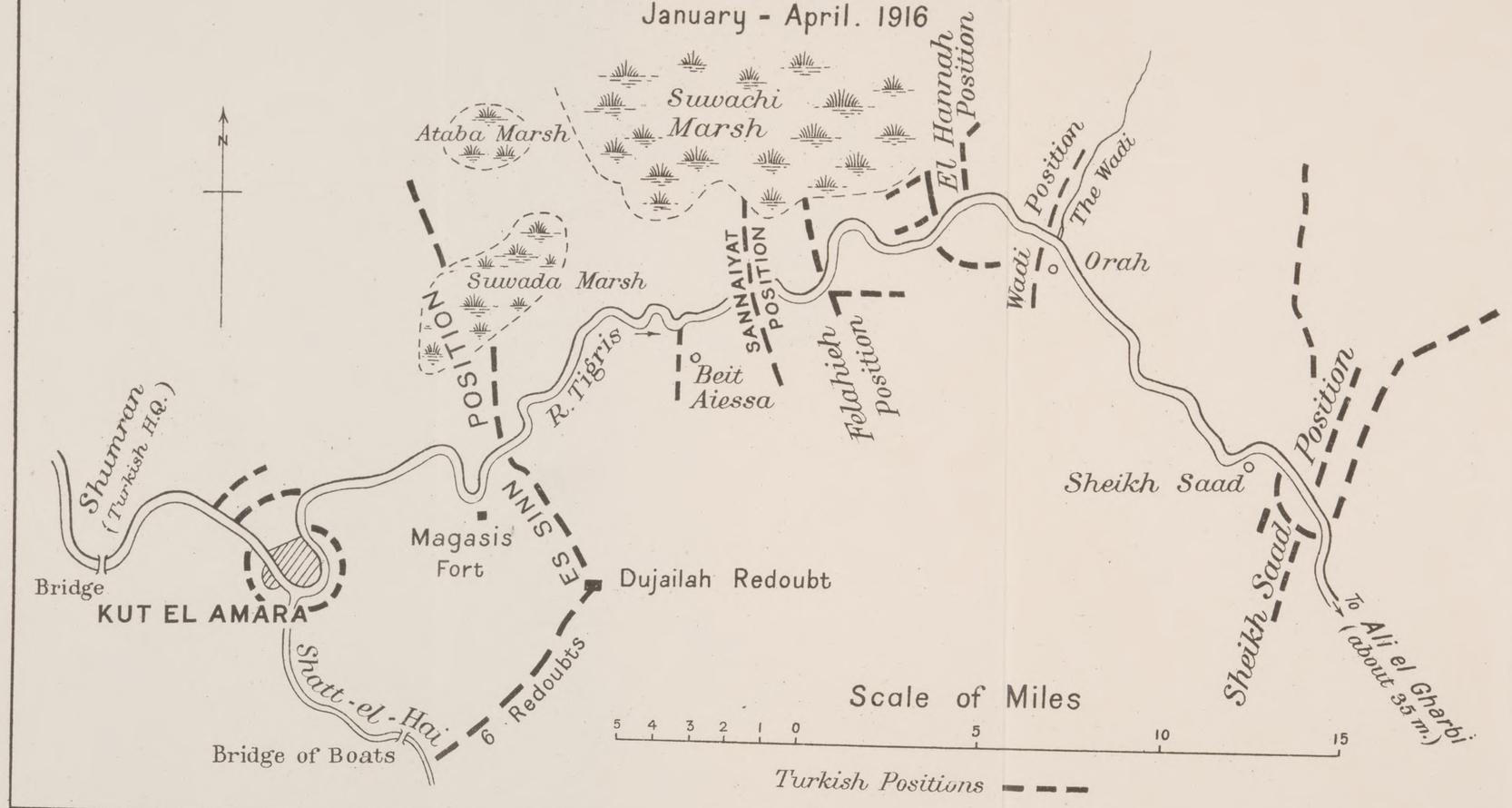
the
eral
ng-
jor-
avy
ap-
ers
ıd's
ies,
ed,
y's
nd,
ım,
00.
ole,
3th
ith
ind
left

Digitized by Google

SKETCH MAP ILLUSTRATING

ACTIONS FOR THE RELIEF OF KUT EL AMARA

January - April. 1916



completed. In the meanwhile, Turkish mounted troops had occupied the position at Sheikh Saad, and during the last days of December 1915 were reinforced by the enemy in great strength, who moved thither by passing to the north of Kut, in view of the British garrison, though out of range of the guns.

On the 4th January 1916, General Aylmer ordered an advance of his leading troops, under Major-General Younghusband, from Ali-al-Gharbi, on Sheikh Saad. Younghusband moved forward on both banks of the river, and on the 6th January got in touch with the enemy, whom he found entrenched astride the Tigris three and a half miles east of Sheikh Saad. That day he attempted to turn the Turkish right flank; but the enemy's cavalry, assisted by hostile Arabs, held him off.

Next morning General Aylmer brought up the remainder of his force, and forthwith ordered a general attack on the enemy's position, Major-General Younghusband commanding on the left bank and Major-General Kemball on the right bank. Very heavy fighting lasted all day, and resulted in Kemball capturing the trenches on the right bank, with 600 prisoners and two guns; but on the left bank Younghusband's force was unable to turn the Turks out of their trenches, so dug in opposite to them. On the 8th little happened, as the troops required rest after their hard day's fighting; but on the 9th the Turks gave way, and, pressed by Aylmer, fell back about ten miles upstream, with a loss in the Sheikh Saad fight estimated at 4,500. Two days' heavy rain made the roads impassable, and prevented a rapid pursuit; but by the 13th Aylmer had pushed forward, and was again up with the enemy, who was discovered in position behind the Wadi (a stream flowing into the Tigris on the left

Digitized by Google

bank) and across the river in trenches on the right bank. Aylmer attacked the Wadi position on the following day, and after some resistance drove out the Turks, who retired to a position five miles to the west, with Aylmer on their heels. The weather during the next few days continued most unfavourable for active operations, but General Aylmer reorganized his force, with headquarters above the Wadi, and his advanced troops in touch with the enemy, now entrenched across the Umm-el-Hannah defile.

This was the situation of the relief force on the 19th January 1916, when Lieut.-General Sir P. H. N. Lake, K.C.B., K.C.M.G., took over command of the Indian Expeditionary Force "D" from Sir John Nixon, whose health had given way. On the 20th the enemy's position was subjected to a systematic bombardment, and during the night the infantry advanced to within 200 yards. On the morning of the 21st the attack was delivered, but with little success; the right column was held by the Turks when within 100 yards of the trenches, and the left column, although it rushed the enemy's defences and held them for nearly two hours, was counter-attacked out of them, chiefly owing to the failure of the reinforcements to come up. At 1 p.m. a second effort was made to clear out the enemy, but heavy rain and its attendant mud hampered the advance across the open ground, which was swept by an intense enemy fire, and the assault collapsed. Holding on as best they could until dark, our troops then withdrew to their original position, some three-quarters of a mile from the enemy's line. Our losses had been severe, and any further immediate attack was out of the question; so a six-hour armistice was arranged, when the Turks and the British buried the dead and collected the wounded.

Digitized by Google

It was now found necessary to reorganize the relief force and await reinforcements from Basra. February, therefore, passed in comparative inaction, and, although everything was ready for a further advance at the beginning of March, bad weather intervened to prevent operations reopening. Unfortunately, this delay was of immense benefit to the enemy, who was enabled to get up strong reinforcements, to greatly strengthen his El Hannah position, and to prepare in rear other successive positions at Felahieh, Sannaiyat, and Nakhailat, as well as to improve the southern portion of his old Es Sinn position, which he now made his main line of defence. From the Dujailah Redoubt, which had originally been on the enemy's extreme right flank, he had constructed six redoubts on a line thrown back south-westward to the bank of the Shatt-el-Hai.

General Aylmer decided to demonstrate against the Hannah position in order to induce the Turks to believe that he intended to repeat his attack there, and at the same time to move the bulk of his force, by the right bank of the Tigris, 14 miles across country, and attack the Dujailah Redoubt with the greatest vigour. The essence of this plan was surprise, and it was hoped that the capture of the redoubt would be followed by the immediate withdrawal of the Turks from the east and south of Kut, and the consequent relief of the garrison.

On the 7th March Aylmer gave his final instructions to his subordinate commanders. To Younghusband, assisted by the gunboats on the river, was entrusted the task of containing the enemy in his positions on the left bank of the Tigris. The remainder of the troops were formed into two columns, commanded respectively by Kemball and Keary, with a reserve

Digitized by Google

of infantry and a Cavalry Brigade held at the disposal of the Corps Commander. Kemball's column, covered on the outer (southern) flank by the Cavalry Brigade, was to turn the enemy's right flank and assault Dujailah from the south, while Keary supported by operating from the east of the redoubt.

That night the difficult march across country was successfully carried out, and the presence of the attacking troops was apparently unsuspected by the enemy, since he was found to be holding the redoubt but lightly. Soon, however, it became evident that a hitch had occurred. Keary was in his appointed place at daybreak waiting for Kemball's attack to commence, but the latter's column was more than an hour behind time in reaching its place of deployment. Even then a further three hours were thrown away while reconnaissances were being sent forward and guns registering, and this unfortunate delay once and for all put an end to the element of surprise, and enabled the Turks to fully man their defences.

When at length Kemball delivered his attack, his troops met with strong resistance, and, in spite of the support of Keary's attack from the east, were held up. Reinforcements were sent to the southern column, and at 1 p.m. Kemball pushed forward to within 500 yards of the Dujailah Redoubt, but only to be held again by counter-attacks by the reinforced Turks. The troops now began to suffer from want of water, but none was procurable, and it became evident to General Aylmer that unless the redoubt could be carried before nightfall, it would be necessary to withdraw his force to the river. A final assault was, therefore, determined on, and at 5.30 p.m., after a heavy bombardment, was launched from the south

Digitized by Google

and east. A desperate struggle ensued, a footing in the redoubt was actually gained by some of the troops; but the Turks rained shrapnel upon them, and then, counter-attacking heavily, drove them out. The British attack failed, the exhausted force withdrew to its positions facing the redoubt, and next day (9th March) retired unmolested to the Wadi.

On the 12th March Major-General Gorringe took over the command of the Corps from General Aylmer, but no further operations on a large scale were, for the time being, feasible. Rain fell, the Tigris came down in flood, and the whole force had to be employed in building "bunds," in the endeavour to prevent the entire country from being inundated. Every possible plan for an advance was, meanwhile, being considered, and it was finally decided that, on account of the floods elsewhere, the El Hannah position offered the best chance for a successful attack.

The 7th Division started sapping forward towards the enemy's front trenches, and by the 28th March their sapheads were within 150 yards of the Turkish front line. The Division was then relieved by the 13th Division, who, on the 1st April, came up from Sheikh Saad to make the assault, which, however, had to be postponed on account of more rain and further floods. By the 4th April the weather had improved, and at daybreak of the 5th the 13th Division, commanded by General Maude, dashed forward, and, without a check, cleared the Turks out of their first and second lines. Our artillery and machine-guns then opened on the enemy's third and other lines, and by 7 a.m. the whole position had been captured.

The Turks now fell back to their Felahieh and Sannaiyat positions, distant three and six miles respectively from Hannah, and an immediate pursuit

Digitized by Google

and attack became imperative, because the Tigris had again begun to rise, and if it were to rise rapidly the Turks, by breaking the "bunds" in front of their positions, would be able to flood the whole country over which the attack would have to be delivered. Between 7.15 and 7.30 p.m. that night, therefore, the Felahieh position was bombarded, and then assaulted by the 13th Division, who, within two hours, had succeeded in capturing and consolidating the position.

So far all had gone well, and the 7th Division, moving forward, passed through the 13th Division, and advanced, under cover of darkness, towards Sannaiyat, against the northern portion of which position they were to deliver the assault at dawn (April 6th). A series of misfortunes now commenced. The country over which the Division advanced was found to be so cut up by deep trenches running in all directions that progress was most difficult, and at dawn the assaulting troops were still 2,300 yards from the enemy's position. Nevertheless, in spite of the knowledge that the Turks were prepared to meet the attack, they pressed on, across a perfectly flat and open country, exposed to heavy artillery and machine-gun fire, with the greatest gallantry, until within 700 yards of the position. Here they were checked, and finally, after suffering severe losses, were forced to retire for some distance, when they dug themselves in at 1,000 yards from the enemy.

The position of the 7th Division was between the Tigris on their left and the Suwachi[1] Marsh on their right. The river continued to rise rapidly, and the floods began to sweep inland. The wind changed to the north, and blowing across the Suwachi Marsh,

[1] Also spelt Suwaicha and Suwaikieh.

Digitized by Google

blew its swollen waters southwards over the country. "Bunds" had to be thrown up quickly on either flank to prevent the inrush of water from flooding the troops out of their trenches, and this work had to be carried out under the enemy's fire. The guns were soon surrounded by water, and the situation on the left bank of the Tigris became critical. On the right bank also the 3rd Division was in danger of being isolated by the inundations.

On the night of the 8th/9th April the 13th Division relieved the 7th Division in the trenches, and at 4 a.m. (9th April) issued out to assault Sannaiyat. On reaching a line 300 yards from the enemy, their presence was discovered by the Turks, who immediately sent up flares and poured in a heavy fire. Nothing daunted, however, Maude's first line pushed on and gained a footing in a portion of the enemy's front trenches, and, had supports been at hand, would undoubtedly have cleared the whole position. But misfortune again dogged the steps of the relief force; the supports, confused by the blinding flares in their eyes, lost direction and failed to join hands with the first line troops, who, soon overpowered by strong Turkish counter-attacks, were obliged to give way. The line thus driven back withdrew some 400 to 500 yards and dug in.

The attempt to capture the Sannaiyat position was now postponed, and General Gorringe made preparations for striking again at the Es Sinn position, intending first, however, to drive the enemy from his advanced position at Beit Aiessa, a few miles upstream from Sannaiyat, and on the right bank of the Tigris. It must be remembered that the inundations continued to impede all movement across country; but Keary, with the 3rd Division, succeeded in capturing the Beit

Digitized by Google

Aiessa position on the morning of the 17th April, after killing some 300 Turks and taking 180 prisoners.

At 5 p.m. the enemy's artillery bombarded Beit Aiessa and put up a barrage in rear of the 3rd Division, thus preventing the 13th Division from reinforcing. This was followed by a counter-attack from the south-west, which resulted in the Turks regaining the most important portion of the Beit Aiessa position. At night they counter-attacked fiercely and time after time, but the 13th Division having now reinforced the 3rd, our line held firm, and inflicted on the enemy losses estimated at some 5,000.

After this it was absolutely necessary to give the worn-out troops a rest, and during the next few days operations on the right bank were restricted to minor enterprises and pushing forward trenches towards the Es Sinn position. On the left bank, in the meanwhile, the 7th Division had been sapping up towards Sanna-iyat, and the enemy having apparently withdrawn some of his troops, it was decided to assault that position on the 20th April. But the Suwachi Marsh gave trouble again, as the wind, shifting to the north on the 19th, blew the marsh waters into the trenches and across the front of the 7th Division, and it was not until the 22nd that an advance became possible. That morning the 19th Brigade of the 7th Division moved forward to the attack, covered by artillery fire from both banks of the river. Forging ahead, through water and mud, they penetrated the enemy's first two lines, and were then counter-attacked twice. The first counter-attack they beat off, but had to give way before the second, as the men's rifles had become so choked with mud that they could not be fired. By 8.40 a.m. the Turks were re-established in their trenches, and our men were back in their former

Digitized by Google

positions. That the enemy lost heavily in this encounter is certain, but our own casualties amounted to almost 1,300.

This was the last attempt to cut a way through the investing Turks; General Gorringe's troops were completely worn out, and, having lost one-third of their original numbers, were incapable of further effort. But there remained the chance of being able to send provisions to the beleaguered garrison, and so prolong the siege until the relief force could recuperate. With this object the fast steamer "Julnar" was loaded with 270 tons of provisions, and, under the command of Lieut. Firman, R.N., and Lieut.-Commander Cowley, R.N.V.R.,[1] started at 8 p.m. on the 24th April from Felahieh, on the desperate attempt to run the blockade. She reached Magasis (about 9 miles short of Kut) a few hours later, but was there attacked and captured by the Turks, her two officers being killed and her crew being either killed or taken prisoners.

1st BATTALION DETAILS WITH THE RELIEF FORCE.

When the 6th Division was finally hemmed in in Kut there were on the way up river about 100 men of the Regiment, who were rejoining on recovery from wounds or illness, together with some six or seven officers who had been sent from various regiments in India as reinforcements. These were for the time being attached to the Connaught Rangers, but early in 1916 Major L. J. Carter, who had now returned to Mesopotamia from India, was ordered to form a Provisional Battalion out of them and a large draft expected from England.

[1] Both were subsequently awarded the V.C.

Digitized by Google

The draft, commanded by Major Hon. W. R. S. Barrington (3rd Battalion), consisted of 11 officers and 298 men, and arrived at Wadi Camp about the middle of January, when the new Provisional Battalion was formed :—

Major L. J. CARTER, commanding.
Major Hon. W. R. S. BARRINGTON, second in command.
Captain S. F. HAMMICK,[1] Acting Adjutant.
2nd Lieut. W. W. WOODING,[2] Acting Quartermaster.
Sergeant-Major DANCEY, Acting R.-S.-M.

Total strength of R. and F. just under 400.

MAJOR L. J. CARTER.

EXTRACTS FROM MAJOR CARTER'S DIARY.

February 14th.—Started to draw equipment from a battalion which had been joined up with another battalion, on account of losses at Sheikh Saad and other actions. Inspected the draft. Wrote to Foljambe, who has recovered from the wound received at Ctesiphon, and asked him to join us as soon as possible as Adjutant.

February 15th.—Formed the Battalion into two companies : A Company, Captain Hammick; B Company, Captain R. G. H. Tatton. Took over our machine-guns, packalls, etc., and found some

[1] Had already served in France with 2nd Battalion, and had been wounded.
[2] Promoted from ranks of 2nd Battalion for service in France.—ED.

Digitized by Google

stores of the 43rd Regimental Institute, which were taken over, and Barrington appointed President R.I.

Lieut. Staley (attached from 4th Somersets) appointed M.G. Officer.

Turks did some shelling; we digging cover.

February 16th.—Completed drawing equipment, with the exception of signalling stores. Quiet day. Heard there are a lot of officers of the Regiment attached to other units out here, so applied for them.

February 17th.—Received orders to go into the trenches to-morrow and to send machine-guns in to-night.

There are only some six men who know anything about them.

February 18th.—Battalion Parade at 10 a.m. At 6 p.m. the Battalion moved off and got into Pioneer Trench by dusk. This is a reserve trench, and not much going on. Private Russell wounded.

February 19th.—A certain amount of shelling and rifle fire throughout the day. At 8.30 p.m. heavy firing all along the line; guns on both sides opened. Heard that the 51st Sikhs suffered considerably.

February 20th.—Practically no shooting on either side. Had some aiming drill in the trenches, as I found that a lot of men had fired no more than a recruit's course, and some not even that.

February 21st.—In the morning there was little firing, but it increased later in the day. Private Ford was killed, and Private Lambourne wounded.

Sent a digging party up to first-line trenches.

Received Operation Orders. Our Brigade (28th) is to contain the Turks, while a flanking movement round their left is carried out.

Turks opened a very heavy gun and rifle fire from 9 p.m. to 9 45. C.-S.-M. Smith wounded.

Digging party sent out under Lieut. Elliot, who was wounded.

February 22nd.—Guns opened at 6.30 a.m., to attract attention from Gorringe's Column, which was moving round the left of the Hannah position. The 28th Brigade was held ready to assault the eastern face of the position, but after a brisk exchange of shells the affair seemed to fizzle out at about 11 a.m., though we could see the flanking column, which seemed to us to be in the Turkish trenches.

More digging, but the rest of the day was quiet.

Digitized by Google

February 23rd.—At 5.30 a.m. our machine guns opened indirect fire, but the Turks did not reply.

Reports say that yesterday's operations succeeded in their object. Hear that Gorringe was hit. The Turks appear to be retiring into the Es Sinn position, only standing by in front of us. Firing more lively this evening. Regiment digging trenches from Rajput Street to Oldham Street.

February 24th.—Quiet up to 2.15 p.m. We bombarded enemy position, but nothing much doing. Reports point to the enemy's retirement on Es Sinn.

February 25th.—Moved into front-line trench; move completed by 9 p.m.

February 26th.—Big digging programme by day and night. It would seem that an attack may be expected to-night.

February 27th.—Digging all day.

February 28th.—Heavy sniping. Anderson joined as Medical Officer. Queen's Trench completed. Ordered to be ready to go back to camp

February 29th.—Handed over to Composite Battalion of Norfolks and Dorsets. Heavy rain; trenches hardly fit to walk in. Started out at 3 p.m. and reached Pioneer Trench at 5 p.m. Waited until 8.30 p.m.; and as no transport turned up, marched to camp, leaving baggage under a guard. Arrived in camp an hour after midnight; distance about four miles. Very wet, and men dead beat.

March 1st.—At Orah Camp Foljambe joined us and took up the duties of Adjutant; also joined 9 officers[1] who had been attached to the Royal West Kents, amongst them Lieut. Meade. A draft of 100 men arrived. General cleaning up, as it was a fine day.

March 2nd.—Received orders to move at 4 p.m., but this was cancelled owing to threatening weather. Had Battalion Parade at 3 p.m.

March 3rd.—My horse was stolen. Move again postponed. Company officers' parade. Church Service.

[1] Captain R. H. G. Tatton, Lt. J. W. Meade, 2nd Lts. J. Widcombe, A. H. Truman, C. H. Riley, C. T. Davenport, E. B. Parkinson, G. F. Coulthard, H. E. F. Smyth (all Oxford and Bucks officers).

Digitized by Google

March 4th.—Orders again received to move across the Tigris, but again cancelled on account of weather.

March 5th.—The same thing again.

March 6th.—Weather threatening, but we moved at 8 p.m., with our transport. Night very dark, and there were no guides. Arrived at Sanna—or Senna—(7 miles) about 3 a.m. (March 7th); very heavy firing from all our guns, and the Turks replied with all theirs.

March 7th.—Rested all day, and at 6.45 p.m. marched to the position of deployment, which was reached at 6.15 a.m. (March 8th).

March 8th.—The 37th Brigade on the left of the line, 28th Brigade prolonging to the right, and linking up with the 9th Brigade (T.F.). The object of attack for the 28th Brigade was the Dujailah Redoubt, on the right flank of the Es Sinn position. The Battalion was in Brigade Reserve. The attack started at 7.30 a.m. A very strong position and a great number of machine-guns.

The Brigade got within 300 yards of the enemy's position. Later in the day some small parties succeeded in getting on to the parapet of the redoubt. The Battalion had just received orders to advance, when a message came from G.H.Q to the effect that we were to retire, as the attack had failed.

March 9th.—Retired to the Wadi; the Battalion on rearguard slightly engaged. Reached camp about midnight.

Very few casualties in the Battalion, but Lieut. Staley (M.G. Officer) was killed.

March 10th.—Rested in camp. Report says that we have given up Sanna camp, and that the Turks have occupied it. Some shelling.

March 11th.—Nothing doing.

March 12th.—Heavy rain. General Gorringe took over command from General Aylmer.

March 13th.—Received orders that we are to go into the trenches to-morrow.

March 14th.—Marched the Regiment into the trenches by platoons, starting at 8.45 a.m. All in by 1 p.m. Heavy sniping.

2nd Leicesters on our left, 31st Sikhs on our right.

March 15th.—Quiet day. Bombardment of enemy's front line to cover movement of 3rd Division on the right bank.

March 16th.—Selincourt and two men severely wounded trying to bury a dead Turk.

March 17th.—B Company went up into King's Trench. Quite hot, and flies are getting bad. Forward sapping commenced.

March 18th.—Heavy rain.

Digitized by Google

March 19th.—Guns on both sides busy. One man wounded. Rain at night.

March 20th.—Heavy sniping. Digging all day. One man killed.

March 21st.—Relieved by Composite Battalions (21st Brigade). Left the trenches about 1 p.m. Wet morning; going very bad.

March 22nd.—Men cleaning up in the morning; Adjutant's parade in afternoon.

March 23rd.—Running drill under Adjutant at 7.30 a.m.; Sergeant-Major's drill at 9.15 a.m. Our guns shelling.

March 24th.—River in flood; all available men put on to building a "bund" on the river bank.

March 25th.—Battalion parade at 10 a.m. and at 6.45 p.m.

March 26th.—Brigade parade at 8.30 a.m. to practise deploying. Bombardment in the evening.

March 27th.—One hundred men for digging in the trenches. Hostile aeroplane cleared off.

March 28th.—Fatigues all day.

March 29th.—Our aeroplanes very active. It is getting hotter.

March 30th.—Mills bombs handed over to the Battalion. We found the outposts to the north of the camp (100 men, under Barrington).

March 31st.—Received orders to load all our kits on to our mahelas; but this was afterwards postponed.

April 1st.—Rained all day. One man died of wounds.

April 2nd.—Fine. Received orders at 10.30 p.m. to go into the trenches to-morrow.

April 3rd.—Furnished fatigue parties to clean up H.L.I. Trench. Did not go into the trenches.

April 4th.—Orders for the assault of the El Hannah position to-morrow. Moved into H.L.I. Trench by 8.30 p.m. Only 1 officer per 40 men allowed to go into action (exclusive of Regimental Staff). The 28th Brigade in Reserve.

April 5th.—At 4.55 a.m. the assault was delivered on the enemy's first-line trenches. No preliminary bombardment.

The 13th Division took the first three lines in one rush. The 7th Division (ours) was in support. By 11 a.m. the Hannah position and machine-gun redoubt were taken. The troops then rested, and preparations were made for the assault on the Felahieh position, ordered for 7.45 p.m. This was successfully carried out with comparatively few casualties. Troops halted till 12 midnight,

Digitized by Google

April 6th.—The 7th Division, parading at 1.30 a.m., made a night march on to the Sannaiyat position, to be assaulted at 4.55 a.m.

The Provisional Battalion was on the right of the 28th Brigade—the right of the firing line.

The force arrived late at the position of deployment, and, owing to lack of reconnaissance, had to advance over the open in daylight.

About 5 a.m. heavy fire (artillery, machine-gun, and rifle) opened from the Turkish trenches.

The Battalion advanced and did splendidly, but was wiped out.[1] Practically every officer was killed or wounded, and only 17 men were left at the end of the day. I was knocked out comparatively early. Poor Foljambe was shot through the head almost at once; Hammick was hit twice, through the chest and arm; and Tatton through both hands and one leg. Altogether it was a very hot corner, and we got most of the enemy's attention, until the Composite Battalion of Black Watch and Seaforths came up on our left.

By request I sent in the names of three officers for mention, viz: Foljambe (had been mentioned three times before, I believe), Hammick, and Anderson (the M.O.).

The following is a copy of a note, written on a sheet of a field message-book, and received by me on the field after I was wounded:—

"To the O.C. Provisional Battalion, Oxford and Bucks L.I.

"On the Field, Sannaiyat,
"6th April 1916.

"I regret that, owing to a wound in the ankle, I am unable to visit the firing line, and thank you all for the gallantry and tenacity you displayed this morning. I am afraid it has been at very heavy cost, but I should like to place on record that you have done credit to the fine Regiment which many of you have not yet joined. I saw the attack of the 1st Oxford and Bucks Light Infantry at Ctesiphon, and I should like that Battalion to know that you are worthy to join them. With best wishes to you all for the speedy relief of Kut, I must bid you farewell.

"G. V. KEMBALL,
"Major-General."

---

[1] The Official Returns (corrected) show:—

	Officers.	Other Ranks.
Strength of Battalion going into action ...	13	265
Killed	5	51
Wounded	8	170
Missing	—	14

—ED.

Digitized by Google

WITH A DRAFT FROM ENGLAND TO MESOPOTAMIA, AND AFTERWARDS WITH THE NEWLY FORMED 1ST BATTALION.

DECEMBER 1915 TO JUNE 1916.

LIEUT. C. T. DAVENPORT'S DIARY.

December 9th, 1915.—Eight officers of the 3rd Battalion Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire Light Infantry proceeded to Shoreham, to take a draft of the 9th R. West Kents to Mesopotamia, to reinforce the 2nd R. West Kents. Captain R. H. G. Tatton in command, with Lieut. J. W. Meade[1] and 2nd Lieuts. C. I. Widcombe, C. H. Riley, Parkinson, Coulthard, Truman, and myself. We had 500 men all told, and, besides ourselves, there were 6 officers from the 10th Norfolks (2nd Lieuts. Bell, Stead, Watson, Abbot, Betts, and Leigh). We left Shoreham in the evening (i.e., Tatton and 6 subalterns, with 350 men), and changing at Portsmouth at midnight, met a draft of 11 officers and 350 men of the 3rd Oxford and Bucks, also proceeding to Mesopotamia for the 1st Battalion. Major the Honble. W. R. S. Barrington was in command, and with him were Captain S. F. Hammick,[2] 2nd Lieuts. Grosvenor, Griffin, Rance, Wilmot, Gardner, Field, Garrard, and Huggard.

December 10th.—Travelling all night, we reached Exeter at 5 a.m., and the Mayoress gave us all tea and sandwiches, which were most acceptable. At 8 a.m. we arrived at Keyham, meeting Meade with a draft of 150 men from the 3rd R. West Kents, went through to the Docks, and on board the s.s. "Kinfauns Castle," a Union Castle liner of about 11,000 tons—most comfortable, and the food very good. I shared a cabin with Rance and Coulthard. There were also on board drafts of the Norfolks (500), Dorsets (400), Cornwalls, Wilts, Hants, and a few sailors.

December 11th.—Sailed at 3.15 p.m., and a few hours later got into the Bay. We had a 4.7 in the stern, with a chief gunner in charge.

December 18th.—Reached Malta, after an uneventful voyage, our time having been spent in ordinary routine work, being inoculated, etc.

---

[1] 1st Battalion.

[2] Reserve of Officers, late 1st Battalion.

Digitized by Google

December 19th.—Left Malta in the afternoon, in company with the "Grampian," which had sailed from Devonport at the same time as ourselves.

December 22nd.—Arrived at Port Said in the morning, and had a great reception from a French cruiser and a Dutch liner. Heard that a Japanese steamer had been torpedoed and sunk outside Port Said.

December 23rd.—Coaled and left again at 4 p.m.; through the Canal; anchored in the Bitter Lakes.

December 25th.—We got into Suez yesterday at about 1 p.m.; a French cruiser and H.M.S. "Implacable" in the harbour; the band of the former played "Tipperary" in our honour. Something had gone wrong with our propellers, so we are at anchor, with divers seeing to it.

To-day has been much like any other day. The men grumbled a bit at having no Christmas dinner, and we tried to enliven things by getting up a sing-song in the evening, but as we could not get the piano on deck it was not a great success.

December 27th.—Left Suez yesterday. A Captain Franks (117th Mahrattas) gives us lectures on Mesopotamia; he was out there at the beginning, and was sent home badly wounded.

December 29th.—Passed Aden. We are pretty certain now that we are bound for the Persian Gulf direct, and not for Bombay.

January 3rd, 1916.—We are kept pretty busy now, getting the men's kit-bags sorted out, iron rations issued, etc.

January 4th.—Dropped anchor at Koweit, at the head of the Gulf, and packed up all ready for disembarkation.

January 5th.—The "Karadeniz," a small steamer, came alongside, and we were transferred to her for the journey up to Basra. She was a very dirty boat, and apparently had recently been used for the conveyance of Turkish prisoners. Originally she had belonged to the North-German Lloyd Company, and had been captured from the Turks. Very crowded on board, and most of the officers slept on deck.

January 6th.—Steaming all day up the Shatt-el-Arab, and arrived at Basra at about 6 p.m.

January 8th.—Disembarked, and occupied a large building used as a custom-house. As there was no accommodation for any officers here, Tatton and Meade went off to the Askar Barracks, where the draft of the Oxfords were quartered, to see if we (with the West Kents) could be put up there. We managed to get a

Digitized by Google

couple of tents, and we messed with the officers of the draft of Oxfords, having quite a good time. A fearful thunderstorm came on at night, completely flooding us out of our tent, and soaking everything.

January 10th.—Took the men out for a route march to try to get them fit, as we hear that we are to march all the way up to the front. The mud was dreadful, and marching most difficult.

January 11th.—Heard a good deal about the recent fight at Sheikh Saad, and at G.H.Q. we saw the casualty list, the size of which astonished us, for the official account had made it out to be quite a small show. I believe, as a matter of fact, that it was pretty nearly a failure for our people; weather vile; and hospital arrangements absolutely nil. They say that the drivers of the ambulance carts (only A.T. carts) were frozen in their seats, and the wheels of the carts stuck and could not be moved.

January 12th.—Took the men for a bathe in a canal. On the way back we met the drafts of the Norfolks and Dorsets marching out of Basra, on their way to the front. All the drafts are going up by road, marching in echelons of about 2,000 men. They say that we are to start on the 15th.

January 13th.—We were allotted a certain amount of wheel transport, with extra mules and drivers for the march, but the main baggage is to go up river in mahelas, sailed by Arabs. These dhows will take our tents and rations, and will meet us at our camp each day.

January 14th.—We had some trouble in loading our boat, as, when the rations and tents had been stowed away, there was no room for the wood to which we were entitled, and we were not allowed another boat.

I was appointed mess president for the march—a thankless task indeed. We have to provide for a month, and all the tinned stuff is fearfully dear. However, I managed to indent for a lot from the S. and T. on payment, but they mixed up our boxes with the men's rations, as we had no means whatever of marking them, and they were loaded in the dark.

January 15th.—We left camp at 1.30 p.m., on the march up, and made for Gomat Ali, only some 7 miles distant. The day was fine, and the mud had fortunately dried up. The boats were all ahead, and when we got into camp we found that our tents were already being unloaded. Wood for cooking became at once a

Digitized by Google

difficulty; we (West Kents) had practically none, and we had to borrow from the Oxfords.

We belong to No. 9 Echelon, commanded by Major Barrington, with Captain Hammick as his Adjutant, and composed of the following drafts: West Kents, 500; Oxfords, 350; Hants, 500; together with a Signal Company and some Veterinary Corps details.

January 16th.—Rouse at 6 a.m. Striking camp took some considerable time, as few of the men knew anything about folding up an Indian pattern tent. Shortage of wood prevented cooking, and the men got only some tea and a couple of biscuits before making a start at 9 a.m. We crossed the new channel of the Euphrates, but we had not marched far before it began to pour with rain, and the ground became a regular bog. We had 10 miles to go, and a miserable march it was, ploughing through the mud and soaked through, besides being hungry. It was impossible to keep the men together, as they sank and floundered in the mud at every step, the weight of their full packs and equipment adding to their troubles. Instead of reaching camp at 2 p.m. we did not arrive until 5.30 p.m., and then found that the boats had not come up. No food was, therefore, to be had, and no shelter. Our wheel transport was also miles behind, stuck in the mud, and we had to sit down in the rain and wait for the boats, which did not turn up until dark (6.30 p.m.). We soon had the tents pitched, and a meal for the men cooked; stragglers continued to come in throughout the night, but the wheel transport was still absent.

January 17th.—The men were so done up that we had to halt for the day, which gave an opportunity for the transport to come up. Unfortunately it rained again, and the camp became a quag-mire. The night brought torrents of rain, flooding us out of our tents and saturating everything. Many men went sick, and the doctor had to hail a hospital-boat going down river to take some of the worst cases to Basra.

January 18th.—Luckily a fine day, and a strong wind dried up the camp a bit, but the mud was still too bad for the transport to move, so we had to halt for another day. Now another misfortune overtook us, for the wind blew our mahela loose from its moorings across to the opposite bank of the river, and she could not get back against the wind, neither had we any means of crossing the river. The result was that we had no rations, and had to borrow some from the more fortunate Oxfordshires. We were still two days' march

Digitized by Google

from Kurna, where we were to draw our next supply of rations, and we only had half a day's ration for the mules left; so the Major telephoned to Basra for more rations as well as more mules. In reply he was told to push on.

The telegraph wires ran all along the river bank, and the Signal Company, marching with us, kept up communication with head-quarters at Basra.

January 19th.—We made a move to-day, and found the mud much better, though the transport stuck frequently, and did not reach camp until 10 p.m. Our boats were fairly punctual, and though it did rain during the night we managed to keep pretty dry.

January 20th.—Off again early after a good deal of trouble in putting our heavy (160 lb.) tents on board the boats, which could not come close inshore on account of the mud. Lost our way and got into an awful bog, in which we floundered about for quite an hour. The day was hot, and many men fell out from exhaustion, the 14 mile march in the vile mud proving too much for them. After crossing the old channel of the Euphrates we eventually reached Kurna in a very straggling column, and went to our camping-ground, about 400 yards from the river. The boats arrived at 10 p.m., five hours after we got in, and the wheel transport did not turn up at all.

January 21st.—Rained all day; camp more or less under water; poured all night, and flooded out of our tents; bitterly cold, followed by sleet and snow!

January 25th.—Remained in camp at Kurna until to-day, when we set out on our march to Amara, the next stage of our journey. Just outside Kurna we passed a mound, on which was erected a large bamboo cross to Captain R. M. Brooke, who was killed in 1915 in the boat attack which began the advance from Kurna to Amara.

January 27th.—Reached Ezra's Tomb after two days' marching in better weather, but having to cross endless streams, some of them with water up to our hips.

January 31st.—We crossed from the right to the left bank of the Tigris at Kalaat Salih, and after a certain number of vicissitudes, produced by mud, flood, and tardy boats and land transport, we marched into Amara soon after noon to-day. Went through the town and encamped on the north side.

February 1st.—Reloading stores on the mahelas and buying things in the bazaar, which is quite a good one. Heard about the

Digitized by Google

Hannah engagement, which took place on January 21st. The 7th and 3rd Divisions attacked, from a distance of 1,000 yards, a very strong Turkish position. The mud was awful, and the casualties were very heavy. Our troops had to retire, taking with them as many of the wounded as possible, but it was found that there was practically no accommodation for them, and a considerable number died from exposure.

February 2nd.—We set off again on the left bank of the river at 8.30 a.m., and had a lovely day, with no mud until midday, when, after a halt, we tried to take a short cut, which led us into a dreadful bog, in which we nearly lost some of the mules. We saw some natives spearing fish in the inland canals. They just threw three-pronged forks into the stream and brought out some beauties. We bought some at 2 annas each, and they made an excellent meal.

February 6th.—The marching has been much better the last three days, and the country greatly improved. A good deal of cultivation, and Arabs busy ploughing. We had three rifles stolen last night, and to-day we "strafed" an Arab village on the opposite bank of the river.

February 7th.—We reached Ali-al-Gharbi at 1.30 p.m., and thought that we had arrived at our destination—the advanced base of the relief force. We were told, however, that the base had just moved up to Sheikh Saad, 28 miles farther on, so we had to go on.

February 11th.—Got to Sheikh Saad, having had some troublous days on the march—our mahela bumped the bank, broke her rudder, and got hopelessly aground; heavy rain; much mud; the land transport, trying to get things up from the boat, badly bogged; rations running short, etc. Here we found that the base had moved forward still farther to Orah, another 7 miles.

February 12th.—At last we arrived at the base camp at Orah, and a large camp it was, with the riverside crowded with mahelas drawn up in rows.

The echelon was now broken up, the different drafts being sent to regiments. The West Kent draft crossed the river by the bridge of boats, and was ordered to join the Connaught Rangers, while the Oxford and the Hants drafts remained on the left bank. We crossed to the other side, but could not find the Rangers. Two Staff officers, however, came to our rescue, told us that the Rangers were across the river and would not arrive until next day, and showed us our camping-ground Here we pitched camp as soon as the boats came up.

Digitized by Google

February 13*th* (Sunday).—A lovely day and a real day of rest, spent chiefly in getting all our things dry. We hear that we shall be in the 7th Brigade of the 3rd (Indian) Division, which quite recently has come from France. The firing line is only about 2½ miles from this place, and close by there is a monitor on the river which fires occasionally at the enemy.

February 14*th*.—The Connaught Rangers came over the river this afternoon, and we moved our camp to a site farther away. Heard that we officers are to remain with the West Kent draft, and to be under the command of the O.C. Connaught Rangers. We form nearly half the battalion, as the Regiment suffered rather badly on January 21st. A Major Hamilton is in command. I have been posted to A company, under a Captain Belmore, and am in a platoon of West Kents, under Meade. We have quite a large mess, and the officers are a very cheery lot. The officers of each company live together in one tent; we had six in ours.

February 16*th*.—Last night the whole Brigade started out to "straf" an Arab village about seven miles away. It rained all night, and we remained in a nullah until six this morning, when we prepared to encircle the village. We had nothing to do, however, as the cavalry rode through the place and set some huts on fire without meeting with any opposition, except from some yapping dogs. We returned to camp wet, cold, and hungry.

In the afternoon some of us went over the river to look up the Provisional Battalion of our own Regiment, and were introduced to Major Carter, who is in command. He gave us some hope of a transfer to the Regiment, whereat our spirits rose considerably.

February 29*th*.—During the past fortnight we have had a certain amount of excitement, have done a lot of trench-digging, been fired on by Turkish artillery and Arab snipers, and been bombed by Fritz, the enemy airman. Last night we got orders to join our own Regiment across the river, and after lunch to-day we said good-bye to the Connaught Rangers and set out for Orah, which we reached, after a wet journey, at 6 p.m. Here we found Wooding, also Captain Foljambe (just returned from hospital at Amara), but the Regiment was in the trenches at Hannah, though due back this evening. We waited until 10 p.m., but as the Regiment had not arrived; we got some food and then tried to dry ourselves.

March 1*st*.—The Regiment got into camp at about 2.30 a.m., having lost the way on returning from the trenches in the dark.

Digitized by Google

Smyth turned up with a draft from England, having felt Radford, Davies, and Roberts at Basra with most of the men.

March 2nd.—Major Carter commands the Regiment and Foljambe is Adjutant. Hammick commands A Company and Tatton B Company. I am posted to Hammick's Company, but as there are numerous subalterns attached from Territorial regiments in India, I found that I was supernumerary, so Hammick took me on as a sort of A.D.C. Major Carter, Major Barrington, Foljambe, and Hammick had a mess of their own. Garrard and I undertook to run a mess for the rest of us—nearly 30 altogether. We found a cook and some waiters, and had the usual mess tent.

March 3rd.—ATTACK ON DUJAILAH REDOUBT.—Got orders to pack up everything except our 20 lb. kit and put it on the mahela. Nearly all the tents also were struck and packed. Our brigade, i.e., the 28th Brigade, 7th Division, is to reinforce the 3rd Division, on the right bank of the river, in an attempt to relieve Kut. In the evening the move was postponed for 24 hours, owing to threatening weather.

March 5th.—The same thing happened yesterday and again to-day—tents, etc., all packed up, and then the move put off.

March 6th.—Moved off at last, at 7 p.m., in pitch darkness. We went over the bridge, but then got hung up in the maze of trenches round the camp and lost the rest of the Brigade. However, after marching about 6 miles we met our Padre, who showed us the way to our camping-ground, which we reached at about 4.30 a.m. (7th March), and found Wooding waiting for us. We formed a perimeter camp, and then lay down and slept.

March 7th.—We spent the day in this camping-ground, and found difficulty in getting water enough to fill our bottles. At 5.30 p.m. we started on the march again, the Regiment[1] having been detailed to act as escort to the 1st Line Transport of the 28th Brigade, and also as escort to the guns. A company took the former duty,

[1] Strength about 400, with the following officers: Major Carter (in command), Major Barrington, Captain Foljambe (Adjutant), Captains Hammick and Tatton, Lt. Meade, Lt. Butcher (5th Hants), Lt. Firth (5th Hants), Lt. Selincourt (7th Hants), Lt. Kinghorn (S.W.B), Lt. Seymour (4th D.C.L.I.), Lt. F. Wilson (4th Som. L.I.), Lt. Staley (4th Som. L.I., Brigade Machine Guns), Lt. A. Murray (4th Wilts.), Lt. Anderson (R.A.M.C., Medical Officer), and 2nd Lts. Grosvenor, Griffin, Smyth, Huggard, Coulthard, Truman, Rance, Parkinson, Riley, Wilmot (Transport), Gardner, Widcombe, Field, Garrard, Davenport.—C. T. D.

Digitized by Google

B Company the latter. I was with No. 1 Platoon, Selincourt in command, and Rance second. We marched all night, and whenever we halted most of us dropped down and slept. The wheels of all the carts had been carefully greased, yet some of them made an awful noise. Occasionally mules broke loose and careered away, shedding their loads as they went. We picked up various articles shed by them, and we also collected soldiers who had fallen out.

March 8th.—At about 7 a.m. we came to a standstill, when we managed to eat some breakfast and stew some tea. Then we moved on again and formed round Brigade Headquarters. The guns began firing, and we sat still and watched the attack from some high ground, being kept in Brigade Reserve. The main attack was against the Dujailah Redoubt, which we could see plainly. We could also see the minaret at Kut in the distance and the guns of the garrison firing.

At 5 p.m. we were ordered out, to dig an outpost line round Headquarters and to be on the look-out for 2,000 Arabs who were hovering about. At night we heard that our troops had got into the redoubt but had not yet got through. Truman and I had a sentry-post and took it in turns to look out.

March 9th.—Nothing happened until dawn, when a Sikh machine-gun began blazing away at some troops coming up on our left, who turned out to be our own men !

A little later we saw hordes of Arabs advancing, but the guns turned on them, and they fled in all directions, with their flowing robes flapping in the wind. Then we were withdrawn and told that our troops had to retire, as there was not enough water to last for the day. We set to and dug ourselves in across a deep nullah, to cover the retirement from the front line. We fortunately had no casualties, although the shells were beginning to rain. Finally we got orders to retire down the nullah, and as we did so the Turks shelled us, but luckily without doing any damage beyond blowing off some of the men's helmets.

We had had no water since the night of the 7th, and tried to find some in the nullah water-holes, but they were quite dry. At about noon, however, we reached some sand-hills, where we found our mules with the water packalls, and each man was served out with a little water, which was most welcome, although absolutely thick with mud. At this place there were heaps of burnt or otherwise destroyed Second Line Transport stuff, the destruction of which had

Digitized by Google

been found necessary, as the carts were required for the removal of the wounded.

From there we continued the retreat in three columns. It was quite orderly, although the Turks followed us up pretty closely. The Regiment was detailed to form the personal escort to the Corps Commander, General Aylmer. Suffering terribly from thirst, heat, and appalling dust, we marched on until 8.30 p.m., when we reached Orah—the men absolutely done up. We found that the wounded were being taken across the bridge, so we had to wait. Poor wretches! They had had a desperate journey of some 15 miles over a bumpy track with numerous ditches, and were tightly packed in every description of cart.

While we halted near the bridge I managed to get down to the river and draw some water in a canvas bucket which I had in my pack. I repeated this three times, and doled the water out to the men, drinking almost a bucketful myself. We did not stop to think that we were drinking undiluted Tigris, thick with mud and other impurities.

We crossed the bridge at about midnight, and were rejoiced to find tea waiting for us, after which we lay down anywhere and slept. The only casualty amongst our officers was Staley (attached from the 4th Somersets), who was killed by a chance bullet while with the Brigade Machine-guns. Two or three men of the Regiment were slightly wounded.

March 10th.—Spent the day in camp. Heard that the total casualties in this Es Sinn show amounted to about 2,400.

March 14th.—At 8.30 a.m. the Regiment marched to the El Hannah trenches and relieved the Norfolks (21st Brigade). A Company in the front line (King's Trench), B in second line (Queen's Trench). Settled in by 11.30 a.m. A Company's headquarters are in a sort of half-dug day trench, just behind the front line. Here Hammick, Selincourt, and I are to sleep, and we feed in the second line—rather uncomfortably. The chief difficulty is getting water, as we have to draw it straight from the river, which means going through the Leicesters, on our left, and down the communication trench (Tigris Street) to about the fourth line.

Sniping is almost continuous day and night. At night, besides sniping, the Turks sent up various coloured rockets.

March 15th.—Stood to at dawn. Had some fun sniping at Turks digging in their lines (about 400 yards away). A Company

Digitized by Google

accounted for two. Rance had several shots at one, while I spotted for him. Finally, he went down quickly and appeared no more.

March 16th.—The General, going round the trenches to-day, remarked on the smell from some of the corpses lying about, so we decided to bury all within our barbed wire that night. De Selincourt, who superintended this, found others outside the wire, and set to work to bury them also. He went out in brilliant moonlight, and his very tall figure drew the fire of machine-guns, with the result that one of his men was hit. He came back to the parapet to call for stretcher-bearers, and on returning was himself hit.[1]

March 17th.—A Company was relieved by B and went into the second line. Had quite a cheery mess, with a table made out of ammunition boxes. We have unroofed dug-outs, as we have no props, and cannot dig any more, because the earth crumbles and falls in. The only shelter from the rain to be obtained is from our waterproof sheets, which we rig up. Fortunately, the Turks are not doing much shelling.

March 22nd.—After an uneventful time in these trenches we were relieved at 10 a.m. to-day by the 21st Brigade, and got back to camp at 1.30 p.m.

March 23rd.—Started regular drill and training, adjutant's parades, etc. The Regimental Sergeant-Major (Dancey) also taught us how things are done in the 43rd. Inoculated again against enteric.

March 25th.—On fatigue, bund-building by the river, which is rising rapidly, and threatening to flood the camp.

March 26th–27th.—Brigade training; practising the attack, etc., morning and evening; also marching by compass.

March 28th.—Davies, Roberts, and Radford arrived from Basra. They have been to Bombay, on escort duty with an Indian regiment which had misbehaved.

April 1st.—Preparations are being made for another attack, and we have seen quantities of bombs being taken up the line. A

[1] The man died, but De Selincourt was sent down to Basra, and eventually recovered.—C. T. D.

Digitized by Google

new Division has arrived from Basra—the 13th, an all-British Division, who are to attack this time. Everything is being staked on this, as the floods are getting serious, and the current is delaying the river boats coming up. Landing stores, too, is becoming a great difficulty, because the boats cannot get close up to dry land.

In the evening we got orders to pack up and be ready to move at a moment's notice, but this was cancelled a few hours later. The Brigade has issued orders that only one officer per platoon is to go into action, with a Company Commander. The doctor recommended that several should be left out on account of sickness, and I was amongst them, as my inside has been very bad for some time. Altogether, ten officers of the Regiment will be left behind.

April 2nd.—A good many of the new Division (13th) passed through on the way to the trenches. They had marched from Sheikh Saad, and had had a bad night of it owing to the mud after a heavy thunderstorm.

April 3rd.—Turned out at 5 a.m. to take a fatigue party up to the trenches and clean up one of the back trenches for our occupation. While we were doing this the Turks shelled us with shrapnel quite a lot, spoiling a good deal of our work, but fortunately not hitting anyone. As we were leaving the trenches a shell burst just behind the party, but again no one was hit, although several of the men's shovels caught the bullets.

April 4th.—ATTACK ON EL HANNAH.—Packed up everything and loaded the mahela. Great divisions of food stuff, and Foljambe set aside a goodly store for the fellows of the Regiment in Kut. In the evening the orders for the attack were issued. The 13th Division are to attack the El Hannah position at dawn to-morrow, and, having taken it, are to push on to the Felahieh position, our Division (7th) being in reserve.

Being rather better now, I asked Hammick if I could come with him into action, but unluckily the list (with my name on it) had already gone in to Brigade Headquarters, so I was detailed for duty with the 2nd Line Transport, with which also were Parkinson, Grosvenor, and Griffin. Meade was with the 1st Line Transport, and Major Barrington, Smyth, Roberts, and Wilson (4th Somersets) with the 3rd Line, i.e., the mahelas.

At 8.30 p.m. the Regiment marched to the trenches, and we ourselves took up our quarters with the Brigade Transport, under Captain Lyster, 5th Mule Corps.

Digitized by Google

The strength of the Regiment going into action was 266 N.C.O.'s and men, in two Companies (A and B). The following officers accompanied the Regiment :—

Major CARTER, commanding.
Captain FOLJAMBE, Adjutant.
Lieut. SEYMOUR (4th D.C.L.I.), Machine-gun Officer.
2nd Lieut. TRUMAN, Battalion Bombing Officer.
Lieut. ANDERSON (R.A.M.C.), Medical Officer.
Captain HAMMICK, A Company Commander.
Captain TATTON, B Company Commander.
Lieut. FIRTH (5th Hants).
Lieut. KINGHORN (4th S.W.B.).
2nd Lieut. RADFORD.
2nd Lieut. WIDCOMBE.
2nd Lieut. COULTHARD.
2nd Lieut. DAVIS.
2nd Lieut. GARDNER.

2nd Lieut. Riley was attached to the Leicesters as Bombing Officer, 2nd Lieut. Field to the Brigade as Bombing Officer, and 2nd Lieut. Rance Orderly Officer to the Brigadier.

April 5th.—At dawn we awoke to hear a terrific bombardment, which we watched for some time. News soon came through that we had captured the position, and we saw a few prisoners brought back. At 10 a.m. we moved the transport up to the back of our old trenches and parked there, and at 3 p.m. we again moved forward to a point well beyond the Turkish trenches. We saw the havoc that our guns had made of the barbed wire, and other signs of our advance. We learned that the enemy had left his position before we attacked, leaving in the trenches only a company, most of whom we had killed.

We parked our transport for the night and sent up rations to the Regiment. We now heard that the 7th Division is to go through the 13th Division during the night, as the latter has lost pretty heavily, having met the Turkish machine-guns at Felahieh, though they succeeded in capturing that position. The 7th Division is to attack the next position (Sannaiyat) at dawn to-morrow.

April 6th.—ATTACK ON SANNAIYAT.—At dawn we heard a most terrific burst of firing from rifles and machine-guns—a really terrible noise. The transport moved up a little, and later on we heard

Digitized by Google

what had happened. After marching all night the 7th Division had come right on the position, just after dawn, almost before they had opened out. The Turks must have seen them coming and just mowed them down. Our Brigade (28th) had its whole Staff wounded, including the Brigadier (Kemball). Nearly every officer of the Regiment was knocked out: Foljambe, Widcombe, Davis, Coulthard, and Truman killed; Hammick,[1] Carter, Tatton, Riley, Firth, Gardner, and Field wounded. Radford escaped by being back at Headquarters delivering a message. Rance was Orderly Officer to the Brigadier, and was not hit. Seymour, the Machine-gun Officer, escaped, as his guns only came into action quite late in the day. Kinghorn (4th S.W.B.) brought the remnant of the Regiment, numbering 17, out of action.

April 7th.—Major Barrington came up from the mahelas and took us all up to the front. We took with us as many of the men from the transport as could be spared, and found the remains of the Regiment in a bare, hastily dug trench, somewhere about the fourth line. There were barely 30 men, including machine gunners; Meade was in command, and Radford and Seymour were with him.

We all stayed there the night and gathered up the tale. It appears that, soon after the attack, the waters of the Suwachi Marsh, driven by a north-east wind, had begun to flow across the front, had covered up a large tract of country, and, it is feared, had drowned a large number of wounded. The doctor had been out in front helping to bring in the wounded, and they are still bringing them in.

From our trench we can see the front line, and beyond that a long row of green canvas buckets, which had held bombs, and a long line of dead. The 13th Division has taken over again, and there are talks of another attack.

April 8th.—Our artillery was pretty active all last night. Major Barrington sent us back to the second line, only retaining Meade, Radford, and Seymour. With so few men there was no need for more officers, for even now that the transport men and machine-gunners have rejoined, there are not 60 men in the two companies.

April 9th.—The 13th Division delivered another attack at dawn to-day, but it failed hopelessly. Apparently, just before daylight, the Turks sent over a lot of Véry lights, and the 13th Division had

[1] Died of his wounds, at Basra, 18th April.—ED.

Digitized by Google

to go over in bright light, with the result that brigades got mixed up, supports were not forthcoming, and the casualties were fearful. During the day Meade was hit in the shoulder by a shrapnel bullet, and one of the men was also wounded. The 7th Division has taken over from the 13th, and the Regiment has moved back into third-line trenches, in Brigade Reserve.

April 11th.—Butcher (5th Hants) came back from Amara with stores yesterday, and to-day he and I went up to see the Regiment. We found there Major Barrington (now in command), Radford, Seymour, and the doctor (Anderson)—all rather dejected after a pouring wet night spent in open dug-outs.

April 12th.—The C.O. sent for me to go up to the trenches. I found that Radford was ill with ague, so Griffin was sent for to take his place. Just after I arrived a north-east wind sprang up, and marsh water came pouring over. We all went out to try to stop it by building bunds, but found our efforts quite useless. We then retired behind an old Turkish communication trench, and started building up on that. This successfully checked the flood, but not before two batteries had been completely isolated and abandoned.[1] Of course, the Turks took the opportunity to shell us while we were at this work, as, silhouetted against the setting sun, we presented a fine target. There were no casualties among our few men, but some other regiments suffered to a certain extent. We had to watch the bund all night, as, had it given way, we should have been flooded out.

April 20th.—For the past week we have practically been doing nothing but bund building; the floods from the river on the one side and those from the marsh on the other have reduced our front very considerably.

Titherington, Adams, and Milford arrived to-day with a draft of 90 men. Titherington brought them all up to the trenches, and Radford came back; 41 men also rejoined from hospital to-day.

April 21st.—SECOND ATTACK ON SANNAIYAT.—Orders for a fresh attack came. The 19th and 21st Brigades will attack, with the 28th Brigade in reserve. We moved up at night and dug ourselves in about 1,400 yards from the Turks, where we just caught their falling bullets. The attack is to commence at 7.5 a.m. to-morrow, after a five-minutes' bombardment.

[1] They were drawn out afterwards.—C. T. D.

Digitized by Google

April 22nd.—At 5 minutes to 7 we got orders that it was necessary to alter the plan of attack, as, owing to the floods, the front had to be contracted. We were to attack on a one-brigade front; the 19th to attack, the 21st in support, and the 28th in reserve.

At 7.15 a.m. we moved up behind the 19th Brigade, and met the wounded coming down the communication trench They were mostly Highlanders, who said that they had found the two front Turkish lines full of water. We reached our third-line trenches and then found that the attack had failed again. The Turks had counter-attacked in strength and driven out the Highlanders.

Later on in the day the Turks came out, under the Red Crescent, and began collecting their wounded. We did the same, and there was an informal armistice, during which we got in all our wounded. There must have been some reason for the Turk doing this, for he naturally had no wounded outside his own trenches, which he had never left. Probably our machine-guns on the right bank of the river were preventing him from bringing up reinforcements, and also making it difficult for him to retire.

Our troops had lost pretty heavily—especially the Black Watch and Seaforths. Had we been able to carry out our original plan and attacked on a two-brigade front, we might have been successful. There is no doubt that the enemy was getting it hot from our guns, and must have suffered heavily.

In the evening we moved up to the second line and took over from the 19th Brigade, who went back.

April 26th.—Nothing particular happened during the last few days, and we spent most of the time in repairing the second-line trenches. Then we took over the front line as well, having one of our two companies up there, and the other in second line just behind. Radford and I are with B Company, Titherington and Griffin with A, each company having about 60 men now.

Of course we know that Kut must fall soon, as we have no hopes of being able to do anything more until we can get up large reinforcements.

We saw the "Julnar," with food stores for Kut, go up river on the 24th, and the Turks putting their searchlights on her and firing. Various rumours as to her fate have reached us.

April 29th.—Heard that Kut has surrendered.

Digitized by Google

April 30th.[1]—Stood to arms all night, expecting the Turks to attack. White flags are becoming a frequency. Hear that there is to be a fourteen-days' armistice, to let hospital-ships go up to Kut to bring away sick and wounded. We remain in the front line. Heat getting very bad, and flies worse.

Lieut. C. T. Davenport's Narrative for May and June 1916.

When Kut surrendered we were in the front and second line trenches opposite the Turkish position at Sannaiyat. A fourteen days' armistice was proclaimed, and we planted a white flag outside our trenches. The hospital-boat "Sikkim" used to go backwards and forwards, bringing away the Kut sick and wounded. About the middle of May, after the armistice was over, we were sent down to the back line of trenches, about 900 yards from the front line, and we were allowed to get up our 40 lb. tents to make ourselves more comfortable. The weather was now intensely hot, and we used generally to drill in the very early morning, lie dormant from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m., and in the evening were usually employed in making up barbed wire bales or digging communication trenches. At night one company manned the third-line trenches, but we found the back line quite as dangerous as, if not more dangerous than, the front line, as we were out above ground in the daytime, only taking to our dug-outs at night, and occasionally stray bullets came over. About this time we had two men shot in this way.

Smyth came up to the trenches and took over A Company from Titherington, who became Adjutant. A little later Smyth went into hospital with jaundice and Williams came up. Then we got a draft of 43rd men from India, and secured most of our N.C.O.'s from them.

On one occasion we were ordered to send the few men we had who took part in the fighting in March and April down to the camp to be reviewed by General Lake. In addressing us, he told us of his admiration for all ranks in the efforts to relieve Kut, but said that we had a harder time ahead with the hot weather. The only man of the Regiment recommended for gallantry received the D.C.M. This was Private Golding, a stretcher-bearer, who did excellent work on the 6th April.

[1] The following casualties occurred between the 7th and 30th April: 1 man killed, Lieut. Meade and 5 men wounded.—Ed.

Digitized by Google

On the 22nd May we heard that the 3rd Division had walked into the Dujailah Redoubt, which the Turks were found to have evacuated. It was apparently thought that they were also going to evacuate the Sannaiyat trenches, for orders were issued for another attack upon them. We were to form the fourth line, and to consolidate the Turkish trenches, when captured. The orders were to move up the line at night and attack at dawn. However, the orders were cancelled at the last minute, as it had been discovered that the enemy was holding Sannaiyat very strongly.

Next day we were relieved, and went right back for a mile and a half into a rest camp on Sandy Ridge, where we settled down in comparative comfort. We made thatched roofs over the men's tents to keep out the heat, and we had two large E.P. tents for the officers' mess and the canteen stores.

An immense number of cases of stores for the Regiment now began to come up from Basra, where they had been lying for months. Apparently the 43rd had told the Army and Navy Stores at Bombay to send up things every month or even oftener, and there must have been almost a year's supply. There was any quantity of mess utensils, cutlery, etc., and luxuries of all sorts, so we soon had the mess going strong. The men benefited also, for about a dozen barrels of beer turned up from Spencer's, which was a perfect god-send for soldiers who had seen nothing but the filthy ration lime-juice and Tigris water.

Towards the end of May we heard that we should probably be sent down to Amara, to reorganize, with the other battalions of the old 6th Division. It was horribly hot now, and the sick list began to swell rapidly. Titherington went to hospital with boils, and Adams took his place; Seymour went down with enteric, and we lost our doctor, Anderson, who was recalled to his Field Ambulance, his place being taken by an Assistant Surgeon.

On the 1st June the 28th Brigade was ordered to relieve the 19th Brigade in the trenches, but we ourselves were left behind, as we were to go down to Amara shortly. As soon as the Brigade had marched out we packed up our things, and, leaving the camp standing for the 19th Brigade, we crossed to the other side of the river and went into camp. There we remained until the 5th June, when we embarked on the " P. 2 " and its two lighters, steamed off at 2 p.m., and reached Sheikh Saad at 5 p.m. We tied up below the bridge and spent all the next day there.

Digitized by Google

At dawn on the 7th we started down stream again, arrived at Amara at 6 p.m., and stayed the night on board, moored to the bank on the outskirts of the town. On the following morning we disembarked and pitched camp close by, the men in E.P. tents, but only 160 lb. tents for the officers. The heat in these with the sun on them was quite unbearable. Radford had to go to hospital, and the dysentery, which I had had for some time now, bowled me over.[1]

[1] Lieut. C. T. Davenport remained in hospital until the end of the month, and was subsequently invalided to England.

The Battalion Diary records that on the 30th June the strength of the Battalion was 16 officers and 315 other ranks; and that, during the month of June, 4 officers and 91 other ranks were admitted to hospital, where 4 other ranks died.—ED.

Digitized by Google

SERVICES OF OFFICERS.

I.

OFFICERS WHO SERVED WITH THE 1ST BATTALION IN MESOPOTAMIA, 1914–1916 (TO 30TH APRIL).

Lieut.-Colonel E. A. E. LETHBRIDGE, D.S.O., in command of the Battalion; on sick leave in India, 1st July 1915 to October 1915; present at the battle of Ctesiphon; besieged in Kut; prisoner of war; subsequently awarded the C.M.G., and promoted Brevet-Colonel.

Major A. C. HYDE, Second in command; in command during the absence of Lieut.-Colonel Lethbridge. Present at the battle of Es Sinn. *Killed* at the battle of Ctesiphon.

Major L. J. CARTER, in command of Q Company; invalided to India, 30th May 1915; in command of Depôt, India, from 23rd November 1915 to 10th December 1915, when he returned to Mesopotamia and commanded the Provisional Battalion of the Regiment in the Relief Operations. *Wounded* at Sannaiyat 6th April 1916 and invalided to India. Subsequently awarded D.S.O.

Captain F. H. STAPLETON, *p.s.c.*, in command of R Company; appointed D.A.Q.M.G., 6th Division, 24th April 1915; invalided 7th August 1915; promoted Major 1st September 1915; returned to Mesopotamia 10th December 1915, and joined General Aylmer's Staff; Brevet Lieut.-Colonel.

Captain C. E. FORREST, D.S.O., in command of S Company; promoted Major 1st September 1915. Present at the battle of Es Sinn. *Killed* at the battle of Ctesiphon.

Captain C. F. HENLEY, in command of P Company; promoted Major 1st September 1915. *Wounded* on Tower Hill 31st May; invalided to India; rejoined, and was present at the close of the withdrawal from Ctesiphon (3rd December); *wounded* in Kut 10th December 1915; prisoner of war.

Captain R. R. M. BROOKE (P), *killed* on Norfolk Hill, 31st May 1915.

Captain R. V. SIMPSON (S), promoted Major, 1st September 1915; *killed* at Es Sinn, 28th September 1915.

Digitized by Google

Captain W. E. T. MORLAND (Q); appointed G.S.O. 3, 6th Division, 16th June; awarded Military Cross; present at the battles of Es Sinn and Ctesiphon; besieged in Kut; prisoner of war; subsequently awarded the D.S.O.

Captain R. STEPHENS (R); invalided to India on account of ill-health, 1st July; appointed A.D.C. to H.E. Commander-in-Chief in India, September 1915.

Captain Hon. J. C. W. S. FOLJAMBE, Adjutant of the Battalion. Present at the battle of Es Sinn; *wounded* at the battle of Ctesiphon, and invalided to India; returned to Mesopotamia, and joined the Provisional Battalion as Adjutant in February 1916; took part in relief operations. *Killed* at Sannaiyat, 6th April 1916. Three times mentioned in Dispatches. Brevet-Major.

Lieut. G. E. WHITTALL (R), promoted Captain, 8th January 1915; appointed Military Landing Officer, Basra, 9th February 1915.

Lieut. J. J. POWELL (S); appointed Brigade Signalling Officer, 31st May; promoted Captain, 10th June 1915; *wounded* at Es Sinn, 28th September; invalided to England.

Lieut. F. M. DAVENPORT (Q), promoted Captain, 10th June 1915. Present at the battle of Es Sinn. *Killed* at the battle of Ctesiphon.

Lieut. J. H. COURTIS (Q), promoted Captain, 10th June 1915; appointed 17th Brigade Machine-gun Officer, 19th August 1915. Present at the battle of Es Sinn. *Killed* at the battle of Ctesiphon.

Lieut. S. C. B. MUNDEY (R); remained in India, in command of Regimental Depôt from 17th November 1914 to 17th May 1915; promoted Captain, 10th June 1915; attached as Observer to Royal Flying Corps, 9th September; present at the battles of Es Sinn and Ctesiphon; besieged in Kut; prisoner of war.

Lieut. F. C. W. WYNTER (S), Censor at Basra from 7th December 1914 to 12th May 1915; temp. Captain 1st September; promoted Captain, 27th October 1915. Present at the battle of Es Sinn; *killed* at the battle of Ctesiphon.

Lieut. A. T. BIRCH-REYNARDSON (R), Regimental Machine-gun Officer. Present at the battle of Es Sinn. *Wounded* at the battle of Ctesiphon; invalided to England; promoted Captain, 25th November 1915.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. K. HORAN (P), invalided to India on account of ill-health, 13th June 1915, and later to England; promoted Captain, 14th December 1915; Adjutant, Indian Volunteers, 23rd May 1916.

Lieut. J. S. KEARSLEY (R); present at the battle of Es Sinn; *killed* at the battle of Ctesiphon.

2nd Lieut. A. E. MASON (P); promoted 2nd Lieutenant from Regimental Serjeant-Major, 7th November 1914; Depôt India, 1st March to 23rd October 1915; promoted Lieutenant, 10th June 1915; present at the battle of Ctesiphon, in charge of Brigade Reserve Ammunition Column; besieged in Kut, where he was acting Adjutant of the Battalion. Prisoner of war.

2nd Lieut. R. C. LOVEROCK (Q); promoted 2nd Lieutenant, from the ranks, 7th November 1914; Assistant Military Landing Officer, Basra, from 20th July 1915; promoted Lieutenant, 18th August 1915; temp. Captain, 6th October 1915.

2nd Lieut. G. NAYLOR (S), 2nd. Lieutenant, from the ranks, 7th November 1914; promoted Lieutenant, 27th September 1915; present at the battles of Es Sinn and Ctesiphon (in charge of Salvage Section); besieged in Kut; in command of S Company; *wounded* 24th December 1915; prisoner of war. Subsequently awarded the Military Cross.

2nd Lieut. D. MURPHY (P), 2nd Lieutenant, from the ranks, 7th November 1914; promoted Lieutenant, 27th October 1915; *wounded* at the battle of Ctesiphon; invalided to India.

2nd Lieut. F. BROWN (S), promoted 2nd Lieutenant, from the ranks of 14th Hussars, 7th November 1914; present at the battles of Es Sinn and Ctesiphon; *killed* in Kut, 11th December 1915.

Captain and Quartermaster T. E. IVEY; present at the battles of Es Sinn and Ctesiphon; besieged in Kut; prisoner of war.

Attached.

Captain J. STARTIN, R.A.M.C.; present at the battles of Es Sinn and Ctesiphon; besieged in Kut; prisoner of war.

Captain W. W. MELDON (3rd Durham Light Infantry), R Company, from 17th June 1915; *wounded* at Es Sinn; invalided.

Lieut. H. B. L. HIND (3rd Somerset Light Infantry), Q Company, from 17th June 1915; present at the battle of Es Sinn; *killed* at the battle of Ctesiphon.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. S. L. WEBBER (2nd D.C.L.I.), P Company, from 17th June 1915; present at the battle of Es Sinn; *wounded* at the battle of Ctesiphon; invalided.

Lieut. J. S. P. MELLOR (5th Somerset Light Infantry), R Company, from 28th September 1915; present at the battle of Ctesiphon; *wounded* in Kut, 24th December 1915; in command of R Company; prisoner of war.

Lieut. G. L. HEAWOOD (4th Wilts Regiment), P Company, from 28th August 1915; present at the battles of Es Sinn and Ctesiphon; besieged in Kut; in command of Q Company; prisoner of war (subsequently released).

2nd Lieut. A. PRICE (2nd Royal Sussex Regiment), P Company, from 16th December 1914; left at British Infantry Depôt, Amara, September 1915.

2nd Lieut. A. J. HAZELL (2nd West Riding Regiment), Q Company, from 16th December 1914; present at the battle of Es Sinn; wounded at the battle of Ctesiphon; invalided.

2nd Lieut. A. P. WILSON (4th Border Regiment), S Company, from 28th August 1915; present at the battle of Es Sinn; *wounded* at the battle of Ctesiphon; invalided.

Summary of casualties among the 35 officers (including attached) who served with the 1st Battalion: Killed, 11; wounded, 12 (one twice, and one afterwards killed); invalided on account of ill-health, 2; prisoners of war, 10 (including 4 wounded).

II.

OFFICERS WHO SERVED IN MESOPOTAMIA WITH THE PROVISIONAL BATTALION OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY DURING THE PERIOD ENDING 30TH JUNE 1916.

Major L. J. CARTER (1st Battalion), commanding Provisional Battalion. For services, see above.

Major Hon. W. R. S. BARRINGTON (3rd Battalion), joined with draft from England, February 1916; second in command; in temporary command after Major Carter was wounded.

Captain Hon. J. C. W. S. FOLJAMBE (1st Battalion), Adjutant. For services, see above.

Digitized by Google

Captain S. F. HAMMICK (Reserve of Officers, formerly 1st Battalion), served in France with 2nd Battalion, and was *wounded;* joined Provisional Battalion with draft from England, February 1916; in command of A Company; *severely wounded* at Sannaiyat, 6th April, and *died of his wounds* at Basra, 18th April 1916. Mentioned in Dispatches.

Captain R. H. G. TATTON (3rd Battalion), served in France with 2nd Battalion, and was *wounded;* joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916; in command of B Company; wounded at Sannaiyat, 6th April 1916; invalided to England.

Captain G. W. TITHERINGTON (1st Battalion), served with 2nd Battalion in France, and was *wounded;* promoted Captain, 2nd March 1916; joined Provisional Battalion, 20th April 1916; became Adjutant when Captain Foljambe was *killed.*

Lieut. J. W. MEADE (1st Battalion), served with 2nd Battalion in France, and was *wounded;* joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916; *wounded* 9th April 1916; invalided to England.

Lieut. W. W. WOODING (1st Battalion), served with 2nd Battalion in France, and promoted 2nd Lieutenant from the ranks, 9th November 1914; Lieutenant, 25th November 1915; joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916; acting Quartermaster.

Lieut. H. E. F. SMYTH (1st Battalion), gazetted 2nd Lieutenant (from R.M.C., Sandhurst), 16th June 1915; doing duty with 3rd Battalion; joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916.

Lieut. H. D. H. RADFORD (3rd Battalion); served with 2nd Battalion in France in 1915; joined Provisional Battalion, March 1916.

Lieut. A. H. DAVIS (3rd Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, March 1916; *killed* at Sannaiyat, 6th April 1916.

Lieut. B. F. ROBERTS (3rd Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, March 1916.

Lieut. C. I. WIDCOMBE (3rd Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916; *killed* at Sannaiyat, 6th April 1916.

Lieut. C. H. RILEY (3rd Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916; *wounded* 6th April 1916; invalided to England.

Lieut. E. B. PARKINSON (9th Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916; acting Transport Officer.

Lieut. E. F. COULTHARD (9th Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916; *killed* at Sannaiyat, 6th April 1916.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. A. H. TRUMAN (3rd Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916; Bombing Officer; *killed* at Sannaiyat, 6th April 1916.

Lieut. C. T. DAVENPORT (3rd Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916.

Lieut. G. K. GROSVENOR (9th Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916.

Lieut. S. J. GRIFFIN (3rd Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916.

Lieut. W. RANCE (3rd Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916; acting Orderly Officer to General Kemball.

Lieut. D. A. T. WILMOT (9th Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916; Transport Officer.

Lieut. A. E. GARDNER (3rd Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916; *wounded*, 6th April 1916; invalided to England.

Lieut. H. T. C. FIELD (9th Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916; *wounded*, 6th April 1916; invalided to India; rejoined at Amara, 27th June 1916.

Lieut. G. F. GARRARD (9th Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916; invalided to India, on account of ill-health, March 1916.

Lieut. G. C. HUGGARD (3rd Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916; invalided to India, on account of ill-health, March 1916.

Lieut. H. C. ADAMS (3rd Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, 20th April 1916.

Lieut. T. R MILFORD (3rd Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, 20th April 1916.

Lieut. T. P. WILLIAMS (3rd Battalion), joined Provisional Battalion, 26th April 1916.

Lieut. A. E. S. RIDDLE (3rd Battalion), served in France with 2nd Battalion, and was *wounded;* joined Provisional Battalion, 26th April 1916.

2nd Lieut. L. J. ROCK (3rd Battalion), joined 19th June 1916.

2nd Lieut. L. R. WATTS (3rd Battalion), joined 19th June, 1916.

2nd Lieut. F. M. HARDIE, joined 28th June 1916.

Digitized by Google

Attached.

Lieut. ANDERSON, R.A.M.C., Medical Officer.

Lieut. L. DE SELINCOURT (7th Hants), *wounded*, 16th March 1916; invalided to India.

Lieut. H. C. BUTCHER (5th Hants).

Lieut. D. G. FIRTH (5th Hants), *wounded*, 6th April 1916; invalided to India.

Lieut. E. C. KINGHORN (4th Border Regiment).

Lieut. A. H. SEYMOUR (4th D.C.L.I.), joined Provisional Battalion, February 1916; Machine-Gun Officer, when Lieut. Staley was *killed;* afterwards Brigade Machine-gun Officer.

Lieut. F. WILSON (4th Somerset Light Infantry).

Lieut. F. C. STALEY (5th Somerset Light Infantry), Brigade Machine-gun Officer; *killed* at Dujailah Redoubt, 8th March 1916.

Lieut. A. MURRAY (4th Wilts), invalided to India, on account of ill-health, March 1916.

Digitized by Google

1st BATTALION
CASUALTIES FROM THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE CAMPAIGN TO 30th APRIL 1916.

I.

WITH THE 6th DIVISION.

Killed.

Major A. C. Hyde.
Major C. E. Forrest, D.S.O.
Captain R. R. M. Brooke.
Major R. V. Simpson.
Captain F. M. Davenport.
Captain J. H. Courtis.
Captain F. C. W. Wynter.
Lieut. J. S. Kearsley.
2nd Lieut. F. Brown.
Lieut. H. B. L. Hind (attached from 3rd Somerset Light Infantry).

Wounded.

Major C. F. Henley (twice).
Captain (Brevet-Major) Hon. J. C. W. S. Foljambe (afterwards killed).
Captain J. J. Powell.
Captain H. T. Birch-Reynardson.
Lieut. G. Naylor.
Lieut. D. Murphy.
Captain W. W. Meldon (3rd Durham Light Infantry).
Lieut. S. L. Webber (2nd D.C.L.I.).
Lieut. J. S. P. Mellor (5th Somerset Light Infantry).
2nd Lieut. A. J. Hazell (2nd West Riding).
2nd Lieut. A. P. Wilson (4th Border).

Digitized by Google

Prisoners of War.

Lieut.-Colonel E. A. E. LETHBRIDGE, D.S.O.
Major C. F. HENLEY.
Captain W. E. T. MORLAND, M.C. (Staff).
Captain S. C. B. MUNDEY (Royal Flying Corps).
Lieut. (Acting Adjutant) A. E. MASON.
Lieut. G. NAYLOR.
Lieut. J. S. P. MELLOR (5th Somerset Light Infantry).
Lieut. G. L. HEAWOOD (4th Wilts). Exchanged invalid.
Captain and Quartermaster T. IVEY.

II.

WITH THE KUT RELIEF FORCE.

Killed, or Died of Wounds.

Captain (Brevet-Major) Hon. J. C. W. S. FOLJAMBE.
Captain S. F. HAMMICK (Res. of Off.).
Lieut. A. H. DAVIS (3rd Battalion).
Lieut. C. I. WIDCOMBE (3rd Battalion).
Lieut. E. F. COULTHARD (9th Battalion).
Lieut. A. H. TRUMAN (3rd Battalion).
Lieut. F. C. STALEY (4th Somerset Light Infantry).

Wounded.

Major L. J. CARTER.
Captain R. H. G. TATTON (3rd Battalion).
Lieut. J. W. MEADE.
Lieut. C. H. RILEY (3rd Battalion).
Lieut. A. E. GARDNER (3rd Battalion).
Lieut. H. T. C. FIELD (9th Battalion).
Lieut. L. DE SELINCOURT (7th Hants).
Lieut. D. G. FIRTH (5th Hants).

Digitized by Google

HONOURS AND REWARDS

(From the Beginning of the Campaign to 30th June 1916).

Mentioned in Sir John Nixon's Dispatch. Operations to Kut-el-Amara, 28th September 1915.

Captain R. R. M. Brooke (*killed*).
Captain C. F. Henley.
Captain W. E. T. Morland (H.Q. Staff).
Lieut. J. J. Powell.
Captain J. H Courtis.
Lieut.-Colonel E. A. E. Lethbridge, D.S.O.
Captain Hon. J. C. W. S. Foljambe.
Major A. C. Hyde.

8037 Corporal A. Dixon.
7452 Lance-Corporal W. E. Donahoe.
8347 Private G. F. Draper.
8929 Lance-Corporal W. J. Farrant.
6830 Sergeant H. Grace.
9037 Lance-Corporal J. Horwood.
8777 Private F. J. Hussey.
793 Sergeant J. Kidd.
8732 Private J. W. Neale.
8986 Lance-Corporal J. Upstone
Lance-Corporal Parkes.

Mentioned in General Townshend's Kut Dispatch.

Lieut.-Colonel E. A. E. Lethbridge, D.S.O.
Captain Hon. J. C. W. S. Foljambe.
2nd Lieut. F. Brown (*killed*).
Hon. Captain and Quartermaster T. Ivey.

8540 Private L. P. Grey.
8687 Private J. H. Harvey (attached from Sherwood Foresters).
5574 Colour-Sergeant T. A. Love (C.Q.M.S. and Acting R.S.M.).

Digitized by Google

8034 Sergeant R. J. ABDY.
6907 Corporal A. PURSEGLOVE (Lance-Sergeant and temp. Sergeant).
8361 Private A. APPS.
8057 Corporal F. SMITH (Lance-Sergeant and temp. Sergeant).
8148 Sergeant W. E. ROBINS (acting C.Q.M.S.).
5766 Sergeant H. ARLETT (acting C.Q.M.S.).
7452 Lance-Corporal W. E. DONAHOE (acting Corporal).
8397 Private T. W. ARMITT.
9015 Private A. S. EVANS (*killed*).
7315 Private E. G. H. LEACH.

Captain W. E. T. MORLAND (Staff).
Captain S. C. B. MUNDEY (Royal Flying Corps).

Mentioned in Kut Relief Force Dispatch.

Major L. J. CARTER.
Captain S. F. HAMMICK (Reserve of Off.).
Captain and Adjutant J. C. W. S. FOLJAMBE.

HONOURS AWARDED[1] FOR 1915—1916.

COMPANION OF THE ORDER OF ST. MICHAEL AND ST. GEORGE.

Lieut.-Colonel E. A. E. LETHBRIDGE, D.S.O.

DISTINGUISHED SERVICE ORDER.

Major L. J. CARTER.
Captain W. E. T. MORLAND, M.C.

BREVET-COLONEL.

Lieut.-Colonel E. A. E. LETHBRIDGE, C.M.G.,D.S.O.

BREVET-LIEUT.-COLONEL.

Major F. H. STAPLETON.

[1] These awards were made for operations described in this volume, although some of them were not gazetted until later.—ED.

Digitized by Google

BREVET-MAJOR.

Captain Hon. J. C. W. S. FOLJAMBE (killed in action).

MILITARY CROSS.

Captain W. E. T. MORLAND.
Captain G. E. WHITTALL.
Lieut. G. NAYLOR.
Captain J. STARTIN (R.A.M.C.).

DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL.

8037 Corporal A. DIXON (since died of wounds).
8347 Private G. F. DRAPER.
6830 Sergeant H. GRACE.
9037 Lance-Corporal J. HORWOOD.
8986 Lance-Corporal J. UPSTONE.
793 Sergeant J. KIDD (attached from 1/4th Border Regiment).
6414 Sergeant A. BARLOW (acting Pioneer Sergeant).
5407 R.Q.M. Sergeant J. W. BURBRIDGE.
9143 Private P. R. MILLER.
6334 Sergeant W. WARD.

MILITARY MEDAL.

8987 Private W. HICKS.

PARTICULARS OF ACTS OF GALLANTRY.

CAPTAIN WALTER EDWARD THOMSON MORLAND.

For conspicuous gallantry and resource in action when rallying and leading men up to the firing line. Later he assisted his Brigadier with great ability. His horse was shot under him. On another occasion he distinguished himself by marked courage.

[*Awarded the* MILITARY CROSS, "*London Gazette*," 15*th March* 1916.]

No. 8986 LANCE-CORPORAL J. UPSTONE.

For conspicuous gallantry and initiative at Kut-el-Amara (Mesopotamia) on September 28th, 1915. He brought his machine-gun quickly into action under heavy fire, and worked it with great effect against the enemy.

[*Awarded the* DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL.]

Digitized by Google

No. 8037 Corporal A. Dixon.

For conspicuous gallantry at Kut-el-Amara (Mesopotamia) on 28th September 1915. Although wounded, he continued to lead and encourage his section with great determination until the evening, when the fight closed.

[*Awarded the* Distinguished Conduct Medal.]

No. 8347 Private G. F. Draper.

For conspicuous gallantry and devotion to duty at Kut-el-Amara on 28th September 1915. He tended a badly wounded man under heavy fire, helped him to a trench, and then returned immediately to the firing line.

[*Awarded the* Distinguished Conduct Medal.]

No. 6830 Sergeant H. Grace.

For conspicuous gallantry at Kut-el-Amara on 28th September 1915. He sent messages to the artillery by heliograph under heavy fire, although he had to stand in full view of the enemy's redoubts in order to do so.

[*Awarded the* Distinguished Conduct Medal.]

No. 9037 Lance-Corporal J. Horwood.

For conspicuous gallantry at Kut-el-Amara on 28th September 1915. He both carried messages and sent them by heliograph and flag under heavy fire, when in close proximity to the enemy's trenches.

[*Awarded the* Distinguished Conduct Medal.]

No. 793 Sergeant J. Kidd (*attached from 1/4th Border Regiment*).

For conspicuous gallantry and devotion to duty at Kut-el-Amara on 28th September 1915. Although wounded, he took part in the final charge, and showed a fine example to those around him.

[*Awarded the* Distinguished Conduct Medal.]

Digitized by Google

LIEUT.-COLONEL A. J. F. EDEN.
Commanding 2nd Battalion.

Digitized by Google

THE 2ND BATTALION
OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY
IN
FRANCE AND FLANDERS

1st August 1915 to 30th June 1916.

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 2nd BATTALION.

1st August 1915 to 30th June 1916.

(*See Maps* 6 *and* 7.)

ON the 1*st August* 1915 the Battalion was in Cuinchy trenches (A 1 Sector), as mentioned in the last volume of the CHRONICLE. The Officers with the Battalion on that date were as follows:—

[1] Brevet-Lieut.-Colonel A. J. F. EDEN, commanding.
Major G. N. COLVILE, D.S.O., Senior Major.
Captain L. F. SCOTT, Transport Officer.
[1] Captain J. A. SOUTHEY, Machine-gun Officer.
[1] Captain R. B. CROSSE, D.S.O., Adjutant.
[1] Lieut. A. E. WARNOCK, Quartermaster.
[1] Captain E. SCOTT, R.A.M.C., Medical Officer.

A Company.

[1] Captain R. M. OWEN.
2nd Lieut. R B. KITE.
2nd Lieut. C. T. CHEVALLIER.
2nd Lieut. A. N. CAREW HUNT.
2nd Lieut. T. E. WITHINGTON.

B Company.

Captain C. G. HIGGINS.
Lieut. J. H BOARDMAN
Lieut. C. A. F. FOWKE.
2nd Lieut A. G. CARDY.
2nd Lieut. W. J. LITTLEDALE.
2nd Lieut. P. M. RIDOUT.

C Company.

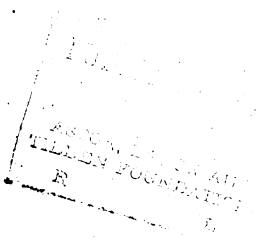
Captain A. W. N. PONSONBY.
Captain C. FITZGERALD.
Lieut. C. A. BARRAN.
2nd Lieut. E. R. G. HUGHES.
2nd Lieut. J. G. GRANT.
2nd Lieut. P. L. C. WEBSTER.

D Company.

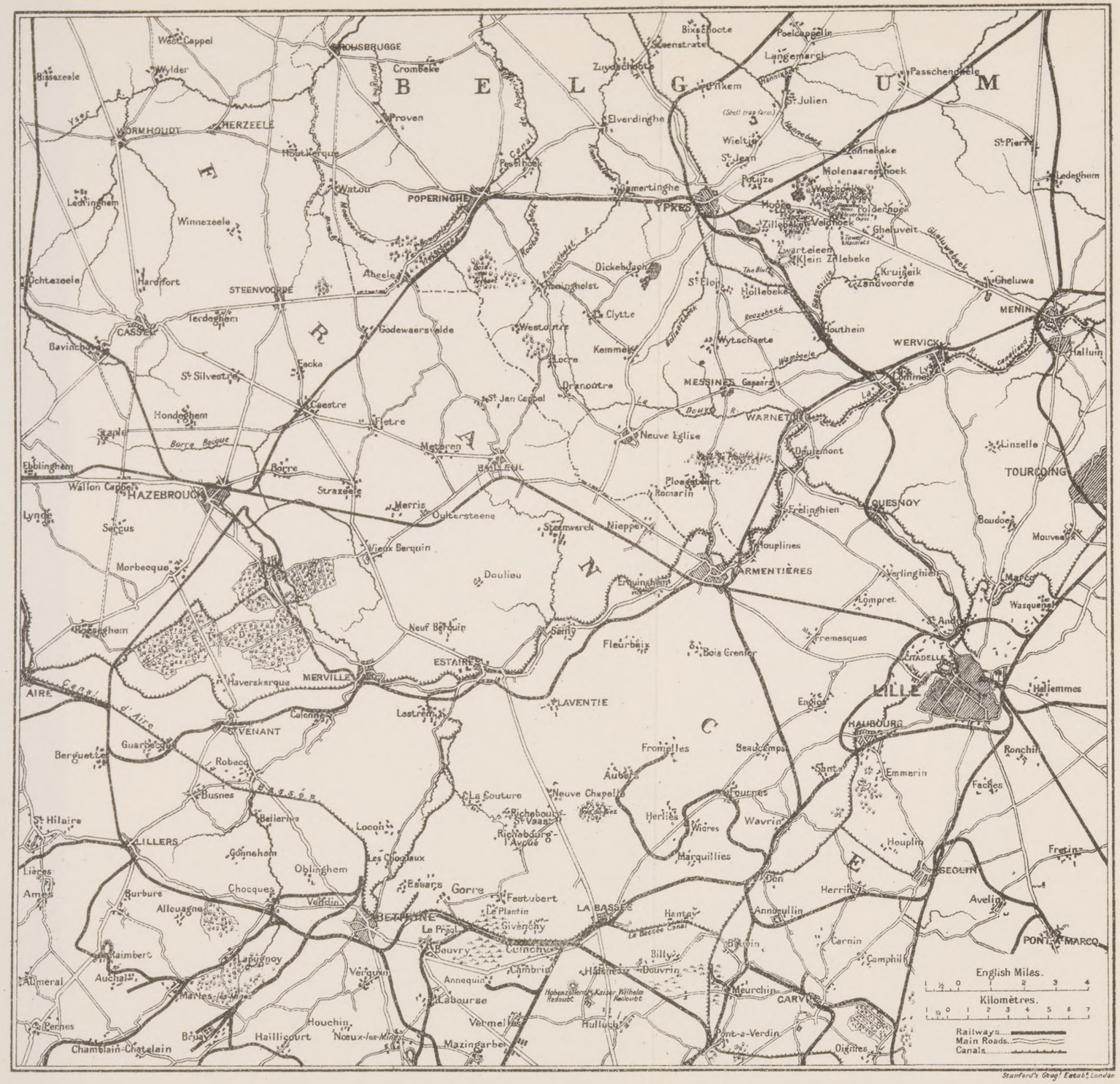
[1] Lieut. P. F. NEWTON-KING.
[1] 2nd Lieut. G. FIELD.
2nd Lieut. J. D. BELGRAVE.
2nd Lieut. C. HURST-BROWN.

[1] Took the field with the Battalion, August 1914.

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google


B E L G I U M
F R A N C E
West Cappel
Bissezeele
Wylder
GROUSBRUGGE
Crombeke
Proven
WORMHOUDT
HERZEELE
Houtkerque
Watou
POPERINGHE
Winnezeele
Hardifort
STEENVOORDE
Terdeghem
CASSEL
Bavinchove
Bodewaersvelde
Eecke
St Silvestre
Caestre
Hondeghem
Staple
Borre Becque
Eblinghem
Wallon Cappel
HAZEBROUCK
Lynde
Sercus
Morbecque
Rosendaël
Haverskerque
MERVILLE
AIRE
Canal d'Aire
Calonne
ST VENANT
Guarbecque
Robecq
Busnes
St Hilaire
LILLERS
Gonnehem
Oblinghem
Chocques
Burbure
Allouagne
Verdin
BETHUNE
Le Preol
Beuvry
Raimbert
Labuissoy
Auchel
Almeral
Marles-les-Mines
Pernes
Bruay
Haillicourt
Houchin
Nœux-les-Mines
Chamblain-Châtelain
Mazingarbe
Vermelles
Annequin
Labourse
Verquin
Cambrin
Hohenzollern Redoubt
Kaiser Wilhelm Redoubt
Hulluch
Loos
Givenchy
Le Plantin
Festubert
Gorre
Essars
Locon
Les Choquaux
Richebourg St Vaast
Richebourg l'Avoué
La Couture
Neuve Chapelle
Robecq
Bellerive
Beuvry
Quinchy
LA BASSÉE
La Bassée Canal
Billy
Douvrin
Haisnes
Hantay
Annœullin
Herrin
Don
Marquillies
Herlies
Wiers
Wavrin
Fromelles
Aubers
Beaucamps
Tourres
Sant
Emmerin
Houplin
SECLIN
Fretin
Faches
Ronchin
Avelin
PONT-A-MARCQ
Carnin
Camphin
Bauvin
Pont-à-Vendin
Meurchin
CARVIN
Oignies
Libercourt
Wingles
Lens
Hénin-Liétard
Drocourt
Quiéry-la-Motte
Haisnes
Douvrin
Billy-Montigny
Sallaumines
Noyelles-sous-Lens
Harnes
Courrières
Evin-Malmaison
Dourges
Leforest
Carvin

REGIMENTAL DIARY.

August 2nd.—(To billets in Annequin.) In the morning we were relieved by the Queen's, when 2½ companies went into billets, the remainder being disposed as follows :—

2 Platoons (A Company) and 1 machine-gun in Cuinchy Support Post.

1 Company (D) and 1 machine-gun in Cambrin Supporting Point.

August 3rd–6th.—(In billets at Annequin.) Companies were exercised daily in musketry, drill, and physical training.

Information received that Major G. N. Colvile, D.S.O., has been appointed to the command of the 7th Battalion Duke of Cornwall's Light Infantry, with effect from 27th July.

Casualty : 1 man wounded.

FROM LIEUT.-COLONEL A. J. EDEN'S DIARY.

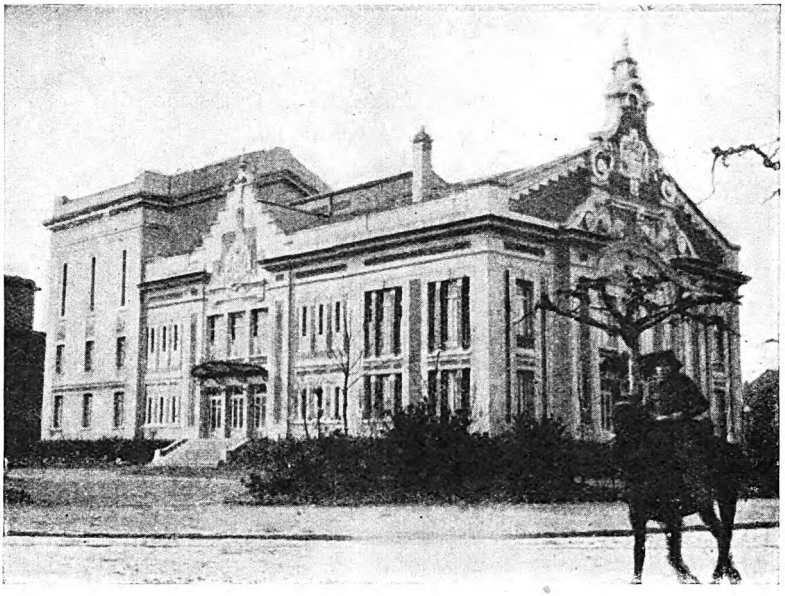
August 7th.—At midday we were relieved by the 1st R. Berkshire Regiment (6th Brigade), and marched back to billets in Bethune —in the Cemetery area—a new one for us, and the seventh different one in which I have been in this town. Weather extremely hot, but pleasant enough out riding in the evening. We have started a riding class for young officers, many of whom are not altogether at home on a horse. Ponsonby is running it, and we have managed to secure a capital field for the purpose.

August 8th–14th.—In Corps Reserve in Bethune, the remainder of the 5th Brigade being in the neighbourhood. As usual, the companies were kept at steady drill in the mornings, and occasionally route marches—usually two companies together. Bathing arrangements not so good as on former occasions.

On the 9th Kite took over the Brigade School of Bombing.

August 13th.—A year to-day since we left England with the Expeditionary Force, and of those who then embarked there are now present with the Regiment : 7 officers, 3 warrant officers, 27 sergeants, 4 buglers, and 228 rank and file (including 2 attached from the R.A.M.C.). Of these the following have served continuously during the twelve months : 2 officers, 1 warrant officer, 12 sergeants, 2 buglers, 133 rank and file (including 2 attached from the R.A.M.C.).

Digitized by Google



THE THEATRE, BETHUNE.

In the evening some enthusiasts got up a dinner at the Hôtel de France, and although, considering how the Regiment had suffered, I did not at all approve the idea, I was persuaded at the last moment to attend. The Hôtel de France is a wonderful institution, and has been practically always open, except for a couple of days or so at the time when the town was shelled.

August 14th.—To Givenchy in the morning with Company Commanders to reconnoitre a sector of trenches quite new to us.

During the past year there have been 1,023 admissions to hospital —an average of 2.8 per diem.

2nd Lieut. K. Peploe joined for duty.

August 15th.—Our Bishop came to Bethune to-day, and preached very well at the Parade Service. In the afternoon we moved up into B 2 Section Givenchy trenches, and relieved the 1st Irish Guards, commanded by Trefusis, who has just been given command of a brigade, although only 36 years of age; but he is a very fine officer.

2nd Lieut. L. J. Goodwyn (from attached 2nd K.O.Y.L.I.) joined for duty

Digitized by Google

August 16th.—We are now in the left sector of Givenchy, and a very active spot, extending from the Shrine on the right to the low ground in continuation of Scottish Trench on the left. Two other battalions of the Brigade continue the line as far south as the canal. Two of our companies occupy the front system, the other two are in support in depth, less 1 platoon in Herts Redoubt. Regimental H.Q. in houses at Windy Corner.

Opposite the right company there is a mass of mine craters, some made by us, others by the enemy. These craters form three groups, or at any rate two distinct groups. Three saps lead up to occupy the lip on our side in the southern group, and four saps to the northern group. At places we are within 30 or 40 yards of the Huns. Mining by both sides is most active, and working parties and material congest the trenches.

August 20th.—We remained in the trenches until to-day. Bombing (chiefly by us) was carried on vigorously every night, our average being 200 bombs per night; fortunately we have plenty at present, and the enemy replied with very small quantities. Trench mortars were much in use on both sides, and our artillery was fairly

SUPPORT TRENCHES, GIVENCHY.
Headquarters of B Company and 1 Platoon, 2nd Battalion, August 1915.

Digitized by Google

active, though the enemy's guns were pretty quiet. The officers in the front line got little rest, as it was necessary to have two subalterns per company always on duty.

Two men were wounded on 15th August, and two on the 16th.

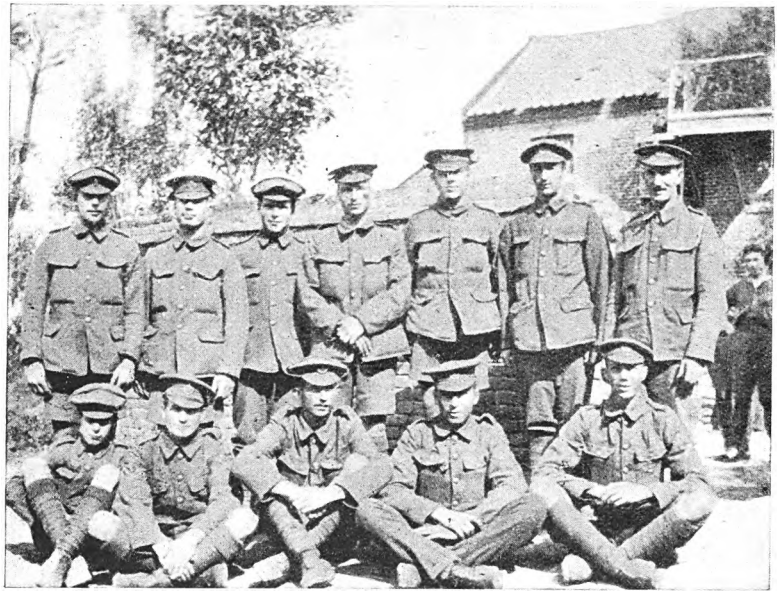
After my usual morning tour of the trenches to-day, I went with Ponsonby down into the Festubert area, to view our old breastwork line and also to look at the old front line of German breastworks which had been captured by the British after some very strenuous fighting last June.

In the evening we were relieved by the 1st Queen's and moved back into billets at Le Quesnoy, which is a nice little village, in which we secured a very good house for our mess.

2nd Lieut. V. V. Jacob joined for duty.

Extract from a letter dated 19th August 1915 from Lieut. R. M. Owen, commanding A Company :—

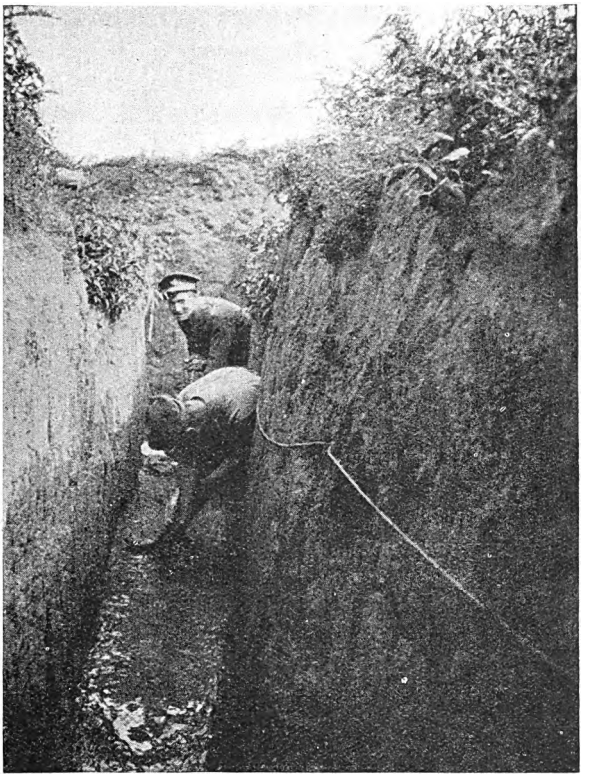
The particular bit of trench where I am now is probably the worst bit of any about here until you get right up to Ypres. I have half the company in front and the other half in support behind.



52ND SCOUTS.
At Windy Corner, August 1915.

Digitized by Google

There are a lot of mines all over the place, and the wretched sappers and fatigue parties go down miles and pump water all day long, bringing up filthy sandbags, etc. Between my front and the Germans the ground is very complicated. It really consists of two main craters, i.e., where mines have been blown up, the result being a huge hole, exactly like an ordinary gravel pit. We have



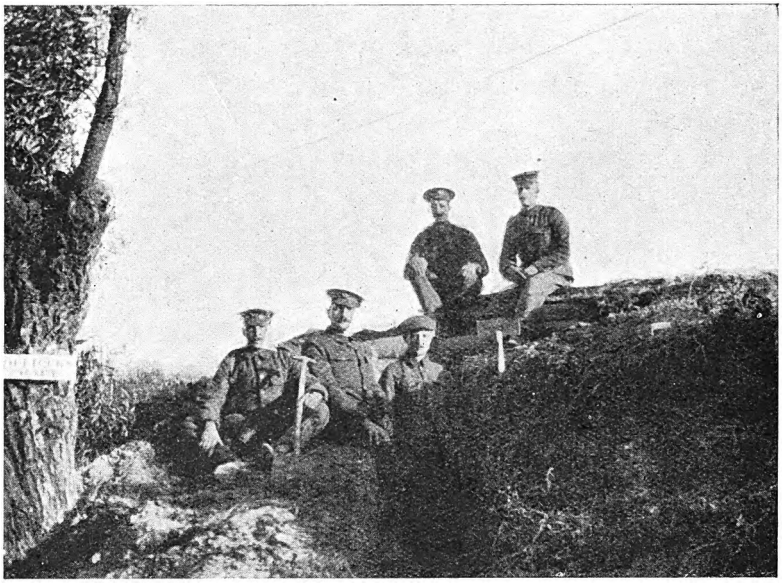
CLEANING UP "BIRMINGHAM ARCADE."
Communication trench at Givenchy, August 1915.

sapped up to the edge of the pit on this side, and the Huns have done exactly the same on the other side; so we are really sitting opposite each other on the edges of this chasm. At various points we have bombers, who throw bombs all through the night, one bomb about every $\frac{1}{4}$ hour. I have seven points from which they throw, and last night they threw more than 400 bombs. It is

Digitized by Google

too dangerous to throw much by day, as the bombs can be seen coming through the air, and this would be a signal to the Huns to turn their trench mortars on to our saps.

It is largely luck if you ever actually hit anyone with a bomb, and you very rarely do so, as in most cases the distance between the two saps is just too far for hand-thrown bombs. But you keep on throwing them in order to prevent the enemy from creeping over his edge of the crater, getting down into it, and then crawling up your side, so as to rush your saps. They cannot do much of this if you are constantly chucking bombs.



SOME OF THE 52ND PIONEERS.

Yesterday evening the Colonel (Eden) and Crosse (Adjutant) came up at about 9.30, and we started going round the trenches and visiting the saps, which took us until about 11.30 p.m. Then I started out again, and did not get back to my dug-out until 2 a.m. I knocked up my servant, and, after he had made me a cup of cocoa, I turned in and slept until about 7.30 a.m.; so since Tuesday night I reckon that I have not had much more than 6 hours' sleep, but I am not feeling so very tired. This morning at 10.50 some officers of the Regiment who are relieving us to-morrow

Digitized by Google

came up, and I had to take them all round and show them everything, which kept me on the go until 1 o'clock. I was feeling a bit desperate then, so after lunch I gave orders that no one was to come near me unless absolutely necessary, and I got about 3 hours' sleep.

I have been round to-night with Colonel Eden, and shall be starting round again on my own very shortly. We ought to get out of these trenches about 5 to-morrow afternoon, and I shall not be sorry. They are very old and crumbling, so if there is any heavy rain (like that of yesterday) the sides fall in, which is a great bore, and often men get buried in that way. There is (or I should say there was) a Highlander lying a few yards outside my trench at one place. He must have been there a very long time, as there is not much of him left except his kilt. I got a couple of my sanitary squad to spray him with creosote this evening, and to-night I hope that we shall be able to cover him up. There is what is practically a skeleton just a little way from my dug-out, and in one of the sap trenches a man's knees and feet are actually sticking out of the trench.

COLONEL EDEN'S DIARY CONTINUED.

August 21st–23rd.—(In billets at Le Quesnoy.) Companies did but little work (Saturday, Sunday, Monday), as all ranks required a good rest after the five strenuous days in the trenches.

August 24th.—In the morning we changed places with the 1st Queen's. Some lively bombing took place between 8 and 9 p.m., the enemy making a persistent attack on the northern craters.

August 25th.—About 4 a.m. a small mine was blown by the enemy, which buried three of our men. When this happens the digging out and restoration of the sap take a long time, with very heavy labour. The weather now very hot, and the days are fatiguing. I always make a round of all the companies during the morning, and again between 9 and 11 p.m. A visit some time during the afternoon is also often necessary. A direct quick round at night usually takes Crosse and myself a good two hours, and on wet nights, when the trenches are sticky, much longer. We are lucky in having good Regimental H.Q. at Windy Corner, and by using due care, i.e., keeping down smoke, watching for hostile aircraft, etc., we have so far been very little troubled by shell-fire. Many stray bullets fall around at night, and it is always wise to stick to the communication trenches, which are abundant, rather

Digitized by Google

then to move along the road—often a shorter route, and at times very inviting, especially in wet weather.

August 26th.—General Gough, commanding the Corps, with Brigadier-General Cobbe, V.C. (whom I knew well in Ashanti), came round to inspect the progress of the many "strong points" now in course of construction.

About midnight the enemy became very active, and made a determined bombing attack on the northern crater at the Sunken Road. The enemy approached very close at one time, with the result that several of their bombs fell into our trenches and caused casualties. Our men did very well, and the enemy gained no ground, but I was grieved to find some of our good fellows laid out when I went round about 4 a.m. (27th).

I find that early morning as a rule is the most satisfactory time for close observation of the enemy from the sap-heads. In the first glimmer of dawn one can sometimes move about on the top, behind the front line; but enemy snipers have to be watched, for the increasing light following dawn is all to their advantage. On the other hand, we score in the late afternoon light.

August 27th.—A quiet day, and a much quieter night, although every night there is a considerable amount of firing from trench mortars on both sides, and some shelling by our artillery.

August 28th.—In the afternoon we were relieved by the 2nd R. Scots Fusiliers (21st Brigade), and the Brigade came out of the line. We went into billets in the Rue du Tir area, Bethune.

Our recent period in the trenches gave our Regimental bombers what was practically their first experience, and they acquitted themselves well—especially No 10290 Lance-Corporal H. Watkins, C Company.

Casualties.—24th August, 3 men killed, 4 wounded.
27th August, 7 killed, 13 wounded.
28th August, 3 killed, 3 wounded.

On the 24th 2nd Lieut. L. A. Vidal (from attached 2nd D.C.L.I.) joined for duty.

On the 26th the 28th reinforcement (40 men) arrived.

August 29th.—(In Brigade Reserve, in billets in Bethune.) I am in a former billet—a private house occupied by an old lady and her daughter, who are most friendly, and make us very comfortable.

Conferences are becoming frequent, so I imagine that something of importance is coming off.

Digitized by Google

Extract from a letter from Lieut. R. M. Owen, dated Sunday, 29th August 1915 :—

We had a regular doing in the trenches this time. You remember that we went up on Tuesday last, and I spent the first two nights in reserve—not in the trenches at all. Then on Thursday afternoon I moved up to the craters to relieve Ponsonby. The usual sort of bombing began about 8 p.m. I had just got back to my dug-out, at about 11.30, from my first round, when a man dashed in and said that they were having a hot time in the saps, and that several

ÉCOLE DE JEUNES FILLES, BETHUNE.
2nd Battalion Billets.

men had been wounded; so I went down there, and found that the Huns had managed to lob a bomb or two into our sap-heads. At one place I found two men lying dead in the trench and two more a little farther on. However, our bombers did splendidly, never hesitating to take a man's place directly he went down. We had several badly wounded, and I managed to give morphine to two or three; but, of course, a Company Commander has to be hard-hearted on an occasion like this, and cannot spend time in attending

Digitized by Google

to wounded while the Huns are trying to get into his trenches, as they undoubtedly were that night. I am sure that they came out and crept round the edge of the crater, but we managed to put them off it. We threw about 800 bombs.

This went on until about 3 a.m., when I went back and got a little rest. The net result was 7 killed and about 14 wounded. One of the former was the best corporal I had in my company—a rare good fellow, and he died a very gallant death. I was talking to him only a few minutes before.

The next morning we were busy getting the bodies out of the way, reorganizing the Company, etc., and the night (Friday) was not nearly as bad. The Germans did not actually damage us with their bombs, but one of our bombers unfortunately blew himself to bits with his own bomb, which exploded just before he threw it. He was showing another man how to throw it when it went off, killing him and wounding the other man. I also had a man killed by a trench mortar shell, which burst right in the trench; so my Company suffered badly. I think that the Colonel was quite pleased with what we did, but I hate having men killed.

From the Regimental Diary.

September 1st.

ROLL OF OFFICERS.

Brevet-Lieut.-Colonel A. J. F. Eden, Commanding.
Captain L. F. Scott, Transport Officer.
Captain C. Fitzgerald, Machine-Gun Officer.
Lieut. L. A. Vidal.
Captain R. B. Crosse, D.S.O., Adjutant.
Lieut. A. E. Warnock, Quartermaster.
Captain E. Scott, R.A.M.C., Medical Officer.

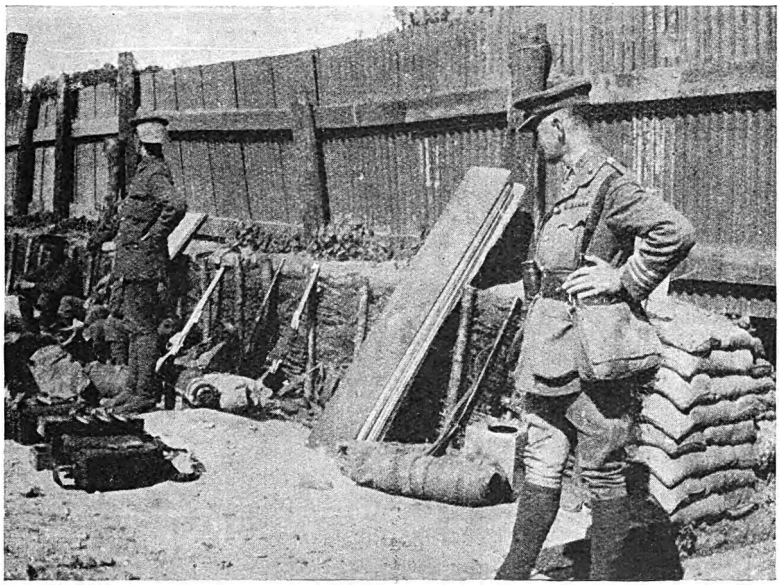
A Company.	*B Company.*
Captain (temp.) R. M. Owen.	Major C. G. Higgins.
Lieut. C. T. Chevallier.	Lieut. C. A. F. Fowke.
2nd Lieut. R. B. Kite.	2nd Lieut. A. G. Cardy
2nd Lieut. A. N. Carew Hunt.	2nd Lieut. W. J. Littledale.
2nd Lieut. T. E. Withington.	2nd Lieut. P. M. Ridout.
Lieut. V. V. Jacob.	2nd Lieut. L. J. Goodwyn.

Digitized by Google

C Company	*D Company.*
Captain A. W. N. PONSONBY.	Captain J. A. SOUTHEY.
Lieut. C. A. BARRAN.	Lieut. P. F. NEWTON-KING
2nd Lieut. E. R. G. HUGHES.	2nd Lieut. G. FIELD.
2nd Lieut. J. G. GRANT.	2nd Lieut. J. D. BELGRAVE.
2nd Lieut. P. L. C. WEBSTER.	2nd Lieut. C. HURST-BROWN.
2nd Lieut. A. E. S. RIDDLE.	2nd Lieut. K. PEPLOE.

COLONEL EDEN'S DIARY CONTINUED.

September 2nd.—I have been getting through a good deal of writing while in rest; there is more to be put in the War Diary now



LIEUT.-COLONEL EDEN.

than there has been for some time. The usual drills and training going on, and we have had the use of the baths (for washing clothes, etc.) on one day. We are sending parties of 20 men at a time to be trained in the nature and use of bombs at the Brigade Bombing School, which is in charge of Kite. Each course lasts 6 or 7 days.

September 3rd.—The Regiment moved to billets at Le Quesnoy, in relief of the 2nd R. Scots Fusiliers. A very wet day, and the new waterproof cape was of much benefit to the men.

Digitized by Google

September 4th.—Very large fatigue parties found by the Regiment to-night—3 or 4 platoons at a time—in the trenches and at the bomb store. We are going to use gas, though the word must not be breathed. The whole thing is an absolute secret. The cylinders were brought up by rail to within a mile of the village, whence they were transferred in transport wagons to a rendezvous about two miles from the front trenches. Then each cylinder (commonly called a "rat") was carried on men's shoulders, with other men in relief; the carrying parties conveying their awkward loads not only noiselessly but with the greatest care.

September 5th.—Still at Le Quesnoy. The 29th reinforcement (85 men) arrived.

September 6th.—Relieved the 1st Queen's in the same section of Givenchy trenches as before, now renumbered B 3. A little bombing, but a fairly quiet night.

September 7th.—Enemy blew a small mine in early morning, which much obstructed our view from two sap-heads. A very busy day.

September 8th.—At 5 a.m. our miners blew a mine with excellent results, and, removing yesterday's obstructions, gave us a considerably better position than before.

Ponsonby, Crosse, and I went into a sap-head soon after the explosion, and were congratulating ourselves on the success, when poor Ponsonby was shot stone dead through the head and fell right across my knees. We thought that we were well under cover, and, moreover, the light was none too good, so that it came as a tremendous shock to us. We have lost one of our very best friends, and the Regiment one of the very finest gentlemen and officers who have ever worn its uniform. It was a terrible tragedy. We buried him in the afternoon in the cemetery near Windy Corner.

In the evening the 1st Queen's relieved us, and we returned to billets in Le Quesnoy.

Casualties on the 7th and 8th:—Captain A. W. N. PONSONBY and two men killed; Lieut. C. A. Barran, 2nd Lieut. A. E. Riddle, and 9 men wounded.

With reference to the above, the following is an extract from Captain R. M. Owen's diary:—

At about 6 a.m. poor Ashley Ponsonby was shot through the head by a sniper, and fell dead into the Colonel's arms. It was a fearful shock to us, for we all loved him; I suppose he was almost

Digitized by Google

the most popular officer in the whole Regiment. We buried him at 3 p.m., the Brigadier and the Colonel of the Highland Light Infantry being amongst those present.

COLONEL EDEN'S DIARY CONTINUED.

September 10th.—After a rest at Le Quesnoy we returned this afternoon to the same trenches, in relief of the Queen's.

September 11th–12th.—(In trenches at Givenchy.) A much quieter period, except for a little more frequent use by the enemy of *Minenwerfer*. Weather very fine and hot

CAPTAIN PONSONBY AND LIEUT.-COLONEL EDEN.

September 13th.—In the afternoon we were relieved by the 2nd R. Welsh Fusiliers, 19th Brigade, who took the place of the 4th (Guards') Brigade when the latter left us in July to join the Guards' Division.

To billets in Oblinghem and Vendin, good but very scattered. Have a very good mess in a farm-house.

Casualties.—10th September, 1 man killed.
12th September, 1 killed and 1 wounded
13th September, 2 wounded.

O

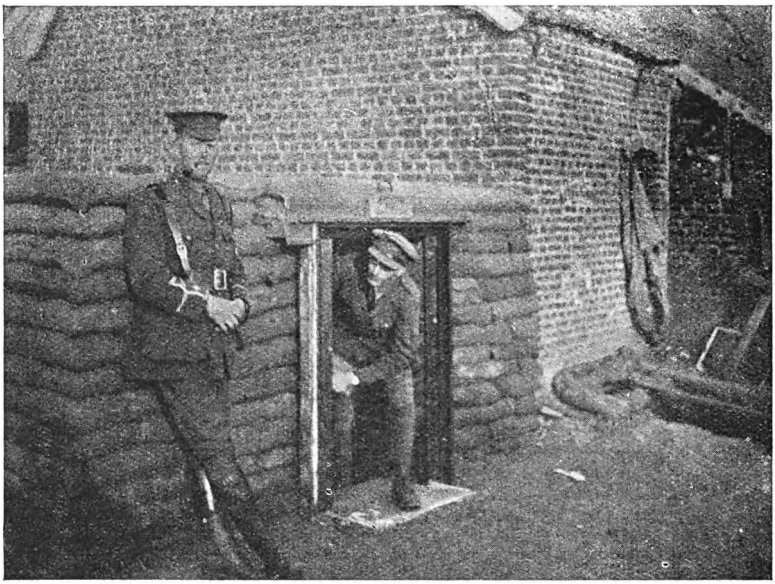
Digitized by Google

September 14*th*.—I looked up Bourke in the afternoon. He is in command of a R.F.C. squadron, quartered close to Choques.

Scott and I rode over to Laventie, to see our 6th Battalion, and found them in trenches there. White, Childers, Davy, Foljambe, and Boyle all well.

September 15*th*.—(Oblinghem.) The whole Brigade in reserve. Usual drills and classes of instruction, including an Adjutant's Drill.

The 30th reinforcement (25 men) arrived.



LIEUT. AND QUARTERMASTER WARNOCK AND LIEUT. RIDOUT.
At "Warsaw Villa," Givenchy. September 1915.

September 16*th*.—Information received that No. 10290 Corporal H. WATKINS (since killed in action, 10th September) has been awarded the D.C.M.

September 17*th*.—At 3.30 p.m. the Regiment marched to Le Quesnoy, taking 65 minutes (4 miles).

September 18*th*.—In reserve in billets at Le Quesnoy. We had a primitive sort of steeplechase this afternoon, over very flat country, with a few ditches. Ridout won on a transport horse. There were twelve starters. I rode my second horse—a poor class of pony.

Digitized by Google

September 19th.—In the afternoon we relieved the 2nd Worcesters in the right sector at Givenchy (B 3). Very quiet night; also very hot.

September 20th.—Very quiet day and night. The 31st reinforcement (16 machine-gunners and signallers) arrived.

September 21st.—Bombardment formations assumed this morning; our front-line and second-line trenches were reduced by half in strength, and one company returned to billets at dawn. In the afternoon the 2nd Worcesters relieved us in B 3, and we returned to billets at Le Quesnoy.

Casualties.—20th September, 1 man killed.
21st September, 2 men wounded.

September 22nd.—(In reserve in billets at Le Quesnoy.) Artillery bombardment continued, with hardly any reply.

September 23rd.—Some heavy rain fell. Artillery bombardment of enemy trenches, etc., continued all day. In the afternoon we relieved the Worcesters in our old sector at Givenchy. Quiet night.

Digitized by Google

BATTLE OF LOOS.

To attempt to describe the battle of Loos in the few pages available in a volume such as this (which, moreover, has no pretensions to being a military history) would be to attempt the impossible. The battle, which began on the 25th September and died out on the 13th October, was on such a vast scale and so full of incident that a true and accurate account of it will not be written until many years have passed and every unit engaged has been able to give its own story of the part that it played in the fight. It was a battle of giants, and in no previous battle had the British Army ever had more men engaged or suffered greater casualties. In such a modern battle it falls to the lot of a few units to deliver the main assault, while to the majority is allotted the duller but no less arduous task of deceiving the enemy as to the real point of attack, usually by launching a bold assault on a part of his front, with the knowledge that the assault has no weight behind it.

The plan arranged by General Joffre and Sir John French was that the main assault by the Allies should be delivered in Artois and Champagne: the British (on the left) on a front of some seven miles from La Bassée Canal southwards to the village of Grenay, and the French (on the right) prolonging the line along the Bethune-Arras Road, but making their principal thrust farther south—in Champagne. To help the main effort, subsidiary attacks were to be made simultaneously along practically the whole of the remainder of the front—north of the La Bassée Canal, along the Ypres Salient, on the Yser Canal (by the

Digitized by Google

Belgian Army), and from the sea coast by British monitors.

The following were the dispositions of the British on the 25th September, when the assault was delivered :

Ypres Salient Subsidiary Attack.—3rd and 14th[1] Divisions of the Vth Corps (Allenby), Second Army (Plumer).

North of the La Bassée Canal Subsidiary Attacks.—From north to south IIIrd Corps, Indian Corps, part of the Ist Corps (about Givenchy)—all belonging to the First Army (Haig).

Main Attack.—Haig's First Army, consisting of the remainder of the Ist Corps (Hubert Gough), the whole of the IVth Corps (Rawlinson), and in reserve the 3rd Cavalry Division and the XIth Corps. From left to right (i.e., from north to south) the Divisions were as follows : Part of the 2nd, the 9th (Thesiger), the 7th (Capper), the Indian, the 15th (New Army), and the 47th (Northumbrian T.F.).

The 2nd Division (Horne) was astride the La Bassée Canal, the 5th Brigade[2] (Cochrane) to the north of it, at Givenchy, the 6th Brigade (Daly) to the south of it, at Cuinchy, and the 19th Brigade (Robertson still farther south. The canal was the extreme left boundary of the main attack.

At 5.50 a.m. (25th September) gas and smoke were discharged from our front for the first time in the war, and subsequently the assault commenced. With the exception of the left brigades (just south of the canal), who found themselves confronted with uncut wire, the Ist Corps and the IVth Corps advanced with magnificent dash and captured the whole of the German

[1] The 5th (Service) Battalion of the Regiment was with the 14th Division. See the 5th Battalion Record farther on in this volume.

[2] The 2nd Battalion of the Regiment was with the 5th Brigade.

Digitized by Google

front line from the Hohenzollern Redoubt southwards, as well as the village of Loos. The German second line was also pierced, and before nightfall Hulluch and Haisnes were seriously threatened. Throughout the day the fighting had been very severe and the casualties extremely heavy, the Germans counter-attacking frequently, in spite of tempestuous weather. Sir John French's Dispatch describes the position of the British line that night: "From the Double Crassier, south of Loos, by the western part of Hill 70, to the western exit of Hulluch, thence by the Quarries and western end of Cité St. Elie, east of Fosse 8, back to our original line."

During the night, which continued wet and stormy, the enemy delivered several counter-attacks, which, however, proved little to his advantage, except at one or two points where our troops were forced back for a certain distance.

Next day the advance was practically held up, despite the arrival of three fresh Divisions (Guards, 21st, and 24th), and on the 27th September no great headway was made, ground being won back at some points, but lost at others. The 28th was devoted to consolidating the position gained, and the line remained practically unchanged.

In the meanwhile the French on our right had met with heavy resistance, and were unable to get sufficiently far forward to protect the British right flank. This was represented by Sir John French to General Joffre, who at once ordered the IXth French Corps to relieve our troops holding a part of Hill 70 and the village of Loos, and this was effected on September 29th and 30th.

The Germans continued to make strenuous efforts during the next few days to recover the ground which

Digitized by Google

they had lost, and the fighting was severe. These attempts had little success, and on the 8th October the enemy, in desperation, delivered a violent counter-attack all along the line from Fosse 8 on the north to the right of the IXth French Corps on the south. A very heavy bombardment preceded this counter-attack, which he launched with 28 battalions in the front line and larger numbers in support. Their recovery of ground was practically nil, and their losses enormous—estimated at no less than 8,000 or 9,000 in killed alone.

Sir John French in his Dispatch summed up the result of these operations which commenced on the 25th September by saying that the enemy's position assaulted and carried with so much brilliancy and dash was an exceptionally strong one, with a front of some 6,500 yards; 57 officers and 3,000 other ranks were taken,[1] besides 26 field guns, 40 machine-guns, and 3 *Minenwerfer*.

So much for the main British attack, in which the Regiment was not represented, since its battalions (2nd and 5th) were employed in the subsidiary attacks named above. What befell them in their respective attacks will be found fully related in the following pages. Suffice it to say here that each Battalion fought its fight gallantly for the common cause, and played the part allotted to it in keeping the enemy sufficiently occupied everywhere to prevent him from reinforcing his troops opposing the main attack. That the task of these subsidiary attacks was no light one is proved by the severity of the fighting and the heavy casualties suffered.

The battle of Loos can hardly be considered a great

[1] On the other hand the Germans took at least 1,000 British prisoners—mostly on the 26th September.

Digitized by Google

British victory, although the first assault was a magnificent success, and the subsequent fighting worthy of the traditions of the British Army. Yet we were unable to hold all the ground gained, and our losses were very heavy, amounting as they did to some 2,000 officers and 50,000 men. What the enemy lost it is not possible to say, but it is quite certain that his casualties were far in excess of ours.

The simultaneous attack delivered by the French in Champagne was a most brilliant performance, and resulted in a decisive victory. Attacking on a front three times as wide as that of the British main attack at Loos, and with three times as many men, they swept all before them in their first impetuous assault, and continued their successful advance for several days. No fewer than 25,000 German prisoners and 150 guns of various calibre fell into their hands before the enemy was able to stay their progress.

Colonel Eden's Diary continued.

Battle of Loos

Subsidiary Attack at Givenchy.

September 24th.—Our artillery bombarding heavily all day.

In the evening battle stations were occupied, and Regimental H.Q. moved into the dug-outs which had been prepared for the purpose. They were of the most atrocious design, for, though safe enough, we were fearfully cramped for room, and officers and signal staff were all far too close together for working satisfactorily.

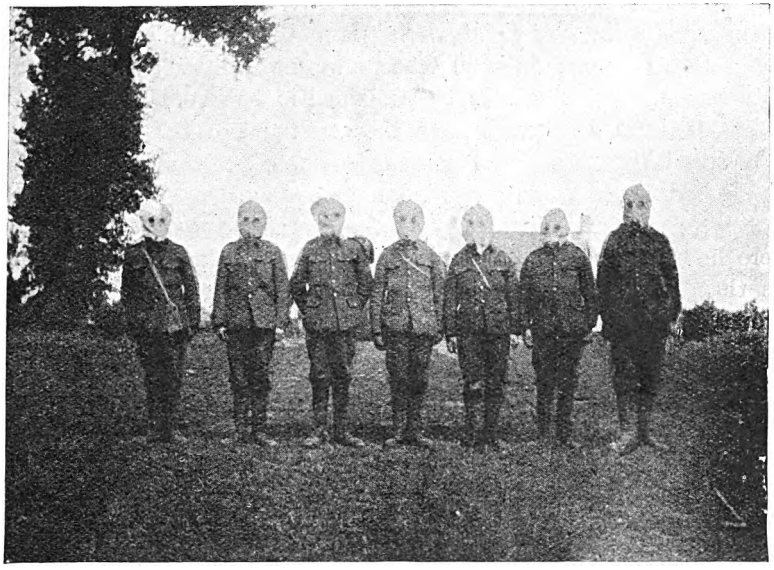
This was the eve of big operations on the 1st Army front. The 2nd Division was distributed as follows :—

19th Brigade to the south of the Bethune-La Bassée road, 6th Brigade in Cuinchy sector, 5th Brigade in the Givenchy portion, thus :—On the right the Glasgow Highlanders (next to the Canal), then the 2nd Highland Light Infantry, then the 1st Queen's, and on the extreme left ourselves and one company of the 7th King's (Liverpool) Regiment, with the 2nd Worcesters in reserve

Digitized by Google

The frontage of the Regiment was between Berkeley Street (about 100 yards south of the Shrine) and the north end of the northern group of craters. Order of companies: On the right A Company (Owen), supported by C; on the left D Company (Southey), with B in reserve.

The rôle of the 2nd Division was to do what it could to keep the enemy occupied, but not to press forward too much, as no reserves were available to help us. Having regard to the 1st Army's task, this was undoubtedly a necessary operation, but



N.C.O.'s OF B COMPANY IN SMOKE HELMETS.
September 1915.

a most unsatisfactory one for us taking part in it. Gas for the first time was to be let off along the whole Army front, and an officer of the Special R.E. Company spent the night with us. Incidentally I may mention that his hourly reports were most unfavourable, as the wind on our front was far from satisfactory.

Brigade H.Q. were at Fanshawe Castle, between Pont Fixe and Windy Corner.

Some particulars of arrangement may be of interest: Packs, including waterproof coats, were stored, and the following equipment was worn: Haversack in the middle of the back, with waterproof sheet and cardigan waistcoat rolled on the belt below.

Digitized by Google

In view of the use of smoke helmets (of which one tube pattern, one ordinary pattern, and one respirator are now carried), every one had a distinguishing mark sewn on to the upper part of the left arm. In companies the O.C wore a large letter, Platoon Commanders and sergeants the number (large) of the platoons, and other ranks the number (small) of their platoons. The five men carrying vermoral sprayers wore an armlet with the letter V; orderlies wore a red and white band on one arm; while the C.O. and Adjutant wore a small piece of regimental ribbon, pinned on the shoulder.

The following were kept in reserve near Windy Corner: All reserve machine-gunners and signallers; Company N.C.O.'s surplus to an establishment of 1 Platoon Sergeant and 2 N.C.O.'s per section.

By Corps Orders only 20 officers were permitted to be taken into action. 2nd Lieut. Peploe remained in reserve.

Higgins was withdrawn from the command of B Company, as I required him to act as second in command of the Regiment.

We had 2 men killed and 3 wounded to-day.

September 25th.—Very early in the morning we were told that zero hour was fixed for 6 a.m., and that, for 10 minutes previous to that, gas (officially called "Accessory Cylinders") and smoke would be discharged from our front trenches. The 5th Brigade was to attack half an hour earlier than the attacks southwards.

In this neighbourhood, at the above hour, the air was practically motionless, with the result that the gas hung very considerably, and in our part of the line did more harm to our men than to the enemy, who, in only very few cases, were found to have suffered from the effects.

A Company got across the 200 yards well, and soon gained a footing in a good length of the Huns' front trench, some parties reaching the support line or even farther. But the enemy, by bringing up reinforcements, gradually made our hold on the captured trenches more and more precarious, and in the end, by 11 a.m., A Company was back again in our own front line.

Between 8 and 9 a.m. little Hughes had taken out a platoon of C Company to assist A, but could make no headway across No Man's Land under the enemy's artillery fire, which by then was pretty severe everywhere.

D Company, advancing from the neighbourhood of the Warren, met with even less success, for opposite them the gas hung in one or two places, and even blew back into our own trenches. Moreover, in front of the company were some strongly defended craters, and

Digitized by Google

the enemy's machine-guns were ready to meet an advance. Newton-King, with a couple of sections, attempted to outflank these particular craters; but, after rounding one corner of them, nearly the whole party was destroyed. Many of D Company (including Field), though wearing smoke helmets, felt the effects of our gas, but kept their position in spite of it.

The other battalions of the Brigade fared no better. The wind was so perverse with the Glasgow Highlanders that they never even left their trenches, whilst in the case of the 2nd H.L.I. at Duck's Bill and the 1st Queen's in between, although two companies of each reached the enemy's line, they were also driven back. Vidal made a brave effort to take a couple of our machine-guns across, but perished in the attempt.

Altogether it was a most unsatisfactory affair, and the only consolation that I could derive from it was the knowledge of the fact that Owen's company was the last to leave the enemy's lines.

The other two brigades of the Division had no luck either, but farther south the Army's effort met with considerable success.

From the Regimental Diary.

Between 6 and 11 a.m. our trenches were pretty heavily bombarded by whiz-bangs, while still heavier shells were directed on the neighbourhood of the church. The remainder of the day and night was quiet.

The 5th Brigade had been told not to press their attack continuously should the first results be fruitless.

A section of the 5th Field Company R.E. was in readiness to assist should the attack be successful.

A working party of 100 men of the 7th King's (Liverpool) Regiment was employed in digging out a communication trench, but the work did not proceed very far. In one part of the line a party similarly employed very greatly impeded the advance of reinforcements on this line of slight cover. Casualties :—

Killed.—Lieut. P. F. Newton-King.
2nd Lieut. E. R. G. Hughes.
2nd Lieut. L. A. Vidal.
And 33 men.

Died of Wounds (the next day).—2nd Lieut. C. Hurst-Brown.

Digitized by Google

Wounded.—Lieut. T. E. WITHINGTON.
Lieut. A. N. CAREW-HUNT.
Lieut. P. L. C. WEBSTER.
Lieut. J. D. BELGRAVE.
Captain E. SCOTT (R.A.M.C.)
And 124 men.
Missing.—Lieut. V. V. JACOB (presumed killed)
And 69 men (61 afterwards presumed killed).

Total casualties, 236 officers and men.

Lieut. R. Clark took over medical charge of the Regiment, *vice* Captain Scott.

Official Report, by Lieut.-Colonel A. J. F. Eden, dated 25th September, 1915 :—

1. Apparently, my right company's leading sections of platoons had little difficulty in crossing over to the German first line, and they were closely followed by the supporting sections of these platoons.

The O.C. this company judged it best to take over the two remaining platoons, and these did not apparently have great difficulty in crossing over either.

This company took a telephone with them, which lasted for some time, but I got hardly a message, as the O.C. the company was away on to the German second line.

For some time they were not attacked, and one officer (Lieut. Chevallier) was able to take down some information ("A," attached), from his knowledge of German, given by the prisoners who were captured.

Two machine-guns followed this company, one coming over on this side, as the left attack made no way. I fear that both guns are lost;[1] as far as I can ascertain at present the sergeant in charge of one gun was seen to be blown up, together with the gun, by a shell. Lieut. Vidal, with the other gun,[2] has not yet been seen or heard of.

The enemy, by the expenditure of a plentiful supply of bombs,[3] gradually drove back this company, and I believe the Queen's,

[1] This subsequently proved to be incorrect.—A. J. F. E.

[2] This gun was recovered on the following day.—A. J. F. E.

[3] "It is certain that our bombers are handicapped by the fact that the Germans use handle-bombs, which undoubtedly carry farther than bombs without handles." —*Regimental Diary.*

Digitized by Google

on their right, was forced back also. At one time this company was almost surrounded, and it was as a last effort that Lieut. Jacob was allowed, with the remainder of our bombs, to make another counter-attack. I regret to say that this officer is missing, and, I believe, wounded.

I had meanwhile ordered out two other platoons, to reinforce this company, but the retirement took place while they and the Brigade Bombing Party were on their way out.

The O.C. the leading company had asked direct for a reinforcement from the company supporting him, and one platoon, under a young and energetic officer, went out over the parapet to his assistance. I have scarcely any information at all as to the doings of this platoon, but its commander (2nd Lieut. Hughes) has been found dead.

The two platoons which I had ordered as reinforcements were told to go by the Lone Tree Sap.

2. On the left, after the mine had exploded, reports are conflicting as to what damage was done or how the surface of the neighbourhood was altered. The party on the extreme north found the Germans lining the inside of the crater ready with bombs, and also several enemy machine-guns ready to receive them. No progress was possible, but fighting between these two parties took place. The right half of the company's attack was also held up, though some very nearly reached the German line.

One report informs me that the wire here was very little, but my impression is that the wire is in a sunken trench, and almost impossible to see from our line or its observing stations.

3. *Gas.*—When the cylinders were opened the gas hung frightfully, and many of our men were gassed, but I have good reason to believe only slightly. The gas had little or no effect on the enemy, behind the northern craters at any rate. Captain Southey has just informed me that the Germans were seen lighting a line of fires, just in front of their second line, from which at once flames sprang up. During the afternoon, and on the arrival of a corporal of the 186th Company R.E., I sent an officer with him to inspect each emplacement. I attach his report, "B."[1]

4. *German Artillery.*—The fire of their "whiz-bangs" was very incessant and very accurate, and was directed principally on our

[1] Not printed.

Digitized by Google

two front lines, where many casualties occurred. A good many 8-in. shells came over, and fell principally near the church and main communication trenches.

5. *Communications.*—Communications worked wonderfully well, though between Battalion Headquarters and companies during most of the morning communication was kept up by means of runners.

6. *Casualties.*—As far as can be ascertained at present the aggregate casualties are as per "C" attached.[1]

7. *Working Party.*—The 100 men of the 7th King's did their work satisfactorily, as far as I can ascertain.

8. *Section R.E.*—There was no scope for the employment of these men.

Narrative of A Company (the right company referred to in Lieut.-Colonel Eden's report), submitted by Captain R. M. Owen to Regimental Headquarters immediately after the action :—

General Idea.—I decided to attack the German trenches from A.9.a.94 to A.9.b.12, on a frontage of one platoon. (See attached sketch map, enlarged to scale from trench map, which was in possession of each N.C.O. of the company.)

The Attack.—At 6 a.m. the first line advanced and reached the German front-line trench without opposition, though the first men to get into the trench state *positively* that no Germans were gassed. Several Germans appear to have been killed a short time previously by shell fire. Those Germans who were in their front-line trench were either shot or bayoneted by our men.

(a) *Two Left Sections of Front Line.*—This party apparently got into the German trench a little west of Point X and towards Point 94. They turned right-handed and reached Point Z about midway between Points 06 and 03½. They were heavily bombed there, and, on their own supply of bombs being exhausted, retired to Point 03½.

(b) *Two Right Sections of Front Line.*—These appear to have had a few casualties from rifle fire before reaching the German trench. A good many of the Queen's men were with them. They

[1] Not printed.

Digitized by Google

entered the trench about Point K and worked up to Point 14. Between these two points they estimate that there were at least 20 Germans killed—some before they got there, the remainder killed by them. Having reached Point 14 they were held up by bombs.

(c) *Two Left Sections, Second Line.*—These seem to have had only 2 casualties before reaching the German trench, which they also entered about Point X and worked up to Point 14. Having thus reinforced our men who were already at that point, they were able to bomb on and reach Point 25, i.e., the *German second line.* This they are certain of, and it is corroborated by Lieut. Chevallier, who was with the right of our second line. They advanced with their right on Lone Tree Sap, and were mixed up with the Queen's, but got to the German trench with very few casualties. They pushed on to Point 14. On their way they killed about 6 Germans in a dug-out and passed several others dead in the trench. This party seems to have been led by an officer of the Queen's Regiment right up to Point 25. He was wounded, and Lieut. Chevallier, who was in rear, came up to Point 25. He is quite certain that he was at that point. They remained there until they had (or rather could get) no more bombs, and then retired, somewhat hastily, to the German front line, apparently without loss.

(d) *No.* 3 *Platoon*, on the left, advanced in line, and suffered a good deal from machine-gun fire, coming from a crater on their left, and also from shrapnel. Having got into the front line they were ordered to move a little to their right, as there was then a gap between us and the Queen's.

(e) *No.* 4 *Platoon* advanced viâ Lone Tree Sap and the crater marked H, arriving there without many casualties.

Shortage of Bombs.[1]—I cannot explain why we ran so short of bombs almost immediately, except that the wristlet strikers were in some cases lost, and in others quite damp. A dozen boxes of matches (which I had in my pocket) were useful. If it had not been for a large supply of German bombs we should have had to retire long before we did.

[1] The *Regimental Diary* says:—"A Company had about 20 bombers, and between them they carried about 200 bombs of the new ball pattern. Each man carried 5 in a belt, and each pair of men shared a box of two dozen. This supply, however, was nothing like sufficient to withstand the attack by German bombers, launched about an hour after their lines were occupied."

Digitized by Google

Retirement.—We eventually barricaded the German trenches about the Points X and K, i.e., holding on in their first-line trench for a length of about 30 yards. We eventually ran out of bombs altogether, and I gave the order to retire, which we did by way of Lone Tree Sap. I do not think that the Germans were entirely aware that we had evacuated their first line until we were just out of it.

When we were retiring, I suddenly came upon a very large crater, in the nature of a redoubt, and there I endeavoured with a little success to rally our men, to let the wounded get on first. I did not know that this place existed. I stopped there for about five minutes, and then retired on to our original first-line trench.

German Casualties.—I think it is safe to say that we accounted for certainly 50 dead Germans, as the N.C.O.'s and men think there were at least 70 dead in those trenches.

A Company's Casualties.—Thirteen men only are *known* to have been killed in the German trench. There must have been more. 45 are known to have been wounded and 49 missing, but I cannot vouch for accuracy.

In a letter written home on the 26th September Captain R. M. Owen, commanding A Company, gave a brief description of the attack :—

At 5.30 a.m. yesterday we started gas, and at 6 o'clock we started over. Two companies of the Regiment were to attack. I was the right front and D was the left. The latter sent one platoon over the crater—about 30 men—all of whom were killed by machine-gun fire, including Newton-King; but I did not know anything of this until afterwards.

The German front-line trench was about 200 yards in front of us and parallel to ours. The two front lines of my company (i.e., half the company) appeared to get into the German trench without many casualties, and then I went over myself. I negotiated the 200 yards all right, and was then held up for a minute or two by the barbed wire, but I managed to reach the trench. In it I found a good many dead Germans lying, also some of our own men. The Germans were holding their second-line trenches, only about 30 yards away, and it was simply a bombing competition the whole time.

We soon ran out of bombs, but fortunately found German ones,

Digitized by Google

which we used with good effect. It was impossible to get up reinforcements, and eventually, when we had no bombs left and the Germans were on top of us, I gave the order to retire. Somehow or other we managed to get back to our own original front line trench, from which we had started. Afterwards I found out that the two regiments on our right had retired some time before we did, and that we had been left there entirely by ourselves. God knows how I escaped. I was in the German trench the whole time, and got back again to our own unscratched. Out of about 170 of my Company who started, I have now about 60 odd unhurt. The Regiment has had 9 officers killed and wounded, I believe.

The gas failed absolutely with us, and so the whole 2nd Division attack failed, but we hear that, farther south, Vermelles way, we have been successful, and that the French have got on a lot.

From the diary of Captain G. Blewitt, then Staff Captain of the 5th Infantry Brigade :—

September 25th.—(Saturday.) Awoken by signaller at 4 a.m. with a message from Advanced Headquarters to say that zero was 5.50 a.m. Got up and dressed; walked up the Canal Bank, Westminster Road, Queen's Road, to Belle Vue, our observation station, where I found Lawrence (Worcesters), our Intelligence Officer. A very stuffy morning, and the night's rain had made the trenches so sticky that at every step one slid back as far as one went forward. Arrived at about 5.25 a.m.; one or two fires in the German lines showed us that there was a very gentle S.W. wind blowing, and we doubted if they would let off the gas (always to be spoken of as the " accessory " !). However, at 5.50 a.m. sharp we saw the jets of white smoke going all along the front line from the craters to the north of the Orchard right down to and including the Duck's Bill. It wafted across slowly; then the barrages of smoke at Sunken Road and to the south of Duck's Bill were fired, and smoke candles lit all along the line, under cover of which our men advanced, i.e., the 52nd, the Queen's, and H.L.I.

It was a grand sight, and they seemed to meet with little or no opposition. There was about one minute's firing—very few rifle bullets, but a good many " whiz-bangs "—and the enemy lit fires in the trenches to counteract the gas. Our fellows could be seen walking about on the enemy's parapets and shooting down into the trenches.

Digitized by Google

At 6.50 a.m. I went back to Brigade Headquarters to report that we seemed to be going as we liked along the Lorgies Road, but that I had not seen many going across immediately to the south of the craters; bombing appeared to be taking place in a northerly direction. On the way down I met a certain number of our men suffering from gas from leaking cylinders In places the wind had not been strong enough to carry the gas over, and our men had been gassed.

I got back to Belle Vue at 7.50 a.m., but there was little to be seen. The work of digging through Lone Tree Sap to the German lines was in progress, but the enemy had a machine-gun playing on it. Givenchy was being heavily shelled, but so far Belle Vue is intact.

I have been writing this in Belle Vue (8.50 a.m.), and a shell has just hit the basement.

I called through the speaking-tube to the signallers in the cellar to ask if anything had happened, but in reply only got a puff of smoke up the tube. On going down to find out what was up, I found both the operators killed by a shell.

At 9.50 a.m. Lawrence came up, and I went back to Brigade Headquarters, where I was astounded to hear that news had been received of a general retirement.

I went back to lunch at Canal House Headquarters, then to see the Division about grenades, which had run out in the morning. Up again to Advanced Headquarters, where I waited to see rations and rum arrive, and arranged for graves to be dug. Back to dinner at 9.30 p.m., pretty tired. A very disappointing day, except for good news from the south—Loos taken, and a successful French advance in Champagne. Our attack was subsidiary and had no backing, but we had hoped to occupy the German front system. Poor Newton-King was killed amongst our 9 officers and 250 men casualties. Total casualties in the Brigade, over 1,000.

The following was the order issued relative to the use of the "accessory cylinders":—

"SECRET.—*Not to be carried forward in an Assault.*

"TIME-TABLE OF GAS AND SMOKE.

"(a) 0 *to* 0.50 *Minutes. Gas and Smoke.* Start the gas and smoke simultaneously. At the commencement turn on two cylinders per bay at the same time; then reduce to one cylinder per bay, and finish up with two cylinders per bay.

Digitized by Google

"0.50 *to* 0.60. *Smoke.* Turn off gas at 0.50 and thicken up smoke by using extra candles, grenades, etc.

"0.60. *Assault.*

"*Note.*—From 0 to 0.60 hostile trenches will be kept under continuous shrapnel fire. At 0.60 artillery will lift as required.

"Smoke barrages on the flanks of the assault should be continued wherever possible after the attack has been delivered.

GERMAN SHELLS BURSTING OVER NEW TRENCH.
Givenchy, September 1915.

"(b) On the whole of the front where gas is not used, smoke is to be kept going everywhere from 0 to 0.60."

COLONEL EDEN'S DIARY CONTINUED.

September 26th.—We remained in Givenchy trenches and re-organized the line A Company scarcely counted now, so heavy had

Digitized by Google

been its casualties; C Company had also lost a number of men, including Sergeant-Major HUDSON, who, so far, had been through the war without a scratch.

In the evening Regimental H.Q. returned to Windy Corner. 2nd Lieut. C. R. Horley (previously wounded) rejoined for duty.

A good deal of rain fell to-day, and repairs necessitated by this and the heavy shelling gave the men much hard work.

September 27th.—(Givenchy trenches.) Fortunately very quiet. Most of the officers and men are considerably done up.

Casualties, 3 men wounded.

September 28th.—Pretty quiet all day, and fine until the evening, when it rained very heavily.

At 10 p.m. the 1st Seaforth Highlanders (attached to the Sirhind Brigade) arrived from the north to relieve us. I pitied them coming into such a complicated system of trenches for the first time and on such a night.

The Regiment moved into billets in the Orphanage, Bethune.

2nd Lieut. J. H. Boardman (from duty at the Base) joined the Battalion.

September 29th.—In the afternoon we moved to Essars, where it was a tight fit, as part of another battalion was already there. More rain.

September 30th—(In billets at Essars.) The men very busy all day getting cleaned up and rested.

October 1st.—I went off to Brigade H.Q. in Annequin at 8 a.m., and at 8.30 the Regiment received orders to march at 11 am. from Essars to Vermelles (8 miles). I went on with Brigade H.Q. to reconnoitre the neighbourhood of our new area, and at 5 p.m. met the Regiment at Vermelles, where it had arrived at 2 p.m. On this particular front a considerable advance had been made since the 25th September, and communication trenches were not yet well organized, with the result that, although we left Vermelles at 8 p.m., and the distance was only 3 miles, we did not finish relieving the 2nd R. Scots Fusiliers (7th Division) until 3 a.m. (2nd October), and every one had a most trying time. We marched up the Hulluch Road, past the old British first-line trenches, into the old German first line, and on to a line gun trench, G.18.b.4.6.–G.12.d.5.5.[1]

Lieut. W. G. Mills, 3rd D.C.L.I., joined for duty.

Casualty, 1 man wounded.

[1] Map 36c N.W. Sheet 3 and part of Sheet 1.

Digitized by Google

October 2nd.—In trenches near Hulluch. This part of the line was taken by the 7th Division during the recent fighting. Where we are now was a line of German gun emplacements (8 guns), from which the Huns had been driven out. They left behind them several guns, which our batteries had not been slow in removing. There was a good deal of gun ammunition still about, as well as new sights and other portions of artillery equipment. We have the benefit of several very complete officers' dug-outs furnished with beds, tables, chairs, fire-places, etc., and fitted up with an elaborate system of electrical communication; but this had been destroyed before we arrived.

Very little could be seen of the enemy's infantry opposite to us. There was comparatively little shelling by day, but a good deal at night, when an attempt was being made by the 2nd H.L.I., close on our left, to turn the Germans out of about 200 yards of trench, where they had forced an entry in the line yesterday, before we came in. The attempt to regain this part of the line was only partially successful.

Although we were shelled pretty continuously, it was extraordinary how little damage was done, beyond slightly damaging the trenches. The greatest trouble was keeping our candles alight, as blasts from the shells kept extinguishing them. Every one was busy day and night improving the line of trench, which required deepening, though the presence of many good and deep shelters afforded a certain amount of safe cover.

Casualty, 1 man wounded.

October 3rd.—The disposition of the companies of the Regiment yesterday and to-day was as follows:—

B and D, in gun trench (G.18.b.4.6.–G.12.d.5.5.).
A (only 70 men), in a support trench, 120 yards in rear.
C (100 strong), in reserve in German first line trench (G.17.b.5.7.-G.11.d.6.1.).

There was practically no hostile rifle-fire, though we were close to the enemy and often saw small parties of them. The morning was fairly quiet, but in the afternoon we were shelled heavily, both with heavy and light artillery. We calculated that during two hours 400 shells fell on our front; but, except for one unlucky one which burst inside a trench and killed two good sergeants, very little harm was done.

Casualties, 2 killed and 3 wounded.

Digitized by Google

October 4th.—At about 1.30 a.m. the 1st Grenadier Guards (Guards' Division) relieved us, but it was 6 a.m. before the last company reached its billets in Beuvry. After breakfast I slept solidly from 8 a.m. to 2 p.m., and I think that a good many others did much the same. In the evening I attended a Brigade conference.

A draft of 149 other ranks arrived last night and was posted to companies to-day. This forms the 32nd reinforcement.

October 5th.—(In billets at Beuvry.) The following officers joined for duty: Lieut. H. W. H. Rawson (3rd Battalion), 2nd Lieut. W. L. Barnard (3rd Battalion, from being wounded), 2nd Lieut. C. H. B. Slocock (3rd Battalion), 2nd Lieut. R. Strickland (3rd Battalion), 2nd Lieut. C. G. Stephens (3rd Battalion), 2nd Lieut. A. H. Ramsay (9th, attached 3rd Battalion), 2nd Lieut. T. Tyrwhitt-Drake, 2nd Lieut. J. B. Hardcastle.

October 7th.—Company training commenced for the new drafts; also some useful classes in wiring drill and bombing, with the latter special attention being given to attack tactics by small parties.

The Regiment, together with the 2nd H.L.I., was placed in divisional reserve to the 7th Division.

Whitfield, Wyld, and Sewell, all of whom had been wounded at Richebourg, arrived from England to-day; also 14 men (machine-gunners).

October 10th.—Out early to reconnoitre our new trench area near Auchy, just south of the La Bassée road.

The Regiment rejoined the 5th Brigade, moved to Cambrin, and took over second-line trenches in rear of Z.1 from the 2nd Yorkshire Regiment at 5 p.m., being in support to the Queen's and Glasgow Highlanders, but in trenches—chiefly strong points. The companies were disposed as follows:—

A and C in Headquarter Trench, near Lewis Keep, Sim's Keep, and Railway Keep.
B Company in Cambrin.
D Company, about A.27.b.

October 11th–12th.—Our artillery heavily bombarded the German line round Fosse 8, Coron de Perkins, and the Hohenzollern Redoubt.

Very quiet at present. The trenches a perfect maze; I walked for miles through them.

October 13th.—Our artillery carried out a heavy bombardment between 12 and 1 p.m. Gas and smoke were then let loose, and

Digitized by Google

at 2 p.m. the 46th (North Midland) Division, on our right, attacked the Hohenzollern Redoubt, a formidable Hun work. I obtained a very interesting view of a good deal of it from one of our artillery O.P.'s.

The attack was not wholly successful. The 5th Brigade assisted by making a bomb attack up a German communication trench, but it could make little headway, and Lieut. Ramsay, who had been attached to the bombers of the 5th Brigade, was killed. One officer, 2 N.C.O.'s, and 24 men of the Regiment took part in this attack.

IN BEUVRY. 2nd Battalion.

Casualties between 10th and 13th October: Lieut. A. H. Ramsay and two men killed; Lieut. P. M. Ridout, Lieut. W. G. Mills, and 2 men wounded.

October 14th.—I fear very little good resulted from yesterday's attack. In the afternoon we moved up into the front line and took over Y.4 Section from the Queen's, the North Midland Division (46th) being immediately on our right. Disposition of companies: B Company on the right, D on the left (next to the H.L.I.), A and C in support.

Digitized by Google

There was a great deal of work to be done in the front lines, as is always the case after an attack. The trenches had been badly knocked about, and a lot of salvage of grenades and general cleaning up had to be carried out. Also, a new sap (Guildford Trench) was in course of construction. The sap ran in the direction of the German line, and from this end efforts were made to join up with the troops who were holding a portion of the Hohenzollern Redoubt. A party of C Company had started making this Guildford Trench on the night of the 13th, and in the early morning of the 14th, when getting away, Lieuts. Ridout and Mills had been wounded. Strong fatigue parties were at work every night on the trench and its extension, which was ultimately connected with the Guards' Division, holding the Hohenzollern Redoubt.

A party (from A and B Companies) was at work all this night, doing fresh wiring on both sides of the new sap, and during the early hours of the 15th October a German officer and 1 private walked into the party and were taken prisoners.

Extract from the Diary of Captain Fowke (B Company).

We were ordered to barb-wire the head of the sap, as it was only 25 yards from the German trench. During this operation we were observed and fired on at close quarters, with the sole result of one man wounded and none killed. After this the men went back for more wire, and Hardcastle and I remained at the top of the sap to await their return. While waiting I saw two men coming across the open, and I went to find out who they were, but before I reached them they greeted Hardcastle in German. He had not noticed their approach, but with great presence of mind drew his wire cutters and covered the leading German, who promptly threw up his hands. The other raised his rifle, but finding himself covered by my revolver, threw up his hands also. I took them back to our front trench, where one of them proved to be an officer. The other, who was slightly wounded, explained that he was "Blessé dans la *viande !*"

Colonel Eden's Diary continued.

October 15th.—Still very busy repairing trenches. In the evening we commenced work on an important sap. The enemy shelled our front line with heavy guns, and B Company suffered somewhat. Not much sleep to-night.

Digitized by Google

October 16*th*.—Weather fortunately fine but dull. Enemy shelled us constantly, but not so heavily as yesterday, when we had some 20 casualties. Sap going well. Another sleepless night.

October 17*th*.—A very noisy day. We shelled from 5 to 7 a.m., and the enemy replied with field guns until 9 a.m. Then from 10.30 a.m. to 2.30 p.m. their heavy shells were falling in all directions on our front and support lines. Our mess kitchen was entirely destroyed. A quiet night followed, and our working parties made good progress.

October 18*th*.—A certain amount of shelling after noon. At 3 p.m. we were relieved by the 2nd Worcesters, and marched to billets in Bethune, at the Montmorency Barracks—French barracks, with good accommodation. We were not sorry to get a rest, for the last five days had been really strenuous. The weather is becoming decidedly colder now.

Casualties from 14th to 18th October : 10 killed and 17 wounded.

October 19*th*.—(In barracks at Bethune.) The 35th reinforcement (80 N.C.O.'s and men) arrived.

October 20*th*.—We were called on to furnish working parties (450 during the day and another 100 at night) to remove empty gas cylinders. The parties were taken to Cambrin and back in motor lorries, but the work was heavy.

FROM THE REGIMENTAL DIARY.

October 21*st*.—The Regiment moved into scattered billets in farm-houses west of Gonnehem, known as the Belle Rive area.

October 22*nd*.—The Regiment moved again into fresh billets in farm-houses, about 2 miles farther west, in the area known as Censé la Vallée.

October 23*rd*–28*th*.—(In billets in La Vallée area.) On these days a new system of bombing attack was practised by all companies, and the usual drills and exercises were carried out. The weather was exceedingly bad, most of the ground being under water. In consequence work was greatly interfered with.

On the 25th Lieut.-Colonel Eden went to hospital in Bethune, and Major C. G. Higgins took over temporary command of the Regiment.

Between the 20th and 27th small parties of reinforcements (20 in all) arrived.

Digitized by Google

October 29th–November 2nd.—The Regiment moved on the morning of the 29th October to billets at Annequin and Cambrin. Fatigue parties were out every day on work in the trenches. The weather was very wet.

On the 1st November 2nd Lieut. P. A. Bobby joined for duty with the Regiment.

On the 2nd November the Regiment paraded at 8.30 a.m., and took over Z.1 Section (from Boyan R.I. inclusive 100 yards north of railway at A.22.C.5.2 to Boyan 15 inclusive).

Each company found 2 platoons in the front line and 2 in support, D and C Companies finding the garrisons of Sim's and Arthur's Keeps respectively (one platoon of each). Order of companies from right to left was A, D, B, C.

The German line was approximately 200 to 300 yards distant.

Opposite Boyan 15 was a crater. Here we had sapped out, and were about 50 yards distant from the enemy's sap-head.

The weather had been very wet, and the trenches were in an extremely bad state. A great deal of building up, revetting, and trench-flooring was necessary before the trenches became habitable. One hundred and seventy pairs of trench boots were issued to the men, and they were very serviceable. Nothing happened this day to stop work.

November 3rd.—A quiet day, and weather better. No shelling and little sniping. Work in trenches all day and night. An officer's patrol visited the crater.

November 4th.—A fine day. Work progressed well. No shelling, and very little sniping.

November 5th.—A fine day. Trenches now dry and boarded in the front line. Enemy very inactive.

November 6th.—Relieved by Glasgow Highlanders at 9.30 a.m. and marched into Beuvry to billets.

November 7th.—Moved to billets at Annezin, in relief of the 1st Queen's.

November 8th–10th.—(In billets at Annezin.) Usual work as when in reserve.

On the 8th Lieut.-Colonel Eden returned from leave (and hospital), and resumed command of the Regiment.

On the 10th Major Higgins assumed duty of Senior Major.

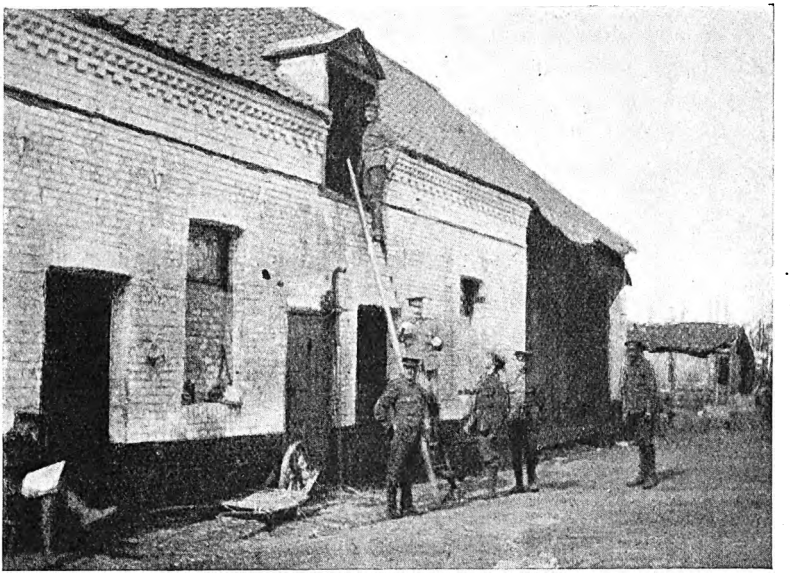
November 11th.—In the morning the Regiment marched to Annequin and went into billets there. Found garrisons (of 1 platoon each) for Russel's Keep and Lewis Keep.

Digitized by Google

November 12*th*.—The Brigade commenced to move back to rest. In the morning the Regiment marched to Bethune, and were billeted in the Orphanage.

November 13*th*.—In the morning marched to billets in Gonnehem (south), taking over from the 1st Herts Regiment (6th Brigade). A bitterly cold day, blowing a gale, and with rain as on two previous days.

This area is a very compact one for a regiment. Very good shower-baths (new Divisional pattern) have now been constructed, and there is also a good cinema theatre.



MEN'S BILLETS AT BETHUNE.

COMPOSITION OF THE BATTALION, 15TH NOVEMBER 1915.

	Sergts. and Cpls.	Rank and File.
Serving Soldiers	47	169
Regular Reserve	19	139
Special Reserve	5	69
Re-enlisted Soldiers	1	113
New Army	5	286
Totals	77	776

Digitized by Google

COLONEL EDEN'S DIARY CONTINUED.

November 15th.—The whole Division is now out resting. Very cold weather. A field was found near Choques, where Adjutant's and Company drills were carried out, also physical training and other useful work. Special company wiring squads and bombers were trained.

November 19th.—Still in rest, doing some good training; much bathing. Each company has put all its men through a short musketry course, firing two practices (grouping) of 5 rounds each, on a short (50 yards) range near Bois de Dâmes, which included an hour's march each way.

The small cinema theatre here gave us a great opportunity. Goodwyn, helped by other officers, and Sergeant Benford were very energetic, and provided an entertainment of some sort every evening. A minstrel troupe was formed, the costumes being borrowed from the Division's Troupe. We also had the Divisional Band out for an afternoon and evening. This had been started last July, and was composed of bandsmen from battalions of the Division. The Regiment provided 5 or 6, including Lance-Sergeant Challen, who acts as bandmaster.

Yesterday we were visited by our new Divisional Commander, Major-General W. G. Walker, V.C., and all the officers were introduced to him.

November 20th.—This was our last day in rest at Gonnehem—one of the best rests we have had for a long time, and thoroughly enjoyed by every one, perhaps more particularly by the men, because they were able to have roast meats every other day, in place of the familiar stew, several of the cottages containing good ovens.

November 21st.—At 9.30 a.m. the Regiment left for Annequin, where it arrived at 12.30 p.m., and took over billets from the 1st Middlesex Regiment.

November 22nd.—At 9 a.m. we commenced to relieve the 1st South Staffords (7th Division) in A.1, or right Cuinchy Sector. This area is rather different now to when we were here last July. It now extends for nearly a company frontage south of the road, and the left only just reaches to the brick-stacks. The trenches are in rather a dilapidated condition, caused partly by the bad weather and partly by the few men now kept in the front area. The present policy is to have as few men as possible in front, so that in estimating the number of men required to hold the front

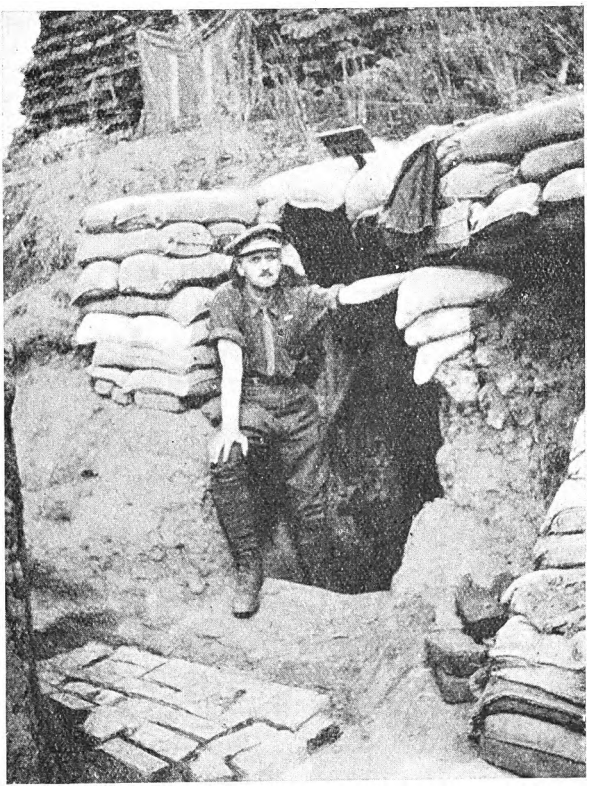
Digitized by Google

system one really has to consider the question of the upkeep of the trenches rather than that of defence.

Companies were distributed as follows :—

A Company in front line trenches, just south of Bethune-La Bassée Road.

C Company in front line trenches from this road as far as Ridley Walk, whence the 2nd H.L.I. continued the line



CAPTAIN FOWKE AT ENTRANCE TO THE "GUARDS' CLUB."
Cuinchy Brick-stacks.

Both companies had 2 platoons in the front line and 2 in supporting line.

B Company in support in Praed Street and Marylebone Road.

D Company had 2 platoons in Cuinchy support point, 1 platoon in Park Lane Redoubt, and 1 platoon in Stafford Redoubt.

Headquarters of the Regiment at Woburn Abbey.

Digitized by Google

November 23*rd*.—The enemy fairly quiet, except for occasional sniping. Some rain yesterday and to-day.

Divisions of the 4th New Army are now arriving in the country, and the 33rd Division have come to this area, to be attached to our Division for precept and example. Four platoons of the 24th R. Fusiliers were attached to the Regiment for 24 hours' instruction in trench duties, etc., to-day.

November 24*th*.—One company of the 20th R.F. relieved the company of the 24th R.F. for instruction. We also had large working parties from the 33rd Division, and if it had not been for them we should never have been able to repair the heavy dilapidations.

November 25*th*.—Another company of the 20th R.F. came into the trenches. We are to be relieved to-morrow morning. The enemy has been very quiet. Our snipers claim to have accounted for 3 Germans.

November 26*th*–29*th*.—At 9 a.m. (26th) the Regiment was relieved by the 1st Queen's, whose billets were taken over in Harley Street, Cambrin. Companies were distributed as follows:—

B Company, 3 platoons in Braddell Point.
2 sections in Cambrin Support Point.
1 section in Carter's Keep.
1 section in Tourbières Keep.
D Company, at Pont Fixe (south of the canal).
A Company, immediately south of D Company (in the street).
C Company, in huts at Beuvry.

Rain on the 26th and 29th; frost on the 27th and 28th.

On the 28th Captain Southey, Lieut. Sewell, and 4 N.C.O.'s were attached to the 24th Royal Fusiliers, to superintend and instruct their trench training.

November 30*th*.—To trenches at Cuinchy, relieving the 1st Queen's at 10 a.m. in A. 1 Section. Enemy very quiet. Weather wet.

December 1*st*–3*rd*.—(In trenches at Cuinchy.) Enemy inactive; a few trench-mortar bombs at intervals.

On the 30th November and 1st December a company of the 17th Royal Fusiliers was attached to us for 24 hours, a platoon going to each of our companies. On the 2nd and 3rd December this company relieved our left front company for duty in the line.

Digitized by Google

Very wet weather, and very difficult to keep pace with the trench repairs required, as the trenches keep falling in.

On the 1st December Lieuts. A. G. Cardy and G. Field were posted for duty with the Mediterranean Expeditionary Force ; on the 3rd, 2nd Lieuts. R. M. Barnes and D. T. Barnes joined for duty from the 9th Battalion.

On the 3rd, 2nd Lieut. Strickland proceeded to a course at the 2nd Divisional School at Bethune (until 17th December)

IN CUINCHY TRENCHES.

December 4th.—(To billets in the Rue d'Aire area, Bethune.) At 9 a.m. the Glasgow Highlanders commenced to relieve us, but it took nearly 5 hours instead of 2 on account of the mud. Practically every man in the front system wears gum-boots, which makes the negotiation of landslips and deep mud a great difficulty. These boots are an immense boon, and undoubtedly save the men's feet as well as their ordinary boots, but getting them out of store and returning them again are very lengthy processes. Here they are stored in part of the village school, and before going to the trenches the men have to go to the store and fit gum-boots. Again, on returning from the trenches, each man has to wash his boots, so

Digitized by Google

as to hand them in clean. The washing operation, of course, entailed a large crowd of men at one spot, and I was always particularly thankful when the day was cloudy and hostile aeroplanes did not venture over our lines.

December 5th.—A beautifully fine day. We were visited by our old C.O., Brigadier-General Davies, as well as by George Colvile.

Sewell joined No. 2 Infantry Base Depôt at Rouen.

December 6th.—At 8 a.m. we were off forward again, taking over Cuinchy, B.1. area, from the 1st Queen's. This is a quiet area, but very low-lying in parts, and consequently very wet. In some places a pump has to be kept going incessantly, in order to keep the floods down.

December 7th.—Four platoons of the 24th R. Fusiliers were attached to us for trench instruction. It is very difficult to instil into them the vital necessity of continuous and laborious work in trenches like these.

December 8th.—A complete company of the 24th R. Fusiliers relieved a company of ours in the left front trenches.

December 9th.—Another company of the 24th R. Fusiliers did likewise. A fine morning, but at midday rain came on again and continued all night. The front-line trenches, though only the extreme flanks are occupied, are better than the communication trenches, which are very difficult to keep open. One route up to our front light company is in a continual state of becoming blocked for stretches of 20 yards, and gives endless work to put right every time.

December 10th.—Relieved by the Glasgow Highlanders, the relief taking nearly four hours instead of two. To Beuvry for billets.

2nd Lieut. G. A. Cattley, 4th Dragoon Guards, who has been attached to the Regiment for instruction in trench duties, left to-day.

December 11th.—2nd Lieuts. Horley and Hardcastle proceeded to Wisques for a Lewis-gun Course (until 17th December).

December 12th.—At 9.30 a.m. we relieved the 1st Queen's in A.1 sub-section, Cuinchy trenches.

Digitized by Google

Headquarters are now in Harley Street instead of Woburn Abbey, the sleeping dug-outs having become uninhabitable. The line has also been rearranged, on account of the state of the trenches, as follows :—

One company has 1 platoon in the trenches south of La Bassée Road, 1 platoon in Waterloo Place and Oxford Street, 1 platoon in Stafford Redoubt, and 1 platoon in Park Lane Redoubt.

One company has 2 platoons in and about Ridley Walk area, and 2 platoons in Cuinchy Support Point.

One company has 2 platoons in Braddell Point, 1½ platoons in Cambrin Support Point, 1 section in Carter's Redoubt, 1 section in Tourbières Redoubt.

One company in reserve in Harley Street.

December 12th–14th.—One company of the 13th Essex Regiment (for 24 hours at a time) came into the line as left front company.

Weather improving—colder and drier, but the trenches have become so bad that fewer are now ordered to be kept up. With the exception of some "whiz-bangs" at intervals the enemy has been very quiet.

December 14th.—At 11 a.m. the Regiment was relieved by the 24th R. Fusiliers, and went into billets at Beuvry (N.), remaining there, in reserve, until the afternoon of the 16th, and being able to get all the men bathed—a great thing.

December 16th–20th.—At 2 p.m. on the 16th companies started to march back to the Cuinchy trenches, in relief of the 2nd H.L.I., and occupied A.2 section, where we had never been previously.

Rain three days out of the four. The enemy, though very quiet, was alert and vigilant, especially at night.

Hard work keeping the trenches passable. Companies somewhat isolated, and the main work concentrated on keeping the communication trenches open and free for passage. About 200 of the 13th Essex were employed daily in assisting this work.

Companies were disposed as follows :—

One company on the right front, with Headquarters in Brickfield Keep, and 1 platoon in Cabbage Patch Redoubt ; 1 company on the left front with Headquarters, and 2 platoons about the railway embankment, and 2 platoons in and about Lover's Keep. The remaining 2 companies in houses in Harley Street, near Pont Fixe. Regimental Headquarters at Kingsclere House. These conditions

Digitized by Google

as to distribution of companies had practically been imposed on account of the unbearable state of so many of the trenches. There was an unoccupied space of 150 yards in the front line between the flanks of the two companies.

Casualties :—

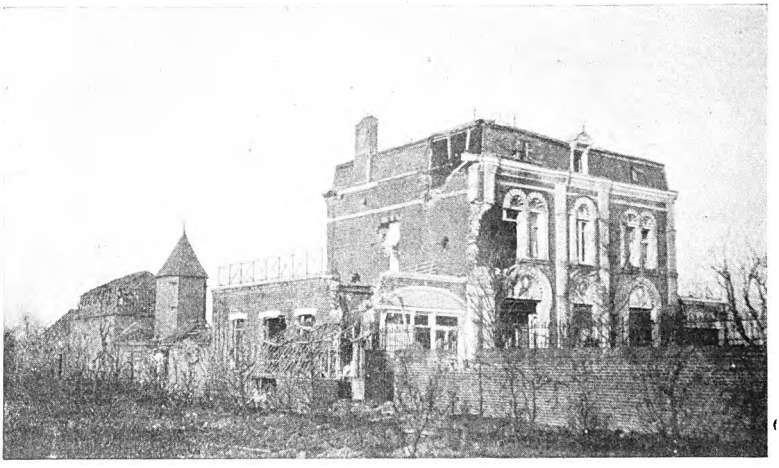
17th December, 1 officer and 2 men wounded.
20th December, 1 man killed.

December 20th.—Yesterday was very foggy all day, so I took the opportunity of having a good look round the trenches, and was able to walk about on the top when necessary. Owen has gone to 2nd Divisional H.Q. as temporary G.S.O.3. We have been able to get through a lot of clearing up, as we have had three fine days.

The 2nd H.L.I. relieved us at 5 p.m., and we moved to billets in Annequin North—a new area.

2nd Lieut. H. J. Ellam (from Artists' Rifles) joined on first appointment.

December 21st.—(In billets, in reserve, in Annequin.) Rain again. The Regiment standing by last night and this night. Our heavy guns, of which we are in the midst, have kept up an intense bombardment of the enemy's trenches all day, and the noise is deafening. In the evening we let off some gas, but the result was not good, and, owing to the vigilance of the enemy, no advance was made by our infantry.



"KINGSCLERE," CUINCHY.

Digitized by Google

SMALL CEMETERY AT CUINCHY.

STRENGTH OF COMPANIES IN THE TRENCHES.

16TH DECEMBER 1915.

	A	B	C	D	Total.
In Ranks	96	68	91	68	323
Servants	4	4	2	2	12
Stretcher Bearers	4	4	4	4	16
Sanitary Squad	4	3	3	4	14
Bombers	19	19	14	17	69
Company Headquarters ...	6	4	5	6	21
Total	133	102	119	101	455

STRENGTH OF COMPANIES.

21ST DECEMBER 1915.

	A	B	C	D	Total.
In Ranks	95	85	94	83	357
Bombers	19	22	18	19	78
Others	12	16	15	9	52
Total	126	123	127	111	487

Digitized by Google

December 22nd.—Major Sir R. Codrington and Lieut. the Hon. S. G. Pelham, both of the 11th Hussars, left after attachment for instruction in trench warfare since the 16th.

Orders received from H.Q. 2nd Division to detail a captain for transfer to the 5th Battalion of the Regiment, and I was obliged to send Fowke.[1]

December 22nd–26th.—At 10 a.m., 22nd, the Regiment commeced the relief of the Glasgow Highlanders in A. 1 section Cuinchy trenches. The companies were distributed as follows :—

One company has 3 platoons in trenches south of the main La Bassée road, and 1 platoon in Stafford Redoubt.

One company has 3 platoons in trench north of the road, and 1 platoon in Park Lane Redoubt.

One company with Headquarters and 2 platoons in Cuinchy Support Point, and 2 platoons at Braddel Point.

The 4th Company, with Regimental Headquarters, in Harley Street.

The trenches were wonderfully clean when we took them over, but we had a good deal of rain off and on, entailing plenty of repair work. During this period the enemy remained quiet, and our artillery was very active.

On the 25th Higgins was ordered to take over command of the 17th R. Fusiliers. The 37th reinforcement (28 men) joined from the Base.

The 2nd and 33rd Divisions have now been reconstituted. The 19th Brigade and the 1st Queen's and 2nd Worcesters (of our Brigade) have gone to the 33rd Division, while the 2nd Division has received from them in return six of their Service battalions. The 5th Brigade now consists of ourselves, the 2nd H.L.I., 17th R. Fusiliers, and 24th R. Fusiliers.

December 26th.—The 2nd H.L.I. relieved us at 11 a.m., and we moved back into billets at Annequin North.

Information received that 2nd Lieut. R. STRICKLAND (3rd Battalion) died in hospital at Bethune last night.

December 27th.—The relief of the 2nd Division by the 33rd Division commenced. We paraded at 12 noon and marched

[1] In Captain C. A. Fowke's diary appears the following : "Ordered to go to the 5th Battalion, as they have not got a captain, and I am the only one in the 52nd who can be spared. Handed over the Company to Goodwyn and feel like an exile."—ED.

Digitized by Google

to Bethune (5 miles), going into billets in the Rue d'Aire area. Thus ended a long and hard spell of trench life, made all the worse by constant reliefs. For good reasons our normal system had to be broken through. This system consisted of the Brigade being in the trenches for 16 days, each battalion being 4 days in and 4 days out, a pair of battalions relieving each other twice. Then the whole Brigade went back away from the trenches for 8 days. We have always found this system work very well, but nearly every Division and Brigade has a system of its own.

December 28th.—The Regiment paraded at 9 a.m. and marched through Chocques and Lillers to Cottes (12 miles), arriving there at 2.30 p.m., the men having had dinners, from the cookers, on the road. The men marched well. Billets considerably scattered, but good; a few in rooms, but the majority in farm buildings, with lofts, etc. We had to form two officers' messes, so that the officers should be near their men.

December 29th–31st.—In billets at Cottes, St. Hilaire—a nice little village. A great relief to be right away from all noise for a time, and the weather very pleasant.

All companies fully employed in cleaning themselves, their clothing, and equipment.

The 5th Infantry Brigade is now concentrated as follows:—2nd H.L.I. at Bourecq, Glasgow Highlanders at St. Hilaire, 17th R. Fusiliers at Norrent Fontes, 24th R. Fusiliers at Fontes, Brigade H.Q. at Cottes, with ourselves.

ROLL OF OFFICERS PRESENT WITH THE 2ND BATTALION,

31ST DECEMBER 1915

Headquarters.

Brevet-Lieut.-Colonel (temp. Lieut.-Colonel) A. J. F. EDEN, Commanding.
Captain L. F. SCOTT, Second in Command, and Transport Officer.
Captain R. B. CROSSE, D.S.O., Adjutant.
2nd Lieut. C. G. STEPHENS, Machine-gun Officer.
Hon. Lieut. A. E. WARNOCK, Quartermaster.
Captain E. SCOTT, R.A.M.C., Medical Officer.

Digitized by Google

A Company.

Captain (temp.) R. M. OWEN (attached H.Q. 2nd Division).
Lieut. H. W. H. RAWSON.
Lieut. E. H. WHITFELD.
Lieut. (temp.) R. B. KITE.
2nd Lieut. J. B. HARDCASTLE.
2nd Lieut. H. J. ELLAM.

B Company.

Lieut. L. J. GOODWYN.
2nd Lieut. C. H. B. SLOCOCK.
2nd Lieut. T. TYRWHITT-DRAKE.
2nd Lieut. R. M. BARNES.

C Company.

Captain (temp.) J. H. BOARDMAN.
Lieut. (temp.) W. J. LITTLEDALE.
2nd Lieut. C. R. HORLEY.
2nd Lieut. P. A. BOBBY.

D Company.

Captain J. A. SOUTHEY.
2nd Lieut. K. PEPLOE.
2nd Lieut. D. T. BARNES.

REINFORCEMENTS RECEIVED DURING THE YEAR 1915.

Officers, 65 (of whom 1 was promoted from the ranks of the Regiment, 14 rejoined from being wounded, 1 from being sick, and 1 attached from R.A.M.C.).

Other Ranks, 1596 (including those rejoining from being wounded).

TOTAL REINFORCEMENTS SINCE THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE WAR.

90 officers and 2,548 other ranks.

1916.

The six months of this year included in the present volume may be described, from a Regimental point of view, as uneventful. The second winter in the trenches had been no better than the previous one, although the troops had learned by experience how to combat the effects of the weather on the trenches, and how to preserve their health. The methods of warfare had undergone a gradual change, the artillery on both sides had become more active, snipers more

Digitized by Google

highly skilled, patrolling and trench raiding more frequent, and the work of aircraft vastly improved. Sir Douglas Haig had assumed command of the British Forces on the return to England, in December, 1915, of Sir John French, and the line held by the British during the winter was to all intents and purposes that which was held the winter before, from the north of Ypres to the south of Albert.

For the first half of January the 52nd, which still belonged to the 5th Brigade, 2nd Division, was in rest at St. Hilaire, and then went to Bethune, whence, before the end of the month, it moved into the Festubert trenches for a tour of duty. A month later it railed south and took over, from the French, a sector of trenches opposite Lens, in which and in other sectors it remained, with occasional periods of rest and training, until the end of June.

LIEUT.-COLONEL EDEN'S DIARY.

January 1st, 1916.—In billets at Cottes, St. Hilaire, the 2nd Division being now in Corps Reserve.

Kept Christmas to-day, and the men had good Christmas fare, thanks to Mrs. Davies's Regimental Comforts Fund. Every one had his rations supplemented by a couple of sausages for breakfast, and half a pound of plum pudding, roast beef, and ham for dinner.

January 3rd.—The 39th reinforcement (139 men) arrived. The allotment of leave for the men is now very large, which is splendid. This is chiefly due to the fact that we have two Service Battalions with us, and they have not yet come on to the leave roster.

January 5th.—Rode out with Scott in the afternoon to look up John Ballard, who is now in command of a service battalion of the Royal Welsh Fusiliers.

January 7th.—A short Brigade route march (6 miles).

January 8th.—We played the 2nd H.L.I. at football—a good game, ending in a draw (2 goals each), after extra time.

2nd Lieuts. A. G. Gibbons and A. W. Middleditch (from the 9th Battalion) joined for duty.

Digitized by Google

January 10*th*.—Return match with H.L.I., who beat us by 2 goals to 1.

January 11*th*.—We are getting through a lot of useful company training, such as short-range musketry, grenade throwing, physical training, and various drills.

January 12*th*.—Brigade exercise. The weather is rather colder.

January 14*th*.—The 40th reinforcement (25 men) joined.

January 17*th*.—Our rest came to an end, and at 7.40 a.m. we left our comfortable billets, marching 3 miles to Lillers, where, at 9 a.m., we entrained for Bethune, while the transport moved by road. Arrived at Bethune at 9.45 a.m., and marched to billets at Essars (2¼ miles) at 10.50. I am in my old billet in the school-mistress's house, the mess being in the Curé's house.

January 18*th*.—(At Essars.) 5th Brigade in reserve. The Regiment had nearly 400 men on spoil-bag (mining) fatigue.

January 21*st*.—I took over temporary command of the Brigade during the absence of General Corkran. In the evening attended the Divisional Cinema Show, where the band played excellently.

January 22*nd*.—2nd Lieut. J. B. Murray joined.

January 23*rd*.—Rode over to Richebourg St. Vaast and found that the village had been very much knocked about. Scarcely a house inhabited now.

Went into Bethune with Blewitt in the evening and listened to the Royal Artillery band at the theatre. The band is making a tour round the armies at present, and giving high-class concerts at various places.

January 24*th*.—I returned to the Regiment to-day. Our bombers are making excellent progress under Bobby's able tuition.

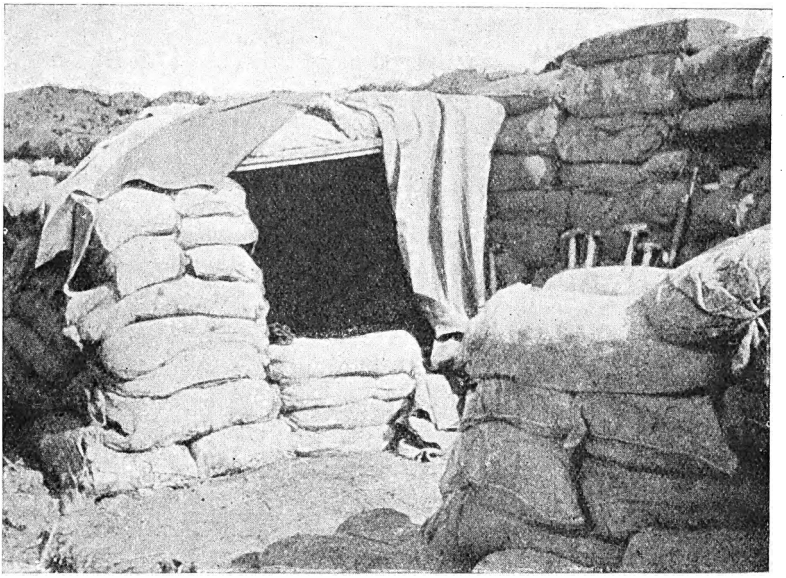
January 26*th*.—To trenches at Festubert. At 7 p.m. we commenced to relieve the 1st K.R.R.C. in C.1 area in the neighbourhood of Festubert. The 24th R. Fusiliers on our left, in C.2, and the Herts Regiment (6th Brigade) on our right.

On account of so much wet, and the difficulty of repairing, the front line (2 companies) consists of 16 island posts; that is to say, that, although one can get about behind these posts, they do not form a continuous trench or line of breastworks. Regimental H.Q. and 2 companies occupy breastworks close in rear ("Old British Line").

Digitized by Google

January 27th.—There was considerable delay in carrying out the relief, which was not finally completed until about 6.30 a.m., owing chiefly to want of efficient guides. I went round the whole line before daylight, as one cannot do so after that. I went round again at night—a very long job, taking 3½ hours, as it was difficult to find the way from one post to another.

January 29th.—(In trenches.) Dull weather. Very quiet in our neighbourhood, though Givenchy got a good shelling yesterday.



OFFICERS' DUG-OUT IN FESTUBERT BREASTWORKS.

January 30th.—Very foggy in early morning. I explored that portion of the German line which was opposite our left company in February 1915, but which is now, of course, behind our front line.

At 7 a.m. we were relieved by the 17th R. Fusiliers, with whom we usually work now. Relief complete by 9.15 p.m.—most satisfactory.

Altogether, this period in the trenches has been very quiet, although the enemy was fairly active at times.

Casualties.—3 men wounded.

On relief we moved into Festubert village area, in keeps and rather poor billets.

January 31st.—I obtained leave home until 10th February.

Digitized by Google

FROM THE REGIMENTAL DIARY.

February 1st–3rd.—The Regiment in support in Festubert village line, including keeps. An uneventful period, during which the Regiment furnished fatigue and working parties, carrying and unloading R.E. stores, and repairing keeps and supporting points.

February 3rd–7th.—Relieved 17th R. Fusiliers in C sub-section trenches on the 3rd, and during the following days the Regiment worked, under the supervision of the East Anglian Field Company R.E., at the restoration of the second line.

Casualties.—4 men wounded.

February 7th–10th.—Exchanged places with the 17th R. Fusiliers, and furnished working parties, as before.

Casualty.—1 man killed.

LIEUT.-COLONEL EDEN'S DIARY CONTINUED.

February 11th.—I returned from leave last night, and found myself in temporary command of the 5th Brigade, with H.Q. at Loignes. This evening the Brigade was relieved by the 6th Brigade. Our Brigade H.Q. to Les Choquaux, and the Regiment to billets in the Tobacco Factory, Bethune.

February 14th.—Went out in the morning with Crosse, Southey, and Rawson to see 100 of the Brigade bombers give a demonstration before a party of Military Attachés. I rejoined the Regiment in the evening.

2nd Lieut. J. E. V. Rathbone (3rd Dorsets) joined for duty.

February 15th.—The Regiment marched (2½ hours) to very scattered and bad billets at Les Harrisoirs and neighbourhood. A good deal of rain and blowing a hurricane.

February 16th.—Gale still blowing.

February 17th.—The relief of the 2nd Division by the 38th Division (XIth Corps) commenced. At 9 a.m. the Regiment marched to new and good billets at Busnes, a nice little town close to the big canal. Billets scattered, on two roads between Busnes and the canal. The mess is in a good farmhouse.

February 20th.—I went to see a demonstration at the Stokes-gun School. This is a wonderful light trench-mortar, which should prove invaluable in trench warfare.

February 21st.—Brigade route march.

Digitized by Google

February 23rd.—Snow and subsequent thaw preventing much training over land already water-logged. The Bishop of Khartoum paid us a visit to-day.

In the evening received orders to be prepared to move at short notice. All officers were returned from courses and schools of instruction.

February 24th.—The 41st reinforcement (17 N.C.O.'s and men) joined.

February 24th–25th.—Still standing by. Poor fun, as one can get no exercise.

The following officers have joined for duty lately :—

On the 17th, 2nd Lieut. F. C. Dixon (3rd Dorsets).

On the 18th, 2nd Lieut. E. H. Vigars, on promotion from sergeant, 19th Hussars.

On the 24th, 2nd Lieut. W. L. Chown (3rd Dorsets).

February 26th.—At 3.30 p.m. the Regiment marched to Lillers and entrained for Nœux-les-Mines, whence it marched southwards, about 2 miles, to billets in Petit Sains. (*Map* 7.)

February 27th.—At 6 a.m. with Crosse and Company Commanders to Bully Grenay, where we met guides, who took us into the right half of Angres sector, at present held by the French. Interviewed the Commandant of the 3rd Battalion 66th Regiment, and the Regiment took over the trenches this evening. The Commandant was very pleasant, and explained the area and all its points very carefully. Very lengthy communication trench from the village to Regimental H.Q., which is a very poor spot, though the dug-out is deep and quite safe. A French H.Q. is built to hold only 2 officers and 3 men, so we find it a very tight fit. We got through the relief very comfortably, though it was not complete until just after midnight. The French seemed jolly glad to leave these trenches, and in getting away made small use of communication trenches, but went off very speedily over the top in all directions.

February 28th.—The section which we now occupy is quite a new part of the line to us, and is just north of the famous Lorette Heights, where the French have had such desperately hard fighting. The trench area is on sloping ground, which is a welcome change to the eternal flat country around Bethune. Our frontage is a wide one, necessitating three companies being in the front line, which creates difficulties in the matter of the relief of companies.

The enemy is at present very quiet.

Digitized by Google

February 29th.—Very bright day, and many aeroplanes about.

A vast amount of work required to bring up ammunition and hand-grenades to fill the line—always the case when relieving the French. They had left the line in very good order as far as the front and supporting lines were concerned, but they appear never to have enough men to construct lines farther in rear, so that here, as elsewhere, the 2nd and Reserve lines of defence existed only on their trench maps! This entails a very considerable amount of work for the battalions out of the line who are supposed to be resting.

March 1st.—"Stand-to" hour at 5.30 a.m. is, I find, an excellent time for examining our trench area. The line was reduced to-day from a three-battalion to a two-battalion front, so we had to take over more line.

Casualties.—3 men wounded.

Lieut. E. H. Whitfeld, M.C., appointed Adjutant, in place of Captain R. B. Crosse, S.D.O., whose tenure of the appointment expired to-day.

March 2nd.—In the evening we were relieved by the 17th R. Fusiliers and moved to billets in the Corons d'Aix adjoining Bully Grenay. Only H.Q. and 2 companies are here, the other 2 companies being at strong points in the Reserve Line. These "corons" are a very poor class of miners' cottages, built in rows of about ten. Many of them are much knocked about by shell-fire, and others are still occupied by miners, so we had little choice of quarters.

March 3rd.—(In billets at Corons d'Aix.) General Davies, whose headquarters are just north of Calonne, came over to see us. Heavy snow during the night.

March 4th.—The whole Regiment moved back into billets at "Fosse 10." We are now in the midst of a mining country, and here there is still a mine working, although only at night. We are billeted in the miners' houses, nice semi-detached villas, and very superior in every way to the "corons" which we recently occupied. More snow fell.

The 42nd reinforcement (41 men) joined.

March 5th.—Owen rejoined from his temporary job at 2nd Divisional H.Q.

March 6th.—We relieved the 2nd H.L.I. in the trenches—centre sub-section of Angres sector. The first company moved in at 8.45 a.m., the last at 3.45 p.m., and the relief was complete by

Digitized by Google

6.30 p.m. The country is more hilly here, and the enemy commands parts of the roads up to the trenches, so that the strength of parties moving up at a time was restricted to platoons; this, added to the great length of communication trenches, made the relief a slow business.

Southey has gone to G.H.Q. as instructor at a Cadets' School.

March 7th.—A misty day. The Brigadier and I explored a lot more of our trench area. The 24th R. Fusiliers are on our left, and the 17th R. Fusiliers on our right. Beyond the latter, i.e., southwards, the 99th Brigade now occupy a frontage extending as far as the Souchez River. Heavy snow this evening.

March 8th.—Bright sunny day, but more snow at night.

March 9th.—Moved Regimental H.Q. to-day to some very good dug-outs about half-way back to the village. This was where the French had had their pioneer company and many workshops. The men are working very hard bringing up ammunition, hand grenades, and R.E. stores.

We now have in the Brigade a sapping company, each regiment furnishing a platoon of about 36 men, under an officer, and it is commanded by Rawson (O.C. our platoon). This company is invaluable for revetting and such-like work, though it does not take the place of the R.E., but supplements them. The chief advantage is that we always have the company at hand, which is not the case with our Field Company R.E.

March 10th.—We were relieved to-day by the 2nd H.L.I. The reliefs are now carried out in daylight, companies moving at intervals of two hours. This period in the trenches has been fairly quiet, and the enemy's artillery inactive, except on the afternoons of the 7th and to-day, when some 4.2 shells fell on the front line and close behind. He showed a good deal of activity with rifle grenades at first, but cooled down later, as we were able to reply with vigour.

Casualties during the period: 2 killed and 11 wounded.

We returned to billets at "Fosse 10." The 2nd Division now forms part of the IVth Corps, commanded by General Sir H. H. Wilson. This is the first change we have had, as we have belonged to the Ist Corps since the war commenced.

On the 9th 2nd Lieut. M. G. Fielding (from Corporal, 1st King Edward's Horse) and on the 10th 2nd Lieut. R. S. L. Maul (from Corporal, 2nd King Edward's Horse) joined the Regiment for duty, on promotion.

Digitized by Google

March 11*th*.—Good baths here, and every man gets one during his four days out of the trenches. Weather still cold and raw.

March 12*th*.—In the afternoon Hardcastle and I rode over the hill to visit the ruins of Ablain St. Nazaire. Most interesting. Scarcely one house left standing.

2nd Lieuts. N. S. Harrison and W. I. B. Ware, from the 9th Battalion, joined for duty.

March 14*th*.—Exchanged places again with the 2nd H.L.I. Each of the other two battalions are staying in the line all the time, but they only have two-thirds of their strength up in the trenches.

The 43rd reinforcement (53 men) joined.

March 15*th*.—Brighter weather. Much aeroplane activity; we have plenty of machines, and they seldom allow a Hun 'plane to come over our line.

Owen went off yesterday to Pernes, for duty at the 2nd Divisional School.

March 18*th*.—Very quiet, but the line is good for sniping, and our people are doing very useful work both in this and at observation. Mails are not so regular as usual..

March 19*th*.—Relieved at 6 p.m. by the 10th West Riding Regiment (69th Brigade, 23rd Division), who carried it out very well. We were billeted in Hersin for the night.

March 20*th*.—Moved, through Barlin and Bruay, to Divion. Quite hot and muggy—unpleasant for marching. Good billets at Divion, though scattered, and we have to have two officers' messes. We share the village, which lies in a hollow, with the 24th R. Fusiliers.

March 22*nd*.—(At Divion.) Companies getting to work at training. Very pretty country about here—rolling hills and valleys running north and south.

March 24*th*.—Trying to teach young officers to ride, at which few excel. Snowing again to-night.

March 27*th*.—The Brigade was inspected by the Corps Commander (Sir H. H. Wilson), who seemed pleased with the appearance of the men.

March 28*th*.—The Regiment marched 1½ miles to Houdain station, whence, with the 2nd H.L.I., it proceeded by train to

Digitized by Google

Hersin (50 minutes' journey). Billeted in the Convent School—excellent quarters.

400 men on fatigue to-night making and improving the second line in the Angres section.

March 29th.—Beautiful weather. These large fatigue parties upset training considerably. Took a party of 10 young officers for riding instruction up to some good waste ground on the Lorette Ridge.

SNIPING FROM FRONT LINE TRENCHES.

March 30th.—Another officers' ride—popularly called the "Wild West Show." The weather is getting quite hot.

2nd Lieut. B. C. C. Warde, 3rd Battalion, joined for duty.

March 31st.—A number of officers and men went this morning to see a very good demonstration of the use of a "Flammenwerfer." The liquid stream of fire is rather terrifying to look at, but they say that if one lies down at the bottom of a trench it does not do much harm. The 2nd Army captured this delightful instrument of war some time ago from the Huns up Ypres way.

April 1st.—(Still in billets at Hersin.) The enemy shelled a mine within 100 yards of the Convent at intervals all day. The mine

Digitized by Google

was considerably damaged, but none of the Regiment hit—an extraordinarily lucky escape, due no doubt to the wonderful accuracy of the enemy's shooting, his shells all going where he intended them to go.

In the afternoon the Corps Commander gave an excellent lecture at Bruay on "The Situation in Europe."

April 2nd.—The Regiment marched to Barlin (1¼ miles), and thence proceeded by train (20 minutes) to Bruay. On by road, through Divion (5 miles) to Camblain-Châtelain (called by the men "Charlie Chaplin"). Good billets. Bayley and Blewitt came over to see us from somewhere south.

April 4th.—The Regiment was inspected in musketry exercises by Lieut.-General Sir C. C. Monro, commanding 1st Army.

April 5th.—The Brigade moved to an area a considerable way back, in order to carry out some open warfare training. We marched from Camblain-Châtelain to Calonne-Ricourt station (½ mile), entrained at 12.30 p.m., and arrived at Aire at 1.45 p.m. Thence we marched 9½ miles, through Therouanne, to Delatte,[1] a pleasant, old-world village, where we found very comfortable billets.

April 6th.—The day was allotted to the Regiment for battalion training. Out from 9 a.m. to 3.20 p.m., over some wonderful country—high hills and deep valleys, with very few landmarks to guide one. There were some villages, but they were mostly hidden from view, tucked away down in the hollows.

April 7th.—The Brigade out for training, General Joffre being present for a few minutes, as he had expressed a wish to see British troops manœuvring. As a matter of fact, it was rather a waste of time, as all that we did was to carry out a very stereotyped form of attack.

April 8th.—Brigade training on another part of the area. A very dull day, as the Regiment was in reserve most of the time.

April 9th.—As this special training area is required for other troops, we had to return to-day, by the same route, to billets at Camblain-Châtelain, which we reached at 4 p.m. The buglers are in great form now, and, in the absence of a band, are a great help to us on the march.

[1] The 52nd were billeted here almost a century ago, when forming part of the Army of Occupation of France.

Digitized by Google

April 10*th.*—Companies at fire-control exercises, etc. Scouts and snipers at special training.

Two hundred men were away on a whole day's fatigue.

April 11*th.*—The Regiment bathing all day, so I took out the Company Commanders for a regimental exercise. A good deal of rain.

April 12*th.*—We moved by road and rail to Hersin again, but were billeted in small cottages, which are not nearly so comfortable as the school which we had last time; 200 men on fatigue to-night.

April 15*th.*—These large fatigue parties upset the daily training very much, but the opportunity was taken to give N.C.O.'s thorough instruction in the latest methods of physical training and bayonet fighting.

As we have missed so many Sundays lately, a Church Parade Service was held to-day.

In the afternoon Whitfeld and I went for a ride round by Mazingarbe, Philosophe, and Vermelles. The latter two places have been much battered since we were there last June.

April 16*th.*—The Regiment moved forward to Bully-Grenay, on the commencement of the relief of the 23rd Division by the 2nd Division. The 5th Brigade front is now being held by two battalions instead of three. One battalion is in Fosse 10 in Divisional Reserve; we ourselves are in support, distributed as follows: H.Q. and two companies in Bully; one company at Metro Cap-de-Pont, in trenches about 300 yards from the west end of Corons d'Aix Alley; one company in Mechanic Trench at the tactical disposal of the O.C. the Right Battalion.

April 18*th.*—The 44th reinforcement (16 men) arrived.

April 20*th.*—The weather lately has been very rainy and windy. The Regiment relieved the 17th R. Fusiliers in the evening, as Right Battalion (Angres.1.), having our H.Q., as before, in the good dug-out (not deep) in Mechanic Trench.

April 21*st.*—"Stand-to" is now at 4.15 a.m. Nothing much going on.

April 22*nd.*—Very heavy rain all day, consequently the trenches much flooded, and I had considerable difficulty in getting round to-night. A party of four petty officers from the Grand Fleet have spent the last 3 or 4 days with us.

Digitized by Google

April 23rd.—Easter Day, so Dallas arranged for celebrations of the Holy Communion—one at 5.30 a.m. in a front-line company H.Q., and another at Regimental H.Q. at a later hour.

April 24th.—Two fine days in succession have almost dried up the trenches again. The 17th R. Fusiliers relieved us in the afternoon, and we returned to good billets in Fosse 10.

This period was very quiet, except for a certain amount of hostile rifle grenade activity.

Casualties.—1 killed and 5 wounded.

April 25th.—2nd Lieut. M. F. M. Parkes (9th Battalion) joined for duty.

Our Brigadier is in temporary command of the Division, so I had to go and take command of the Brigade.

April 26th.—Went all round the right sector with Higgins.

April 27th.—Went round the left sector. I had not seen the Bully craters before. Always a number of light trench mortar missiles flying about there.

FROM THE REGIMENTAL DIARY.

April 28th.—Relieved the 17th R. Fusiliers in the same sector as before.

During this period the enemy was quiet, except for some more frequent shelling of the right communication trench and all along the front line.

Casualties.—3 wounded, including Company-Sergeant-Major MARTIN,[1] who died of his wounds.

To the north, at Hulluch, and on the 1st Division front just north of the 6th Brigade (on our left), the enemy has been active with gas attacks, which met with no success. There has also been much shelling, near Givenchy-en-Gohelle, on the 47th Division front, just south of the 99th Brigade (on our right).

April 29th.—2nd Lieut. J. D. C. Holland, on promotion from Corporal, 1st King Edward's Horse, and 2nd Lieut. R. G. Pluckrose, on promotion from Battery-Sergeant-Major Motor Machine-gun Corps, arrived for duty.

---

[1] He had recently been promoted from Bugle-Major. He is a great loss to the Regiment.—A. J. F. E.

Digitized by Google

LIEUT.-COLONEL EDEN'S DIARY CONTINUED.

April 30th.—I returned to the Regiment to-day. Heard of the fall of Kut ; fear that many of the 43rd must now be prisoners in Turkish hands. A great tragedy !

I find that since our arrival in France the Regiment has received reinforcements to the extent of 105 officers and 2,840 other ranks, but of course these numbers include many officers and men rejoining on recovery from wounds.

May 1st.—The Regiment is still in the trenches—Angres. 1 Sector. The enemy's artillery fairly active.

May 2nd.—Relieved by the 17th R. Fusiliers, and moved to billets at Bully, as before.

May 4th.—The 45th reinforcement (17 men) arrived.

May 5th.—Back to the trenches, in relief of the 17th R. Fusiliers.

May 7th.—In the morning I went up on to the Lorette Ridge with Colonel Kirwan, commanding our R.F.A. group, to his observation-post, from which I obtained a most wonderful view over Lievin and the German trench system in the foreground.

The 46th reinforcement (1 sergeant and 37 rank and file) arrived.

May 10th.—On relief by the 17th R. Fusiliers we moved to billets at Fosse 10. The period had been very quiet, and was spent in deepening and improving trenches.

May 11th.—The weather now is very warm and pleasant. I went up again to the Lorette Heights with Colonel Kirwan, and watched a trench mortar "straf." Most interesting. A great deal of retaliation followed from noon to 6 p.m. At night C Company furnished 100 men for repair of communication trenches.

May 12th.—The 69th Brigade (23rd Division) relieved our Brigade to-night, when the Regiment moved into very good billets (Convent) in Hersin. The day was fine but cloudy ; no hostile balloons up, and no aircraft about.

May 13th.—Regimental H.Q. are in the Mayor's house, he himself occupying only two rooms. There is a nice garden, at the end of which he has a *sanglier* (wild boar), which he has had for some time. Before the war this beast and a tame fox used to follow him about like dogs. He is a great sportsman, and was the owner of several valuable horses, but unfortunately they were at Lille when the war broke out, so he is not likely to see them again.

Digitized by Google

May 15th.—The Mayor dined with us (in his own house !) to-night. Our Brigadier, Corkran, has been transferred to the command of the 3rd Guards' Brigade, and Bullen-Smith (of the Leinsters) arrived this evening to take over command of the 5th Brigade.

May 16th.—I went round all the regiments of the Brigade with the new Brigadier. In the evening I went off on leave home until the 28th.

FROM THE REGIMENTAL DIARY.

May 17th.—During the past four days we have provided working parties of about 2 companies daily for work on the rearward defences in the areas occupied by the 47th and 23rd Divisions.

Casualty.—1 man of B Company wounded on the 15th.

May 18th.—The Regiment marched to Camblain-Châtelain, Area " B " (Bruay) of the IVth Corps Rest Area.

Passed through Maisnil-les-Ritz, Houdain, and Divion. Halted near Divion for three-quarters of an hour, and tea was issued from the cookers. Packs were carried on lorries. Very hot march. Three men fell out.

May 19th–20th.—In rest billets at Camblain-Châtelain. Cleaning billets (which had been left very dirty), ordinary drills, and musketry.

May 21st.—Moved to billets at Divion—not the same sub-area as last time. Companies scattered, and positions rather unsatisfactory.

May 22nd–24th.—The Regiment was held in readiness to move at short notice. The enemy had heavily bombarded the Right Division (47th) of the IVth Corps and the line to the south of it, the 47th losing some trenches. Two brigades (6th and 99th) of our Division, which was in reserve, moved forward, but the 5th Brigade stood fast, awaiting orders, and were never called for.

May 25th.—The Regiment marched at 9 a.m., viâ Houdain, Rebreuve, and Fresnicourt, to tents in the Bois de Verdrel. Heavy rain at the start, which clearly demonstrated the value of the regimental method of carrying waterproof sheets.

May 26th.—Marched at 1.30 p.m., viâ Grand Servins and Petit Servins, to Gouy-Servins. The 5th Brigade is now reserve to the 2nd Division, which is in course of replacing the 47th Division in the line.

The battle position assigned (if necessary) to the Regiment was the Maitre, and the position farther forward was the line between

Digitized by Google

the rivers Carency and Souchez, the left flank resting approximately on the ruined village of Ablain-Saint-Nazaire.

May 27th–31st.—During these days the Regiment furnished several working parties, and carried out such training as was possible in the vicinity of billets. Reconnaissances of the new line were made by officers and N.C.O.'s daily.

LIEUT.-COLONEL EDEN'S DIARY CONTINUED.

June 1st.—Took Company Commanders to view our new trenches opposite Vimy. They do not seem to be as bad as people make out. Still beautiful weather.

The 47th reinforcement (20 men) arrived.

June 2nd.—The following officers, all of whom had been previously wounded while serving with the Regiment, joined for duty: Captain A. N. Carew-Hunt, Lieut. F. W. C. Chippindale, Lieut. P. L. C. Webster, Lieut. J. D. Belgrave.

The Regiment left Gouy-Servins at 8 p.m. for the trenches in 2nd Division Berthouval left sub-sector (Vimy Ridge), relieving the 1st Royal Berks (99th Brigade). Regimental H.Q. in Zouave Valley, Brigade H.Q. in "Battle Headquarters" near Cabaret Rouge, and about half an hour's walk from us.

The front of the Regiment, described by trenches as named officially, is from Vincent Street inclusive on the right, to Ersatz Avenue exclusive on the left. The front line is held by the two flank companies, three companies being in the line, in order A, B, D. B Company is in second line, except at night, their part of the front line being unfinished and untenable in daytime. There is no second line for the left front company, and a very poor semblance of one for the right company.

The 24th R. Fusiliers (5th Brigade) are on our right, and the 1st King's (Liverpool), of the 8th Brigade, are on our left.

The relief began at 11 p.m. and was completed in about an hour and a half. Very quiet night, which enabled us to put in good work digging and repairing.

June 3rd.—Had a good look round the trenches to-day. They require an immense amount of work on them, as it is practically a new line, some 300 or 400 yards in rear of our former one. This is part of the front on which the 47th Division had been driven back on May 21st–22nd. There are indications everywhere of a

Digitized by Google

very severe bombardment by the enemy, but the battlefield had, of course, been well cleaned up before we came in.

The men were hard at work all last night, deepening and connecting up the trenches. The enemy were working on their new front line, but they were not interfered with until the relief was complete. Our wire was very poor, and every effort was made to improve it. Sixteen *chevaux-de-frise* were brought up and placed in position before dawn. The enemy's wire was found to be of very little strength.

Between 9 and 11 this morning shell-fire considerably interfered with work. About 40 heavy shrapnel and H.E. shells fell on the area immediately east and west of Zouave Valley during this time, but no damage was done.

Casualties.—1 man killed (A Company) and 1 man wounded (B Company).

June 4th.—Men working very hard making the line. Enemy very quiet; little shelling, and practically no trench-mortar firing or mining.

Heard to-day first reports of the great naval fight in the North Sea, and of heavy losses on both sides.

June 5th.—As much progress as possible is being made on the wire and deep dug-outs, but work on the latter is much hampered by lack of material, which is difficult to get up.

At 10 p.m. Captain A. N. Carew Hunt was mortally wounded while getting out of the International Avenue Sap-head before it was quite dark, and died within a few minutes.

The following officers joined for duty to-day: 2nd Lieut. N. W. Hill (A Company), 2nd Lieut. T. A. Ionides (D Company).

Lieut. R. M. Barnes rejoined for duty from No. 2 Infantry Base Depôt, having been relieved by 2nd Lieut. K. Peploe.

June 6th.—In the evening the 17th R. Fusiliers relieved us, and we became support battalion in and about Cabaret Rouge, Alhambra, and Coliseum Redoubts. Men very crowded, and officers in very dirty quarters.

Casualties.—1 killed (C Company) and 2 wounded (A Company).

June 7th.—In the afternoon we heard the tragic news of Lord Kitchener's death. It all seems very mysterious.

June 8th.—At "Stand-to" this morning I went with Crosse to see the garrisons (consisting of a weak company each) in Coliseum and Alhambra strong points.

Digitized by Google

Three or four officers at a time are going back to Petit Servins to get a bath and a good night's rest, as there is nothing whatever to do here. At night there are lively scenes when the light railway trucks (each drawn by a mule), arrive with rations and R.E. material.

June 10*th*.—At 9 p.m., after drawing rations, we relieved the 17th R. Fusiliers in the same area as before. Showery weather at present.

DINNERS IN THE TRENCHES.

June 12*th*.—Wonderfully quiet. Both sides, certainly at night, are far too busy working on their defences to want to interfere with one another. We are making rapid progress with the work.

The 48th reinforcement (52 men) arrived, and two sergeants joined at Petit Servins from the Base.

2nd Lieut. T. G. C. Caulfield-Stoker joined the Regiment for duty, and was posted to C Company (Captain Boardman).

June 13*th*.—Rain interfered with work considerably to-night. Find that I cannot get to rest much before 12.30 a.m., as working parties must be inspected and new works laid out, then "Stand-to" is at 2.30 a.m., so the nights are very short.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. W. R. Goffe joined the Regiment, on first appointment, from the Motor Machine-gun Corps, and was posted to D Company (Captain Kite).

June 14th.—We have been working hard at the construction of deep dug-outs in the front-line system. Only a few men can work at a time on each entrance, but reliefs are used, and the work continues for 20 out of the 24 hours. A great amount of timber has to be carried up to keep the work going, as all the passages as they are excavated have to be shored up, and the entrances have to be rather cunningly contrived. The rate of work averages one step per entrance per diem, and during these last four days we have put in over 200 steps—thanks to the energy displayed by the men and the untiring supervision of Crosse, who runs the show as a sort of "foreman of works."

During the night we were relieved by the 17th R. Fusiliers.

June 15th.—The Regiment, on relief, moved to Camblain l'Abbé, the last company getting in at 4.30 a.m. We all had breakfast first and then went to sleep till midday.

We are quartered in some very good huts, put up by the French for their troops. The officers have a hut to themselves, half being used as a mess and the other half for sleeping quarters.

June 16th.—Bathing, resting, and ordinary forms of training going on.

June 17th.—About 200 men employed each night on Brigade fatigue in the trench area.

June 18th.—The 49th reinforcement (45 men, including Acting Q.-M.-S. Andrews) joined from the Base. Church Parade Service in the morning. In the evening the Regiment moved back to billets in Estrée-Cauchée. A very small billeting area, and a large proportion of all ranks very uncomfortable.

June 19th.—500 men on fatigue to-day. There is a 50-yards range available close to the village, so each company in turn is being put through a short course of musketry-grouping practice and rapid firing.

2nd Lieut. A. G. Gibbons transferred to the Royal Engineers with effect from this date.

June 20th.—A battalion of the Naval Division is now in the other half of this village. A soldier commands them, but most of the

Digitized by Google

officers are sailors. They wear naval badges of rank, and the men salute like sailors. The senior N.C.O.'s of companies are styled chief petty officers.

June 21st.—I took out 9 officers for a reconnaissance near Villars from 6.30 a.m. to 9.30 a.m.

500 men on fatigue again.

I received orders to-day that I am to leave on the 23rd for special duty in the IVth Army area.

June 22nd.—The Waterloo Sports were held to-day, in splendid weather, in a field close to billets. There was a large attendance of visitors, including the Divisional and Brigade Commanders, and the whole thing was a great success. We had two capital competitions for bombers, well organized by Bobby, and in the evening Goodwyn got up a very fair concert for the men.

June 23rd.—Crosse took over temporary command of the Regiment, and I left in a car at 9.30 a.m. for the south.

From the Regimental Diary.

June 24th–26th.—(In Reserve Billets at Estrée-Camblain.) Bathing, training, etc.

June 27th.—The Regiment marched to billets at Villers-au-Bois. The 50th reinforcement (30 men) arrived.

June 28th–30th.—Training carried out as usual, particularly of the last two reinforcements, who are being trained as a separate party under Lieut. Slocock.

Casualty (on the 29th).—1 man wounded (D Company).

2nd BATTALION CASUALTIES.

1st August 1915 to 30th June 1916.

	Killed.	Wounded.	Missing.	Totals.
Officers	8	11	—	19
Other Ranks	70	200	69	339
Total	78	211	69[1]	358

[1] Afterwards accounted for as 61 killed and 8 prisoners, 7 of whom were wounded.

Digitized by Google

REINFORCEMENTS RECEIVED

(INCLUDING OFFICERS AND MEN REJOINED FROM BEING WOUNDED).

45 Officers and about 900 other ranks.

STATEMENTS OF ACTS OF GALLANTRY FOR WHICH AWARDS WERE GIVEN.

DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL.

("*London Gazette*," 30*th November* 1915.)

No. 11209 PRIVATE T. BYTHEWAY (attached to 178th Tunnelling Company, R.E.).

For conspicuous bravery and devotion to duty on 20th October. After the Germans had exploded a mine in front of our trenches, damaging our galleries, Private Bytheway, without hesitating and with great courage, went down one gallery and rescued three men who had been gassed. He then carried out two underground explorations at great personal risk, and ascertained that there was no one in the galleries. On the second occasion he was severely burnt by a tongue of blue flame which shot along the gallery from the enemy's side, and he was also gassed. Nevertheless, he continued his hazardous duties till overcome, when he had to be hauled unconscious to the surface. On 10 October, on a similar occasion, he rescued two men, who were gassed in a gallery, saving their lives.

("*London Gazette*," *October* 1915.)

No. 10290 LANCE-CORPORAL (ACTING SERGEANT) W. H. A. WATKINS.

For conspicuous gallantry on 25th August 1915 at Givenchy. A small mine was exploded at the head of a sap. Lance-Corporal Watkins, a bomber, who was in reserve, on hearing the noise of the explosion, on his own initiative collected two other bombers and hurried up at once to give assistance. Again, on the night of the following day, at the same place, during a determined bomb attack by the enemy, he voluntarily remained on duty all night, at times climbing out of the trench to enable him to reach the German trenches better. His bravery, coolness, and example were of the greatest benefit to all ranks.

Digitized by Google

("*London Gazette*," 11*th March* 1916.)

No. 7905 COMPANY-SERGEANT-MAJOR F. CLARE.

For conspicuous good work throughout the whole campaign, notably on one occasion, when he led on two platoons, which had lost their officers, into the enemy trench. He has great initiative and power of command, and has set a fine example.

RUINED CHURCH AT RICHEBOURG ST. VAAST.

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS WHO SERVED WITH THE 2ND BATTALLION IN FRANCE AND FLANDERS BETWEEN 1ST AUGUST 1915 AND 30TH JUNE 1916.

I.

WITH THE BATTALION, 1ST AUGUST 1915.[1]

Brevet-Lieut.-Colonel A. J. F. EDEN, in command of the Battalion; in temp. command 5th Infantry Brigade, 21st–25th January, 11th–14th February, and 25th–30th April 1916; to Fourth Army Area for special duty, 23rd June 1916; mentioned in Dispatches; awarded D.S.O., June 1916.

Major G. N. COLVILE, D.S.O., Reserve of Officers (late 1st Battalion); Senior Major; appointed to command 7th (Service) Battalion, Duke of Cornwall's Light Infantry (temp. Lieut.-Colonel), 25th July 1915.

Captain C. G. HIGGINS, B Company Commander; promoted Major, 1st September 1915; Commanding the Battalion, 25th October to 8th November; Senior Major, 10th November 1915; commanding 17th Royal Fusiliers (temp. Lieut.-Colonel), 31st December 1915; Dispatches, January 1916.

Captain L. F. SCOTT, Reserve of Officers (late 1st Battalion), Transport Officer; Second in Command in relief of Major C. G. Higgins, December 1915.

Captain C. FITZGERALD, 3rd (late 2nd) Battalion, C Company; Machine-gun Officer, in succession to Captain Southey, August 1915; to 1st Battalion in Mesopotamia, December 1915.

Captain R. B. CROSSE, D.S.O., Adjutant until 1st March 1916; temp. Major, 1st March 1916; commanded the Battalion in the absence of Lieut.-Colonel Eden; Brevet-Major, 3rd June 1916; mentioned in Dispatches.

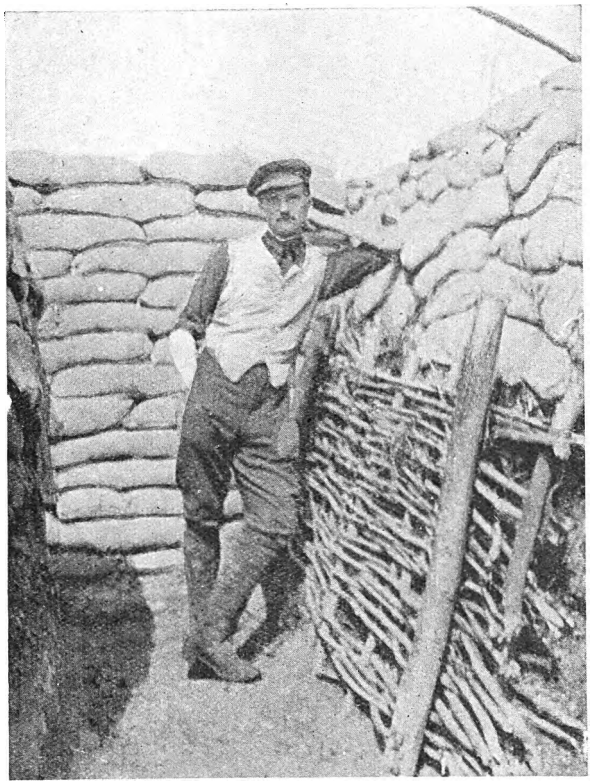
Captain A. W. N. PONSONBY, C Company Commander; *killed*, 8th September 1915.

[1] In order of seniority. For services prior to this date, see previous Volume.

Digitized by Google

Captain (temp.) R. M. OWEN, A Company Commander; temp. G.S.O., 3rd Grade, 2nd Division, 18th December 1915 to 5th March 1916; attached to IVth Corps H.Q.; Dispatches, January 1916.

Captain J. A. SOUTHEY, Machine-gun Officer, D Company Commander, August 1915; Instructor, Cadets' School, G.H.Q., March 1916.



CAPTAIN FOWKE IN SCOTTISH TRENCH, GIVENCHY
August 1915.

Lieut. J. H. BOARDMAN, B Company; duty at Base; rejoined, 28th September 1915; C Company Commander (temp. Captain, 9th October 1915); promoted Captain, 25th November 1915.

Lieut. C. A. F. FOWKE (3rd Battalion), B Company; transferred to the 5th Battalion, 21st December 1915; awarded Military Cross; mentioned in Dispatches; *see* 5th Battalion Record.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. C. A. BARRAN, C Company; *wounded*, 7th/8th September 1915.

Lieut. P. F. NEWTON-KING, D Company Commander (temp. Captain); *killed*, 25th September 1915.

Lieut. T. E. WITHINGTON, A Company; *wounded*, 25th September 1915.

LIEUT. T. E. WITHINGTON.

2nd Lieut. C. T. CHEVALLIER (3rd Battalion), A Company; Lieutenant, 17th August 1915; commanding Light Mortar Battery; mentioned in Dispatches.

2nd Lieut. P. M. RIDOUT (3rd Battalion), B Company; Lieutenant, 17th August 1915; *wounded*, 14th October 1915.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. A. N. CAREW-HUNT (3rd Battalion), A Company; Lieutenant, 17th August 1915; *wounded*, 25th September 1915; rejoined, 2nd June 1916; *killed*, 5th June.

2nd Lieut. P. L. C. WEBSTER (3rd Battalion), C Company; *wounded*, 25th September 1915; Lieutenant, 6th November 1915; rejoined, 2nd June 1916.

2ND LIEUT. G. FIELD.

Lieut. A. G. CARDY, B Company; posted for duty with Mediterranean Expeditionary Force, 1st December 1915.

2nd Lieut. (temp. Lieut.) G. FIELD, D Company; Lieutenant, 25th November 1915; posted for duty with Mediterranean Expeditionary Force, 1st December 1915; awarded Military Cross, January 1916; mentioned in Dispatches.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. R. B. KITE, A Company; in charge 5th Brigade Bombing School, 9th August 1915; temp. Lieutenant, 6th September 1915; promoted Lieutenant, 25th November 1915; temp. Captain, 6th April 1916; mentioned in Dispatches.

2nd Lieut. J. D. BELGRAVE, D Company; *wounded*, 25th September 1915; promoted Lieutenant, 13th February 1916; rejoined 2nd June 1916.

2nd Lieut. C. HURST-BROWN, D Company; *died of wounds* received 25th September 1915.

2nd Lieut. W. J. LITTLEDALE, B Company; temp. Lieutenant, 18th December 1915; promoted Lieutenant, 2nd March 1916.

2nd Lieut. E. R. G. HUGHES, C Company; *killed*, 25th September 1915.

2nd Lieut. J. G. GRANT, C Company.

Captain E. SCOTT (R.A.M.C.), Medical Officer; *wounded*, 25th September, 1915.

Lieut. A. E. WARNOCK, Quartermaster.

II.

JOINED OR REJOINED AFTER 1ST AUGUST 1915.[1]

2nd Lieut. K. PEPLOE (First Commission, 17th February 1915); joined the Battalion, 14th August 1915; D Company; to No. 2 Infantry Base Depôt, 5th June 1916.

2nd Lieut. L. J. GOODWYN (temp. Lieut.) (3rd Battalion, from 2nd K.O.Y.L.I.); joined, 15th August 1915; Captain, 6th November 1915; B Company Commander, December 1915.

2nd Lieut. A. E. S. RIDDLE (3rd Battalion); joined, August 1915; C Company; *wounded*, 7th/8th September 1915; afterwards to 1st Battalion in Mesopotamia.

2nd Lieut. V. V. JACOB (9th Battalion); joined, 16th August 1915; *missing, believed killed*, 25th September 1915; mentioned in Dispatches.

2nd Lieut. L. A. VIDAL (3rd Battalion); joined, 24th August 1915; Machine-gun Officer; *killed*, 25th September 1915.

[1] In order of date of joining or rejoining the Battalion.

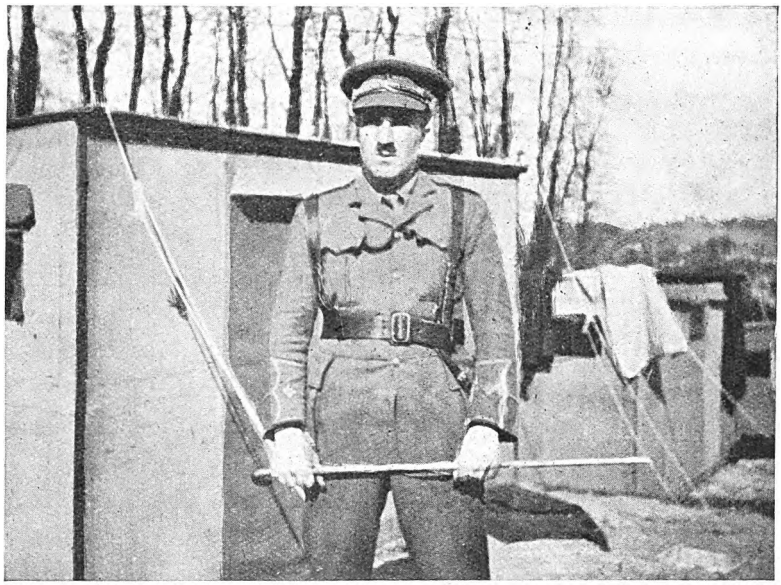
Digitized by Google

Lieut. R. CLARK (R.A.M.C.); took over Medical charge when Captain E. Scott (R.A.M.C.) was wounded on 25th September 1915.

2nd Lieut. C. R. HORLEY, C Company; rejoined from being wounded, 26th September 1915.

Lieut. W. G. MILLS, attached from 3rd D.C.L.I., 1st October 1915: *wounded*, 14th October 1915.

2nd Lieut. W. L. BARNARD; rejoined from being wounded, 5th October 1915: promoted Lieutenant, 16th December 1915.



2ND LIEUT. L. A. VIDAL.

Lieut. H. W. H. RAWSON (3rd Battalion); joined, 5th October 1915; Captain, 6th November 1915; A Company; O.C. Sapping Platoon, March 1916.

2nd Lieut. C. H. B. SLOCOCK (3rd Battalion); joined, 5th October 1915; B Company.

2nd Lieut. R. STRICKLAND (3rd Battalion); joined, 5th October 1915; *died* in hospital at Bethune, 25th December 1915.

2nd Lieut. C. G. STEPHENS (3rd Battalion); joined, 5th October 1915; Machine-gun Officer.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. A. H. RAMSAY (9th, attached 3rd Battalion); joined, 5th October 1915; *killed*, October 1915.

2nd Lieut. T. TYRWHITT-DRAKE (First Commission from 3rd Battalion, 14th July 1915); joined, 5th October 1915; B Company.

2nd Lieut. JOHN BALFOUR HARDCASTLE (First Commission from R.M.C., Sandhurst, 11th August 1915); joined, 5th October 1915; A Company; temp. Captain, 14th March 1916.

Lieut. E. H. WHITFELD, M.C., rejoined from being wounded, 7th October 1915; A Company; Dispatches, January 1916; appointed Adjutant, 1st March 1916.

Lieut. J. W. G. WYLD, rejoined from being wounded, 7th October 1915.

Lieut. D. A. D. SEWELL, rejoined from being wounded, 7th October 1915; to No. 2 Infantry Base Depôt, Rouen, 5th December 1915; Adjutant of same, 10th February 1916.

2nd Lieut. P. A. BOBBY (temp. 2nd Lieut. from Private, Royal Horse Guards, 3rd October 1915); joined, 30th October 1915; C Company.

2nd Lieut. R. M. BARNES (9th Battalion); joined, 3rd December 1915; B Company; temp. Lieutenant, 13th February 1916.

2nd Lieut. D. T. BARNES (9th Battalion); joined, 3rd December 1915; D Company.

2nd Lieut. H. J. ELLAM (from Artists' Rifles, 12th December 1915); joined on first appointment, 20th December 1915; A Company.

2nd Lieut. A. G. GIBBONS (9th Battalion); joined, 8th January 1916; transferred to Royal Engineers, 19th June 1916.

2nd Lieut. A. W. MIDDLEDITCH (9th Battalion); joined, 8th January 1916; invalided almost at once; *died* of injuries received on duty, 19th June 1916.

2nd Lieut. J. B. MURRAY, temp. 2nd Lieut. from Bombr., R.F.A. (T.F.), 16th January 1916; joined, 22nd January 1916.

2nd Lieut. J. E. V. RATHBONE (attached from 3rd Dorsets); joined, 14th February 1916.

2nd Lieut. F. C. DIXON (attached from 3rd Dorsets); joined, 17th February 1916.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. E. H. VIGARS, on promotion for Service in the Field, from Sergeant, 19th Hussars, 13th February; joined, 18th February 1916.

2nd Lieut. W. L. CHOWN (attached from 3rd Dorsets); joined, 24th February 1916.

2nd Lieut. M. G. FIELDING, from Corporal, 1st King Edward's Horse; joined, 9th March 1916, on promotion.

2nd Lieut. R. S. L. MAUL, from Corporal, 2nd King Edward's Horse; joined, 10th March 1916, on promotion.

LIEUT. D. A. D. SEWELL.

2nd Lieut. N. S. HARRISON (9th Battalion, 2nd Lieutenant, 23rd December 1914); joined, 12th March 1916.

2nd Lieut. W. I. B. WARE (9th Battalion, 2nd Lieutenant, 12th May 1915); joined 12th March 1916.

2nd Lieut. B. C. C. WARDE (3rd Battalion); joined, 30th March 1916.

2nd Lieut. M. F. M. PARKES (9th Battalion, 2nd Lieutenant, 14th August 1915); joined, 25th April 1916.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. J. D. C. HOLLAND, 2nd Lieutenant, 23rd April 1916, from Corporal, 1st King Edward's Horse; joined, 29th April 1916, on promotion.

2nd Lieut. R. G. PLUCKROSE, 2nd Lieutenant, 23rd April 1916, from Battery-Sergeant-Major, Motor Machine-gun Corps; joined, 29th April 1916, on promotion.

Lieut. F. W. C. CHIPPINDALE, rejoined from being wounded, 2nd June 1916.

Lieut. N. W. HILL, 2nd Lieutenant, from R.M.C., Sandhurst, 20th October 1915; joined, 5th June 1916; A Company.

2nd Lieut. T. A. IONIDES (3rd Battalion); joined, 5th June 1916; D Company.

2nd Lieut. T. G. C. CAULFIELD-STOKER; joined, 12th June 1916; C Company.

2nd Lieut. W. R. GOFFE (from Motor Machine-gun Corps); joined, 13th June 1916; D Company.

Digitized by Google

NAMES OF OFFICERS WHO WERE KILLED OR WOUNDED, OR WHO DIED WHILE SERVING WITH THE 2ND BATTALION, FROM THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE WAR UNTIL 30TH JUNE 1916.

I.

Killed, or died of wounds.

Captain A. H. HARDEN.
Captain R. C. EVELEGH.[1]
Lieut. R. WORTHINGTON.
Lieut. H. MOCKLER-FERRYMAN.
2nd Lieut. F. PEPYS.
2nd Lieut. J. S. C. MARSHALL.
2nd Lieut. A. D. TYLDEN-PATTENSON.
2nd Lieut. P. C. GIRARDOT.
2nd Lieut. A. H. BARRINGTON-KENNETT.
Lieut. G. M. R. TURBUTT.
2nd Lieut. D. H. W. HUMFREY.[1]
Major E. H. KIRKPATRICK.[1]
Lieut. C. F. MURPHY.
2nd Lieut. L. A. FILLEUL.
2nd Lieut. J. B. M. WARD.
2nd Lieut. J. JONES.
Captain F. H. BEAUFORT.
2nd Lieut. R. W. RENDEL.
2nd Lieut. F. E. L. RIDDLE.
Lieut. C. J. WARNER.
2nd Lieut. R. E. B. BULL.
2nd Lieut. J. L. JOHNSTON.
2nd Lieut. L. A. DASHWOOD.
Captain A. W. N. PONSONBY.[1]
Lieut. P. F. NEWTON-KING.[1]
2nd Lieut. C. HURST-BROWN.
2nd Lieut. E. R. G. HUGHES.
2nd Lieut. V. V. JACOB.
2nd Lieut. L. A. VIDAL.
2nd Lieut. A. H. RAMSAY.
Captain A. N. CAREW-HUNT.[1]

II.

Died in Hospital in France.

2nd Lieut. R. STRICKLAND.

[1] Had been wounded on a previous occasion.

Digitized by Google

III.

Wounded.

Major A. J. F. Eden.
Captain H. L. Wood.
Captain H. M. Dillon.
Captain R. C. Evelegh.
Captain G. Blewitt (twice).
Lieut. W. G. Tolson.
Lieut. C. S. Baines (twice).
Lieut. R. J. Brett.
Lieut. M. ff. R. Wingfield.
2nd Lieut. G. W. Titherington.
Captain S. F. Hammick.
2nd Lieut. C. Dean.
2nd Lieut. J. W. G. Wyld.
2nd Lieut. C. B. Baker.
2nd Lieut. E. H. Whitfeld.
2nd Lieut. W. L. Barnard.
2nd Lieut. C. R. Horley.
2nd Lieut. W. J. Eighteen.
Lieut. C. A. F. Fowke.
2nd Lieut. D. A. D. Sewell.
2nd Lieut. J. W. Meade.
Lieut. R. M. Owen.
Lieut. A. V. Spencer.
2nd Lieut. P. F. Newton-King.
Captain C. G. Higgins.
2nd Lieut. D. H. W. Humfrey.
2nd Lieut. F. W. C. Chippindale.
Captain A. W. N. Ponsonby.
Captain E. H. Kirkpatrick.
2nd Lieut. S. M. Minifie-Hawkins.
Lieut. C. A. Barran.
Lieut. T. E. Withington.
2nd Lieut. P. M. Ridout.
2nd Lieut. A. N. Carew-Hunt.
2nd Lieut. P. L. C. Webster.
Captain E. Scott (R.A.M.C.).
2nd Lieut. A. E. S. Riddle.
Lieut. W. G. Mills.
2nd Lieut. J. D. Belgrave.

IV.

Injured and taken Prisoner.

Captain P. Godsal.
2nd Lieut. G. T. Button.

Note.—Of the 28 officers who embarked with the 2nd Battalion for France in August 1914, 11 were killed, 9 wounded, 2 injured and captured, and 1 invalided from the Army.

Digitized by Google

THE DEPOT

OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY

COWLEY BARRACKS, OXFORD

1st August 1915 to 30th June 1916

Digitized by Google

THE DEPÔT.

1st August 1915 to 30th June 1916.

On the 1st August the following officers were doing duty at the Depôt :—

Lieut.-Colonel Sir C. Cuyler, Bart. (Res. of Off.), Commanding.
Major C. C. Pearson (Res. of Off.), Second in Command and Adjutant.
Major H. C. Maul (T.F. Reserve).
Captain H. V. Knox (late Captain R. Garrison Regiment).
Captain W. Owen (Res. of Off.), Recruiting Officer.
Captain H. C. Maul (3rd Battalion), attached.
Captain C. Carnell (Res. of Off.), Quartermaster.

Strength of the Depot.

Warrant officers, 3; N.C.O.'s, 41; Rank and File, 444.

During the above period the Depôt continued its recruiting duties, and despatched the recruits to units as shown in the accompanying table. It also received and dealt with N.C.O.'s and men invalided, through wounds or sickness, from the Expeditionary Force.

There were few changes in the officers: Captain H. C. Maul rejoined the 3rd (Reserve) Battalion on the 7th January 1916; 2nd Lieut. T. Boyd arrived for temporary duty on the 18th January, and Lieut. F. W. C. Chippindale on the 19th; 2nd Lieut. T. P. Williams joined for duty on the 18th February, and 2nd Lieut. R. H. Paige on the 24th. On the 29th February 2nd Lieut. T. P. Williams rejoined the 3rd (Reserve) Battalion, with a view to proceeding to the 1st Battalion in Mesopotamia, and his place at

Digitized by Google

the Depôt was taken by 2nd Lieut. E. B. Griffiths. On the 7th March Captain H. V. Knox joined a Cadet Battalion at Oxford; while, on the introduction of Compulsory Service, Captain W. Owen ceased to be employed as Recruiting Officer, and was transferred to a Record Office.

On the 28th April the G.O.C. No. 7 District inspected the Depôt, and presented the Distinguished Conduct Medal to No. 10053 Private R. G. JONES, 2nd Battalion, for gallantry in the field.

The following officers were at the Depôt for short periods at different times, and were employed principally in conducting drafts: Lieut. G. H. Davies, 2nd Lieut. C. H. Green, 2nd Lieut. G. J. B. de Pass, Lieut. G. R. Guy, 2nd Lieut. A. Skuse, Captain O. Royal-Dawson, Captain R. J. Vyner, 2nd Lieut. Onslow Ford.

INFANTRY DRAFTS DESPATCHED FROM THE DEPÔT, COWLEY BARRACKS, TO RESERVE BATTALIONS OF THE REGIMENT AND TO OTHER CORPS.

Month.	3rd Battalion.	9th Battalion.	3/4th (T.F.) Battalion.[1]	Command Depôt.[2]	Other Corps.[1]	Totals.
1915.						
August	241	44	—	—	—	285
September ...	84	76	—	—	—	160
October	102	97	—	—	—	199
November ...	140	258	—	22	—	420
December ...	62	40	—	63	—	165
1916						
January	383	109	—	33	145	670
February... ...	121	201	—	—	182	504
March	64	34	310	—	471	879
April	122	62	—	—	333	517
May	57	75	25	17	228	402
June	392	313	91	—	545	1,341
Total ...	1,768	1,309	426	135	1,904	5,542

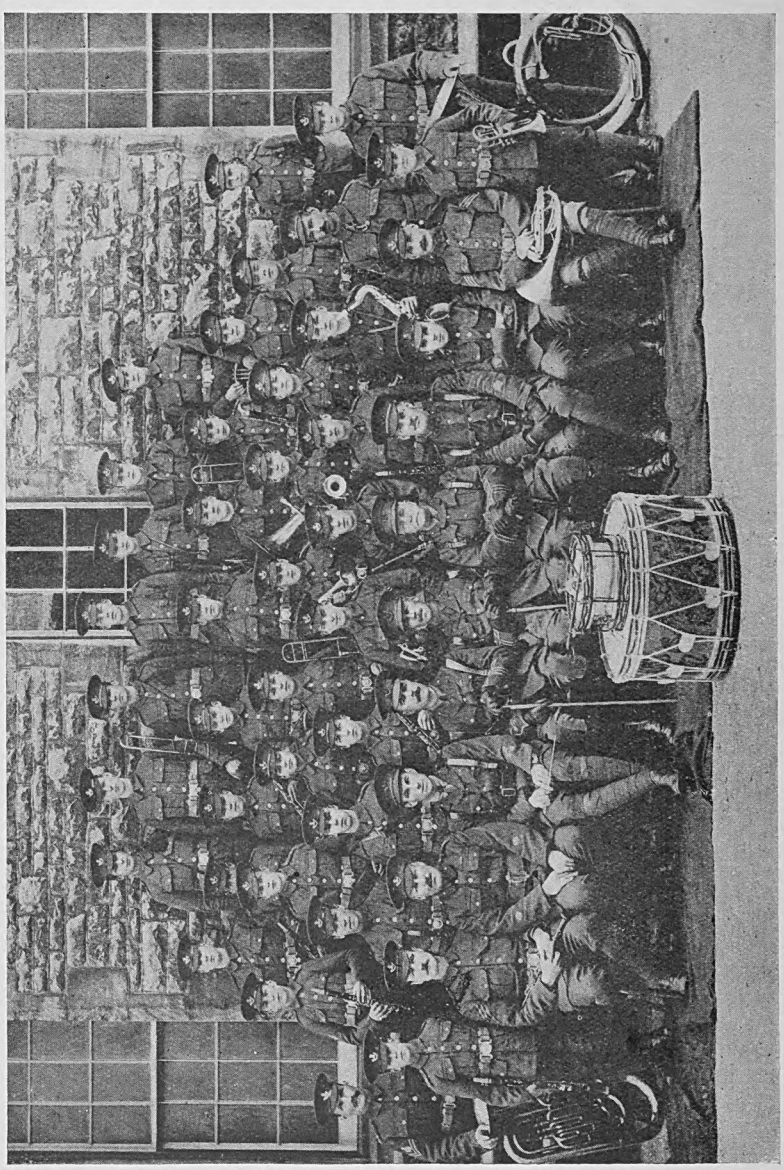
[1] Resulting from the passing of the Military Service Act, 1916 (Compulsory Service).

[2] The Command Depôt at Sutton Coldfield received wounded and invalids for further medical treatment.

NOTE.—The 3rd (Reserve) Battalion trained and prepared drafts for the 1st and 2nd Battalions. The 9th (2nd Reserve) Battalion performed the same duties for the 5th, 6th, 7th, and 8th Service Battalions.

The Depôt was therefore required to provide men for these two Reserve Battalions. Later, when Compulsory Service was introduced, it was called upon to draft the new recruits (according to their categories) to Garrison, Labour, or T.F. Battalions of various regiments, as well as to the 3/4th (T.F.) Battalion of the Regiment, that battalion being the reserve, or feeder, of the 1/4th and 2/4th Battalions (T.F.).

Digitized by Google



THE BAND OF THE 1ST BATTALION AT THE DEPÔT.

Digitized by Google

THE

TERRITORIAL FORCE BATTALIONS

OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY

1st August 1915 to 30th June 1916

Digitized by Google

THE TERRITORIAL FORCE BATTALIONS.

RECORD OF THE 1/4TH BATTALION.
1st AUGUST 1915 to 30th JUNE 1916.

(*See Maps* 6 *and* 7.)

THE Battalion, forming part of the 145th Infantry Brigade, of the 48th Division, spent the greater part of this period in the Hebuterne trenches, losing a few officers and men, having a somewhat arduous time, but without being seriously engaged with the enemy. The Battalion was commanded first by Lieut.-Colonel Dugmore, D.S.O., then by Lieut.-Colonel R. L. Ovey, D.S.O. (late 2nd Battalion), and later by Lieut.-Colonel A. J. N. Bartlett (2nd Battalion).

REGIMENTAL DIARY.

August 1st, 1915.—(Hebuterne.) Two companies in trenches. Informed that the Battalion will remain in trenches for 8 days. The French report important enemy movement southwards from Lens. A good deal of shelling during the morning and afternoon.

Casualties.—4 men wounded.

August 2nd.—Enemy fired a few shells in the morning, otherwise very quiet day, due, possibly, to the fact that our artillery were registering all day.

In the afternoon a severe thunderstorm made the trenches in a dreadful state. Very wet night.

August 3rd–4th.—Two wet days. Condition of trenches awful.

August 5th.—Fine—a drying day. Relieved by the 4th R. Berks. Some shelling during the afternoon round the Brickery and outskirts of the village. A man of C Company (Loveday) was wounded in the Brickery whilst on fatigue. He finished his job, and then going to his Platoon Commander, said : "I think they have hit me." The blood was streaming from his arm, an artery having been cut.

Digitized by Google

August 6th.—(In billets at Sailly.) Wet. Baths and inspections. Five shells fell in the village in the afternoon, 3 of which did not explode. They were found to be French shells (about 4.6-inch), and are supposed to have been taken at Maubeuge.

August 8th.—Yesterday was wet; to-day fine; 16 shells into the village; 5 men of the Machine-gun Section were wounded.

August 9th.—(Sailly-au-Bois.) Working-parties on communication trenches and hurdle-making. Major Rowell went to hospital, and Lieut. Deacon to the Divisional Salvage Corps.

August 13th.—Into the trenches, in relief of the 4th R. Berks. C and D Companies in trenches; A and B in local reserve.

August 14th.—A certain amount of shelling.

August 15th.—Wet and stormy. Enemy quiet. Extended our line, taking in trench Morant.

August 16th.—Fine. Much shelling. Lieut. Deacon returned from Divisional Salvage Corps.

Casualties.—4 men wounded.

August 17th.—D Company's trenches suffered a good deal from shells; parapet in Morant knocked in. Very wet; 1 man wounded.

August 18th.—Very wet. Trenches full of water.

August 19th.—Fine and dry. Cleaning up the trenches. Enemy's artillery active.

August 21st.—Yesterday and to-day a little shelling of the village and trenches. Relieved by 4th R. Berks.

2nd Lieuts. Doyne and Bridges joined the Battalion for duty.

August 22nd.—(Hebuterne.) The Battalion furnishing working parties. The village shelled slightly with shrapnel; 1 man wounded.

August 24th–30th.—Into trenches 32 to 34.

August 31st.—Battalion took over more trenches from the 5th Glosters. Three companies in trenches 24 to 32. A great deal of work required on them; 1 man wounded.

September 1st.—(Hebuterne trenches, G Section.) Enemy's artillery showing activity.

September 2nd.—One company of the 11th R. Warwicks took over C Company's trenches for 48 hours (instruction).

September 3rd–4th.—Quiet, but wet. Trenches falling in.

Digitized by Google

September 5th.—Between 2 and 3 p.m. the Battalion was relieved by the 7th Worcesters (144th Brigade), after handing over trenches 24 and 25 to the 8th Worcesters in the morning. Went into billets at Courcelles.

September 6th-16th.—In billets at Courcelles.

September 17th.—The Battalion relieved the 7th Worcesters in G Section, Hebuterne trenches; C Company on the left, B on the right, D in local reserve, A in reserve.

September 18th.—A fairly quiet day, but the enemy dropped 2 "Little Willies" into trenches 31 and 32, one officer and 3 men of the 8th Shropshire (attached for instruction) being wounded.

September 19th.—Quiet day. Six 5.9-inch shells fell between Brisoux and Bouvart, but no damage done.

September 20th–23rd.—A certain amount of shelling by both sides.

September 24th.—Wire-cutting by our guns, which also shelled enemy's trenches. Two platoons of the 5th R. Sussex relieved two of ours in the fire-trenches.

Casualties.—6 men wounded, one of whom subsequently died in hospital.

September 25th-26th.—Our artillery still busy wire-cutting; enemy retaliating on our trenches, but doing little damage. We have been warned to be prepared to deliver an attack.

September 27th.—Informed that the attack is indefinitely postponed. The two Sussex platoons were relieved by two of ours. Heavy rain.

September 28th.—Cold and wet. Sent out a patrol at night to discover if enemy were holding their front-line trenches; if not, we are to get into them at once. Patrol reports that there were signs of a full garrison; Germans were heard working and laughing on the front parapet. The patrol was fired on and bombed. The 5th Glosters sent out a similar patrol, and lost an officer and 2 men. Received news that the French to our south and the British to our north are making good progress.

September 29th.—The enemy searched for machine-gun position with 30 "Willies" on trenches 31 and 32. No damage. The Battalion was relieved by the 7th Worcesters, and returned to billets in Courcelles.

Digitized by Google

September 30th—October 7th.—(At Courcelles.) Providing working parties on defences, and training.

October 8th.—A reinforcement of 25 men arrived.

October 11th.—Back to the trenches, in relief of the 7th Worcesters. A great deal of work to be done.

October 12th.—Information received that a tour of trench duty will in future be 8 days instead of 12. Leave reopened for officers and men. Enemy very quiet, evidently preparing for winter. A company of the 10th R. Irish Rifles came into the trenches for instruction; 1 man wounded.

October 13th.—Enemy fired a few shells and rifle-grenades. Weather fine.

October 14th.—Enemy more aggressive, with shells, rifle-grenades, *Minenwerfer*, and machine-guns. We retaliated.

October 15th.—We tried a new spring bomb-gun with a certain amount of success. About 5.15 p.m. the enemy suddenly put a stream of "Little Willies" and one or two heavier shells into and around trenches 31 and 32, probably looking for our bomb-gun emplacement. No damage done. Work in the trenches progressing slowly, owing to lack of material. A railway is being built from Fonquevillers through Hebuterne and down Vereingetorix trench.

October 16th.—The mornings are now very misty, which gives us the opportunity of improving the wire in front of our trenches. A certain amount of artillery and trench-mortar fire in the afternoon, and in the evening German machine-guns were active. D Company, 10th R. Irish Rifles, came in as a company for instruction for the last time. 2nd Lieut. Fortescue is detailed for a sniping course, to commence to-morrow.

October 17th.—Quiet day. In the afternoon our 6-inch howitzers fired on enemy's first-line trenches with fairly good results. The Germans shelled Sailly heavily and killed several men of different regiments.

October 18th.—Still in G Section, Hebuterne Trenches. In the morning the enemy put a number of 5.9-inch shells on our front-line trenches, doing a certain amount of material damage, though there were no casualties. At 3.25 p.m. our guns of all calibres, assisted by the 8th Squadron Royal Flying Corps, demonstrated on the enemy's trenches. This enterprise was, however, forestalled by

Digitized by Google

the Germans, who suddenly opened a heavy bombardment on our front trenches on the right, trench 31 coming in for nearly all their shells. The bombardment opened at 1.30 p.m., and went on until about 5 p.m., the Germans using 8.2-inch shells, of which we have hitherto had no experience. Trench 31 was almost flattened out, and looked like a ploughed field; all the dug-outs being practically destroyed. Our casualties were Captain J. N. TREBLE and 2 other ranks killed. One man became demented and had to be removed. This was the worst shelling that we have experienced.

In the evening all reserves and supports moved up into the first-line trenches in case of attack. At about 6 p.m. the enemy put over 6 *Minenwerfer*, otherwise the night was quiet. One man was killed while on patrol. We repaired our damaged trench as far as possible, with the assistance of the R.E. from the Brigade, and the enemy made no attempt to molest us.

October 19th.—The Battalion was relieved by the 7th Worcesters, and marched back into billets at Courcelles by 6.25 p.m.

October 20th–24th.—(In billets at Courcelles.) Training, fatigues, bathing, and general cleaning up.

October 25th.—The Battalion was chosen to represent the 48th Division at the inspection by H.M. King George V and President Poincaré. Marched to Acheux, where the inspection took place. On parade, besides ourselves, were the 10th Infantry Brigade (4th Division), a Brigade of Artillery, and a Battalion of the 37th Division. The men paraded in overcoats and looked very smart. They stood very steadily in the ranks, in spite of intense cold and wet. Marched back to billets at Courcelles at 4.30 p.m.

October 27th.—The Battalion relieved the 7th Worcesters in G Section trenches. Two companies in the firing line, one company in Battalion Reserve, and one in Brigade Reserve. A company of the 10th R. Inniskilling Fusiliers attached for 7 days' trench instruction.

October 28th.—Very cold and pouring with rain. A little firing in the evening. The rain is playing havoc with the trenches; certain parts of Jean Bart fell in during the night, but we managed to clear it up.

October 29th.—Cold, but fairly fine. Bombardment carried out by all calibres on enemy's first- and second-line trenches, commencing at 3.10 p.m., and lasting for about an hour. The heavies made very good shooting, and bits of timber were seen to fly into the air.

Digitized by Google

Enemy's reply weak; about 24 "Little Willies" and a few 5.9 shells falling most on trench 31. No damage done, and no casualties.

October 30th.—Rather warmer. Quiet morning. Generals Fanshawe and Lambton visited the trenches. Work on trenches generally progressing, but Jean Bart is a very difficult task, as all the sides are falling in from the wet weather.

October 31st.—Wet again, and very cold. Intermittent shelling on both sides morning and afternoon. Trenches in a terrible condition, and full of mud and water.

November 1st.—Rained all day. Fairly quiet; only a few shells on Jean Bart.

November 2nd.—Pouring with rain; the wettest day we have had. Enemy quiet.

November 3rd.—Still raining. State of the trenches appalling.

November 4th.—Relieved by the 7th Worcesters, the enemy shelling the communication trenches during the relief. Returned to billets in Courcelles.

November 5th.—Cleaning up, and having baths at Sailly.

November 6th.—Major Ballard, Adjutant of the Battalion, left for England, to take up the command of a Service Battalion.

November 7th–11th.—In billets at Courcelles, furnishing working parties on Corps Line, and training when weather permitted.

November 12th.—Into the same trenches again. Heavy rain. Trenches in a fearful condition, some quite impassable. All dug-outs flooded or leaking.

November 13th.—Enemy very quiet all day, probably, like ourselves, busy repairing trenches. Most of our time was devoted to clearing communication trenches, which had become impassable.

November 14th.—Matters improving; weather fine, but colder, and trenches in better condition. Enemy more active with shells and machine-guns.

November 15th.—Snow in early morning, afterwards fine and clear. Busy at work on the trenches. Artillery on both sides fairly active.

November 16th.—Wintry weather. More snow. A little shelling, but otherwise quiet. D Company, 13th Battalion, R. Irish Rifles, came in for instruction.

T

Digitized by Google

November 17th.—Hard frost. All available men still repairing and cleaning up the trenches, working day and night in four-hour shifts.

November 18th.—Enemy's attitude distinctly peaceful, though he sent a few shells over during the day.

November 19th.—Some shelling. Still at work repairing and revetting the trenches.

November 20th.—Returned to billets in Courcelles in the morning, on relief by the 7th Worcesters.

November 21st–26th.—In billets in Courcelles.

November 27th.—Lieut.-Colonel Dugmore, D.S.O., commanding the Battalion, went to the 2nd S.M. Field Ambulance at Louvencourt.

November 28th.—The Battalion relieved the 7th Worcesters in the trenches, as before. Everything frozen hard and dry. Major R. L. Ovey returned from the Brigade Bombing School to take over the command of the Battalion. D Company, 20th Manchesters, attached for instruction.

November 29th.—Thaw and rain. Trenches in a hopeless condition, with 3 or 4 feet of water in some parts, walls and revetments falling in. Every available man clearing, pumping, bailing, etc., day and night. Enemy fairly quiet.

November 30th.—Finer weather, but trenches showing no improvement.

December 1st.—Trench walls falling in everywhere, and trenches filling with water. Parts of the communication trenches impassable. A few shells.

December 2nd.—Rain again. It seems absolutely impossible to keep the trenches in repair. We have eight miles to look after. During the company reliefs to-day two men sank into the trench and had to be dug out. In spite of all their troubles the men are wonderfully cheerful.

December 3rd.—Conditions worse. We are quite unable to cope with the work. A dug-out collapsed in Papin, killing 4 men and injuring 2 others. Several other dug-outs collapsed, but, fortunately, they were unoccupied at the time. As the communication

Digitized by Google

trenches are blocked in places, the men have to move in the open in daylight, but the general opinion is that it is no worse to be shot than to be drowned in slush or buried alive. During the afternoon there was reciprocal artillery fire.

December 4th.—More rain. The same arduous task in the trenches. We now have two complete companies in Hebuterne village. Enemy's machine-guns more active, with the usual amount of shelling, but no casualties.

December 5th.—At last a fine clear morning. Some artillery fire on both sides, our gunners firing off the surplus of their week's shell ration. We were able to make some headway with the clearing of the communication trenches to-day.

December 6th.—Another wet day. Relieved by the 7th Worcesters under the most trying circumstances, the relief taking practically the whole night. Into billets at Courcelles.

December 7th–13th.—In billets at Courcelles. Resting, cleaning up, and furnishing working parties. Weather finer and colder.

December 14th.—Back to the same trenches, whose condition we found even worse than before. Weather fine and frosty.

Brigadier-General Done, D.S.O., took over command of the 145th Brigade, *vice* Brigadier-General McClintock, to hospital.

December 15th.—The usual routine of work. We are holding the right section (G) of the Divisional Front, with the 5th Glosters (of our Brigade) on our left, and the 4th Division on our right.

December 16th.—Fine morning, but foggy all day, so we were able to move about on the top. Heavy rain at night. Enemy quiet. Major Rowell to hospital.

December 17th–18th.—Still foggy. D Company, 18th Liverpools, came in for instruction, one of their platoons attached to each of our companies.

December 19th.—Fine and clear. Aeroplanes active. A reinforcement of 25 other ranks arrived from Poperinghe.

December 20th–21st.—Quiet days, except for bombardment by our artillery.

December 22nd.—Relieved by the 7th Worcesters, and went back into billets at Courcelles.

Digitized by Google

December 23rd.—Cleaning up, inspections, baths.

December 24th.—All the men's clothes were disinfected by the Threash machine. In the evening there was a concert—carols and the Divisional Band.

December 25th.—Christmas Day. The Battalion was exempted from all fatigues, and the morning was spent in playing off a football tournament (teams of six). C Company and the Machine-gun Section were in the final, which was played out in the afternoon, the latter winning. The men had an excellent Christmas dinner, and the enemy left us alone.

December 26th–27th.—The usual Corps Line fatigues.

December 28th.—The Battalion relieved the 7th Worcesters in the trenches. The enemy's aeroplanes very active during the morning, with the result that the Germans shelled the roads and paths during our relief; but we succeeded in getting all in by 7 p.m. without casualties. Under the new system we have 2 companies in fire-trenches and supports, with the other two companies supplying reserves and working parties.

At 10 p.m. Lieut. P. D. DOYNE and one man, who had gone out to inspect the wire, were reported missing. The man returned, but reported that he had missed Lieut. Doyne. Another patrol, under Captain Jones, immediately went out, and returned some two hours later with the officer's body, which they found in a shell-hole. He had evidently been killed (shot through the head) by a bullet from a German machine-gun, which had opened fire on the spot where he was found.

December 29th.—Enemy artillery very active all day, responded to by ours. Their aeroplanes also over morning and afternoon, and their machine-guns and snipers were busier than usual. A man of A Company was mortally wounded.

December 31st.—Artillery bombardment as per programme. The enemy replied and caused us 6 casualties in trench 31. Shelling from both sides continued intermittently all day. At 10.55 p.m. the Germans opened rapid fire with machine-guns and rifles, at the same time putting up a lot of flares and rockets. This soon subsided, and it was probably done to usher in the New Year, German time being 1 hour 5 minutes in advance of ours.

Casualties.—3 men killed and 4 wounded.

Digitized by Google

ROLL OF OFFICERS SERVING WITH THE 1/4TH BATTALION IN FRANCE, 31ST DECEMBER 1915.

In Temporary Command : Major R. L. OVEY.

Acting Second in Command : Captain J. J. CONYBEARE.

Adjutant : Captain I. E. GRIFFIN.

Captains : E. W. R. HADDEN, F. B. JONES, P. PICKFORD, G. K. ROSE.

Lieutenants : H. A. WILSDON, B. B. B. BROOKS, A. K. GIBSON.

2nd Lieutenants : M. C. COOPER, G. H. GREENWELL, C. R. MASON, C. C. CRAIG, R. ST. G. LAKE, M. C. RICHARDSON, M. W. EDMUNDS, H. L. JUDSON, J. E. BLAKE, J. S. C. KING, J. H. EARLY, T. R. FORTESCUE.

Quartermaster : Major A. A. BRIDGEWATER.

Medical Officer (R.A.M.C.) : Major J. O. SUMMERHAYES.

1916.

January 1st.—The Battalion still in Hebuterne trenches, G Section. Quiet. Weather showery.

January 2nd.—Usual amount of artillery activity on both sides ; 1 man wounded.

January 3rd.—A considerable amount of shelling. We were relieved by the 7th Worcesters, and returned to billets at Courcelles.

January 4th–6th.—(At Courcelles.) Very wet. Fatigues, hurdle-making, Tube Helmet drill, wire cutting, section control, etc.

January 7th.—The Divisional Band played in the afternoon. A British aeroplane was driven down close to Courcelles, after a fight with 2 German planes. His engine had stopped while still over the German lines, having been damaged by bullets, but he managed to get back unhurt, though the aeroplane came to grief on landing. We gave the airman lunch at our mess. The Battalion gave a concert in the School of Instruction.

January 8th.—Company drill and Tube Helmet practice. Also a lecture on First Aid by the M.O. We played the Divisional Supply Column in the Competition for the Fanshawe Association Football Cup, and were defeated (by 6 goals to 1) by a far better team. Our men had only played together once before. The D.S. Column gave two Cinema Shows in the School of Instruction in the evening—both well attended and much appreciated.

Digitized by Google

January 9th.—Back to the trenches, in relief of the 7th Worcesters.

January 11th.—The enemy fired a large number of rifle-grenades at the trenches on the right sector, and at night a few *Minenwerfer*. Our artillery replied on their front and support lines. We had a lance-sergeant slightly wounded.

January 12th.—A quiet day in the front line, but a shell fell in one of the billets in Hebuterne and exploded inside the upper room of the Mairie, killing 1 man and wounding 4. One of our men was blown out of the window into the yard below, but was not hurt.

January 13th.—Organized bombardment by our artillery all along the Corps Line. Very high wind, and raining at times. There was no reply from the Germans other than with rifle-grenades, bombs, and small *Minenwerfer* on the right sector. These are becoming a decided nuisance.

January 14th.—The following were in yesterday's *Gazette* :—

Distinguished Service Order.—Major R. L. OVEY.
Military Cross.—Captain P. PICKFORD.
Captain B. LONG (Brigade M.G.)
Captain G. K. ROSE.
Distinguished Conduct Medal.—2nd Lieut. J. S. C. KING (as Sergeant).
No. 2470 Private L. H. SENIOR.

January 15th.—Relieved by the 7th Worcesters, and returned to billets at Courcelles.

January 16th–20th.—(At Courcelles.) Company training, etc.

January 21st.—We took over a new section (K) of trenches from the 6th Glosters, the Bucks Battalion changing round with us and relieving the 7th Worcesters in G Section. Relief completed without casualty by 2.30 p.m. A Company on the right, B on the left, C in Local Reserve in the village, D in Brigade Reserve in the Keep. On our right are the 4th R. Berks, of our Brigade; and on the left the 143rd Brigade (Warwicks).

January 22nd–23rd.—Some shelling on both sides, and a few *Minenwerfer* came over.

January 24th.—In the morning nine enemy areoplanes passed over Hebuterne, evidently on a bombing expedition. Artillery active. Weather bright and fine.

Digitized by Google

January 25*th*.—At about 2 a.m. the enemy started a heavy bombardment, with various shells and *Minenwerfer*, on the Warwicks on our left. This continued for nearly an hour, and caused some alarm. The enemy, apparently, sent over a small party, who got into the Warwicks' trench. They left some unexploded bombs behind them, but did no damage, and caused no casualties. Our artillery replied vigorously, and by about 2.50 a.m. all was quiet again.

January 27*th*.—Relieved by 6th Glosters, and moved back into billets at Courcelles. In the evening there was a gas alarm, but subsequently it was found to be false.

January 28*th*-29*th*.—Several gas alarms on these two days; but, as before, they were false.

January 30*th*—*February* 1*st*.—(At Courcelles.) Training, fatigues, baths, and football matches.

February 2*nd*.—Into K Section trenches again, in relief of the 6th Glosters.

February 3*rd*.—Major R. L. Ovey, D.S.O., in command of the Battalion, gazetted temp. Lieut.-Colonel.

February 4*th*–7*th*.—Trench mortar bombs and a good many shells came over, and our Trench Mortar Battery replied.

February 8*th*.—From 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. the enemy put up a heavy bombardment on the trenches and the upper end of the village, using 77-m.m., 5.9, and shells of larger size. Considering the number of shells that fell, very little damage was done. The Keep suffered most damage.

Casualties.—3 men wounded.

February 9*th*.—Again the enemy's artillery fire was intense, and it was estimated that some 3,000 shells of various sizes fell on the trenches and village. The damage was quite immaterial. The enemy appears to have moved up more guns on to this front. The village is getting a very unhealthy place to live in.

February 10*th*.—Another day of heavy shelling, but rather less incessant, though occasionally there were bursts of very intense fire. No casualties, and very little damage. One fuse, which was dug up yesterday, proved to be of Belgian manufacture, bearing the letters "E. P."

Digitized by Google

February 11*th.*—Hostile artillery again active. About 1 p.m. a shell hit the roof of the gateway into Regimental H.Q., where Captain Griffin (Acting Adjutant) and Sergeant-Major Pearce happened to be standing. The latter was struck on the head by a piece of shell and killed; the former received severe wounds on the right arm and thigh.

During the afternoon a 5.9" howitzer shell burst in a long dug-out behind McDonald trench (10), where over 20 men of a working party were sheltering. Fortunately only one man was injured by falling timber.

Casualties.—Sergeant-Major S. J. Pearce killed; Captain Griffin and 1 man wounded.

February 12*th.*—Enemy's artillery not so active to-day, but still plenty of shells. Our guns shelled a spot where work was in progress, and stopped it.

February 13*th.*—Less shelling. During the morning the enemy fired a number of shells from a low trajectory gun; a part of each shell fell as a "dud," whilst another part burst with heavy explosion about 40 feet in the air. A few "Little Willies" came over in the afternoon, which was otherwise quiet.

February 14*th.*—Our artillery carried out a combined bombardment at various times during the day, paying particular attention to Gommecourt Wood. The enemy did not reply.

February 15*th.*—Owing to heavy rain during the night the trenches got into a very bad state. Worked on them all day. Enemy's artillery quiet.

February 16*th.*—Another wet night and morning. Trenches bad, and much work on them. Enemy still extraordinarily quiet.

February 17*th.*—At 10.15 a.m. a 4.2-inch shell entered Bucquoy House, which, however, was empty at the time. Otherwise the enemy was quiet during the day. The weather finer, and the trenches improving.

February 18*th.*—Between 1.30 a.m. and 2.10 a.m. the enemy shelled the Warwicks very heavily, and our guns replied. By 3 a.m. all was quiet, but at 3.30 a.m. our people opened again, and shelled behind the enemy's lines for about half an hour. It rained all day, necessitating continuous clearing and pumping.

Digitized by Google

February 19*th*–29*th*.—Still in K Section, Hebuterne trenches.

The weather was generally bad, with rain and snow and consequent mud and slush. On most days the enemy shelled parts of the line, and our guns replied. The Battalion had only one man wounded. The value of the Shrapnel Helmet was proved on the 23rd, when a man's helmet was twice hit by bullets from a machine-gun. The helmet was merely scratched and the man quite unhurt. One of the bullets would certainly have killed him if he had not been wearing the helmet.

March 1*st*.—Quiet day. Our machine-guns fired intermittently from 2.30 to 6.30 p.m. Trenches slightly improved, but still rather muddy.

March 2*nd*.—By working continuously day and night we have now got all the trenches, except Eblie, open.

Lieut.-Colonel R. L. Ovey, D.S.O., returned from leave and resumed the command of the Battalion, which, in his absence, had been commanded by Captain Conybeare.

March 3*rd*.—Still quiet. Trenches improving greatly, but the improvement did not last long, as snow fell all night, and made them as bad as ever.

March 4*th*.—Continuous snow, thawing as it fell. Trenches full of water, and falling in.

March 5*th*.—Weather finer. Aeroplanes active. The enemy put a few shells into Sailly, and 24 fell round our right fire and support trenches, but 11 of them were "duds." One ricocheted and landed on the Medical Room, passing through the roof, and lying unexploded on the ceiling.

March 6*th*.—Much the same as yesterday, the enemy shelling the village and our trenches, but without doing any damage. He also turned machine-guns on to the village at intervals. Several "duds" again.

March 7*th*.—Enemy quiet. A lot of work opening up communication trenches, etc.

March 8*th*.—Weather gloriously fine. Some aerial activity.

Persistent hostile artillery fire on the village. Shells fell near Regimental H.Q. One entered the roof of the Orderly Room, detonating on the ceiling, but the damage was remarkably slight, and there were no casualties. This long spell in the trenches is beginning to tell on the men; the sick lists grow longer every day; but all ranks are sticking it well.

Digitized by Google

March 9th.—The village again treated to artillery and machine-gun fire intermittently all day.

March 10th.—2nd Lieut. C. Lakin joined the Battalion for duty.

March 11th.—The enemy put several shells round about the Fonquevillers Road, but did no damage.

The following 2nd Lieuts. joined the Battalion for duty: G. M. Frieake, G. M. Rawlinson, T. D. Hughes, and C. H. Powell.

March 12th.—Our machine-guns carried out a "strafe" at night; the enemy made no reply.

March 13th.—A welcome change in the weather—perfect, fine, sunny day. Considerable aeroplane activity. One of our aeroplanes was brought down near Serre.

2nd Lieut. E. E. Bridges took over the duties of Acting Adjutant of the Battalion.

C and D Companies relieved A and B in the fire-trenches.

March 14th.—Another very fine day. Many aeroplanes up; 7 German observation balloons could be seen from our trenches.

March 15th.—Quiet, but in the late afternoon the enemy fired several salvoes into the village, round the pond.

March 16th.—More salvoes on the village. We had two men wounded by shrapnel.

March 17th.—Afternoon shelling, as usual. One man in C Company injured.

March 18th.—A good deal of shelling all day. The enemy seems to have brought up new batteries.

2nd Lieut. E. E. Smith arrived with a draft of 27 other ranks.

March 19th.—At 2 a.m. an intense bombardment opened on our right, on G Sector and farther south. The battalion on our right was also shelled considerably. A good many shells fell near Alesia Street, where a direct hit was obtained on the Signallers' dug-out. "Minnies" were also fired behind the Calvaire, and shrapnel over the barricade on the Fonquevillers Road. The Battalion "Stood-to" and manned the alarm-posts in very good style. The gas alarm was passed along to the Battalion, probably owing to the use of lachrymatory shells elsewhere, for there was no wind. The bombardment died down about 3 a.m. The enemy appears to have succeeded in entering the trenches held by the 1/6th Glosters, but were unable to carry off a prisoner, and probably lost heavily. They left one of their party a prisoner in our line.

Digitized by Google

March 21*st.*—Dispositions altered, our left company fire-trench being taken over by a company of the 5th R. Sussex, having their battalion H.Q. in the Keep. We now have one company in the fire-trench, one in Battalion Reserve, one in the Keep, and one in Bayencourt, resting. This is the first time since the beginning of February that we have had a company in rest.

A draft of 63 other ranks arrived.

March 22*nd.*—Fairly quiet day; 1 man wounded.

Two officers and 8 N.C.O.'s of the 18th West Yorks attached to the Battalion for four days.

March 23*rd.*—About 12.30 a.m. raids on enemy trenches were attempted by two battalions of the Warwick Brigade on our left, and by the 5th Glosters on our right. The 5th Warwicks and 5th Glosters were unable to get through the wire, as a quite insufficient time had been allotted in the pre-arranged scheme. The 8th Warwicks, however, succeeded in getting in and taking a prisoner.

The Battalion was ordered to "Stand-to" from 12.15 to about 2.30 a.m. About 2.50 a.m. there was a very severe burst of enemy artillery fire, especially along the Fonquevillers Road. As the men had been ordered to stand down, they had left their cellars, and some casualties occurred—1 man killed and 2 men wounded.

March 24*th.*—Bad weather again; snow in the early morning.

A draft of 32 other ranks arrived.

March 25*th.*—Companies changed round—C to the fire-trench, B in the Keep, A in Battalion Reserve, D to rest at Bayencourt.

March 26*th.*—Quiet day and better weather. A man in B Company was wounded in the head by a stray bullet near the pond.

March 27*th.*—2 officers and 8 other ranks of the 13th York and Lancasters were attached to the Battalion for instruction.

Much rain in the afternoon.

2nd Lieut. F. E. Jones joined the Battalion for duty.

March 28*th*—*April* 1*st.*—Still in the same trenches, companies relieving one another every fourth day. Weather fine.

April 2*nd.*—A new system of holding the Brigade front was introduced. We now have two companies in the fire-trenches, and none in rest; 1 man wounded.

April 3*rd.*—Several shells (including some 15-cm. H.E. shrapnel) fell on our right company trenches; 2 sergeants and 2 men were wounded.

Digitized by Google

April 4th.—Fairly quiet day. No moon, and night very dark, consequently there was a cessation of patrolling, which had been very energetically carried out for the last week or so.

April 5th.—The *Minenwerfer* in Gommecourt Park, which had not fired south of the Calvaire for a considerable time, reappeared in the German second-line trench on the side of the wood facing us, and fired on the trenches to our left, held by the 5th R. Sussex. The light, long-range trench mortar, which had worried us early in February, also reappeared, and fired a few rounds on our trenches near the Gommecourt Road and farther south.

April 8th.—The Battalion was relieved in the trenches by the 1st Bucks Battalion in the morning, and marched, viâ Jena corduroy track, to Sailly, and thence to Bayencourt, where the Bucks billets were taken over by 1 p.m. A draft of 2 other ranks arrived.

April 9th.—In billets in Bayencourt. The men rested all day, preparatory to an all-night fatigue. The 145th Brigade dug a new trench about 400 yards in front of the present front line from K.16.b.80 to K.10.d.54, the 5th Glosters and ourselves digging, while the 1st Bucks and 4th Berks provided the covering party. The men worked splendidly throughout the night, and completed everything by 4.30 a.m. (10th). The G.O.C. the Division congratulated the Brigade on the excellence of the work, and granted each battalion one extra leave. During the work the Battalion had 1 man killed and 7 men wounded.

April 10th.—Rested during the morning, and played football in the afternoon.

April 11th–13th.—Three wet days. No training possible

April 14th.—Route March. The Battalion was praised by the G.O.C. 48th Division for its smart turn-out and good marching.

In the evening there was a boxing contest, which was a great success, and brought out quite a number of boxers.

A draft of 20 other ranks arrived.

April 15th.—Company Training in the morning. Football and Divisional Band in the afternoon. A performance by the "Varlets" in the evening.

Sergeant S. Smith, B Company, was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, and posted to D Company.

Captain Conybeare left for England, to resume medical studies, and Captain Hadden became Second in Command.

Digitized by Google

April 16*th*.—Returned to K Section Hebuterne trenches, in relief of the 1st Bucks. Relief complete by 10.15 a.m. The Battalion also took over trenches previously held by the R. Sussex. We now hold trenches K.10.4 (Bataille) to K.32 (Barat), both inclusive.

April 17*th*.—Quiet day, but wet. From 10.45 to midnight there was some firing.

April 18*th*.—Bad weather. Between 9 and 10 p.m. the enemy shelled the new trench east of Hebuterne, and our artillery retaliated.

April 19*th*.—Another wet day. Endless cleaning up of trenches and pumping out water. One man wounded.

April 20*th*.—Still wet. One man wounded.

April 21*st*.—Good Friday. Weather atrocious. The Bucks Battalion, who relieved us last time, have now gone into G Sector, on the right of the Brigade front.

April 22*nd*.—The fifth wet day in succession. A certain amount of artillery activity. About 3.45 p.m. A Company had a post knocked out, it is believed by a 4.2 howitzer shell; 5 men were wounded, 2 of them seriously. A transport man in the Keep was also wounded (by shrapnel). A good deal of night shelling. The enemy is evidently determined to have his revenge for the new trench, dug on the 9th.

April 23*rd*.—At last the weather has improved. Artillery active on both sides, culminating in a very nasty and intense *Strafe* by the enemy at about 4.15 p.m., especially on our left company. Trench K.31 (Barat) was very badly knocked in by a "Minnie," and a dug-out in Calvaire, with 4 men in it, was hit by a 15-cm. shell, and the men imprisoned, but they were able to make their way out.

April 24*th*.—Splendid weather. At 11 a.m. *Minenwerfer* on our left company. Trench mortars again fired on trenches round Gommecourt Road, knocking trench 91 (Narbut) about rather badly. About midnight two bursts of very intense artillery fire on the battalion on our right, and just on our right trenches.

April 25*th*.—Relieved by the 1/5th Glosters about 11 a.m., and returned to billets at Bayencourt, but could not get into them until 3 p.m., as the 1/7th Worcesters were in occupation until then. The men had their dinners in an orchard, which, in fine weather, was quite enjoyable.

Digitized by Google

April 26th.—(In billets at Bayencourt.) At 5.40 a.m. the enemy started shelling our 60-pr. battery on the Sailly-Bayencourt Road, and put over 110 5.9-inch howitzer shells in about an hour. One shell scored a direct hit on a limber full of cartridges, which produced a flare about 20 feet high.

The Battalion passed a quiet day, chiefly occupied with inspections of kits, etc. In the afternoon the C.O., Adjutant, and 2 Company Commanders attended the G.O.C.'s instructional conference in the neighbourhood of Couin.

An Officer's riding school was started.

Performance by the "Curios" in the evening, and the Divisional Band played in the village from 2 to 4 p.m.

April 27th.—Another fine and warm day. B Company provided a working party of 100 men for burying cable at Sailly. Company Scouts commenced training under 2nd Lieut. King. About 50 men were inoculated.

In the evening the "Orphals" gave a very excellent performance.

April 28th.—Perfect weather. Baths and Company training.

A draft of 20 men, under the command of Captain E. C. Fortescue, joined the Battalion. Captain Fortescue, who rejoined after an absence of about seven months, took over command of D Company.

April 29th.—In the morning the Battalion took part in a field-day, with the 1/5th Glosters, between Sailly and Couin. It was not a great success, probably owing to the Battalion having had such a long spell in the trenches and being stale.

At 6 p.m. there was a performance by the "Varlets," but it was cut short by an order for every one to be in billets by 7 p.m. It was reported that the enemy had cut some wire on the Puisieux Road, and had damaged the Calvaire trench very badly. During the night there was a heavy bombardment to the south, and a raid was attempted on the 29th Division.

April 30th.—Sunday. No work. There was a very well-attended Church Service (voluntary) in the Recreation-room.

2nd Lieut. Affleck joined the Battalion, and was posted to B Company.

The weather still perfect, except for a thunderstorm in the afternoon.

May 1st.—(In billets at Bayencourt). Glorious weather. The Battalion repeated the field-day held on the 29th of last month, the officers going over the ground first, and the exercise

Digitized by Google

being carried out with far greater success than on the previous occasion.

It had been understood that the Battalion would be out of the trenches until the 11th May, but at 6.45 p.m. orders were received to proceed to the trenches next day.

May 2nd.—The Battalion relieved the 7th Worcesters in G Sector Hebuterne trenches in the afternoon and evening. A good deal of alteration in the line had taken place since the Battalion was last in. The 12th York and Lancasters (31st Division) were on our right, and the 1/5th Glosters on our left.

May 3rd.—A most unlucky day for the Battalion. After a quiet night the enemy, at about 9.30 a.m., started shelling our right company, chiefly with 15-cm. howitzers, and it is believed with 21-cm. as well. They also used trench mortars, and fired rifle-grenades from a rifle-grenade battery. The trench was badly knocked about. The shelling continued most of the morning and afternoon, and at about 3 p.m. 2nd Lieuts. J. S. C. KING and T. D. HUGHES were killed by the same shell. The former was on duty, and the latter had gone down to the trench to arrange about a working party. About the same time 2nd Lieut Affleck and Sergeant W. Barnes (B Company) were hit by shrapnel in trench 31, and could not be removed until nightfall, with the result that Sergeant BARNES died of his wounds in the Field Ambulance.

Just after dark 2 men in C Company were hit by machine-gun fire in the thigh. The left half of the right company's trench consists of a series of isolated posts held only by night, and these men were hit while going out to their posts. A corporal in B Company was also hit by a stray bullet while relieving overland.

Casualties.—2 officers killed, 1 sergeant died of wounds, 1 officer and 3 other ranks wounded.

May 4th.—At about 5.30 a.m. the enemy started shelling our right company trenches again, and continued to do so intermittently until 9.30 a.m., putting over some 140 shells—mostly 15-cm. howitzer shells along Caber.

After this the day passed fairly quietly. Very fine, and a good deal of aerial activity. During the day the 167th Brigade took over the northern position of the Brigade line, down to the Puisieux Road.

About 10 p.m. the enemy was again active on our right trenches with shells, trench-mortar bombs, and a few *Minenwerfer.*

Casualties.—3 men wounded.

Digitized by Google

May 5th.—As one of C Company's isolated posts were retiring, just before daybreak, the enemy opened on them with rifle-grenades, killing one man and wounding another. A certain amount of shelling during the day, but on the whole it was quiet.

May 6th.—Fairly quiet. A little shelling, but no casualties.

A draft of 20 other ranks arrived at Couin, to await the Battalion.

May 7th.—Slight shelling all along the front line, three men being wounded. One of these (Private Bennet) was mortally wounded, and the other two (C.-S.-M. Fincher and Private Upstone) were hit while trying to bring him away.

Lieut.-Colonel R. L. Ovey, D.S.O., and Captain Pickford, M.C., proceeded to England, for investiture. Captain E. W. R. Hadden assumed command of the Battalion.

May 8th.—The Battalion was relieved by 1/4th R. Berks in the afternoon, but the relief was not completed until late at night. Marched to Couin, and went into huts in the Château grounds. Accommodation very fair, and in fine weather should be very pleasant.

May 9th.—Usual day of rest, except for working parties. We have to furnish a party of 100 men daily, reporting to the R.E. at Coigneux Church at 7 a.m. We also sent 300 men to work on cable trenches near Sailly. It rained all day.

May 10th.—Working party of 250 men to Colincamps to dig cable trenches, and in the evening 100 men to G Sector to assist the R. Berks in clearing derelict trenches.

May 11th.—No working parties by day, except the usual Coigneux one. At night we supplied a party of 5 officers and 507 other ranks, in conjunction with a similar party of the 1/5th Glosters. The orders were to dig a six-foot trench for a cable from Du Guesclin to the front line near Prescott Tree, along Jena, in G Sector. The cable was to be laid and the trench filled in before daylight. The digging was all very quickly and successfully carried out, but unfortunately the cable-layers were not up to their task, and part of the job was left incomplete. The party returned at 4.30 a.m. (12th).

May 12th.—The Battalion had a lazy day after the night's digging, and in anticipation of a similar entertainment to-night—fortunately postponed.

The Officers played the Sergeants at football, the latter winning by 3 goals to 1, after a very good game.

Digitized by Google

Captain C. E. Jackson attached to the Battalion, and joined for duty. A draft of 37 men arrived.

May 13*th*.—A pouring wet day. In addition to the usual Coigneux party, we provided 400 men for cable digging in the neighbourhood of Colincamps, from 7.15 a.m. to 3 p.m.

May 14*th*.—Sunday. Weather too bad for Church Parade, but a Service was held in the Recreation-room. 100 men were at Coigneux. The baths were in use most of the day. In the evening the Battalion found a working party of 10 officers and 520 other ranks for cable burying about Colincamps. Started at 5.30 p.m., and returned between midnight and 2 a.m. (15th).

May 15*th*.—Resting. The last draft practised wire-breaking.

An excellent performance by the "Curios" was given in the Recreation-room in the evening.

May 16*th*.—In the very early morning the enemy opened a heavy bombardment on G Sector, and we afterwards heard that the 4th Royal Berks had been raided, and suffered heavy casualties. A beautiful day, and a German aeroplane came over in the morning. Company Training.

May 17*th*.—A fine day. Preparing for a move, as the Brigade is to march to-morrow to Beauval.

May 18*th*.—The 145th Infantry Brigade marched to billets at Beauval, viâ Authies, Marieux, and Beauquesne. The order of march was : Signals, Brigade H.Q., Berks, Bucks, Oxfords, Glosters, B.M.G. Company, Trench Mortar Batteries, and Transport brigaded (with the exception of pack ponies, S.A.A. Limbers, and Maltese Cart, which accompanied battalions). The Battalion left the starting-point at 7.25 a.m., and, just before Marieux, the Brigade marched past the Corps Commander, Lieut.-General Hunter-Weston.

The latter part of the march was very trying, owing to the great heat and the bad condition of the men, who were, moreover, wearing shrapnel helmets for the first time on a long march. A considerable number of men fell out in the last stage of the march. Beauval was reached about 12.30 p.m., and the Battalion was billeted in Rue de Candas and Rue de l'Épinette. Very fair accommodation.

Thirty men, under Lieut. Smith, were sent to Beauquesne, to work under the R.E.

May 19*th*.—The Battalion handed in their long rifles, and were re-equipped with new short ones, which were a great improvement,

Digitized by Google

as most of the old ones were unserviceable. No cut-off on the new rifles.

The Divisional Band played in the Square in the afternoon and evening, and there was a performance by the "Curios" at 6 p.m.

May 20th.—Company Training started. Owing to the fine hot weather, the Brigade ordered that all training should be carried out between 7 a.m. and 12 noon. Routine was now as follows: Rouse, 5 a.m.; training, 7 a.m. to noon. The men were allowed the afternoon free, and passes into Doullens were granted up to 25 per cent.

May 21st.—(Beauval.) Brigade Church Parade at 10 a.m. in a field on the Beauquesne Road. Magnificent weather.

May 22nd.—Companies engaged principally at elementary musketry. The allotted training areas are too small to exercise any body larger than a section in field work.

2nd Lieut. A. N. Hunt joined the Battalion from the Base, and was posted to B Company.

May 23rd.—Battalion route march. Weather rather cooler, and the men marched very well.

The detachment at Belle Église rejoined the Battalion. The "Varlets" gave an outdoor performance in an orchard in the evening.

May 24th.—Training. Firing on the miniature range. C Company marched to Hem, and bathed in the River Authie, taking their cooker, and carrying out some field work.

May 25th.—Wet. Practically the whole Battalion on fatigue. Fifty men were inoculated.

May 26th.—The Battalion marched to Gezaincourt by platoons, had baths, and did some field work. Weather fine again.

May 27th.—Still in billets at Beauval. Brigade route march. In the afternoon the Corps Commander visited Battalion H.Q., was introduced to the officers, and made a short speech.

May 28th.—Church Parade at 10 a.m. Orders received that the Brigade will move on the 31st, to a training area north-west of Abbeville, about 20 miles distant.

May 29th.—In the afternoon the whole Brigade watched a new trench-mortar demonstration (3-inch Stokes gun) in a quarry near Brigade H.Q.—most interesting.

A draft of 47 other ranks arrived.

Digitized by Google

May 30*th*.—The Battalion completed grouping practice on the range. Every man in the Battalion now has a steel helmet. 250 were received to-day, and equipped all the details.

May 31*st*.—The whole Brigade moved into the new billeting area, about 6 miles north-east of Abbeville. Passed the starting-point at 4 a.m. Proceeded through Candas, Fienvillers, Bernaville, Beaumetz, Coulonvillers, and Neuville, and reached our destination, Oneux, at about noon, having halted outside Beaumetz for breakfast. There is a large training area (about 4 miles by 2) just north of the village.

June 1*st*.—(Oneux.) Battalion Training, 6 a.m. to noon. Practised advance across country in artillery formation.

June 2*nd*.—Battalion Training, 12.30 to 5 p.m. The following officers joined the Battalion from the Base, and were posted to companies: 2nd Lieuts. Shepherd and Lidsey (A Company); 2nd Lieuts. R. N. C. Hunt (rejoined from hospital) and Lay (B Company); 2nd Lieuts. Jefferson and Townsend (C); 2nd Lieuts. Sherrington and Millard (D).

June 3*rd*.—Brigade Field-day. Attack against a flagged position. Ourselves and the Bucks in front line.

June 4*th*.—The Battalion moved at 8 a.m. from Oneux, about 4½ miles north-west, to new billets at Agenvillers. The billets had been vacated by the 10th Brigade, and are rather crowded. Church Parade at noon.

Major A. J. N. Bartlett (2nd Oxford and Bucks Light Infantry) joined the Battalion and assumed command.

A draft of 5 other ranks arrived.

June 5*th*.—Company Training, 6 a.m. to 10 a.m., practising extension. From 10 a.m. to noon the Battalion, with the Bucks, attacked a position which the remainder of the Brigade had entrenched.

2nd Lieuts. H. F. Pearson and G. Pearson joined the Battalion, and were posted to B and C Companies respectively.

June 6*th*.—(Agenvillers). Wet morning. The Battalion paraded at 5.30 p.m., and took part in a Brigade scheme of night operations over the training area.

June 7*th*.—Returned to billets in the morning The Brigade Horse Show took place in the afternoon.

Digitized by Google

The following honours were in the *London Gazette* of the 3rd June :—

Military Cross.—Captain (temp. Major) J. J. CONYBEARE.
Military Medal.—178 Sergeant L. R. GRIFFIN.
2695 Sergeant J. H. MATTINSON.

June 8th.—2.30 to 8 p.m. the Brigade, in conjunction with the 144th Brigade, carried out practice attacks. Very wet afternoon.

June 9th.—8 a.m. to 1 p.m. Brigade Training. Attack practice with 144th Brigade.

June 10th.—The Battalion left Agenvillers at 4 a.m. with the remainder of the Brigade, and marched to Mezerolles, having halted from 9.30 a.m. to 2.30 p.m. in a field for breakfast and dinner. Much rain during the march. Billeted at Mezerolles; the remainder of the Brigade in billets at Occoches and Outrebois.

Captain T. G. Grice, 2nd Scottish Rifles, attached to the Battalion, joined for duty as Senior Major.

June 11th.—The Brigade continued the march to Couin, and the Battalion went into bivouac on the south side of the main road.

June 12th.—The Battalion returned to the trenches—G Section, Hebuterne, in relief of the 1/8th Warwicks. Relief complete by 1 p.m. The 1st Division is on our right, and the 1/5th Glosters on our left. Enemy very quiet. Weather wet.

Information received that Major E. W. R. HADDEN had died in hospital from appendicitis.

June 13th.—(Hebuterne trenches.) Weather still bad. Enemy fairly quiet. Two men in a carrying party were hit during the afternoon. A great deal of work being done in this sector, especially on the front line and communication trenches. At night a party of 200 of the Bucks Battalion came up to work. As Captain Grice was setting the party to work at wiring in front of Jones trench, heavy machine-gun fire was opened, and he was seriously wounded in both legs. An officer and a sergeant of the Bucks were also slightly wounded.

Casualties in the Battalion.—1 man killed, 1 officer and 2 men wounded.

June 14th.—Some heavy shelling at about 10 a.m.; no casualties, but the trench badly blocked.

June 15th.—Weather very bad, and clearing-up work seriously hampered. Captain T. G. GRICE died of his wounds at Couin.

Digitized by Google

June 16*th*.—In the very early morning the Worcesters attempted a raid on the enemy's trenches. One brigade of our artillery kept up a sniping fire while a party of R.E. tried to blow a passage through the wire with Bangalore torpedoes. The attempt failed, and the raiding party returned to our lines at 2 a.m., after suffering several casualties, and not entering the enemy's trenches.

The Battalion was relieved in the afternoon by the Bucks Battalion, and moved into bivouac on the Courcelles-Coigneux Road. Weather fine, but cold at night. Two companies on fatigue at night.

June 17*th*.—(In bivouac west of Sailly.) The whole Battalion employed on working parties by day, and 200 men at night, assisting the Bucks Battalion in G Sector.

Great preparations of all sorts are being made behind the lines. Immense dumps of R.E. material and ammunition.

June 18*th*.—Work as yesterday. Several enemy aeroplanes came over our lines.

June 19*th*.—Still furnishing working parties. Enemy aeroplanes active again. They appear to be becoming suspicious of the continual registering by our heavies, great numbers of which are in this neighbourhood. We had 2 men wounded to-day.

June 20*th*.—The balloon near Couin was shelled by a long-range enemy gun, the shells passing almost directly over our bivouacs. Working parties as usual.

June 21*st*.—Various working parties. Three officers and 220 men to Gezaincourt to unload trains.

Open-air performance by the "Curios" in the evening.

During the past week several officers have been to reconnoitre the trenches and approaches in the area to the south of the Divisional area.

June 22*nd*.—The Brigade was relieved by the 144th Brigade, and the Battalion moved into bivouacs previously occupied by the 1/6th Glosters between Couin and Coigneux. The accommodation proved insufficient, and much time was spent in drawing fresh material and erecting new bivouacs.

June 23*rd*.—A few working parties, the remainder of the Battalion at Company Training. A 30-yard range was dug on the hillside.

Lieut. H. S. Taylor joined the Battalion for duty, and was posted to C Company.

Digitized by Google

June 24th.—Two companies firing in smoke helmets on the range. The remainder at Company Training, as far as weather and lack of ground permitted. Bombardment started at 9 a.m.

June 25th.—Sunday. Voluntary Church Service. Firing on the range continued.

June 26th.—The Battalion struck bivouacs and moved to a new site, between Couin and St. Leger.

June 27th.—Company Training and inspections. One company in fighting order inspected by the G.O.C.

Some very successful sports were held in the afternoon.

The Gezaincourt detachment returned to the Battalion at 7 p.m.

June 28th.—Bad weather interfered considerably with Company Training. It had been understood that the Battalion would move on the 29th, which day had been fixed for the attack, but we now hear that the attack has been postponed for two days.

June 29th.—Three companies to the baths in the morning. At 10 a.m. we received orders that the Battalion would carry out a raid from G Sector to-night. Lieut. T. R. Fortescue was selected to command the party, which was found equally by A and D Companies, and divided as follows: Actual raiding-party, 50 strong, with 2nd Lieuts. S. Smith and Lidsey. Covering party, 2 Lewis-guns and 25 men.

The party had orders to enter the German trench just north of the Point, and to capture a prisoner. It was understood that the wire would be cut by the artillery, who were firing about the point of entry (K.17.d.11) all the afternoon.

At 12.15 a.m. 29th/30th the party left the trenches near the 1st barricade. The first German wire was found badly damaged, an existing gap was improved, and the party passed through. It then came up against eight rows of concertina wire, quite undamaged, within about 25 yards of the German parapet. In attempting to cut this wire the party was detected, and countless flares were sent up. Bombs were thrown at the party, and rifle-fire opened. Attempts were made to get round and find other gaps on either side, but the enemy were very wide awake, and the trenches strongly manned. The party was therefore eventually withdrawn, in excellent order, and reached our trenches at 2.10 a.m. (30th). Although the main object of the enterprise was not attained, the whole affair was very creditably carried out.

Digitized by Google

Three patrols, under 2nd Lieut. Lakin, also went out between 10.30 and 11.30 p.m., to examine the enemy's wire along the front of G Sector. After its return the raiding party sent out a patrol, to see if the enemy followed up, but nothing was discovered.

June 30th.—(In bivouacs between Couin and St. Leger.) Company Training. Received orders that the Battalion will probably move to Mailly-Maillet to-morrow. Transport ordered to be loaded by 7 a.m.

SUMMARY OF CASUALTIES IN THE 1/4TH BATTALION. 1ST AUGUST 1915 TO 30TH JUNE 1916.

Killed.

Captain J. N. TREBLE.
Lieut. P. D. DOYNE.
Lieut. J. S. C. KING.
Lieut. T. D. HUGHES.
Captain T. G. GRICE.
Sergeant-Major S. J. PEARCE.
And 14 other ranks.

Died of Disease.

Major E. W. R. HADDEN.

Wounded.

Captain GRIFFIN.
Lieut. AFFLECK.
And 66 other ranks (4 of whom died of their wounds).

Total casualties, of all ranks, 67.

CASUALTIES SINCE ARRIVAL IN FRANCE.

Killed, 7 officers and 26 other ranks; *Wounded*, 6 officers and 114 other ranks.

REINFORCEMENTS RECEIVED DURING THE 11 MONTHS ENDING 30TH JUNE 1916.

26 officers (including one promoted from the ranks of the Battalion), 267 N.C.O.'s and Men.

Digitized by Google

HONOURS AND REWARDS, 1st AUGUST 1915—30th JUNE 1916.

Distinguished Service Order.

Major R. L. Ovey.

Military Cross.

Captain B. Long (attached to M.G.C.).
Captain P. Pickford.
Captain G. K. Rose.
Major J. J. Conybeare.

Distinguished Conduct Medal.

2207 Sergeant J. S. C. King.
2470 Private L. H. Senior.

Military Medal.

178 Sergeant L. H. Griffin.
2695 Sergeant J. H. Mattinson

Mentioned in Dispatches.

Major J. A. Ballard.
Major R. L. Ovey.
Captain B. Long.
Captain P. Pickford.
Captain G. K. Rose.
Captain F. B. Jones.
426 Sergeant A. Shurvell.
1733 Sergeant A. Cook.

Official Records of Acts of Gallantry.

Captain P. Pickford.

Whilst in Ploegsteert Wood on many occasions he was out in front of the line on reconnaissance work and working parties, and by his example inspired the N.C.O.'s and men with confidence when new to the work. On the 13th and 15th June 1915 he crawled out by day about 400 yards to within 20 yards of the enemy trenches and discovered an old German sap which led into their trenches, and located the positions of their sentries. (*Military Cross.*)

Captain G. K. Rose.

For useful work as Intelligence Officer, often going on patrol at night close to the German lines. His reports have always been good, and his information accurate. (*Military Cross.*)

Digitized by Google

Major J. J. CONYBEARE.

For conspicuous bravery and coolness on the 18th October 1915, when his trench was heavily bombarded by enemy artillery and *Minenwerfer*, and was partially destroyed. He probably saved many lives by his coolness in directing the traffic personally in a very dangerous part of the trench, which was being bombarded by *Minenwerfer*. (*Military Cross.*)

No. 2270 Sergeant J. S. C. KING.[1]

For good work since being in the country, in charge of working-parties in Ploegsteert Wood. When about 120 yards from the German lines he did a lot of wiring, and was also of great assistance to the Intelligence Officer in observing work done in the German lines. (*Distinguished Conduct Medal.*)

No. 2470 Private L. H. SENIOR.

On the 18th October 1915, during a heavy bombardment of one of the fire trenches, when he had gone to see the telephone wires, he showed great coolness and succeeded in reopening communication directly the heavy bombardment ceased. He remained in charge of the station, as one signaller was killed, and the others were very much shaken. He has done consistent good work throughout the campaign. (*Distinguished Conduct Medal.*)

No. 178 Sergeant L. H. GRIFFIN.

For consistent good work as Signalling Sergeant. On the 18th October 1915, when one of the fire trenches was heavily bombarded, he was in the trench at the time and brought back the first information as to the state of affairs, having to crawl for some distance over the open to get back while the enemy were still bombarding. (*Military Medal.*)

No. 2695 Sergeant J. H. MATTINSON.

He has many times undertaken useful patrol and reconnaissance work, particularly on the 18th September 1915, when he took out a patrol and acquired useful information of the ground and enemy's wire near the Point. He has at all times shown great ability, energy, and devotion to duty. (*Military Medal.*)

[1] Sergeant King was promoted 2nd Lieut. on the 15th November 1915, and was killed in action on the 3rd May 1916.

Digitized by Google

ALPHABETICAL ROLL OF OFFICERS WHO SERVED WITH THE 1/4TH BATTALION WITHIN THE PERIOD 1ST AUGUST 1915—30TH JUNE 1916.

Major J. A. BALLARD (2nd Battalion), Adjutant.
Lieut.-Colonel A. J. N. BARTLETT (2nd Battalion), Commanding.
Captain J. E. BLAKE.
Captain E. E. BRIDGES.
Major A. A. BRIDGEWATER, Quartermaster.
Captain B. B. B. BROOKS.
Captain E. G. COLEMAN.
Major J. J. CONYBEARE.
2nd Lieut. J. C. COOMBES.
Lieut. A. C. COOPER.
Lieut. C. C. CRAIG.
2nd Lieut. C. F. DADLEY.
Captain H. J. DEACON.
Lieut. P. D. DOYNE.
Lt.-Col. W. F. B. R. DUGMORE [1] (N. Staffs.), Commanding.
Lieut. J. H. EARLY.
Captain M. W. EDMUNDS.
Captain W. H. ENOCH.
Major E. C. FORTESCUE.
Captain T. R. FORTESCUE.
2nd Lieut. G. M. FRIEAKE.
Captain A. K. GIBSON.
Captain G. H. GREENWELL.
Maj. T. G. GRICE (2nd Scot. Rfls.)
Captain I. E. GRIFFIN.
Lieut. F. H. GRISEWOOD.
Major E. W. R. HUDDIN.
Lieut. T. N. HALL.
2nd Lieut. T. D. HUGHES.
2nd Lieut. A. N. HUNT.
Lieut. R. N. C. HUNT.
The Rev. K. C. JACKSON, Chaplain.
2nd Lieut. H. H. JEFFERSON.
Captain F. B. JONES.
2nd Lieut. F. E. JONES.
2nd Lieut. H. L. JUDSON.
2nd Lieut. A. O. W. KINDELL.
2nd Lieut. J. S. C. KING.
Lieut. R. ST. G. LAKE.
Lieut. C. LAKIN.
2nd Lieut. F. C. LAY.
2nd Lieut. W. J. LIDSEY.
Captain B. LONG.
2nd Lieut. C. R. MASON.
2nd Lieut. W. M. MILLARD.
Lt.-Col. R. L. OVEY, Commanding.
2nd Lieut. G. E. PEARSON.
Major P. PICKFORD.
2nd Lieut. C. H. POWELL.
2nd Lieut. G. M. RAWLINSON.
Lieut. M. C. RICHARDSON.
Captain G. K. ROSE.
Major R. R. S. ROWELL.
2nd Lieut. J. G. SHEPHERD.
2nd Lt. C. E. R. SHERRINGTON.
Lieut. E. E. SMITH.
2nd Lieut. S. SMITH.
The Rev. F. STREATFIELD, Chaplain.
Major J. O. SUMMERHAYES (R.A.M.C.).
Captain H. S. TAYLOR.
2nd Lieut. F. O. TOWNSEND.
Captain J. N. TREBLE.
Captain W. A. WAYMAN.
Lieut. H. A. WILSDON.
Lieut. H. H. WRONG.

[1] Lt.-Col. Dugmore was subsequently killed when in command of a battalion of the South Staffordshire Regiment.

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 2/4TH BATTALION.

1ST AUGUST 1915 to 30th JUNE 1916.

Colonel W. H. Ames gives the following brief account of the training of his Battalion during this period and of its subsequent arrival in France:—

From 1st August to 29th October 1915 the Battalion was under canvas at Broomfield, and carried out a strenuous course of training. One night each week was spent in entrenching practice at Chignal Smealy, and Brigade, Divisional, and Army manœuvres were carried out.

In November an order was received to reduce the Battalion to a strength of 600 of all ranks, and the surplus were sent to the 3/4th Battalion. November and December were devoted to Individual Training.

1916.

Early in January the Battalion was brought up to full strength by a draft of recruits from the third line. These men had undergone no more than a month's training, and the Battalion was occupied in training them, as well as in perfecting the training of the men of longer service. During this month the command of the Division was taken over by Major-General Colin Mackenzie, C.B., and very shortly afterwards the whole Division moved to Salisbury Plain, where the Battalion occupied Parkhouse Huts. The new rifles were served out; a complete musketry course was fired; and training went on in bombing, bayonet-fighting, and trench routine, preparatory to proceeding overseas.

FRANCE.

About the beginning of May 1916 the Battalion, in Parkhouse Huts, Salisbury Plain, was brought up to war strength by drafts from the Liverpool Rifles, Welsh, Dorset, Cambridgeshire, and Herts Regiments of the Territorial Force, and on 25th May the Battalion embarked for France.

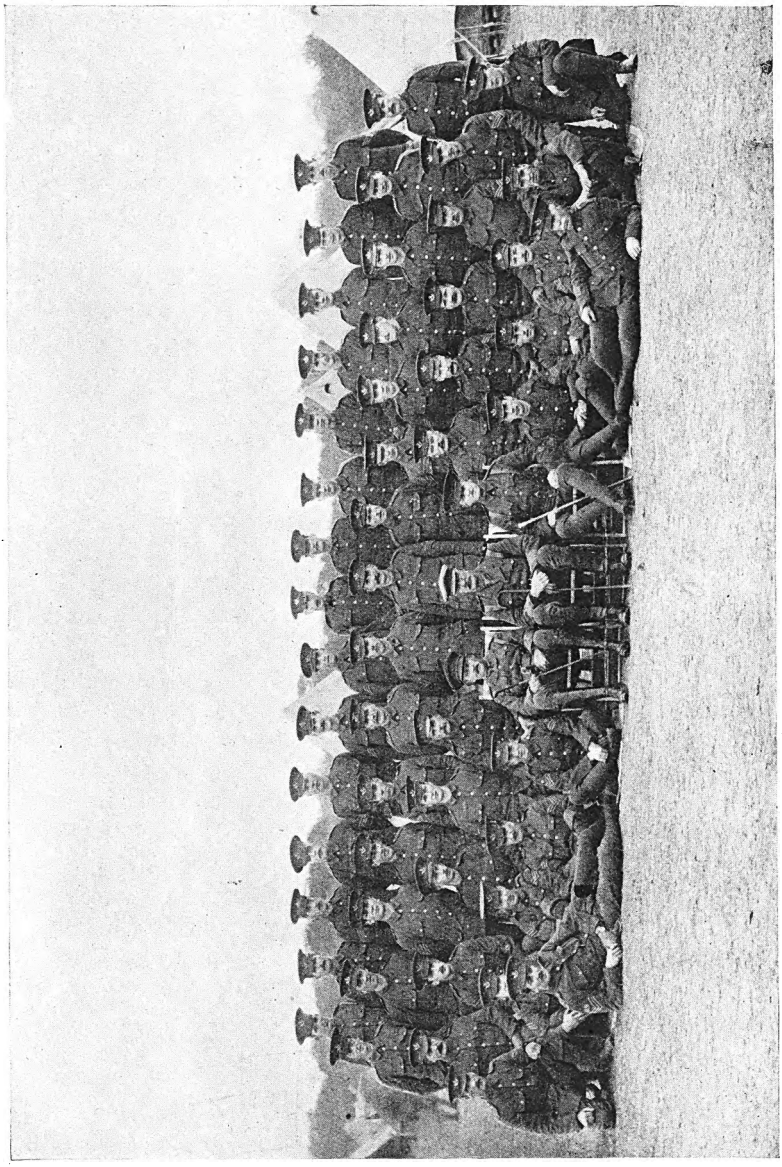
Digitized by Google

Safely arriving at Havre the next morning they marched to a rest camp. At 7 p.m. that evening the Battalion entrained, and arrived at Merville at 7.45 the next evening, and went into billets at Arrewage. After six days they moved up to Laventie, where they were attached to the 38th Division, 113th Brigade, for 8 days' instruction in the Fanquissart Section. During that period two raids were made by the Welsh troops, and the Battalion during its period of instruction had one man killed and 12 wounded. The report of the G.O.C. 38th Division on the Battalion was as follows : "All ranks showed exceptional interest and keenness to learn, and were well grounded before they came out to this country. The men were well disciplined and of good physique."

At the expiration of 8 days they returned to Arrewage for an 8-day rest, but within 24 hours were moved up to Laventie (Map 6) and went into support. From 15th–21st June the Battalion was in the trenches in the Red House Sub-section of the Fanquissart section. During this period the 2/5 Gloster Regiment made a raid, and the Battalion assisted with rifle-grenades and demonstration. June 21st–27th the Battalion was in support at Laventie, and on the 27th they returned to the front line. During this time Major D. M. Rose returned to England sick, and Captain Cuthbert became Adjutant.

On the evening of 28/29th the Battalion had to carry out its first raid. Captain Davenport's Company had been selected. The plan was to enter the enemy's trenches, and penetrate to his support line if possible. Two parties were to enter the trenches at points about 100 yards apart, and a third party was to act as reserve and rearguard. Considerable hindrance was experienced by two exceptionally dark nights immediately preceding the raid, which made it impossible to ascertain with certainty whether the wire had been properly cut. On the morning of the 28th Lieut. K. E. Brown and 2nd Lieut. W. H. Moberley went out each by himself to reconnoitre the gaps in the wire. 2nd Lieut. Moberley was hit by a sniper and lay for 9 hours in a shell-hole before he could get back to our lines just as the raid was going out. Lieut. Brown remained out about 5 hours, and returned with the information that the wire at the left gap appeared to be sufficiently broken. In order to avoid the machine-gun fire with which the enemy always swept the top of the trenches at the hour fixed for zero, the various parties crept out into the No Man's Land and lay there for an hour. At zero they all advanced, but the wire was insufficiently cut. Lieut.

Digitized by Google

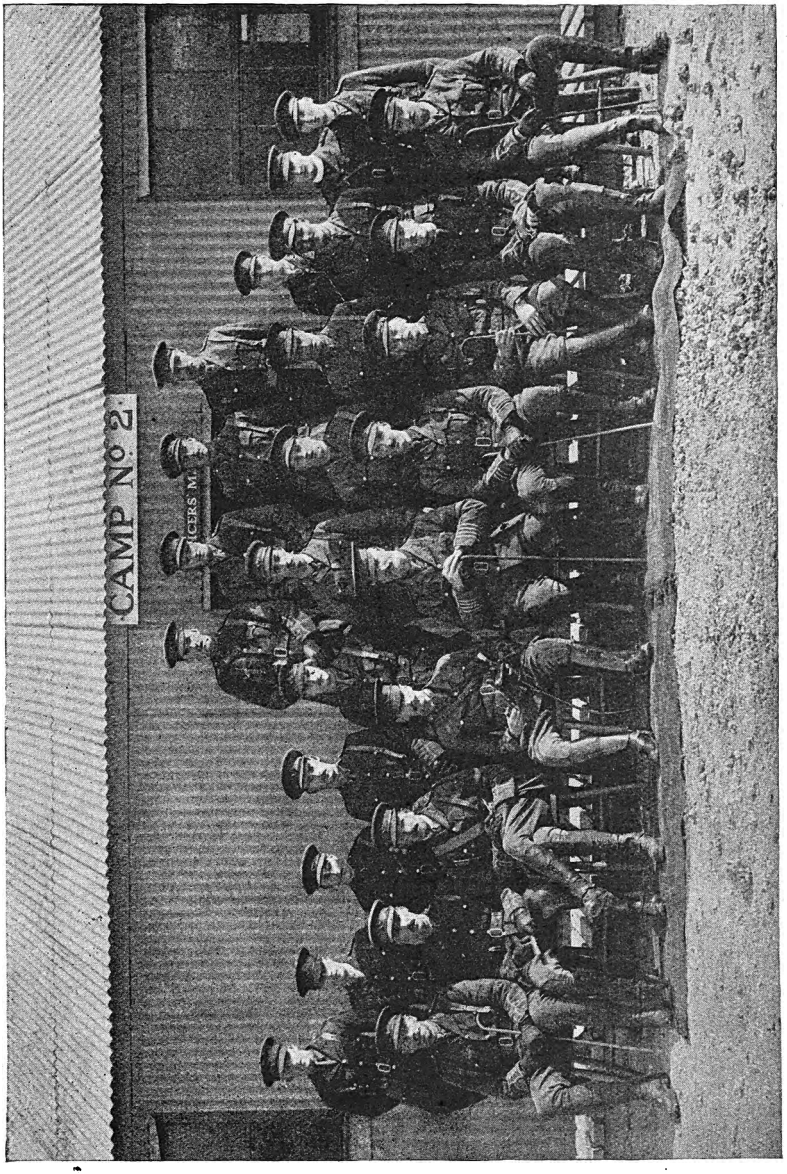


NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS, 2/4TH BATTALION.
Bromfield Camp, September 1915.

Digitized by Google

Stockton, with the right party, under very heavy fire cast both right and left about 50 yards to try to find a gap, but did not succeed in doing so, and brought the right party back. 2nd Lieut. Zeder, in charge of the left party, got up to the wire but could not get through, and this party suffered severely as they came back, 2nd Lieut. ZEDER being killed. The supporting party were also held up by uncut wire, and eventually returned to the trenches, having lost 8 killed and about 30 wounded, nearly all of whom were brought in. Sergeant PRENTICE, Corporal BRERETON, and Private GARDNER received the Military Medal for their actions during this raid, and the G.O.C. 61st Division wrote that he considered it had been carefully planned and gallantly carried out. The failure of the raid was due to the uncut wire.

Digitized by Google



OFFICERS, 2/4TH BATTALION.
May 1916.

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 1/1ST BUCKS BATTALION.

1st AUGUST 1915 to 30th JUNE 1916.

(See Maps 6 and 7.)

During these eleven months the Battalion continued its life of trench warfare—usually in the same part of the line (Hebuterne), with regular short periods of rest spent at Sailly-au-Bois, Couin, Bayencourt, and other places in the vicinity. The work throughout was strenuous, as the trenches required constant repair, and winter conditions were not of the pleasantest. Patrols were very numerous, and brisk fighting in No Man's Land frequently occurred, much excellent training being thus acquired and some very good work accomplished.

The patrol duties performed by Captain N. S. Reid and Captain H. V. Combs were especially well carried out, and both these officers were awarded the Military Cross. The following extracts from VIIth Corps communiqués, dated 3rd and 4th April 1916, refer to a patrol of B Company under Captain Combs :—

A patrol of 2 officers and 25 other ranks advanced during the night of the 1st/2nd April in the direction of the "16 Poplars," with the intention of intercepting or capturing an enemy patrol. The enemy, apparently becoming early aware of this patrol, sent out a strong party of 50 men to oppose them. Our patrol, after putting up a good fight, returned safely behind our wire. Our casualties were 4 killed and 2 wounded. Casualties to the enemy are unknown, though many of the bombs and rifle-grenades fired were seen to burst well amongst them.

With reference to the patrol report in yesterday's summary, attention is drawn to the fact that the enemy were robbed of any possible identification by the calmness and resource shown by the patrol in getting back the killed and wounded to our trenches. The withdrawal was slow and deliberate, and the men were well in

Digitized by Google

hand. Although it is difficult to distinguish one man's service from another's, Sergeant W. J. Baldwin, Lance-Corporal Goldswain, and Lance-Corporal Jennings are deserving of special notice. Although Sergeant Baldwin was wounded, not only did he assist in carrying back one of the dead men, but he came back again to assist the covering party when the enemy were almost on top of them.

The Battalion Diary records little beyond the movements[1] in and out of the trenches, the only incident worthy of note being as follows: On 25th January 1916 2nd Lieut. FURLEY was killed in Hebuterne trenches, and on the 27th Lieut.-Colonel Doig broke his collar-bone, owing to his horse coming down. He was succeeded in the command by Major L. C. Hawkins, Captain L. L. C. Reynolds becoming Second in Command and Captain N. S. Reid A Company Commander.

1916.

On the 1st January the following officers were serving with the Battalion:—

Battalion Headquarters.

Lieut.-Colonel C. P. DOIG (Seaforth Highlanders), Commanding.
Major L. C. HAWKINS, Second in Command.
Lieut. P. L. WRIGHT, Adjutant.
Lieut. J. B. HILL, Transport Officer.
Lieut. and Quartermaster E. NICHOL.
Lieut. L. E. HUGHES (R.A.M.C.), Medical Officer.

A Company.	*B Company.*
Captain L. L. C. REYNOLDS.	Captain L. W. CROUCH.
Captain N. S. REID.	Captain O. V. VINEY.
Lieut. F. G. B. REYNOLDS.	Lieut. A. C. E. F. KENNISH.
2nd Lieut. C. HALL.	Lieut. E. N. C. WOOLLERTON.
	2nd Lieut. R. E. M. YOUNG.

[1] *See* Regimental Diary at the beginning of this volume.

Digitized by Google

C Company.	*D Company.*
Captain P. A. HALL.	Captain E. V. D. BIRCHALL.
Captain G. G. JACKSON.	Lieut. A. S. VERNON.
Lieut. J. W. BACKHOUSE.	Lieut. A. D. BURNETT-BROWN.
2nd Lieut. H. J. PULLMAN.	Lieut. F. D. EARLE.
2nd Lieut. A. P. GODFREY.	2nd Lieut. R. C. NORWOOD.
	2nd Lieut. J. B. HALES.

Extracts from letters written home by Captain L. W. Crouch :—

7th March 1916.

We had a great stunt last night, which, I hope, may earn a D.C.M. or two for B Company. Combie, who is my second in command, as you know, took out a large patrol to round up some Boches who were suspected to be occupying some poplars and a sunken road about 700 yards from our, and 100 yards from their, trenches. Smaller patrols of my company had found them there two nights in succession. His scheme was to bomb them out of their post at the end of the poplars, and drive them up the road into the arms of another party. Lance-Sergeant Baldwin put four bombs into the Boche post; these were followed by loud shouts and groans. The Boches lined the whole line of poplars, opened fire, and threw bombs. About twelve of them charged along the road towards our own trenches. Lance-Corporal Colbrook stood in the middle of the road shouting, "Hands up!" The Boches were shouting "Deutscher! Deutscher!" evidently taking our people for Boches. Colbrook would have been mopped up, but Corporal Baldwin and Goldswain each put a bomb into the middle of them, knocking out all but three. These swerved round Colbrook and began firing from the hip. One charged on to Goldswain, who fired his rifle from the "on guard" position when the Boche was practically on to his bayonet. A Boche bomb then burst behind Goldswain, throwing him down nearly on top of the dead Boche. Another was also shot, and the remaining one fled in another direction. Heavy Boche reinforcements came charging down the road, and nearly bagged Corporal Baldwin and Co., who escaped by the skin of their teeth. The patrol was then reorganized, and Combie made a counter-attack, driving the Boches out of their listening-post again, but the Boche reinforcements occupied the line of poplars and opened fire and threw bombs. We have three men very slightly wounded

Digitized by Google

in the face by bits of bombs, including Alan Crouch and Goldswain. The patrol retired in fine order, halting occasionally, and facing about in correct style ! Combie reckons he put out from twelve to fifteen Boches in all, killed and wounded. Anyhow, it was a very successful little scrap.

Goldswain was the boy from my company who was home on leave when I was last home. You may remember that I told you that he had had a brother killed, and always volunteered for every patrol in order to kill a German. Then he was poor Furley's servant, and so had another score to wipe off. He has now paid off one score.

2nd April 1916.

You will be interested to hear of another stunt last night. It has pleased the authorities highly, but, unfortunately, cost the lives of four jolly good men : Lance-Corporal Colbrook, Privates Coleman, Hazzard, and Webb. Combs and Aitken went out with a big patrol, and had a scrap with something between fifty and seventy Boches. They got out just about seventy yards north of the poplars, where the former stunt was. They then lay doggo and listened some time, to hear if the poplars were occupied. They then saw six or eight Boches approaching on their left. These Boches evidently got wind of them and lay down. After lying up a bit longer, Sergeant Baldwin and several other men went out to the left, to search the ground where the Boches had been seen. He soon came up against a very large party of Boches and deposited nine bombs amongst them, which produced loud squeals and groans which lasted for some time. The Boches opened rapid fire and threw bombs. As Sergeant Baldwin was almost surrounded, he withdrew gradually to the rest of the patrol.

On the way back Webb and Hazzard were killed, and for a little while lay out in front of the alignment of our patrol. Lance-Corporal Jennings and six men dashed out under heavy fire and brought Webb and Hazzard back to the alignment of the patrol. Coleman, who was one of Jennings's party, was killed. Just as the bodies had been got back to the patrol, the Boches tried to make a rush, which was checked by rapid rifle and revolver fire. The Boches then settled down to bomb-throwing, which wounded Sergeant Baldwin in three places and slightly scratched Private Todd. Then began the job of getting the bodies back some 600 yards to the trenches. Very few men were left, after allowing for carrying parties, for a covering party. The Boches pressed hard the whole

Digitized by Google

time, and Combs, with at most six men at any one time, kept them back, chiefly with the aid of rifle-grenades splendidly worked by Lance-Corporal Vincent and Private Bloomfield. One rifle-grenade was seen to burst in a group of three or four of the swine and bowl them over. It took ages getting these bodies through the wire.

The men were absolutely magnificent. Aitken said that their behaviour made him proud to belong to the Battalion. There was absolute coolness and no confusion. Men worked hard getting in the bodies. Lance-Corporal Goldswain, H. G. Small, and others were soaked in blood, and we have had to get them fresh clothes. Sergeant Baldwin, although wounded in the leg, arm, and face, helped to carry men in, and then, when things were critical with the covering party, went back to them. He was with them when I joined them, and I helped him in. He would not give me his rifle until I made him. Coleman simply gave his life for Webb and Hazzard. That is no exaggeration; but, of course, they were dead. Words absolutely fail to give any idea of the pluck and steadiness of the men. Vincent and his rifle-grenades undoubtedly saved the situation, when practically every man had to help carry bodies or rifles.

The Brigade are delighted with it. Of course, it was sad losing hose good chaps, but undoubtedly the Boche losses were heavier than ours.

The following were the officers serving with the Battalion on the 1st June 1916 :—

Battalion Headquarters.

Lieut.-Colonel L. C. HAWKINS, Commanding.
Major L. L. C. REYNOLDS, Second in Command.
Lieut. P. L. WRIGHT, Adjutant.
Captain J. S. B. HILL, Transport Officer.
2nd Lieut. J. B. HALES, Intelligence Officer.
Lieut. and Quartermaster E. NICHOL.
Captain L. E. HUGHES (R.A.M.C.), Medical Officer.

A Company.

Captain N. S. REID.
Lieut. F. G. B. REYNOLDS.
2nd Lieut. C. HALL.
2nd Lieut. B. C. RIGDEN.
2nd Lieut. C. G. ABREY.

B Company.

Captain L. W. CROUCH.
Lieut. R. E. M. YOUNG.
Lieut. E. N. C. WOOLLERTON.
2nd Lieut. J. M. ROLLESTON.

Digitized by Google

C Company.

Captain P. A. HALL
(48th Div. School).
Captain G. G. JACKSON.
2nd Lieut. A. P. GODFREY.
2nd Lieut. J. P. CHAPMAN.
2nd Lieut. E. G. H. BATES.

D Company.

Captain E. V. D. BIRCHALL.
Captain A. S. VERNON.
Lieut. A. D. BURNETT-BROWN.
Lieut. F. D. EARLE.
2nd Lieut. R. C. NORWOOD.
2nd Lieut. F. H. ROVER.

Lieut. Woollerton. Lieut. Rolleston.
Captain L. W. Crouch. Captain Combs.

OFFICERS IN TRENCH KIT.

Digitized by Google

On the 2nd June Lieut.-Colonel Hawkins broke his collar-bone as the result of a fall from his horse—an accident similar to that which deprived the Battalion of the services of its previous commanding officer, Lieut.-Colonel Doig, D.S.O. Major L. L. C. Reynolds succeeded to the command. Other casualties that occurred among the officers in this month were Lieut. A. D. Burnett-Brown, wounded on the 13th June, and 2nd Lieut. Rolleston, wounded three days later.

1/1st BUCKS BATTALION CASUALTIES.

Killed.

Captain J. W. Backhouse.
2nd Lieut. B. Furley.
And 15 other ranks.

Wounded.

2nd Lieut. Aitken.
Lieut. A. D. Burnett-Brown (twice).
2nd Lieut. J. Rolleston.
And 155 other ranks.

Missing.

One man.

HONOURS AND REWARDS, AUGUST 1915 TO JUNE 1916.

Distinguished Service Order.

Lieut.-Colonel C. P. Doig.

Military Cross.

Captain N. S. Reid.
Lieut. A. D. Burnett-Brown.
Captain H. V. Combs.

Distinguished Conduct Medal.

1208 Lance-Corporal Gostelow.
2710 Private M. Nolan.
1855 Sergeant W. J. Baldwin.
2403 Corporal T. W. Attkins.

Digitized by Google

MILITARY MEDAL.

1935 Sergeant J. W. BALDWIN.
2582 Lance-Corporal P. JENNINGS.
278 Sergeant G. SMEWIN.
2217 Lance-Corporal T. W. VINCENT.
2973 Lance-Corporal GARRETT.
1908 Lance-Corporal J. GOLDSWAIN.
2031 Corporal BALDWIN.
2244 Corporal W. J. BARNWELL.
2072 Lance-Corporal F. A. HICKS.
1392 Lance-Corporal G. H. ODELL.
2097 Lance-Corporal F. W. TIMSON.
1805 Lance-Corporal J. G. HAYNES.

MENTIONED IN DISPATCHES.

Captain H. V. COMBS.
Captain N. S. REID.
Lieut. A. D. B. BROWN.

PARTICULARS OF ACTS OF GALLANTRY.

MILITARY CROSS.

Lieut. (temp. Captain) HUGH VIVIAN COMBS.

For conspicuous gallantry when in command of a patrol. His patrol was heavily attacked by superior numbers of the enemy and suffered casualties, but he succeeded in keeping complete control and in withdrawing and bringing in his casualties under heavy fire [*London Gazette*, 16th May 1916.]

DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL.

No. 2403 Corporal T. W. ATTKINS.

For conspicuous gallantry on many occasions, notably when, although he had one leg shattered and the other fractured by shell-fire, which wrecked his gun emplacement, he crawled some distance to get help for the other men of the team.

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS WHO SERVED WITH THE 1/1ST BUCKS BATTALION IN FRANCE, BETWEEN 1ST AUGUST 1915 AND 30TH JUNE 1916.

Temp. Lieut.-Colonel C. P. DOIG (Seaforth Highlanders), Commanding the Battalion; awarded D.S.O., 11th January 1916; injured by a fall from his horse, 27th January 1916; invalided to England.

Temp. Major L. C. HAWKINS, Second in Command; promoted Major, 9th March 1916; commanding the Battalion (temp. Lieut.-Colonel), 27th January 1916; injured by a fall from his horse, 2nd June 1916; invalided to England.

Captain L. L. C. REYNOLDS, A Company Commander; Second in Command of Battalion, 27th January 1916; temp. Major, 26th February 1916; promoted Major, 1st June 1916; Commanding the Battalion (Lieut.-Colonel), 2nd June 1916.

Captain L. W. CROUCH, B Company Commander.

Captain E. V. D. BIRCHALL, D Company Commander.

Temp. Captain P. A. HALL, C Company Commander; promoted Captain, 1st June 1916.

Temp. Captain G. G. JACKSON, C Company; promoted Captain, 1st June 1916.

Temp. Captain N. S. REID, A Company; Dispatches; awarded M.C., 11th January 1916; promoted Captain, 1st June 1916.

Temp. Captain H. V. COMBS, Machine-gun Officer; mentioned in Dispatches; awarded M.C., 16th May 1916; promoted Captain, 1st June 1916; transferred to Machine-gun Corps, 22nd June 1916.

Lieut. A. S. VERNON, A Company; promoted Captain, 1st June 1916; transferred to Machine-gun Corps, 22nd June 1916.

Lieut. O. V. VINEY, Scout and Intelligence Officer; promoted Captain, 1st June 1916.

Lieut. B. GREEN, A Company; seconded for duty with the 145th Machine-gun Company, 11th January 1916, and afterwards transferred to the Machine-gun Corps; awarded Military Cross.

Digitized by Google

Temp. Captain J. W. BACKHOUSE, C Company; *killed*, 10th February 1916.

[Temp. Captain E. L. WRIGHT, serving on Brigade, Divisional, and Corps Staff.]

Captain A. J. N. BARTLETT (2nd Battalion), Adjutant; Instructor 3rd Army Infantry School, 10th November 1915; to command of 1/4th Battalion, 4th June 1916.

Captain A. B. LLOYD-BAKER, rejoined from Staff, 16th February 1916; C Company Commander; Second in Command of the Battalion, 2nd June 1916.

Temp. Lieut. J. B. HILL, Transport Officer; promoted Lieutenant, 1st June 1916; temp. Captain, 22nd June 1916.

Temp. Lieut. A. C. E. F. KENNISH, B Company; Lieutenant, 20th October 1915; to 90th Trench Mortar Battery; invalided to England.

Temp. Lieut. F. G. B. REYNOLDS, A Company; Lieutenant, 20th October 1915; promoted Captain, 1st June 1916; transferred to Royal Flying Corps, 21st June 1916.

Temp. Lieut. A. D BURNETT-BROWN, rejoined from being wounded, 10th January 1916; awarded Military Cross, 11th January 1916; D Company; temp. Captain, 1st June 1916; *wounded*, 13th June 1916; to England.

Temp. Lieut. E. N. C. WOOLLERTON, B Company; temp. Captain, 22nd June 1916.

Temp. Lieut. F. D. EARLE, D Company.

[Temp. Lieut. G. M. A. HOBART-HAMPDEN, in England, wounded.]

Temp. Lieut. R. GREGSON-ELLIS, B Company; attached to No. 1 Entrenching Battalion at the Base.

Temp. Lieut. P. L. WRIGHT, C Company; acting Adjutant; appointed Adjutant in succession to Captain A. J. N. Bartlett; promoted Lieutenant, 1st June 1916.

2nd Lieut. G. V. NEAVE, A Company; Brigade Bombing Officer; temp. Lieutenant, 11th February 1916; Lieutenant, 1st June 1916.

Lieut. E. NICHOL, Quartermaster.

2nd Lieut. N. B. WILLIAMSON, rejoined from being wounded, 11th January 1916; transferred to Machine-gun Corps.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. R. C. NORWOOD, D Company; Lieutenant, 11th January 1916.

2nd Lieut. J. B. HALES, D Company; Battalion Intelligence Officer.

2nd Lieut. H. J. PULLMAN, C Company; invalided.

2nd Lieut. R. E. M. YOUNG, B Company; Lieutenant, 5th February 1916; Captain, 1st June 1916.

2nd Lieut. BASIL JAMES NEWBERY, joined the Battalion, 2nd August 1915; to hospital, January 1916.

2nd Lieut. ARTHUR POOLE GODFREY, joined, 5th December 1915; C Company.

2nd Lieut. CHARLES HALL, joined, 12th December 1915; A Company.

2nd Lieut. ROBERT BASIL FURLEY, joined, 11th January 1916; B Company; *killed*, 25th January 1916.

2nd Lieut. BRIAN CAWES RIGDEN, joined, 13th January 1916; A Company.

2nd Lieut. CECIL YNYR JONES (13th Battalion London Regiment), joined, 5th March 1916; Battalion Signal Officer; to hospital, sick, 30th May 1916; afterwards joined his own regiment.

2nd Lieut. JOHN MARCUS ROLLESTON, joined, 12th March 1916; B Company; Lieutenant, 1st June 1916; *wounded*, 16th June 1916; to England.

2nd Lieut. JOHN PERCY CHAPMAN, joined, 18th March 1916; C Company.

2nd Lieut. ERIC GEORGE HENRY BATES, from Denstone College O.T.C.; 2nd Lieutenant, 27th July 1915; joined, 18th March 1916; C Company.

2nd Lieut. C. G. ABREY, joined, 21st March 1916; A Company.

2nd Lieut. ROBERT AITKEN, joined, 25th March 1916; B Company; *wounded*, 9th April 1916; to England; on recovery, served with 61st Division.

2nd Lieut. FREDERICK HAROLD ROVER, joined, 7th May 1916; D Company.

2nd Lieut. FREDERICK HAROLD TRIMMER, joined, 5th June 1916; C Company.

2nd Lieut. H. C. E. MASON, joined, 23rd June 1916; B Company.

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 2/1ST BUCKS BATTALION.

1st AUGUST 1915 to 30th JUNE 1916.

For the first nine months of this period the Battalion, which was in the same Brigade (184th, 61st Division) as the 2/4th Battalion of the Regiment, was engaged in strenuous training, first in the neighbourhood of Chelmsford, and later at Parkhouse Camp, Salisbury Plain, as has been already mentioned in the Record of the 2/4th Battalion.

While at Chelmsford those officers and men who for various reasons were unfit for foreign service were transferred to the 83rd Provisional Battalion, then being formed for Home Service. Afterwards many of these men were transferred to the 10th Battalion of the Regiment, forming part of the 215th Infantry Brigade, 72nd Division.

The following list, compiled by Captain I. Stewart-Liberty, M.C., contains the names of the officers who served with the Battalion at various times while it was in England :—

Major J. H. Hooker, T.D.; Major J. Chadwick, T.D.; Surgeon-Captain J. C. Baker; Captain Lord Addington; Captain A. P. List; Captain G. H. Simpson; Lieut. R. A. Buckmaster; Major R. W. Harling (Brigade-Major); Captain S. R. Vernon (Staff Captain); Captain L. L. C. Reynolds; Captain G. T. Hankin; Lieut. Hon. W. Fremantle; Lieut. R. T. Hughes; Lieut. B. Green; 2nd Lieuts. J. E. Firminger, R. C. Norwood, R. E. M. Young, J. B. Hales, S. D. Bishop, G. A. Wylie, O. Fordham, H. J. Pullman, N. B. Williamson, J. C. Sandford, W. R. Heath, F. G. Vaughan, E. G. H. Bates, H. J. Pratt, F. H. Rover, B. C. Rigden, W. H. Hoff, J. D. D. Renfrew (Scottish Rifles), T. Rogers (Royal Scots), V. F. Gould (E. Yorks).

Digitized by Google

FRANCE.

From Major R. W. Harling's Narrative.

Early in May 1916 the Battalion, with the 184th Infantry Brigade, 61st Division, had the honour of being inspected by His Majesty the King, afterwards marching past in close column of platoons.

Within the previous six months there had been several changes in the command of the 61st Division and of the 184th Brigade; the Marquis of Salisbury was succeeded by Major-General Bannatine-Allason, who was a little later succeeded by Major-General Colin Mackenzie; while the Brigade had the following Brigadiers in succession: Colonel Ludlow, Brigadier-General C. G. Fortescue, and Brigadier-General Carter.

On the 25th May the Battalion left Parkhouse Camp, Salisbury Plain, and entrained for Southampton, where it embarked for Havre, to join the British Expeditionary Force.

61st Divisional Headquarters had been established at St. Venant, and Brigade Headquarters at Les Lauriers, on the border of the Forêt de Nieppe. The Battalion, moving from Havre, detrained at Berguette, and marched to billets at Le Sart, near Merville, where it remained for about ten days. Thence the Battalion and the 2/4th R. Berks marched to Laventie (Map 6), to take the place of the 2/5th Gloucesters and 2/4th Oxfords, who were undergoing their training in the trenches while attached to units of the 114th Infantry Brigade (38th Welsh Division).

On arrival at Laventie the two battalions were ordered to take over the Fanquissart Section of the line forthwith, our Battalion H.Q. being at the White House, Bacquerot Street (the right subsection of the Fanquissart Section).

Here and in other sub-sections the Battalion relieved and was relieved by the 2/5th Gloucesters. While in reserve, Battalion H.Q. were in the Rue des Amoureux in Laventie, quartermaster's stores in a farm in the same street, and transport lines on the Laventie-La Gorgue Road, about 300 yards west of the Railway Station.

Casualties.

2nd Lieut. C. P. Quayle.
Private H. Davis.
Lance-Corp. E. E. D. Jones.
Private P. A. Aldridge.
Private F. R. Castleton.
Private L. V. Rivett.

Digitized by Google

THE SERVICE BATTALIONS

OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY

1st August 1915 to 30th June 1916

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 5TH (SERVICE) BATTALION.
1st AUGUST 1915 to 30th JUNE 1916.

On the 1st August 1915 the Battalion, forming part of the 42nd Infantry Brigade of the 14th (Light) Division, was still in the neighbourhood of Ypres, holding trenches near the Menin Road (Maps 6 and 8).

CAPTAIN AND ADJUTANT B. C. T. PAGET'S DIARY.

August 1st.—Fairly quiet day. The usual large number of mortar-shells and rifle-grenades sent over by the enemy. Communication between the Battalion and supporting batteries needs improvement—too slow at present. We did some retaliation with our trench mortars and catapult, and our heavies did some good work.

At 9.38 a.m. the enemy got into the east end of G.10.[1] Bomb counter-attack was made, and enemy checked. We and the 9th R.B. sent out bombers to assist. All day bombing continued in G.10, without much advantage to either side. Our 9.2-inch howitzers did some useful work.

At 10 p.m. two green lights, followed by one red one, went up from the German lines; shelling on the R.B. trenches followed. Our line was quiet. Enemy appears to have evacuated most of his front line trenches opposite us, judging by his Véry lights. We are holding our front line very lightly, in case of bombardment or mine.

Casualties.—2 men killed; 2nd Lieut. Fenwick and 17 men wounded.

August 2nd.—An enemy working party of about 30 was seen just south of the railway in the afternoon, and was dispersed by our artillery. The Germans were working on their communications just north and south of the railway with great vigour last week, but were not observed on the 30th/31st—during the period of activity at Hooge.

At 10 p.m. the enemy apparently had a scare and sent up the S.O.S. signal. Their guns opened heavily on the R.B. trenches for

[1] War Office Map $\frac{1}{40000}$, Ypres Sheet, reproduced in this volume as Map No. 8, but without the squares.

Digitized by Google

about fifteen minutes. Their signal for guns was two green lights followed by one red one. They seem to change their signals very frequently. A large fire was observed east of Bellewaarde Farm. It is thought that the Germans burn their dead in these fires, or that they are used as guiding-points to troops advancing at night. The enemy has evidently more or less vacated the redoubt east of Railway Wood during the last two nights, no doubt due to the accurate shelling of our 6-inch howitzers and our trench mortars, which have put in a good many bombs at odd hours. The parapet of this redoubt has been much knocked about, and it is probably

RAILWAY WOOD.

a most unpleasant place in which to spend the night. Flares went up at night from the usual places, except at the point of the redoubt opposite H.20.

Casualties.—2 men killed; Lieut. Birch and 5 men wounded.

August 3rd.—At 3 a.m. the Germans sent up an unusual number of flares—even for them. They had evidently got wind up, and feared an attack. They have improved their communications between Eclusette and Hooge, and cannot be easily sniped now from H.17. Our observation and sniper's post in Railway Wood

Digitized by Google

August 8th–9th.—Lieut.-Colonel Cobb, being O.C. Left Sector (5th K.S.L.I. and 2 companies 9th R.B.), remained in the trenches when the Battalion was relieved. From 6 p.m. the 8th to 6 p.m. the 9th the enemy kept up an almost continuous bombardment, with much rifle-fire, which caused considerable damage and many casualties. Two platoons of the Battalion were sent up as reinforcements during the early morning of the 9th. On this day Captain Carfrae was employed as Divisional Observing Officer to watch the attack of the 6th Division on Hooge. He wore a French steel cap to protect his head, and, in a succession of messages, rendered very valuable information. One man was killed and 3 men were wounded in the Battalion to-day.

August 10th.—Comparatively quiet, but a good deal of shelling and bombing going on at Hooge. We were relieved by the 43rd Brigade to-night, and companies marched back independently to a field about half a mile west of Vlamertinghe—not much rest or comfort after 15 days in the trenches!

Casualties.—6 men wounded.

August 11th.—The Germans shelled Vlamertinghe morning and evening with 12-inch shells. Spent the day in sorting ourselves out a bit, but nothing can be put up in the field, because of enemy aircraft.

August 12th.—Captain Sanderson went sick to England, suffering from appendicitis. Colonel Cobb took over the command of the Brigade, the Brigadier having been invalided to England with dysentery. We now find a daily working party (1 officer and 50 men) for the redoubt near Hell-fire Corner, the party going by motor-bus to Ypres, and marching thence. Major Webb now commands the Battalion.

A draft of 30 N.C.O.'s and men arrived; amongst them several recovered from wounds.

August 13th.—Furnishing more working parties. Sent a man for a 3-day course in the care of carrier-pigeons.

Yesterday the whole Battalion had baths in Poperinghe and got clean shirts.

Very heavy rain most of to-day.

August 14th.—Colonel Cobb addressed the Battalion on the good work done during the last tour in the trenches, and made some special mentions.

Digitized by Google

Sent Lieut. Clarke and 3 men to a course of instruction in Toby Mortars; also one man to a 7-day carrier-pigeon course at the 6th Corps Pigeon Loft, Waton.

August 15th.—Church Parade at 10 a.m. Working parties as usual.

August 16th.—Company Training commenced.

Brigadier-General Dudgeon, C.B., took over command of the Brigade, vice Brigadier-General Markham, invalided to England. Lieut.-Colonel Cobb returned to the command of the Battalion. We have opened a canteen, which is very popular. Country beer 1½*d.*, English beer 5*d.*, a pint.

August 17th.—"Granny" (12-in. howitzers) fired 3 rounds in the morning, which stirred the Germans up to considerable activity, and they shelled the main road near Vlamertinghe, as well as north of our camp. Gas shells prevented our working parties from going out. Lieut. Lee sent to hospital sick.

Casualties during the last tour in the trenches: Officers, 5 wounded; other ranks, 27 killed and 157 wounded. Total all ranks, 189.

Total *casualties* since 20th May 1915 (date of landing): Officers, 1 killed, 1 missing, 11 wounded; other ranks, 62 killed, 2 missing, 345 wounded, 11 invalided. Total all ranks, 433.

August 18th.—The new Brigadier saw the companies at work in the morning, and the Corps Commander (General Sir J. Keir, K.C.B.) inspected the Battalion in the afternoon. Commenced various courses of instruction, etc., to be continued while the Battalion remains in the rest area; 5 men to Divisional Signalling and Linesman's Course. The Armourer-Sergeant instructs subaltern officers and platoon sergeants in the care and inspection of arms.

Lieut. Ridge-Jones went to hospital with supposed scarlet fever.

August 19th.—Major Webb, Captain Webb, and Lieut. Le Messurier went to look at trenches H. 13 to 17 (inclusive), which C and D Companies are to take over to-morrow night. Major Wood, Brigade-Major of our Brigade, gave us a 500 high-velocity sporting rifle, with solid nickel bullets, for use against "Copper-bottomed Fritz"—the German armoured aeroplane which is so fond of hovering over our trenches. A reward of £15 is offered to the man who brings down the first aeroplane! (The reward was never claimed!)

A draft of 88 N.C.O.'s and men arrived.

Digitized by Google

wass helled out by 77mm. yesterday morning. The 77mm. north of the railway is a source of continual damage to personnel and trenches. Range 3,400 metres. Yesterday it fired salvoes of 4 guns continuously from 4 to 5 a.m., and from 8.30 to 10.30 a.m., with a few rounds in the evening.

Mining by the enemy is said to be going on near Railway Barrier. The R.E. have been requested to superintend the construction of a listening shaft. One of our sentries reported that he saw, in the enemy's redoubt opposite Railway Wood, a man wearing a blue-topped cap with red band and shiny peak. Probably a Staff Officer. Regret he was not bagged.

Casualties.—4 men wounded.

August 4th.—Enemy's 77mm. batteries busy during the morning. At 3 p.m. he opened with "crumps" and "whizz-bangs" on our trenches. Our field-guns replied as far as the limited supply of ammunition permitted. A good many rifle-grenades and trench-mortar bombs were fired into H.21, to which we replied. From H.17 there have been observed on the enemy's parapet two round, spectacle-like tubes, which work on a pivot, and at times disappear. They are probably a periscope and overlook Hooge and the valley west of it.

Casualties.—2 men killed, and 9 wounded.

August 5th.—The enemy replied to our artillery bombardment this morning with heavy field-gun fire and some 5.9's. His mortars were also active, and ours replied. We put 5 mortar bombs into the enemy's redoubt opposite Railway Wood, as a working party was seen there. The situation to-day was altogether more lively than usual. The enemy was trench-mortaring and firing "whizz-bangs" all day. The latter from field-guns cause 95 per cent. of our casualties. We ourselves replied with trench mortars and catapult bombs. The enemy's aerial-torpedo mortar was located, and one of our 9.2-inch howitzers fired at it, the first shot, it. is believed, being a direct hit. I sincerely hope

MACHINE-GUN FIRING AT AEROPLANE.

Digitized by Google

so, as its projectile is very trying to the nerves.

Casualties.—2 men killed, and 5 wounded.

Major Webb received the following note from Captain G. Willoughby,[1] 9th R.B., commanding the company on our right :—

"May I take the opportunity which the present quiet offers of thanking you and all your Battalion for their unceasing kindness to us during the last few days ? Wounded men, stretcher-bearers, and everyone who came in contact with your officers or men, all say how very good your Battalion were in rendering them assistance in every conceivable way. As O.C. the Company on your immediate right, the Company and I wish especially to express our gratitude to you, and at the same time the hope that we may give the Boche a licking in the near future, in company with your Battalion."

FIRING A PERISCOPIC RIFLE.

August 6th.—Situation very lively. Soon after 5 a.m. thirteen *Minenwerfer* were put into our trench (H.21) and Railway Wood. Our artillery was turned on, but the enemy's fire did not slacken until our howitzers got to work. At about midday there was very heavy field-gun fire from the north, enfilading our trenches in Railway Wood. After about a quarter of an hour our artillery stopped it, but not before our trenches had been a good deal damaged.

At night we were relieved by the 5th K.S.L.I., and proceeded to positions in reserve : A and B in dug-outs near Hell-fire Corner; C in the ramparts of Ypres; D in G.H.Q. line. Relief completed by 12 midnight.

Casualties.—Killed, 7 men; wounded, Lieut. Bird and 17 men.

August 7th.—Have to be very careful not to give away positions of A, B, and D Companies to enemy aircraft, which are very active over this area. An officer always on duty watching for aeroplanes. Found carrying parties for rations and water for 5th K.S.L.I. One man was wounded.

[1] He was killed on the 9th August.

Digitized by Google

We now have no more than 19 officers all told—2 per company, and the remainder with H.Q., as four have gone sick, and the remainder have been wounded.

No more working parties after midday to-day.

August 20th.—Signallers, machine-gunners, and bombers went into the trenches by day. Companies paraded and marched off independently at 10 minutes' interval, commencing at 7 p.m. Marched to the Prison at Ypres, and thence to Dixmude Gate, on the north of the city, so as to avoid the Square, as the Germans

YPRES SQUARE.

are still putting 17-inch and 12-inch shells into the Cloth Hall and Cathedral. Moved on to the École, on the Menin Road, where guides from the 6th K.O.Y.L.I. were found. C and D Companies in trenches H.13–17, B Company to F.13, and A to G.H.Q. line. Battalion H.Q. in Brigade, Battle H.Q. dug-out, beside the railway, just east of Hell-fire Corner. Relief complete by 11.20 p.m. No fires are allowed in F.13 or G.H.Q. line for fear of observation by hostile aircraft. The night was very quiet.

2nd Lieut. Mitchell (promoted from the ranks of the 4th Battalion, T.F.) joined the Battalion for duty, and was posted to D Company.

Digitized by Google

August 21*st*.—About 8.30 a.m. a few crumps and some shrapnel fell on the western communication trench, near the Menin Road, and in Château Wood. Heavy rain in the morning.

Strength of the Battalion in the trenches: 16 officers and 712 other ranks. Left at Brigade Centre Camp, with the transport: 2 officers and 144 other ranks.

Between 3 and 3.30 p.m. there was a whizz-bang bombardment on the railway near Battalion H.Q., one shell making a hole in the roof of Captain Cobb's dug-out. This shelling was probably brought on by people moving about too much. For the remainder of the day and night the enemy was inactive except for a few trench mortars. We supply large working-parties at night for work in the trenches, and have parties at work in front of our parapet.

August 22*nd*.—Enemy aircraft very active over our lines to-day, otherwise very quiet, and less shelling than usual. Enemy shelled Ypres.

A and B Companies relieved C and D in the firing-line to-night; the signallers, machine-gunners, and bombers having been relieved by day.

Captain A. Webb, Lieut. Le Messurier, and 3 men were sent down sick to Brigade Centre.

At night we furnished a working party of 40 men for Railway Wood.

A draft of 20 N.C.O.'s and men arrived.

August 23*rd*.—There was a good deal of shelling by field-guns on both sides in the morning. The C.O., Second in Command, and Company Commanders of the 5th K.S.L.I. came to our H.Q. in the morning to arrange about relieving us. They had walked up the railway from Sally Port to Hell-fire Corner, which was madness, as it can be seen from Hooge. They were, of course, shelled, and lost two officers.

Relief begun at 8 p.m. and completed by 11 p.m. Beautiful moonlight night. Companies went back independently to huts just west of Vlamertinghe. Both this place and Ypres have been much knocked about by the recent shelling.

Lieut. Bleeck had the drum of his ear broken last night by mortar bursting within four yards of him, and 2 men are suffering from shell-shock.

The Germans are apparently using a new kind of phosphorous shell (mortar), which bursts in the air and emits a quantity of

Digitized by Google

smoke, as well as liquid, the latter burning small holes in clothing upon which it happens to fall; probably used for ranging.

One of our bombing corporals found a bomb full of red phosphorus in an old German dug-out in Wye Wood.

August 24th.—For the first time since the Battalion landed, officers have been granted leave to England. Two officers go at a time for 7 days. We have no information yet about leave for other ranks.

The Battalion found 400 men for carrying and working parties to-night.

August 25th.—Sent a working party of 50 N.C.O.'s and men, under Lieut. Beckingham, to make dug-outs in the ramparts of Ypres; to remain away probably for 3 or 4 weeks.

Lieut. Clarke and 5 men returned from a Toby Mortar course near Poperinghe.

4 officers and 380 men for carrying water, stores, etc., east of Ypres.

Since the Battalion landed in France we have received 6 officers and 430 other ranks as drafts. We are badly in want of a real rest period, for the purpose of reorganization and the instruction of young officers, N.C.O.'s, etc.

August 26th.—Hostile aeroplanes very active to-day, and bits of shells dropping all around the camp. This is probably a retaliation for our air-raid yesterday on the Forest of Houthulst, in which 70 aeroplanes took part.

Colonel Cobb went on 7 days' leave, and Major Webb took over command.

Instituted Permanent Order Book for each company, in which will be recorded all important standing orders issued since the Battalion left England.

420 men on carrying-parties east of Ypres.

August 27th.—C Company had 3 men killed and 5 wounded in Cambridge Road last night by whizz-bang. One of the men killed belonged to the transport; it seems wasteful to use specially trained men on carrying parties. To-day we had to find 426 men for the same duty, and were obliged to call on the H.Q. Company and employed men in order to make up the numbers. But we are getting short all round—15 officers under strength—Carfrae the only original Company Commander left, N.C.O.'s being taken for various outside billets; so, what with large nightly carrying parties and one thing

Digitized by Google

and another, it is impossible to do any drill, training of young officers, N.C.O.'s, etc. Still, the Battalion is in very good form, all things considered, and is the most efficient in the Brigade.

Heard the result of our aeroplane raid on Houthulst Forest—fires in 16 places, Bixschoote set on fire, also a train in Langemarck.

August 28th.—Perfect summer weather lately. Usual large carrying parties. A good deal of enemy shelling at night.

August 29th.—Rained all day. Divine Service at 11.30 a.m.

Two companies to the baths at Poperinghe, where the men had hot baths, change of shirts, and smoke-helmets re-damped. All officers, N.C.O.'s, and Machine-gun Section are now supplied with the new pattern tube smoke-helmet, which has glass eye-pieces and a rubber tube from which to exhale. The wearers are terrifying objects.

Draft of 3 men arrived from the Pioneer Company.

August 30th.—Day fine, evening wet. 2nd Lieut Le Messurier went sick (nervous break-down). Divisional leave regulations for all ranks received. We can send 3 or 4 on leave every 6th day, the allowance being 6 days to England, and 7 days to Ireland or Scotland.

August 31st.—2nd Lieut. Mitchell and 2 N.C.O.'s per company went for a course of bombing at the Brigade Grenade School.

The Battalion provided a working party of 4 officers and 250 other ranks to-night, to work on defences of White Château at Shrapnel Corner, near Hell-fire Corner, east of Ypres; 3 of the officers were taken by car to Ypres, the rest of the party went by train to point H.12 Central, just west of Ypres, and marched from thence. The train brought them back again to the starting-point, H.8.a.5.8., west of Vlamertinghe.

September 1st.—Apparently things are very quiet on the Ypres front now. The enemy shells Ypres and the road from there to Vlamertinghe regularly, and Vlamertinghe itself, and Poperinghe occasionally.

September 2nd.—Very wet afternoon. All the huts leak, as they are very badly constructed.

250 men on working party at night.

September 3rd.—Poured all day. Five officers went to VIth Corps H.Q. to study maps and learn the position of opposing lines. A Staff Officer took them in hand, gave them some valuable instruction, and discussed matters of considerable interest. He pointed out

Digitized by Google

what a bad position the Ypres salient is from a tactical point of view, being enfiladed from both flanks, but that it was necessary to hold it because it covers Ypres. Ypres itself is of no value to us, but it has acquired an unmerited value in the eyes of other nations, and to lose it would mean a loss of prestige. Sir John French, in his speech to the 28th Division after the second battle of Ypres, said that if Ypres had been taken by the enemy Italy would never have come into the war. It appears that the Germans have an even worse salient, and that if we make a push on Bellewaarde Farm and Hill 60 and succeed, we shall greatly improve our position.

We managed to find billets in farms for about 200 men whose huts are very leaky.

Colonel Cobb was due back from leave to-day, but is too ill to return.

Company and Platoon Commanders reconnoitred Redoubt L.4. Seminaire, between Vlamertinghe and Ypres, extending both sides of the main road and railway. In the event of a heavy attack on the VIth Corps, the Battalion (if in rest) will hold this post.

September 4th.—All ranks have now been issued with the tube pattern smoke-helmet as well as the ordinary one, and respirators have been withdrawn.

The Band of the 6th Somersets played to the Battalion in the evening.

September 5th.—Still raining. Too wet for Church Parade.

A draft of 30 N.C.O.'s and men arrived; only one of them had previously been with the Battalion.

The Battalion provided working parties, 200 men on L.4. Seminaire, and 100 on another redoubt (H.3.d.9.7) north-east of Ypres.

September 6th.—Fine. C and D Companies practised the organization and carrying out of an attack on trenches, which needs a deal of thought and practice.

Usual working parties at night.

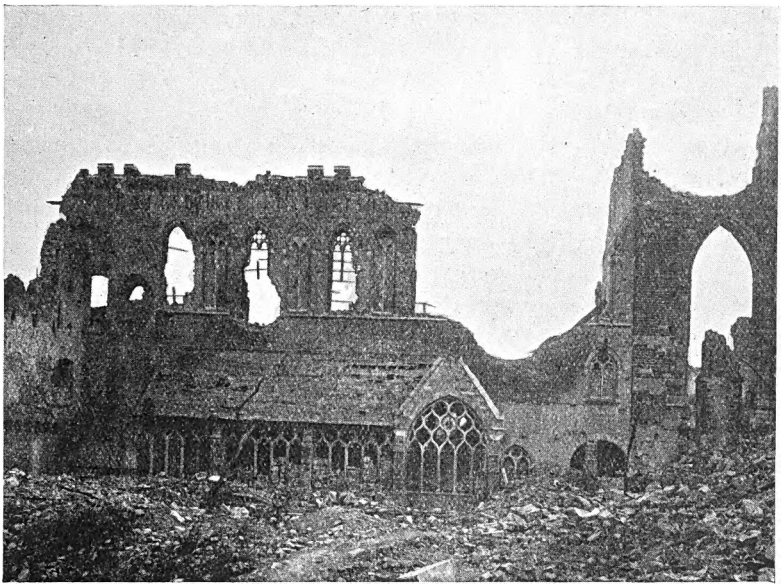
September 7th.—Company Commanders, with their Sergeant-Majors, also bombers, machine-gunners, and signallers, went up to the trenches by day, preparatory to relief. Companies marched off independently at 6 p.m. at 10 minutes' interval. Night very quiet. Went straight up Menin Road, past Hell-fire Corner, to the support trench P.2 and Wye Wood H.13–H.19. A Company, for H.19–H.18, went the old way viâ Cambridge Road. Relief of 6th

Digitized by Google

Somersets completed by 11 p.m., and their C.O. reported that it was excellently done.

September 8th.—The trenches are pretty bad. Recent rain has done a lot of damage. The soil, being a mixture of sand and clay, slips easily, and there are many miniature landslides. Communication trench knee-deep in water; support trenches very wet; fire trenches a bit drier.

Captain Cobb has been offered and has accepted the appointment of Brigade Signalling Officer, which is a loss for the Battalion.



YPRES CATHEDRAL.

September 9th.—Quiet. Completed sap from H.15 to H.16.

September 10th.—2nd Lieut. A. W. Wood joined the Battalion, from the 3rd (Reserve) Battalion.

September 11th.—The new trench from H.13 to Q.20 was shelled by field-guns from the right rear (Hill 60 direction). Enemy appear to be very busy at work on their Bellewaarde defences.

The Battalion was relieved at night by the 5th K.S.L.I., and went back in reserve: 1 company in F.13; 1 company in G.H.Q. line; 2 companies and H.Q. in L. Farm, just west of Hell-fire Corner.

Digitized by Google

The only time to do really effective reconnaissance from our trenches is from 4.30 a.m. to 5.30 a.m. At that time it is possible to do a large amount of direct observation with field-glasses. In the afternoon there is always shelling now.

While the Battalion was in the fire trenches, rations, water, and R.E. stores were brought each night up the Menin Road to F.2, and there dumped. Each company sent its own ration party to the dump, and C Company (Reserve) carried up R.E. stores to the 3 companies in the firing-line.

September 12th.—Enemy artillery less active to-day; he seems to have fewer guns or less ammunition than a month ago.

Rations, water, etc., for the Battalion in reserve are brought up on two trollies along the railway from Vlamertinghe, each trolly being drawn by 2 mules.

Working party of 50 men making dug-outs in the Ypres ramparts returned to the Battalion to-day. Another small party is now engaged in making 2 dug-outs (4 feet by 14) in H.17.a., for occupation by Battalion H.Q. during the coming show.

At night we had about 400 men on various working-parties.

Casualties.—2 men wounded; 1 man accidentally wounded (with bayonet).

September 13th.—About 400 men working at night.

September 14th.—Working-parties of about 300 men.

Casualties.—5 men wounded by trench-mortar.

During this tour in the trenches all ranks have worked splendidly, with the result that we have made all our own assembly trenches for the attack fixed for the 24th, and nearly all the necessary dug-outs, etc. We have had no rest since the 7th July, yet the spirit of the men and the discipline of the Battalion are excellent. The average daily sick, when the Battalion is in the trenches, is about 1 per diem; out of the trenches about 50 to 70, a great many of whom are suffering from slight injuries or old wounds, for which they will not go sick when in the line. I think that in many cases the wounded are sent back to the Battalion too soon from hospital.

September 15th.—Relieved in the trenches by the 6th Somersets (43rd Brigade). The Battalion was brought back by rail from the Asylum at Ypres to Poperinghe, and then marched to our rest camp near La Lovie Château, VIth Corps H.Q., arriving just after midnight.

Digitized by Google

September 16*th*.—The Corps Commander inspected the Battalion Transport in the afternoon—quite satisfactory. The Brigadier discussed future plans with the C.O. All leave stopped. A draft of 24 N.C.O.'s and men arrived.

PREPARATIONS FOR THE ATTACK ON BELLEWAARDE FARM.

September 17*th*.—Physical drill before breakfast. Rifle exercises, musketry, and bayonet-fighting in the afternoon.

All officers and N.C.O.'s visited the spit-locked plan of the German trenches around Bellewaarde Farm, laid down (life-size) from aeroplane photographs.

TRENCH CATAPULT.

Digitized by Google

At 5 p.m. General Plumer, the Army Commander, inspected the Battalion. In the evening there was a concert and a bonfire, the Band of the 6th Somersets playing to us.

Lieut. Maude attended a one-day Machine-gun Course at Wisque.

September 18th.—All companies at work on improving the spit-locked plan of the German trenches, each company doing the particular portion which it will attack, and C Company doing our present line.

In the afternoon companies carried out bayonet-fighting, musketry, drill, etc. The Machine-gun Section fired morning and afternoon.

Captain Cobb went up to the trenches early in the morning with the Divisional and Brigade Signalling Officers, to arrange about telephone wires.

September 19th.—Physical drill, 7.30 to 8 a.m., as usual.

The whole Battalion had hot baths and change of shirts in Poperinghe. Church Parade at 11.30 a.m.

I went up to the trenches to see the work going on, and to arrange for any more that appeared necessary. B and D Companies practised the attack on skeleton trenches in the afternoon.

We are not getting much rest, but hope for some after the show is over.

Forty men of the Battalion are allowed to go each night to the 6th Division "Fancies," and forty to the Cinema in Poperinghe. The former are taken in G.S. wagons, and the latter are brought out.

September 20th.—Reveille, 6.30 a.m.; sick parade, 7; breakfasts, 7.30. At 8.30 a.m. the Battalion paraded as strong as possible—signallers, machine-gunners, bombers, stretcher-bearers, and H.Q. orderlies parading as such.

Marched to the Brigade Bomb School, and practised assembly and attack in the skeleton trenches. First, the Battalion carried this out by itself, and then in conjunction with the 9th R.B., who will be on our left. The Commander of the Vth Corps, the G.O.C. 14th Division, and the Brigadier were present. Signallers practised running out telephone lines; trench-blocking parties also practised. (6 N.C.O.'s and men trench-blocking party, 18 N.C.O.'s and men wiring party, 10 N.C.O.'s and men dug-out party are trained daily, under the R.E., at the Bomb School.)

Digitized by Google

September 21*st*.—Hours of routine the same as yesterday. Companies paraded for physical drill and doubling 7–7.30 a.m., machine-gunners carrying their loads at the double. The Battalion paraded at 8.45 a.m., and marched to the Bomb School, where another attack on the skeleton trenches was carried out—and done well. Carrying parties and orderlies were practised in their special duties.

Bayonet-fighting in the afternoon in squads and at the dummies.

All men carrying wire-cutters are to wear a white strip of cloth sewn on the right shoulder above the red one (Battalion mark). Bombers' flags are green with red stripe; these are to indicate the progress of bombing parties.

Two excellent panorama photographs of the German lines in front of H.17.–16 and Sunken Road Barrier were received from the VIth Corps photographer.

September 22*nd*.—Physical drill and doubling, as yesterday.

The Battalion paraded as strong as possible at 10 a.m., two assaulting columns complete, and C Company in reserve. Strength on parade, 12 officers and 677 other ranks. Marched to the Bomb School, where Lord Kitchener watched us carry out the assembly for, and the attack on, Bellewaarde Farm skeleton trenches. The VIth and Vth Corps Commanders, the G.O.C. 14th Division, and the B.G. 42nd Infantry Brigade were also present, with a large Staff.

Kit inspections in the afternoon. Bayonets sharpened, oil-bottles filled, etc.

The Battalion paraded again at 6.30 p.m., and marched to the Bomb School, where the attack was practised in the darkness.

BATTALION OPERATION ORDERS, 22ND SEPTEMBER 1915.

The Battalion will proceed to the trenches to-morrow, the 23rd instant, as follows :—

1. Bombers, under Sergeant Adams, for the four posts, as detailed by Lieut. Escott. Lieut. Clarke and the Regimental-Sergeant-Major will proceed by motor-lorry from L.3 central, sheet 27, at 9 a.m. Lieut. Clarke and the R.S.M. to take over all special stores in the trenches in accordance with instructions received.

2. Signallers, as detailed by Captain Cobb, will proceed to the trenches in accordance with his orders. O.C. 14th Signal Company will arrange for conveyance of those who go in advance of Battalion.

Digitized by Google

3. A and C Companies, under the command of Lieut. Newman, will proceed by train leaving Poperinghe at 6 p.m. They will leave the Menin Gate at 7.40 p.m., with 5 minutes' interval between companies, and proceed, viâ Menin Road and Cambridge Road, to occupy trenches as follows : *A Company*, H.18.a., 18, 18.s. and half H.17.a., 17, 17.s. *C Company*, New Trench, 17 (*d*) and half H.17.a., 17, 17.s. Sergeant Culwick will go with A Company, and report to the R.S.M. in the trenches.

H.Q. Company (consisting of signallers and bombers not already detailed, machine-gunners, H.Q. orderlies, stretcher-bearers, and pioneers and *B* and *D Companies*) will parade in camp at 6.15 p.m., and proceed from Poperinghe by train, leaving at 8 p.m. B Company will occupy dug-outs in the Ramparts of Ypres; remainder will leave Menin Gate at 10 p.m., and proceed to dug-outs at L. Farm. Companies will proceed to their trenches and positions as soon as possible after detrainment.

Signallers, bombers, and stretcher-bearers detailed to companies will parade and go to the trenches with those companies.

4. Bomb-throwers and bomb-carriers will be equipped as follows :—

(*a*) Throwers, no rifles or entrenching tools, but armed with cudgels.

(*b*) Carriers, no entrenching tools or ammunition in the pouches, but armed with rifles and bayonets, and 10 rounds in the magazine.

5. All N.C.O.'s and men will carry great-coats rolled. No packs or waterproof sheets will be taken to the trenches. All spare kits will be packed in the packs, and stacked by companies outside the Q.M. Stores by 4 p.m. Officers' valises and spare kit stacked separately by the same hour.

6. Machine-guns of the Battalion will be taken in limbered G.S. wagons to L. Farm to-morrow night, arriving there about 10.30 p.m., and these wagons will take back from there 16 boxes S.A.A. and 100 shovels to B Company in Ypres Ramparts. O.C. B Company will arrange dump for these, and detail a N.C.O. to meet the transport on its return to Ypres, and show the N.C.O. in charge the position of the dump.

Machine-guns and rifle batteries of the 43rd Infantry Brigade will not be relieved.

Digitized by Google

7. All ammunition, trench stores, tools, and bombs will be taken over from companies relieved, and lists of stores, etc., taken over will be sent to the Adjutant as soon as possible after relief.

8. The rifles and ammunition of bomb-throwers and the entrenching tools and ammunition (less 10 rounds) of bomb-carriers will be returned to the Q.M. Stores to-morrow morning.

9. The 18 N.C.O.'s and men of C Company, for wiring party, will parade with B Company, and will remain with that company until 24th September. On that date they will report at 10 p.m. to O.C. 62nd Field Company R.E. at the road junction 1.8.a.9.3.

10. A Roll of N.C.O.'s and men not accompanying the Battalion to the trenches will be issued to O.'s C. companies to-morrow.

11. Reserve stretcher-bearers, under Sergeant Hiorns, will be in a dug-out in the centre bay of H.18. on the night of the 24th/25th September.

September 23rd.—Reveille at 7 a.m. Voluntary Holy Communion at 8 a.m. Breakfast, 8.30. Sick Parade, 9.30. Orderly Room, 10.30 a.m.

Previous to Orderly Room, the C.O. addressed all N.C.O.'s, reminding them how much depended on them in this war, and more especially now that we are so short of officers; this is our first chance of really getting at the Boche; no thought of failure, etc.

In accordance with yesterday's Battalion Orders, Lieut. Clarke and the Regimental Sergeant-Major (to take over special stores), 22 bombers under Sergeant Adams, and 12 signallers left at 9 a.m. by motor-bus for the trenches.

At 4.15 p.m. A and C Companies paraded, and marched to Poperinghe, and went by train to the Asylum at Ypres, thence marching to trenches H.18., H.17., and trenches in rear, and relieving the 10th D.L.I. (43rd Brigade).

At 6.15 p.m. B, D, and H.Q. Companies paraded, and marched to Poperinghe, and then trained to Ypres. B Company in the new dug-outs under the Ramparts; D and H.Q. in L. Farm. The train consisted of open trucks, to hold 1,200 men packed like sardines, and a brake van for officers. The journey up was quite quiet.

It began to drizzle at 8 p.m. The enemy sent over a large number of 77mm. and 4.2-inch shrapnel into L. Farm and the field in which it stands, but every shell was a "dud."

Digitized by Google

The following is a summary of the Secret Operation Orders, received to-day from the 42nd Infantry Brigade, for the ATTACK ON BELLEWAARDE FARM :—

1. The 14th Division will capture the Bellewaarde Farm position on September 25th.

The 3rd Division will capture the enemy's position south of the Eclusette stream on September 25th.

2. The object of the attack is to seize and hold the line of trenches contained in the area, of which the southern boundary is from the Eclusette stream, where it cuts the enemy's trench between points C.93 and C.85, thence by D.16 to D.29.

(Reference.—Special Trench Map 1/5000.)

Eastern Boundary, D.29 viâ 09, A.80, 72 to A.64.

Northern Boundary, A.64, viâ A.24 to A.04.

Western Boundary, A.04, A.24, A.42, A.40, C.58 viâ C.77 to the Eclusette stream.

The attack will not be pushed beyond these limits.

The possibility of later extending the position on the north and capturing trenches A.64, 47, 27, 08 will be borne in mind.

3. The attack will be carried out by the 42nd Infantry Brigade and the following attached troops: 62nd Field Company R.E.; 27th, 29th, and 39th Trench Howitzer Batteries.

4. *Objectives.*—The Brigade will attack as follows :—

(*a*) 5th Shropshire Light Infantry and 29th T.H. Battery will capture the section of the enemy's trenches contained in the area Eclusette stream, D.16, D.29, viâ D.09, A.80, C.79 exclusive, C.68, C.58 exclusive, C.86 to the Eclusette stream.

(*b*) 5th Oxford and Bucks Light Infantry will capture the enemy's trenches contained in the area C.58, C.68, C.79, A.80, A.71, A.72 exclusive, A.42 exclusive, A.40, C.58.

(*c*) 9th Rifle Brigade and 39th T H. Battery will capture the enemy's trenches contained in the area A.42, A.72, A.64, A.24, A.04.

5. *Distribution.*—To be completed by 1 a.m. September 25th. 5th K.S.L.I.: H.15.a., A.16.a., and support trenches in rear.

5th Oxford and Bucks: H.17.a., H.18.a., and support trenches in rear.

9th R.B. : H.19, H.20, and support trenches in rear.

Digitized by Google

Brigade Reserve: 9th K.R.R.C. in trenches just west of Railway Wood; and 6th Somersets, 1 company holding line A.1, H.22, R.2.3.4.5; 3 companies G.H.Q., X.1, X.1.a. and F.13. Battalion H.Q., X.1.a.

The above have been quoted in full, but the remaining paragraphs will be given in outline only, since everything of importance is dealt with in the Battalion Operation Orders, issued by Major W. F. R. Webb, on the 24th September.

Paragraph 6 of the Brigade orders referred to the work of the artillery and the time of the assault, which was fixed for 4.20 a.m. At 4.19 a.m. a mine was to be fired under A.04, and at 4.20 a.m. the guns were to lift on to a line half-way between the German first and second line for 1 minute. But the infantry were to assault at 4.20 a.m. exactly, whatever happened.

Para. 7.—Ordered wire to be cut by midnight 24th/25th.

Para. 8.—Consolidation of positions when captured.

Para. 9.—Work to be carried out by trench howitzers and machine-guns.

Para. 10.—Dumps of stores, ammunition, etc.

Para. 11.—Every man ordered to carry 220 rounds S.A.A. (except bombers), 4 sand-bags, 1 iron ration; 50 per cent. of the men to carry shovels.

Para. 12.—German screens, and bombers' flags.

Para. 13.—After capture of position the line to be thinned out as much as possible.

Para. 14.—Situation of battle police-posts, for dealing with stragglers.

Para. 15.—Wounded.

Para. 16.—German prisoners.

Para. 17.—Maps and documents not to be taken into action.

Para. 18.—Control of traffic to and from trenches.

Para. 19.—List of special instructions issued separately to C.O.'s.

Para. 20.—Advanced Brigade H.Q. to be established at I.10.a.8.6. at 6 p.m. 24th September.

September 24th.—Intense bombardment from our artillery began at 3.30 a.m., and lasted for an hour. There is now a field battery on either side of L. Farm and one in rear. They make a horrible noise, as they are all engaged most of the day in cutting enemy wire entanglements 2,400 yards away. Heavy bombardment by our guns of all sorts continued throughout the day, and some reply

Digitized by Google

by the enemy. One H.E. shell pitched in one of D Company's dug-outs, killing 1 man and wounding 6 men. Our own 6-inch Battery put about a dozen shells or more into H.17, H.16, and H.16.s. Four were dropped in the H.Q. dug-out of the 5th K.S.L.I. Three guns appeared to fire correctly, but the fourth gun was persistently short. Result: about 21 of our men were killed and wounded, and about 15 of the 5th K.S.L.I., and some damage was done to the trenches. The F.O.O. of the Battery was killed.

The following Operation Orders for to-morrow's attack were issued to-day :—

BATTALION OPERATION ORDERS, 5TH OXFORD AND BUCKS LIGHT INFANTRY, 24TH SEPTEMBER 1915.

1. 42nd Infantry Brigade will seize the Bellewaarde Farm position.

2. The Regiment will form the centre battalion in the attack; 5th K.S.L.I. on the right, and 9th R.B. on the left.

3. DISTRIBUTION as under :—

Left Column, under Captain Carfrae :—

B Company, with 1 Platoon of A Company, and 1 machine-gun, objective 12.a.72 exclusive to 12.a.71 inclusive in second German line; 12.a.42 exclusive to 12.a.40 inclusive in first German line.

Right Column :—

D Company, with 2 Platoons of A Company and 1 machine-gun, objective 12.a.71 exclusive to 12.a.80 inclusive in second German line; 12.a.40 exclusive to 12.c.58 inclusive in first German line.

(12.c.68 and 12.c.79 are in this column area.)

Reserve.—1 Platoon of A Company and C Company.

4. DISTRIBUTION BEFORE ASSEMBLY :—

Left Column in depth, H.18.a, H.18, H.18.s, part of H.17.s north.

Right Column, H.17.a, H.17, H.17.s, patrol trench, if required.

Reserve, A Company Platoon, H.17.s. (north); C Company, new trench behind H.17.s, H.16.d, to Mud Lane.

5. DISTRIBUTION IN ASSEMBLY :—

Left Column, 2 Platoons of B Company, front line. Remainder in Company Column.

Digitized by Google

At the commencement of bombardment, get out through gaps in H.19 into field north of H.19; first line level with bomb-post 4.18.a; lie down.

Right Column, half an hour before bombardment starts, assemble in assembly trenches H.17.a and H.18.a.

Reserve move to H.17 and H.18, and south end of H.17.a; Platoon of A Company on left.

6. ACTION :—

The first line of both columns will sweep forward to the German second line. One platoon left column will swing into Bellewaarde Farm and search for machine-guns. One platoon left column will enter Bellewaarde from the south, and arrange fire to keep down machine-guns if necessary. The machine-gun with the left column will also pay special attention to the ruins of the farm.

Reserve Platoon A Company will dig out communication trench along Hedge Sap. C Company will dig out the International Trench, and furnish working parties, under the Regimental Sergeant-Major, to carry up stores in the following order: (*a*) bombs and tools, (*b*) water, (*c*) ammunition; (*d*) sand-bags, (*e*) rations.

Two machine-guns will be on the alert to counter enemy machine-guns, and will take position in German second line.

All trenches leading to front and flank will be blocked by bombers and blocking parties until communication is established.

There will be special bombing parties as follows: Lieut. Escott and 10 men down Hedge Sap; Corporal Stent and 9 men down International Trench.

The third lines of columns will remain in German first line unless required for reinforcement.

7. Position won will be immediately consolidated, and communication established between the two enemy lines, by platoons detailed by O.C.'s Columns.

8. The mine at A.04 will be exploded at 4.19 a.m.

The assault will be launched at 4.20 a.m. regardless of mine or artillery.

Artillery bombardment will commence at 3.50 a.m. At 4.20 a.m. it will lift for one minute to mid-way between lines. At 4.21 a.m. it will lift for 2 minutes on to second enemy line, and thence at 4.23 a.m. to enemy third line, and form a barrage.

Trench mortars will fire smoke-balls, to cover consolidation.

Digitized by Google

9. Every man, except bombers and stretcher-bearers, to carry 220 rounds S.A.A., 4 sand-bags, and iron rations. Every third man of the front line will carry a shovel. Every other man of the second and third lines will carry a shovel.

10. German artillery screens are not to be removed. Bombers' progress will be indicated by their flags.

11. Occupation of Captured Line.—Unless heavy casualties render other dispositions necessary, captured line will be held as follows :—

B Company in depth on front 72 to 71, and 42, 40 in first enemy line.

D Company, 71 to 80 inclusive, 68 and 59 to 58 in first enemy line.

1 *Platoon, A Company*, 40 to 59.

Remainder of A Company, H.18.a, H.18, H.18.s.

C Company, H.17.a, H.17, H.17.s.

Men should be distributed in C.7.s, also in captured position in order to avoid loss by shell-fire.

12. Constant reports by telephone, messenger, or semaphore, to H.Q. in H.17.a.

13. Prisoners to be evacuated by A Company viâ Mud Lane to G.H.Q., and handed over to Reserve Cavalry Division. Receipts to be taken.

14. Medical Aid Post at Birr Cross Roads. All walking cases to be evacuated, by Mud Lane and Castle Street, to Ypres Asylum. Stretcher cases to be collected in H.18 and evacuated, by Cambridge Road, to Birr Cross Roads by night.

15. Brigade H.Q. at I.10.a.8.6 from 6 p.m. 24th September. Battalion H.Q. at H.17.a.

16. Special precautions to be taken against counter-attack with gas.

17. Red and green rockets will be issued to each Battalion H.Q., and, when sent up simultaneously, indicate S.O.S.

18. Watches of O.C. Companies will be synchronized with the Adjutant at 12 midnight 24th/25th September.

W. F. R. Webb, Major,
Comdg. 5th Oxf. and Bucks Lt. Infy.

Digitized by Google

At 4.45 p.m. the following message was received :—

"The Major-General commanding the 14th (Light) Division has informed the B.G.C. that the operation in which we are engaged is only a part of a very large offensive movement of the Allied Armies. All ranks must be informed of this as late as possible to-night. The B.G.C. feels sure that the magnificent courage and determination of all ranks will be additionally stimulated by the above information." Message ends.

A and C Companies up in the firing-line have had rather a rough time of it to-day—most trying to be shelled in cold blood by one's own guns !

Heavy whizz-bang bombardment about L. Farm at 5.45 p.m. C.O. and Adjutant proceeded to Battle H.Q. in H.17.a (front line trench), arriving there at 8.30 p.m., followed by B, D, and H.Q. at 11.30 p.m.

The following message was received from G.H.Q. : "Chief wishes troops to be informed that he feels confident that they will realize how much our success in the forthcoming operations depends upon the individual effort of each officer, N.C.O., and man." Message ends.

At 10 p.m. Lieut. Newman was shot through the leg while superintending the cutting of our wire near Hedge Sap. This leaves only 9 officers actually with the attacking columns, and he is a great loss.

Patrols report that enemy wire has been very effectively destroyed by our artillery.

By 12 midnight the Battalion was all assembled ready to move out to the attack. The Adjutant went to the H.Q. of the 9th R.B. and 9th K.R.R.C. in the French General's dug-out at 11.50 p.m., and synchronized his watch with Corps time.

September 25th.—The following is the official report on the events of this day sent in by Major W. F. R. Webb, commanding the Battalion :—

5TH OXFORD AND BUCKS LIGHT INFANTRY. REPORT ON ACTION OF THE 25TH SEPTEMBER 1915.

The Regiment was ordered to attack Bellewaarde Farm at 4.20 a.m. on the 25th September.[1]

[1] This was a subsidiary attack in connexion with the Battle of Loos, a description of which is given earlier in this volume. See page 212.—ED.

Digitized by Google

The *Right Column*, under Captain Barwell, occupied its assembly trenches in H.17.a and H.18.a before the bombardment started. These trenches were not much shelled. The first line penetrated about point 12.c.58, followed by the second line. A machine-gun opened from the German sap head, running from 12.c.58 to H.16, but was quickly bombed out of action. The wire was successfully destroyed by the artillery. This column secured the objective allotted to it, viz., 12.a.71 and 80, also 12.c.69 and 68. There were only a few Germans left in the first line, and they were despatched. Captain Barwell himself, with some bombers, cleared the ruins of Bellewaarde, where a machine-gun was found facing south. He also cleared some dug-outs in the region of point 12.a.71.

By 5.20 a.m. the line was fairly established on this front, and communication established with the 5th K.S.L.I. on the right, but I received no report by runner that the enemy's first line and works south of Bellewaarde were captured until 6 a.m.

At 6.25 a.m. I had a report that the second line was secured.

An attempt was made to push up bombs and ammunition by the communication trench from H.16 to 58, but at 7 a.m. it was reported that German snipers were very active from the direction of 12.c.6.7. These were some men evidently left behind, in the advanced sap, by the 5th K.S.L.I. attack, or who had come up from Eclusette. I asked the K.S.L.I. to have them bombed out.

I received a message from Lieut. Maude (timed 7 a.m.) that our men were holding the German second line and had dug in, and that 3 machine-guns had been captured, but that communication was not established on the left. He asked for a machine-gun to be sent. The sniping on the communication trench from the south was not going on at this time. I sent a message telling Lieut. Maude to establish connexion with my left column, and told him to look out for his left, as I had heard that the 9th R.B. had lost the second line again.

At 7.15 a.m. I sent a message, through the 9th K.R.R.C. at French dug-out, to inform the Brigade of the situation, as I had no direct communication. Previous to this I had sent a message by runner to the Culvert Post. Communication was very slow and much interrupted.

I sent up another machine-gun at this time, as it appeared that it was urgently required, and this gun was got up in spite of the snipers on the communications. The gunner was shot while setting up the gun, and it did not go into action.

Digitized by Google

At 7.45 a.m. I heard by runner that the Germans were advancing on the right and left fronts, and asked for S.O.S. to the Forward Observation Officer and through French dug-out. The F.O.O. tried to flag it, and the Signal Officer also lamped it. The guns opened a few minutes later, but it was too late. At 7.45 a.m. I asked for 2 platoons from the 9th K.R.R.C. and some bombers. I received a report, timed 7.50 a.m., that we were having to retire on our right, as the Germans were developing a strong attack, and that the enemy was also advancing from Bellewaarde Farm (Map 8).

Lieut. Maude came in at about 8 a.m. wounded.

The German attack developed rapidly. The enemy advanced from the north of Bellewaarde and from the wood east of the line (Dead Man's Bottom) along the north side of the Étang. The 5th K.S.L.I. and our men were forced to retire, and only just avoided being cut off by the enemy from Bellewaarde, who advanced in the open in front of H.17.a, their right appearing for a minute or two on the crest of the hill. Fire was opened at once by all the spare men in the trench (orderlies, etc.), and the enemy got into his front-line trench again. I saw about 50 Germans at this point. Our men suffered heavily in the retirement. I reported to the Brigade, by telephone through French dug-out, and by runner, that I was holding the original line with about 200 men. Two platoons of the 9th K.R.R.C. came into H.17 and H.18. I reorganized the defence as soon as shelling got less, and it became evident that the enemy did not purpose a further advance. According to report, our men accounted for 60 or 70 Germans in the attack, and dropped many more with rifle-fire in the counter attack.

The *Left Column* was to move out at the start of the bombardment and lie down in a field to the north of the Hedge Sap in an old trench and a hollow. It appears that they were spotted moving out, or that the Germans had reason to be suspicious of this piece of ground, for it was heavily shelled. The enemy sent up flares just after our men began to move out. At all events this column suffered very heavy casualties from shell-fire, and were also shaken by the explosion of the mine, the débris of which fell amongst them. According to the statements of men who returned, when they did advance a machine-gun opened fire on them, and only 8 men of the first line reached the German lines with some of the 9th R.B. They mistook their direction also, and went more towards the line 04–24 than 41, which was their objective. Only about 7 men of the second line reached the German trench, but were unable to get

Digitized by Google

in, and so took cover in shell-holes outside. The third line was almost destroyed. A few men went with the column of the 9th R.B.

The above facts account for the gap in the line to the north of Bellewaarde and the absence of news. Orderlies whom I sent returned saying that they could not get through. A bombing party which went up the Hedge Sap has not been heard of; there were many dead bodies in the trench. Carrying parties with bombs started up this way also, but were wiped out. These parties never succeeded in getting anyone back to let me know the state of things on that side.

From the reports of the men who went with the 9th R.B. it appears that they went into the line 04–24, and worked down to a redoubt in German second line. It does not appear that anyone went to the line 40–42 or beyond, as the men say that there was no one on their right, but that they bombed along the trench for some distance. They returned by the Crater, having to bomb their way back.

Men working in the communication trench up the Hedge Sap said that the sniping was very hot from the communication trench connecting 41 with the German second line, and that it was from there that the carrying parties were hit. The German counter attack from the left evidently came by this trench and reoccupied Bellewaarde after it was cleared by Captain Barwell.

From reports of men, our shell-fire had considerably damaged the German first line and dug-outs in the second line, especially south of Bellewaarde and about point 71. A derelict machine-gun and two dead gunners were seen on the parapet near the farm. A party of 40 or 50 Germans who had been working between their lines had been caught by the bombardment and totally destroyed. Thirteen prisoners, including an officer, were captured by our Right Column, but I understand that some of them were killed in the Sunken Road while being brought down.

W. F. R. WEBB, Major,
Comg. 5th Oxf. and Bucks Lt. Infty.

The above report contains everything that there is to tell. The failure of the Brigade to hold the line after it had been captured was due to our Left Column (B Company and 1 platoon of A) being almost wiped out by enemy artillery fire while lying out in the open in front of H.19 prior to the assault. Possibly, enemy patrols had observed the gaps cut in our wire by which the Left Column was to go out; at any rate, they put all their guns on to this spot and

Digitized by Google

scarcely shelled south of the Hedge Sap at all. The consequence was that Captain CARFRAE and Lieuts. ESCOTT, CLARKE, and MITCHELL were all killed, and Lieuts. Wood, Walter, and Beckingham were wounded before the assault reached the German lines. Apparently, only two Corporals were left to lead the attack, and about 20 men to see it through. These survivors were a good deal unnerved by the explosion of the mine close to them (under the enemy redoubt opposite Sunken Road), and when they started off they went too much to the left and joined the 9th R.B.

The Right Column (Captain Barwell) reached their objective, the enemy second line, and held it until forced back by a very strong counter attack.[1] Captain Barwell and Lieuts. Maude and Lee were wounded, and nearly all the N.C.O.'s were killed or wounded. Prisoners told us that they had been expecting our attack for three days, which accounts for the strength and rapidity of their counter-attack with fresh troops.

The 5th K.S.L.I., on our left, also gained the German second line, but I do not think that the 9th R.B. ever got as far. The gap in our centre was fatal, and the enemy grasped that fact at once. As far as one could see, every German was armed with bombs. The original enemy in the position showed practically no fight at all. Captain Barwell killed one with his stick.

The Battalion's losses were 13 (out of 15) officers and 463 (out of 767) other ranks.

We retired and held our original line until relieved at midnight by the 10th D.L.I. The spirit of the men all through was admirable, in spite of heavy losses and drenching rain.

The casualties amongst the officers of the Battalion were as follows :—

Killed.

Captain C. F. K. CARFRAE.
2nd Lieut. L. W. SWEET-ESCOTT.
2nd Lieut. H. F. CLARKE.
2nd Lieut. L. S. LEE.
2nd Lieut. J. N. G. MITCHELL.

Died of Wounds.

2nd Lieut. T. F. H. FREMANTLE.
2nd Lieut. A. W. WOOD.

[1] Estimated by Observers of the 3rd Division, on our right, to have been made with about 1,000 men.

Digitized by Google

Wounded.

Captain N. F. BARWELL.
Captain H. H. COBB.
Lieut. E. W. MAUDE.
Lieut. L. S. M. NEWMAN.
2nd Lieut. W. T. BECKINGHAM.
2nd Lieut. C. H. WALKER.

Captain Barwell's report on the work of his Column was as follows :—

"Attack launched at 4.20 a.m. precisely; first line got away well in right direction. I personally moved with centre of second line, which broke more into groups from the first. No obstacles were encountered, and no trouble from artillery fire. A machine-gun, somewhere in enemy's first line close to junction of International Trench, was firing at short range as our line approached. I think it had only just come into action. I opened fire with three rifles from the nearest shell-hole, and one bomb was thrown at it. This put it out of action, and killed a greater part of the detachment. On reaching front-line trench I found it unoccupied. In the triangle to my right three Germans surrendered and one officer (wounded). In the largest group of dug-outs, which were much destroyed, a number of the enemy were seen taking cover. I directed bombs to be thrown into them at close range and killed them. Ten yards farther up the trench going east, Germans made a show of resistance and were shot. At this point a number of K.S.L.I. made their way into the trenches from the right, but they were an isolated group and had no information. The light was still too bad at 5.30 a.m. to see development of attack on my right, nor on reaching my final position could I or Sergeant Godfrey (who then joined me with 8 or 10 rifles) see anything of B Company. Eight or ten Germans were encountered going up these trenches, and were either shot or captured. By 5.45 a.m. I had occupied the required ground, and had taken one machine-gun and 11 prisoners. I last saw the enemy retreating north-east down a short communication trench, along which I expected to find B Company advancing. I was shot by one of these Germans.[1] I placed Sergeant Godfrey in charge of the farther line, directing one squad to face half right until the K.S.L.I. made good and joined hands. I reinforced Sergeant Godfrey from the trenches

[1] Captain Barwell received a second wound a little later.

Digitized by Google

behind, and placed the second defence line in position. I sent a machine-gun which I found at the top of the International Trench into Sergeant Godfrey's line with orders to sweep the right front. When I left, with a number of prisoners and other wounded, some of the enemy still lurked in the right International Trench. I had no report from D Company (Lieut. Lee), but it is understood that Lieut. Mitchell commands."

September 26th.—Only about 180 N.C.O.'s and men, the C.O., and the Adjutant came back out of the trenches, and went by train to Poperinghe, thence marching to the camp we had last been in near La Lovie Château. We have now to face the ordeal of starting again from where we were a year ago, but, like the hero of "Duffer's Drift," we have past experiences to help us.

Lieut. Bleeck and 4 new officers (Lieut. Tuck and 2nd Lieuts. Robinson, T. Foreshew, and C. Foreshew) met us on our return to camp.

September 27th.—Organized the companies and posted the new officers. All of them attended for instruction at the Bomb School in the morning. The Vth Corps Commander (General Allenby) addressed the Battalion in the afternoon, and told the men what splendid work they had done, and how proud he was to have had the 14th Light Division under his command for the attack.[1] He said that never before had troops been so heavily shelled and decimated and yet advanced as we had done. We might think that we had lost, but in reality we had taken part in a great victory and in the biggest battle in the history of the world; for by our determined attack we had held large forces of the enemy to the Ypres salient, and so prevented them from assisting farther south, where our 1st Army and the French have broken through so successfully.

September 28th.—Kit inspection. Company drill, to get the men used to their platoons and sections.

Two authenticated cases of German brutality :—

(1) They deliberately shot one of our wounded men who went up to their parapet in mistake for ours.

(2) They have left one of our wounded officers lying on their parapet for two days, and will not allow us to go near him, but are leaving him to die by inches.

[1] We were lent by the VIth Corps to the Vth Corps for the attack.

Digitized by Google

September 29th.---Visited by the VIth Corps Commander, who addressed the Battalion on parade, and thanked all ranks for their very gallant conduct in the attack on Bellewaarde. He said that all the 42nd Brigade had done well, but this Battalion in particular, and he expressed his great sorrow at our heavy losses.

The following Battalion Order was issued by Major W. F. R. Webb :—

"The Commanding Officer desires to compliment all ranks on their gallant behaviour in the attack on Bellewaarde on the 25th. The determination and gallant bearing of the Right Column which led to primary success, and the courage with which the men of the Left Column went on after being practically destroyed by shell-fire, are incidents of which the Regiment may well be proud, and are worthy of the old traditions of the Corps. The Commanders of the Vth and VIth Corps have already complimented the Regiment on its achievements. That the Regiment had to give up the captured trenches was in no way due to the men, but was forced by the tactical situation. It is to be hoped that on the next occasion better fortune will attend the Regiment, and that permanent success will crown our efforts.

"Those who have fallen let us remember with honour, not with regret, for they fell in a gallant fight.

"The following officers, N.C.O.'s, and men have been recommended for reward :—

Captain N. F. BARWELL. Lieut. E. W. MAUDE. Lieut. L. S. LEE.

10889 Co.-Sgt.-Maj. F. GODFREY.	17844 Private H. W. LOCKWOOD.
7654 Sergeant R. ADAMS.	10910 Lance-Corporal A. SMART.
10908 Sergeant C. A. HILL.	10748 Corporal W. BUTTERY.
10464 Private H. A. DUESTER.	10968 Private E. BRICKNELL.
10788 Lance-Corpl. R. STEVENS.	10277 Private W. W. JOHNSON."

As far as we have been able to find out at present our casualties on the 24th and 25th September were :—

2 Officers killed. 3 Officers missing, believed killed. 8 Officers wounded. 3 Co.-Sergts.-Maj., 3 Sergeants, 45 other ranks killed. 15 Sergeants and 161 other ranks wounded. 2 Sergeants and 212 other ranks missing.

Total of all ranks, 454.

It is hoped, however, that some of the missing may have been picked up wounded.

Digitized by Google

September 30th.—Companies at drill, musketry, bayonet-fighting, etc. Instruction for bombers and machine-gunners to replace casualties. Difficult not to be depressed by finding the Battalion put back a year by one action, for it is necessary to start again almost at the beginning, with no captains to command companies, only 4 junior subalterns, and hardly any effective N.C.O.'s of standing or experience.

The C.O. went on leave, and I assumed command of the Battalion.

Two enemy aeroplanes flew over the camp in the evening.

Lord Kitchener's congratulatory message to Sir John French was published in a Special Order of the Day.

By dint of searching in all the Field Ambulances for miles round, we are gradually reducing the number of our missing.

October 1st.—Companies at drill, etc. Told that Lord Kitchener was so impressed by the attack which he witnessed being carried out on the skeleton trenches, that he had called for a full and detailed account of the training for use at home.

The camp was visited by the VIth Corps Commander and the Divisional Commander.

Hurricane lamps were issued; also straw, in lieu of tent-boards, which are not available.

Corrected casualty return for operations of 24th–25th September:—

Officers.—Killed 2, wounded 8, missing 3. Total 13.

Other Ranks.—Killed 49, wounded 262, missing 141. Total 452.

Total of all ranks, 465.

October 2nd.—2nd Lieuts. Sebastian and Rodocanachi (both of the 3rd Hampshire Regiment) joined the Battalion for duty yesterday.

Letter received from the Division saying that Captain Carfrae, had he lived, would have received the Military Cross for the cool and efficient manner in which he carried out his duties as observation officer for the Division during the Hooge operations of the 9th August.

Sir John French's Special Order of the Day, relating to the operations of and since the 25th, was received and circulated to companies.

Digitized by Google

Further search amongst the Field Ambulances had reduced our original list of missing very considerably. The corrected casualty return for 24th–25th September is now as follows :—

Officers.—Killed 1, died of wounds 1, wounded 8, missing 3.

Other Ranks.—Killed 50, died of wounds 6, wounded 262, missing 136.

Total of all ranks, 467.

October 3rd.—Church Parade at 10 a.m.

A draft of 200 N.C.O.'s and men arrived from the 9th Battalion. A fine lot of young troops with 8 months' training, and about 6 men who had been with the Battalion before.

October 4th.—Route march, drills, etc.

Eight officers arrived for duty with the Battalion : Lieut. H. V. Smith, 2nd Lieuts. Mellis, Bowman, Statt, Farrer, Gray, Beaver, Barrell.

A concert was held in the barn in the evening; the Band of the 6th Somersets performed, but arrived late, as Poperinghe was being shelled.

October 5th.—Rained all day. Great discussion about building huts for recreation-rooms, drying-rooms, etc. The idea is that we shall build them ourselves of mud and wattle, and we are to make a start to-morrow with the aid and guidance of 6 Belgians.

Major R. D. Keyworth and Captain R. O. Logan joined the Battalion.

Large classes of bombers under instruction.

October 6th.—Started work on building huts and on making a 100 yards range.

October 7th.—Lieut.-Colonel W. F. R. Webb returned from leave and resumed command of the Battalion. Work on huts and range progressing. First round of inter-company football tournament.

Lieut. Quinn (late 3rd Battalion) joined for duty.

October 8th.—A and B Companies practised relief of trenches and movement under artillery fire on the skeleton trenches used by the Battalion in training for the attack of the 25th September.

October 9th.—Church Parade at 10 a.m. Boxing tournament in the evening.

A draft of 3 officers and 134 other ranks arrived. The officers were 2nd Lieuts. C. A. Clutsom, A. W. Smith, S. E. Prodger.

Digitized by Google

October 10*th*.—C and D Companies to the skeleton trenches, and later they were relieved by A and B, the four companies thus being practised in the relief of trenches. The C.O. lectured to all officers and N.C.O.'s on trench duties.

No. 10840 Sergeant R. SEYMOUR and No. 10698 Sergeant H. Graubner were awarded cards for gallant and meritorious services.[1] The former was killed in action on the 6th August, and the latter was wounded on the 25th September.

"TOBY" MORTAR.

October 11*th*.—Four subalterns went up to the trenches for a course of instruction. Companies did musketry, drill, and bayonet-fighting, and practised putting on smoke-helmets, firing at aeroplanes, and fire control in the trenches.

October 12*th*.—Preparing for the trenches to-morrow.

October 13*th*.—Relieved the 8th K.R.R.C. in Railway Wood, Sector H.20 to A.2. Machine-gun Section went up last night.

[1] These cards are issued by the Division, so that the recipients may have something to send home to their people as a record of their gallantry. They are much appreciated.

Digitized by Google

Signallers and bombers relieved by day. O.C. Companies with 1 N.C.O. per company also went up by day. The Battalion paraded at 4.15 p.m., and marched to Poperinghe. Thence by train to Ypres, arriving at 6.30 p.m., when it was found that the approaches to it were being heavily shelled, so the Battalion waited until 7.30 p.m., and then moved off. The shelling was still very heavy, and it became necessary to take shelter under the canal bank west of Ypres until 9 p.m. As the shelling still continued, the C.O. decided to push on viâ the Dixmude Gate and Menin Road. At about 11.30 p.m. the shelling ceased, and the relief was completed by 2.30 a.m. (14th). Only one man was wounded.

October 14th.—Fairly quiet. Enemy did some damage to our parapet with trench mortars, and there was a little sniping and hand-grenade throwing during the day.

No. 10464 Corporal H. A. Duester was awarded the DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL.

October 15th.—Much the same situation as yesterday. The mornings are generally foggy now, and the men can go on working as long as the fog lasts. In the afternoon there was a good deal of shelling—H.E. and trench mortar.

Casualty.—1 man killed.

October 16th.—Quiet morning. Between 3 and 4 p.m. a good many whizz-bangs and crumps were fired into Railway Wood.

The men work all night, as there is much repairing to be done.

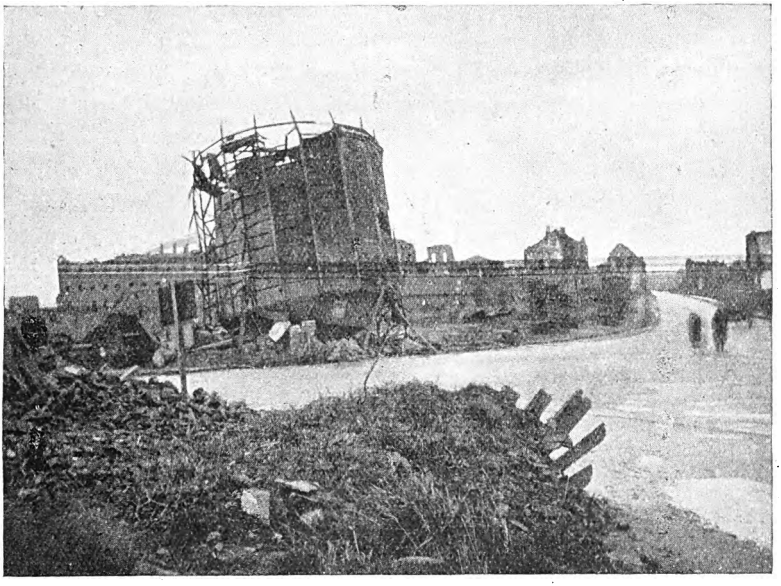
Casualties.—1 man killed and 7 men wounded.

October 17th.—At 5.15 a.m. the enemy exploded a mine under the junction of H.20 and H.21, making a very large crater (about 40 yards in diameter and 30 feet deep), and filling a great part of H.20 and H.21 with earth.

Our mine shaft in H.20 was blown up. It appears to have been a defensive measure only, as no artillery fire was opened and no attack made. The fire-trench at the junction of H.20 and H.21 was destroyed for about 4 bays on either side. A huge amount of earth was thrown up, and forms a long ridge running towards the German crater of the 25th September. About 7 a.m. the enemy made two bomb attacks against the new crater and the Sunken Road. Both were easily repulsed by our bombers at the crater, and by rifle-fire from H.20. The behaviour of the men was excellent. As soon as the mine exploded A Company, holding H.20

Digitized by Google

north and south of the Sunken Road, stood up on the fire-step and delivered a very rapid, steady fire against the enemy position, while 2 platoons started to dig out men buried by the explosion. Work commenced almost at once on constructing a trench round the crater. Enemy snipers were busy, and we had several casualties in parties carrying up knife-rests. The C.O. directed field guns to be laid on the enemy crater; large supplies of bombs were got up, and a reinforcement of 1 sergeant and 16 bombers of the 5th K.S.L.I. came to our assistance.



RUINS OF THE WATER TOWER, YPRES.

Captain R. O. LOGAN was killed by a bomb—the last of our Regular or even experienced Company Commanders, and a very great loss.

At 12.40 p.m. 1 company of the 5th K.S.L.I. was ordered up to reinforce. During the morning we successfully wired between H.20 and S.20. The night passed quietly, but the Battalion stood-to throughout.

2nd Lieut. A. D. J. MELLIS, one of the last of the newly joined officers, was killed in the afternoon by an aerial torpedo in H.22.

Digitized by Google

Casualties during the day: 2 officers and 13 other ranks killed; 31 other ranks wounded; 23 other ranks missing and buried by the mine. Total 69.

October 18th.—Two Germans, captured inside our wire at Hedge Sap, stated, among much other valuable information, that the enemy would attack at 6 this morning, after blowing up a mine at junction of H.19 and H.18 (Hedge Sap). We waited anxiously, but nothing happened.

A good deal of trench-mortaring and sniping, otherwise a quiet day. Much work going on, making saps round crater, wiring, digging, and repairing.

A diversity of opinion as to the distance apart of our crater and the enemy's. The Staff say that the lips must be almost touching, while our patrols and observers estimate that they are 40 yards apart.

October 19th.—Some firing on both sides, but the day passed quietly. The Battalion was relieved at night by the 7th R.B., and took up position: H.Q. and A and C Companies in L.4 Seminaire Redoubt, between Ypres and Vlamertinghe; B and D (under Major Keyworth) in Brielen Houses, near the Water Tower, west of Ypres. These are about the only houses which have not been shelled; no one knows why. [They were later.]

The Brigadier sent a most complimentary message to the Battalion, especially praising the magnificent work of the bombers and A Company after the mine was exploded. The G.O.C. the Division and the Brigadier also congratulated the Battalion on the immense amount of work put into the improvement of the trenches.

October 20th.—Inspection of arms, kits, etc. Officers reconnoitring routes through Ypres. 400 men on carrying party at night.

October 21st.—Men resting by day, and on carrying party at night.

October 22nd.—Left at 7.20 p.m. by train, and arrived at Poperinghe at 8.10 p.m., thence marched to Herzeele (10 miles). Arrived just after midnight, when tea and rum was issued to the men. Companies billeted in farms, very scattered. Battalion H.Q. in Herzeele village.

October 23rd.—Cold, but fine. To go round all the billets is as much as one can do in a morning. The G.O.C. Division and the Brigadier visited the Battalion. Great schemes preparing for the training and reorganization of the Battalion while in Corps Reserve.

Digitized by Google

October 24th.—Church Parade at 11.30 a.m. Colonel Webb addressed the Battalion on the good work done during the last tour in the trenches, especially by A Company. Lance-Corporal Archer sent for a course in pigeon-flying.

October 25th.—Rained all day. 2nd Lieuts. Statt and Gray and 6 N.C.O.'s commenced a week's course of instruction with the R.E. at Houtkerque. 2nd Lieut. Sebastian went to the 2nd Army Grenade School for a course.

Information received that 2nd Lieut. T. F. H. FREMANTLE died on the 17th October of wounds received on the 25th September.[1]

2nd Lieut. Lee, previously reported wounded, has now been reported wounded and missing.

October 26th.—The Army Commander inspected B Company at work in the morning. Canteen opened in the village of Herzeele.

During the last tour in the trenches the casualties in the Battalion amounted to 2 officers and 92 other ranks, killed, wounded, and missing.

The total casualties in the Battalion since its arrival in France in May 1915 :—

Officers.—Killed, 3; wounded, 17; died of wounds, 4; missing, 5. Total, 29.

Other Ranks.—Killed, 150; wounded, 664; died of wounds, 19; missing, 145. Total, 978.

Total casualties in all ranks during the five months, 1,007.

A party, consisting of 1 officer and 25 other ranks from each battalion, is to proceed to Abeele to-morrow for review, to be held by the 2nd Army Commander. The following have been selected to represent the Battalion :—

Captain PAGET.
C.-S.-M. ADAMS (recommended twice for D.C.M.).
C.-S.-M. HILLS (recommended for D.C.M.).
10748 Sergeant BUTTERY (recommended for D.C.M.).
10910 Corporal SMART (recommended for D.C.M.).
10968 Private BRICKNELL (recommended for D.C.M.).
17844 Private LOCKWOOD (recommended for D.C.M.).
7238 Corporal ZEACLE (received D.C.M. with 52nd).

[1] 2nd Lieut. Fremantle was a very gallant and promising officer, and was a great loss to the Battalion.—B. C. T. P.

Digitized by Google

7570 Sergeant BIGNELL.	10750 Private LISSAMER.
9774 Sergeant HIORNS.	8322 Private WEEDON.
8907 Sergeant O'GRADY.	6346 Private KENYON.
7238 Corporal MINETT.	10082 Private WEBB.
10407 Corporal HAYNES.	12347 Private HUNT.
11012 Lance-Corporal TYCER.	16742 Private JOHNSON.
10243 Private WHITE.	10876 Private KNAPE.
10486 Private ASHBY.	6403 Sergeant LOWRY.

October 27th.—Rained all the morning. The party for review left at 6.30 a.m. Detachments from every Battalion and Corps troops of the 2nd Army were reviewed by and marched past the King and the Prince of Wales.

EXTRACTS FROM THE BATTALION DIARY.

October 28th.—Captain and Adjutant Paget, temporarily attached to H.Q. 41st Infantry Brigade, to act as Brigade-Major. Lieut. Bleeck took over the duties of Adjutant.

Reorganization of Battalion bombers; training of companies continued; lecture at 6 p.m.

A recreation-room was opened in the village school.

October 29th.—The Battalion used the Divisional baths at Poperinghe. Training, etc. Lecture at 6 p.m. on "Regimental History."

October 30th.—Route march in the morning. Officers throwing live bombs in the afternoon.

2nd Lieuts. B. H. Farmer and H. A. Robertson joined, and were posted to B and D Companies respectively.

October 31st.—Church Parade. 2nd Lieut. Sebastian rejoined from the 2nd Army Grenade School, and took over the duties of Battalion Grenade Officer.

November 1st.—Company training. Weather very bad. 2nd Lieuts. Smith and Clutsom, with 6 N.C.O.'s, to R.E. Course.

November 2nd.—Wet. Little training possible. Lectures, etc. Information received that 2nd Lieut. L. FARRER died in hospital on the 28th October.

Digitized by Google

November 3rd.—Route march. 2nd Lieut. Sebastian lectured on bomb tactics.

The following awards announced :—

Military Cross.—Captain B. C. T. PAGET.
2nd Lieut. T. RODOCANACHI.

November 4th.—Company training. A Special Order of the Day, by H.M. the King, relating to his recent visit to the front, was published.

November 5th.—Brigade route march. The marching of the Battalion was satisfactory. Present on parade : 19 officers and 639 other ranks.

November 6th.—Company training. Battalion Horse Show in the transport lines in the afternoon.

November 8th.—The Battalion 1st Line Grenadiers, consisting of 24 picked men, have been separated from their companies, and billeted together in one farm. In the trenches they will be near Battalion H.Q., and, under the Battalion Grenade Officer, will be immediately available for counter-attack.

The G.O.C. the Division presented to the Battalion 15 cards for Gallant and Meritorious Service. This was the greatest number gained by a battalion of the 14th Division, the 5th K.S.L.I. being next, with 12 cards. The following were awarded cards :—

10889 C. S.-M. GODFREY.
7654 C.-S.-M. ADAMS.
10908 C.-S.-M. HILLS.
10247 Sergeant TARR (*invalided*)
8062 Sergeant SHRIMPTON.
9774 Sergeant HIORNS.
10748 Sergeant BUTTERY.
10910 Corporal SMART.
10628 Corporal TUCKLEY (*killed*).
10982 Corporal COOMBES.
10788 Lance-Corporal STEVENS
10968 Private BRICKNELL.
10277 Private JOHNSON.
17844 Private LOCKWOOD.
10464 Corporal DUESTER, D.C.M.

November 13th.—Training, and various courses of instruction, still continuing. Platoon Grenadiers practising with live bombs. Practice with sniperscopes (2nd Army pattern); drill, musketry, attack practice, etc.

Fur coat and leather waistcoat issued to every man now.

Captain and Adjutant Paget rejoined, and took over the duties of Adjutant from Lieut. Bleeck, who returned to H.Q. 42nd Infantry Brigade, as Brigade Grenade Officer.

Digitized by Google

CAPTAIN PAGET'S DIARY CONTINUED.

November 14th.—Church Parade at 11 a.m. Weather fine, with a cold wind. 2nd Lieut. A. Smith, 1 sergeant, and 1 corporal proceeded to Waton for a Lewis-gun course.

Ordinary Company Training is becoming more difficult every day; nearly every man is a specialist, or at any rate has to be trained in some special work. There are bombers, snipers, machine-gunners, Lewis-gunners, signallers, transport men, grooms, etc.; and special instruction has to be given in the care and use of sniper-scopes,[1] rapid fire while wearing smoke-helmet, and various other things. There is an idea now that we should be training for open warfare, though, as far as I can see, there seems little prospect of getting away from trench warfare, as long as we are on the Ypres salient.

November 16th.—In the evening the Battalion constructed a breastwork of the 14th Division pattern. Digging in wet clay very difficult.

November 17th.—Training as usual. A good concert was given by the Ammunition Column in the evening, and they provided electric light.

November 18th.—The remainder of the Brigade went up to the trenches. We are to move to B Huts to-morrow.

November 19th.—Paraded at 11.45 a.m. and marched viâ Waton and Poperinghe to B Huts, arriving at 4 p.m.

Strength of the Battalion, 20 officers and 738 other ranks.

November 20th.—The C.O., Company Commanders, and the Sniping Officer (Rodocanachi) proceeded to H.Q. 5th K.S.L.I. in Potijze Wood to inspect the sector of the line into which we move to-morrow. Communication trenches found to be all water-logged.

November 21st.—Relieved the 5th K.S.L.I. in trenches.

A.3.–A.5.b and X.2.–X.3 in front of Potijze Wood. A quiet night, though enemy's machine-guns were active. Relief completed by 8.15 p.m.

The C.O. and Adjutant went round the front trenches; on the left they were fairly dry, but on the right they were knee-deep in

[1] Rifles fitted with secondary butt and periscope attachment, which enable men to fire over the parapet while keeping under cover.

Digitized by Google

mud and water everywhere, and in places even waist-deep. What is required now is a thorough system of drainage under the R.E.

2nd Lieut. Gray was wounded by a bullet.

November 22nd.—A misty day, and we were able to work on the top of the parapet. Major Keyworth went round the trenches in the morning, and the C.O. in the afternoon. Potijze Road and Wood were heavily whizz-banged in the afternoon, in retaliation for our shelling. Much enemy firing from machine-guns and fixed batteries at night.

A patrol of 2 men, under 2nd Lieut. Bowman, went out at 11.30 p.m. towards enemy trenches, to endeavour to hear Germans talking. The patrol never came back.

November 23rd.—The O.C. 14th Manchesters was attached to us for instruction. Very quiet on our part of the line, but a lot of trench-mortaring in Railway Wood.

Prisoners state that Germans are making preparations to attack with a new (colourless) gas.

Casualty.—1 man wounded.

November 24th.—Enemy guns very busy registering this morning. We had a case of "trench foot," and found that the man had not used anti-frostbite grease.

The Battalion was relieved at night by the 5th K.S.L.I., and marched back to B Huts, Brandhoek.

November 25th.—Heavy fall of snow. Inspections, etc.

November 26th.—Captain B. C. T. Paget, appointed Brigade-Major 42nd Infantry Brigade, handed over the duties of Adjutant to 2nd Lieut. Sebastian.

Extracts from Lieut. Sebastian's Narrative.

It was about this time that we lost 2nd Lieut. Bowman (Signalling Officer) under rather peculiar circumstances. We were asked to send out a German-speaking officer with a patrol, to lie up against the enemy parapet, and try to hear them talking. Bowman volunteered for the job, and the C.O. gave him leave to go. The night was misty, and he took for his patrol two bombers of D Company (Lance-Corporal Doran and Private Massy). Nothing more was heard of the party until some weeks later, when we were informed that the two men were prisoners in German hands, and from Bowman's father we heard that he had been reported killed.

Digitized by Google

On the 26th November, when Paget went off as Brigade-Major to the 42nd Brigade, I was appointed Adjutant and promoted Lieutenant. Next day we went back to the Potijze Wood trenches, which were in a very bad state.

After this, until the end of the year,[1] we continued in and out of these trenches. When in, there was never any very great excitement, only the usual shelling and a few casualties. When out, we went back to Herzeele, to B Huts, or to Kaaie Salient, for refitting, training, and furnishing working parties. Kaaie Salient formed part of the defences of Ypres (at the north-east corner of the canal), but as far as defence went it was at this time practically useless on account of the water and mud. It was a miserable place, and consisted of very bad dug-outs.

About the middle of December we thought that we were going to get away from all this mud and beastliness, as we were told that on being relieved in the trenches we were to refit, and then go to Egypt. When the relief came off, we saluted the Menin Gate as we passed, and wished it good luck, hoping at the same time to see it never again. We trained from the Asylum to Poperinghe, and thence marched to B Camp, arriving there at about 1 a.m. What a place it was! The mud too appalling for description. In riding up the road, or, rather, mud stream, I managed somehow to slide off my horse, and got literally bathed in mud from head to foot. There the Battalion remained for four days, and then marched to Herzeele, where we were to refit.

On the 20th December the Army Commander presented the Military Cross to Captain Paget, Lieut. Rodocanachi, and other officers of the Brigade on parade.

Christmas Day was spent at Herzeele, where we stayed, refitting and training, until the 29th December, and then we were moved in buses to B Huts, preparatory to going back into the trenches, as we had been told on Christmas Day that Egypt was off.

---

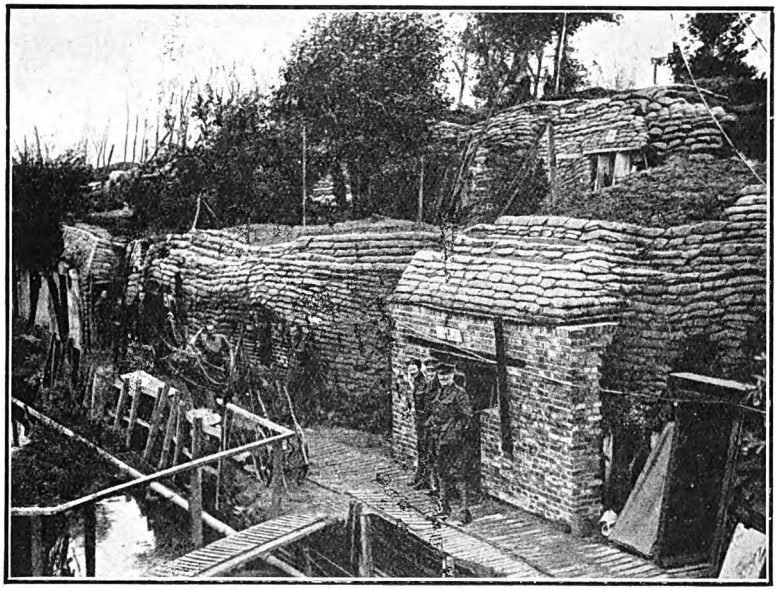
[1] *Casualties.*—28th November, 2nd Lieut. Robinson and one man wounded; 29th November, one man wounded.

Joined the Battalion.—2nd Lieuts. W. McMillan and A. J. Shaw (from Artists' Rifles), 9th December; 2nd Lieut. E. A. Packe (Dorsets), 14th December; 2nd Lieuts. S. E. Burrows and R. G. Wilsdon (from 9th Battalion), 24th December; Captain C. A. Fowke (from 2nd Battalion), and a draft of 83 men from the 2nd Battalion, 24th December; 2nd Lieut. A. G. Turner (9th Battalion), 25th December; Lieut. D. S. Higgins (9th Battalion) and a draft of 43 men, 27th December.

Digitized by Google

We were very short of good Company Commanders now, so Captain Fowke, who had been transferred from the 52nd to be our Second in Command in place of Major Keyworth (to England on account of deafness), was made Company Commander of B Company.

On the 30th December we went into the line, in relief of the 5th and 6th West Ridings (147th Brigade, 49th Division) in the Boesinghe Sector of the Salient. The Colonel thought that he knew a short cut through the grounds of Vlamertinghe Château; we of



By permission of the Imperial War Museum.

CANAL BANK DUG-OUTS, YPRES.

H.Q. went through with it, but it was not much of a success, as the mud in most places was up to our knees. The sector which we now took over was on the extreme left of the British line, and we joined on to the French, who were holding Boesinghe, with the Yser Canal between them and the Huns. Half the Battalion was in trenches, and the other half in farms behind—Malakoff, Pelissier, Saragossa, Hull, Modder, etc. The trenches were in a terrible state of repair, full of water, and no wire. The relief was completed by 10.30 p.m.; enemy machine-guns active; and we unfortunately lost 2nd Lieut.

Digitized by Google

S. E. BURROWS, who was severely wounded, and died on the way down to the dressing-station.

Battalion H.Q. were in the west bank (very high) of the canal, and to go up to the trenches we had to cross the canal by one of the many wooden bridges, each of which had a weird number attached to it, such as 7Z, 7Y, 4D, etc. What the numbers meant we never discovered, and as they were in no sort of order, they did not help us much. Apparently, when a new bridge was put up, it was given a new number, without any attention being paid to the number of the old bridge alongside. But there may have been some deep scheme at the bottom of the process of numbering, though too deep for us to fathom.

Bridge 7Z was very close to the Hun, and a most unpleasant place, as he used to flick machine-gun bullets over it all night long. Some of the other bridges he regularly strafed with shells at odd hours day and night.

In this sector the German had the complete upper hand, and he did almost as he pleased. His chief amusement was letting off machine-guns all over the place throughout the night, but he got very little result from his expenditure of ammunition. Two of them he had on our left, and with these he used to sweep our back area, switching them about apparently without method, and doing no damage. One of these got the name of "Mad Alec," but we were getting even with the lunatics by the time we left, as our batteries got on to them, and opened fire directly they started, with a field gun firing in the open from a different place each night, and directed by an infantry officer on the canal-bank with a direct line to the gun. This was started as an experiment, and worked extraordinarily well, the infantry F.O.O. switching the fire of the field guns whenever the German machine-gun changed position. At the end of our time in this sector we had got the enemy's machine-guns well in hand. These travelling field guns were supplied by the 46th Brigade, R.F.A.

The trenches were really shocking, there was no connected line, and in most parts only isolated platoon-posts—quite unapproachable in daylight, as there were no communication trenches, and the Huns had fixed rifles laid on all the approaches. It was well-nigh impossible to bring back stretcher-cases from these posts, for in the dark they were most difficult to find, and on more than one occasion I completely lost my way in trying to get to some outlying part of the line. To add to our troubles there was always an abundance of

Digitized by Google

mud and of water, not only in the trenches, but also all over the open, and we were silhouetted to the Germans by every Véry Light sent up from the other side of the Ypres Salient about Hill 60.

In this way we began 1916, and we were more or less pinned to these miserable trenches until the middle of February.

At one time rations were brought up by a so-called light railway, about a mile and a half in length—rather a feeble affair with wooden rails. The trucks had to be pushed by men, and they were as often off the rails as on. What made the work of the pushers doubly hard was the absence of trench-boards between the rails, so that they were floundering about in mud and slush all the time. Later on we remedied this by getting the line properly trench-boarded; but, of course, the Hun knew all about this railway, and gave it a pretty hot time both with shells and machine-guns, though I do not think that he ever got one of our men. I used to amuse myself by looking after the bringing up of stores, and thoroughly enjoyed it. Eventually we gave up the use of the railway, and employed pack ponies for bringing the rations.

During January [1] we had three tours of the trenches—not always in exactly the same part, and we generally had four days in the line, four days at B Huts, near Vlamertinghe, and four days at Elverdinghe, the period out of the line being devoted, as usual, to training and providing working parties. There was a certain amount of excitement at different times in the trenches, and a good deal of shelling and sniping went on, but as a rule things were pretty quiet, and we had few casualties.

On the 16th January C.-S.-M. ADAMS and Corporal SMART were awarded the DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL, and Captain C. A. FOWKE the MILITARY CROSS.

We were in the line once in February (from the 1st to the 9th), and then we came out for good and all. As a matter of fact, we were uncommonly lucky while in this sector, as the Huns turned most of their mortars on to the French on our left. They used to give Boesinghe a good dressing at times, and it was interesting to us to watch. Rodocanachi acted as liaison officer between us and the French all along, and it was his duty to let the French know if we were being attacked.

[1] A draft of 20 men joined the Battalion on the 15th January. On the 19th Captain C. A. Fowke, M.C., was appointed temporary Second in Command, and 2nd Lieut. T. W. C. Foreshew took over the command of B Company.

Digitized by Google

We put in a lot of work on these wretched trenches, and made strenuous efforts to get rid of the water. There was a big drain (known as the Pilkem drain) running through the sector, but it was full of mud. The R.E. told us that if we were to dig small drains from this up to trenches E.28 and 29 we should get rid of all the water in these trenches. We did as we were told, but, unfortunately, the scheme did not come off, for instead of emptying the trenches, we emptied the drain into them.

On the 7th February we had quite a lively time at Battalion H.Q. We had just had new dug-outs made in the canal-bank, and three of them had been completed, but when we came to look at them we found that they had not been dug deep enough, and, consequently, they had not got a sufficient thickness of overhead cover. So Farmer (Grenade Officer) and I set to work to improve matters, and rolled an 18-inch log over the end of the sleeping dug-out, piling sandbags on the top. Next afternoon the Germans began to drop shells all around the dug-out. I was outside working, and did not think that the shells were coming very near, when suddenly one burst quite close. The next thing that I saw was the Colonel, in his socks, dashing out of the sleeping dug-out, and going for all he was worth up the canal. I went to see what had happened, and found that two boards at the end of the dug-out had been broken in. This was enough for me, so I decided to evacuate. After ordering all the men near H.Q. to move off, I went a little way down the trench. Returning a few minutes later, I found two of the H.Q. servants still there, and I cleared them out. Soon afterwards the Hun started in properly, and simply plastered the place with 4.2-inch and 5.9-inch shells, dropping about a hundred in a small circle; but he got nobody. He demolished H.Q. cook-house, as well as the dug-out in which I had found the two servants, and he damaged others.

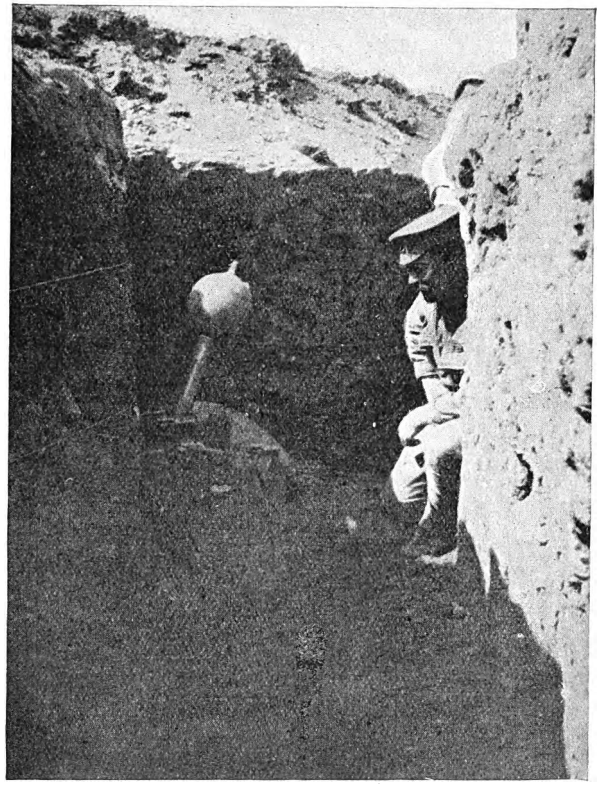
That evening we decided to take strenuous measures for our protection. Thick trees were cut down from the side of the canal and put on the top of the dug-outs plus hundreds of bags of bricks from a house some 800 yards away. It was hard work, but quite a good job was made of it. During the brick-carrying, one of the men was heard to remark: "We've put all Belgium into sand-bags, and now we've got to put in the houses as well."

We attributed this particular bit of shelling to our R.E. Wireless Station, which was close to our dug-outs. It was a sunny day, and the men were playing about with a new copper wire, which they

Digitized by Google

kept dancing about in the sun. This, of course, attracted the attention of the Boche. In the midst of the shelling the wire was broken, but the linesmen most gallantly replaced it, and thereby caused a considerable increase in the intensity of the enemy's fire.

In connexion with wireless, we had rather a comic experience in these dug-outs. One afternoon a Scotchman (R.E.) with a very



TRENCH MORTAR.

broad accent came and inquired for the map reference of our dug-out. On being asked why he wanted it, he said that the inquiry had come over the wireless, and he wanted to send a reply. Now, trench wireless stations only receive, they do not send; the reason being that when they send they can be located by the enemy. Our friend knew all about this order, but failed to understand what harm he could do by sending over the wireless the map location of

Digitized by Google

our dug-outs. He did not get it, as we had no wish to run the risk of being plastered again with Hun shells.

The last night that we spent in these trenches [1] there was great excitement: an enemy patrol got on to our wire in the early hours of the morning, and lit a torch to see what was up. Our men opened fire, and were quite certain that they had hit two. The Brigadier ordered the bodies to be brought in on the following night, so Captain Fowke went out himself to recover them. But no bodies were to be found, and the supposition is that the Huns were only wounded, and managed to wriggle home.

On the 9th February we came out of the trenches, on relief, and marched to Elverdinghe. Next day our Division was relieved by the 20th Division, when the 6th Battalion of the Regiment (Colonel White) took over from us, and we marched to Houtkerque, being joined on the way by Lieut. Newman, who had been wounded on the 24th September.

On the 11th February we moved to Wormhouldt, where we had most comfortable billets, scattered in farms, to the east of the village, and where we settled in for a short spell of rest and training. On the 13th Lieut. Maude rejoined the Battalion, and at the same time came 2nd Lieuts. Bradley and Weston-Webb, who were posted to D and C Companies respectively. Next day 2nd Lieuts. Barrell and Wilsdon were transferred to the newly formed Brigade Machine-gun Company, and about the same time Packe was transferred to the Flying Corps.

On the 17th February the Battalion was inspected by the Commander-in-Chief, Captain Fowke, M.C., being in temporary command, during the absence on leave of Colonel Webb.

We now received orders to entrain at Esquelbec for some unknown destination, and on the 20th February we marched to that place and duly took the train. When we knew for certain that we were really out of the salient, we heaved one huge sigh of relief. Here the 14th Division had been for nine months without a rest. Our Brigade had had six weeks' rest—of a sort. The times had been hard, and had cost us dear, for the Battalion had lost 35 officers and over 1,000 other ranks—most of the flower of the Battalion when it first came out. Everybody was rather tired of Flanders.

We had no idea whither we were going until we found ourselves passing through Amiens. A few miles farther on we stopped and

[1] The casualties in the Battalion during February were five men wounded on the 4th, and six men wounded on the 6th.

Digitized by Google

ran back into a siding at Longueau. At about 10 a.m. (21st February) we detrained, and were then told that motor-buses would take us to our destination, Berteaucourt, about 25 miles north, as soon as they were ready. Breakfast was prepared and eaten in the streets, and then we started on our journey through Amiens and out into the open country beyond, immensely pleased with the change of scenery. We reached Berteaucourt (Map : Lens, Sheet 11, 1/100,000, C.6) later in the day, and by nightfall were all comfortably settled in billets.

On the following day Brigade H.Q. were established in the village, and we were told to make all arrangements for a prolonged stay; so we at once got permission from the Maire to use a considerable tract of land in the neighbourhood for training purposes, and on the 23rd February started to work in earnest, in spite of snow and frost. In the early hours of the following morning, however, we received a shock, an orderly from the Brigade waking me up with an order that the Battalion was to be ready to move at 8 a.m. Accordingly we were all ready at that hour, but did not receive our orders for marching until 9 a.m., when we were told that we were to go to Gézaincourt (D.5). We started off in deep snow and bitter cold, had dinners at Fienvillers, and reached Gézaincourt after dusk.

The billets were very bad, but we were off again at 8 a.m. next morning, en route for Grand Rullecourt (F.3). During the night an intense frost set in, and the roads were like glass, making things most difficult for the transport, although the animals had been rough-shod overnight. Doullens Hill was an immense trouble, and the Battalion had to go on and leave the transport behind, though we managed to push on the cookers and water-carts. Eventually we reached Grand Rullecourt, but it was long after dark before we got the billets fixed up, and they were not too good. The men got their long-delayed dinners, but there were no blankets until the arrival of the lorries at about midnight.

We rested on the 26th [1] and 27th February, did a bit of training on the 28th, and on the 29th moved for the night to Simencourt, going on to Arras (Map 7) on the 1st March.

At Arras, where we relieved the French, we were billeted in the east side of the Grande Place. We had expected to find Arras in a battered condition like Ypres; but, with the exception of the

[1] On the 26th February Lance-Corporal TIMMS was awarded the DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL.

Digitized by Google

Town Hall, Museum, and Cathedral, it was really very little damaged. The whole place was full of interest, shops were open, and there were plenty of civilians about. But we were not given much time to amuse ourselves, as, on the 5th March, we were for the trenches again.

We relieved portions of the 7th and 8th R.B. in the left of H Sector, and found that the trenches were simply perfect—deeply dug, with good communication trenches, and excellent dug-outs. It was all a revelation after the Ypres Salient. But here, as elsewhere, the Hun held the high ground, his line of trenches running along the ridge east and south-east of Arras. On this ridge, and just opposite H Sector, was Beaurains, which dominated the whole of our position. H Sector, which lay well astride the Beaurains Road, was divided into H.1 on the right, and H.2 on the left, the former facing Beaurains and Beaurains Park, and the latter facing the north-west end of Beaurains and the brickfields to the north.

For the next few weeks we and the 5th K.S.L.I. took it in turns to relieve each other in H.2 trenches. As a rule things were fairly quiet in the line, and casualties were very few. On the 10th March Captain C. A. Fowke,[1] M.C., was severely wounded; he was very badly hit, but I believe his life was saved by our not being able to bring him away. He was kept quiet in a machine-gun emplacement for two days, and then brought out over the top, which was a tremendous business.

On the 30th 2 men were killed and 1 man wounded. I do not think that we had any further casualties until the 27th April, when 5 men were killed and 2 wounded.

When not in the line at this period we were in Arras or in billets in the immediate vicinity, carrying on the usual routine of training, fatigues, working parties, etc.

---

[1] EXTRACTS FROM CAPTAIN FOWKE'S DIARY.

10/3/16.—Went up at 1 a.m. to the trenches to put out some artillery screens, and was at it rather too long. At 6 a.m. I was warned that it was getting too light by a bullet coming very close to me. The trenches here were only about 50 yards apart. I ran back to the trench, but was hit on the edge as I was jumping in. I was shot through the body, and was too bad at the time to be moved, so remained two days in a dug-out in the front line.

12/3/16.—At night taken out of the trenches on a stretcher over the top, and spent the rest of the night in a pack-store in a cellar in Arras.

13/3/16.—To Doullens in a motor ambulance.

14/3/16.—To the Base Hospital at Rouen.

Digitized by Google

During March and April the following officers joined us at Arras: On March 10th, 2nd Lieuts. O. L. Jacks (B Company) and F. H. Walrond (D); on the 13th, 2nd Lieut. C. H. Walter (rejoined from being wounded), 2nd Lieut. A. L. Tompkins (C Company), and 2nd Lieut. E. L. D. Robinson (A); on the 21st April, 2nd Lieut. S. Ashman (D Company); on the 24th, Lieut. G. S. Greene (B) and 2nd Lieut. G. P. B. De Pass (A); on the 29th, 2nd Lieut. H. G. Styles (A Company).

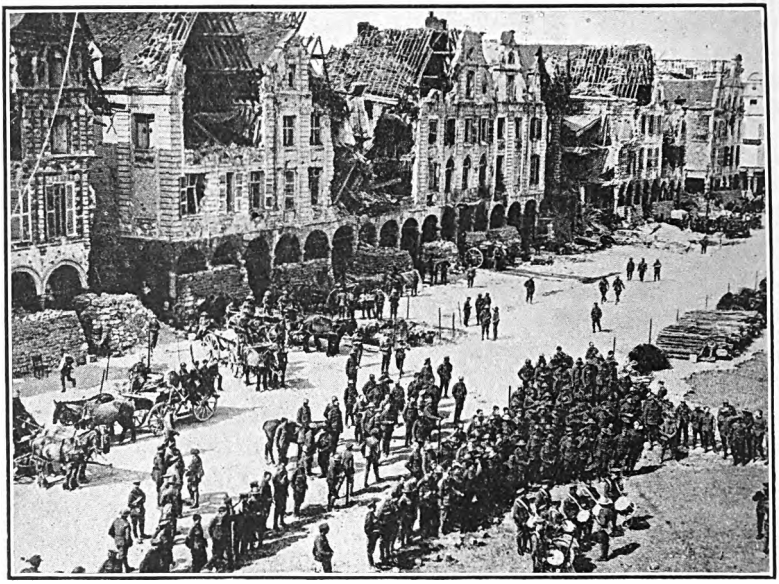
Throughout the winter we had had a lot of snow, which did considerable harm to the trenches, but when spring came things underwent a complete change—the weather was delightful, and the whole country-side, including the trenches, became a perfect garden, with flowers everywhere. In the course of time even the communication trenches were lined with poppies, blue cornflowers, yellow mustard, and flowers of many other colours. With summer fruit came in abundance, as well as potatoes and other vegetables, which improved the men's feeding immensely.

Whilst in the trenches every one fed exceedingly well, the cookers being kept at Ronville or at Achicourt, according to which section of the line we were holding, and the men getting four meals a day.

Except for an occasional strafe, the Hun kept remarkably quiet. We were told that when the French held this line there was a sort of compact between them and the Germans; at any rate, each side was protected by solid wire, on stout wooden posts, to a depth of 30 yards to the front. To find such a mass of wire was rather a surprise to us, as in the Salient wire 3 yards deep was considered by no means bad. Alas! with the arrival of Lewis guns, this beautiful wire got fearfully knocked about, as it became a regular practice to shoot them off from our parapet, and so cut the wire to ribbons, which meant endless wiring parties and a great waste of labour, until it was put a stop to.

At first we used to be billeted in Arras and Simencourt, afterwards Bernville was substituted for the latter, and the transport camp was at one or the other of these two villages. In Arras two companies and H.Q. were billeted in the École des Jeunes Filles, which was a most comfortable place; and the H.Q. Mess was in a big house close by, where the people were very kind, and often served us with most tasty dishes. One Company and its H.Q. was in the Commercial Hotel, and another was not far off. While in Arras itself we had practically no experience of shelling, and even in the line we had remarkably few casualties.

Digitized by Google



By permission of the Imperial War Museum.

GRANDE PLACE, ARRAS.

About the middle of May 2nd Lieut. Farmer was accidentally wounded with a revolver. 2nd Lieut. Weston-Webb succeeded him as Bombing Officer.

On the 20th May the Divisional Commander presented Cards for Gallant Conduct to Sergeant Bignell and Private Prentice. On the 22nd 2nd Lieut. A. L. Thomas joined the Battalion, but nothing else of any particular interest happened in May.

June was a glorious month as far as the weather was concerned, although there were a few wet days. Life went on much as usual; the Battalion was in and out of the trenches; the enemy's shelling increased somewhat; Captain D. J. TUCK was wounded, when wiring, on the 17th. The night was bright moonlight, and he could be easily seen by the Huns. He was wounded in the arm and side, but at first his wounds were not considered dangerous. When he reached the Casualty Clearing Station at Avesnes-le-Comte, the doctors decided to take his arm off, and he died within a few days (3rd July).

The last three days of June and the first of July were fairly lively; on the 28th June the vicinity of our billets was heavily shelled for a couple of hours in the early morning; on the 29th Beaurains

Digitized by Google

trenches were raided, as I shall describe; on the 30th the billets came in for another shelling; and on the 1st July, when we relieved the 9th K.R.R.C. (Right H. Sector, H.25-H.34), there were a few casualties. The Maltese cart had its driver, Sergeant Warner, and Corporal Smith wounded, and the Ypres mule killed. Two other men were also wounded.

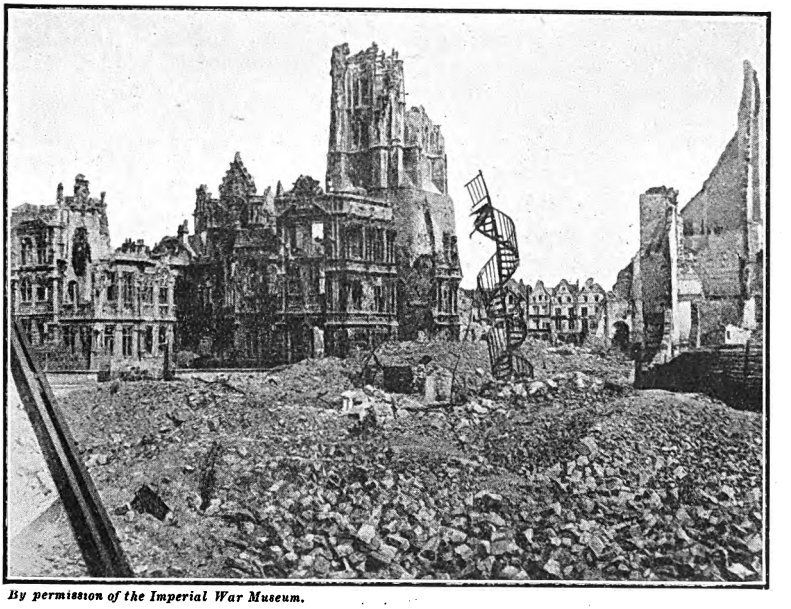
Raid on Beaurains Trenches.

This was the first raid on the enemy's trenches undertaken by troops of the 14th Division, and we were detailed to make it. Secret Orders were issued by the Brigade for the minor enterprise to take place on the night of 29th/30th June, and the principal of these were embodied in Colonel Webb's orders to those concerned, so I will only quote the paragraph which related to the work of the guns :—

Artillery barrage of 18-prs. and 4.5-inch howitzers to start at 12 midnight, signal time.

Raiding party to be in position to enter enemy trenches as soon as possible after barrage starts.

Barrage to cease at 12.25 a.m., unless O.C. 5th Oxf. and Bucks asks for it to cease before then.



By permission of the Imperial War Museum.

HÔTEL DE VILLE, ARRAS.

Digitized by Google

At the same time one Stokes gun will barrage M.4.b.6½.0 to M.4.d.7.9¼, and will cease when the artillery barrage ceases.

Machine and Lewis guns to sweep enemy parapet on flanks of raiding party, as arranged by O.C. 5th Oxf. and Bucks with O.C. Brigade Machine Gun Company.

The following orders were issued by Colonel Webb :—

PROPOSED RAID ON SALIENT OF BEAURAINS.

1. Strength of Party.—One officer (Lieut. Weston-Webb), 3 N.C.O.'s, and 21 other ranks.

2. Object :—
   To obtain prisoners.
   To capture a suspected machine-gun.
   To see if there is any mining in progress.

3. Party to be divided into 4 sections :—
   (*a*) 1 N.C.O. and 6 men to clear trench to right.
   (*b*) 1 N.C.O. and 6 men to clear trench to left.
   (*c*) 1 N.C.O. and 5 men to clear communication trench and look after mine shaft.
   (*d*) 1 Lance-Corporal and 3 men to remain on parapet, to assist returning raiders out, and mark spot where wire is cut.

The first three parties each leave one man with the officer when the trench is entered, and will remain where communication trench leaves fire-trench until withdrawal is ordered. They will be used as messengers to the groups to withdraw.

An emergency signal of three sharp whistle-blasts will be arranged to signify withdrawal.

4. Parties will get out in column from sap behind mound, following course indicated by arrow on attached sketch.
   Each party :
   3 bombers, with bombs and knobkerries only.
   3 riflemen, with bayonets and bombs.
   1 N.C.O.
   Except party (*d*), who will all be armed with rifles.

5. Three wire-cutters per squad.
   No superfluous equipment.
   Wounded to be brought in if possible.

Digitized by Google

6. Wire-cutting by artillery :—

Direct view on spot marked by a white stake from Salient to H.33.

Wire is in 3 lines :—

(1) Outside. Ordinary entanglement on screw-poles.

(2) Double line of French wire.

(3) Double line of French wire.

There are lanes between rows, and it appears there is a passage through the row where the white stake now is.

7. Vickers gun to fire on gap, to prevent repairs from Salient.

8. Covering Party.—A Lewis-gun protected by bombers on the mound A. These bombers will deal with sentry in sap, should he become alarmed.

9. Barrage Fire.—By artillery along X D E and W F E, Stokes guns and mortars at barricades X and D in Ronville Road. By Vickers gun along trench north side of Ronville Road.

10. Patrol to reconnoitre effects of wire-cutting and route on night previous to raid.

11. O.C. Battalion will be at H.Q. of right company of centre sector.

12. Date and time.—29th/30th June, 12 midnight.

13. If darkness permits, raiders to crawl forward to wire, and assault as the first gun of the artillery fires. If night is light, raiders to go forward at steady pace two minutes before the time for barrage fire to commence.

W. F. R. Webb, Lieut.-Colonel,
Comdg. 5th Oxf. and Bucks Lt. Infty.

28*th June* 1916.

Colonel Webb sent his official report on the raid to 42nd Brigade H.Q. on the 30th June :—

1. The following is an account of a raid carried out by a party of the Regiment under my command on the enemy trenches in front of Beaurains on the night of 29th/30th.

2. Proposed plan of action was sent to you on June 27th.

3. Up to 11.40 p.m. a Vickers gun ensured the gap in the wire being kept open.

At 11.45 a covering patrol got out on the mound (M.4.b.5.1), and lay down in column.

Digitized by Google

At 11.50 p.m. the party crawled forward and reached a point about 10 yards from the gap.

At 12 midnight precisely the artillery opened fire, the Stokes-guns barraged the barriers on the Ronville-Beaurains Road, and a Vickers machine-gun swept the trench of the enemy second line running parallel to the road. The raiding party rushed into enemy trench with the first round of the guns. The wire was well cut and proved no obstacle. The trench had been blown in, and descent into it was easy.

Enemy were taken by surprise. There was no fire, nor were any more than the usual lights put up.

4. The party under Sergeant Bignell worked to the left, encountering a small enemy working party, 4 or 5 strong, carrying sand-bags, who bolted, and a post of 3 or 4 men, two of whom remained, the rest bolting. These two were bayoneted, and a third of the retreating enemy was caught and bayoneted. The remainder vanished down the steps of a dug-out, and six bombs were thrown in on top of them. The party then came to a sand-bag barricade in the trench, and were unable to advance any farther. After the first two enemy were killed, unfortunately a short round from one of our supporting batteries fell on the parapet and killed two of our men, one of whom was the man who had bayoneted the first enemy met with, two others were also wounded. Only two of the party reached the block, which was of recent construction, and placed in the trench between two entrances to a dug-out. The party then came back to the point of entry to the trench, and they say that the enemy threw two bombs from behind the barricade in the trench.

5. The right party went down the trench to the right, and found it very much blown in. They found nobody there, and, after going along about 30 yards, returned.

6. The centre party, who were to have searched a communication trench, failed to discover it, and got into a disused trench, very much knocked about, but found nothing there. I think that in all probability the C.T. for which they were searching was on the other side of the block.

7. After being 12 or 13 minutes in the trench, Lieut. Weston-Webb, commanding the party, gave the signal to retire.

8. On the way back some of the party, being confused by the proximity of the barrage and the darkness of the night, lost their way for a time. As I could get no news of all being back, I requested

Digitized by Google

the F.O.O. to continue barrage up to 30 minutes, when I ordered him to stop.

9. The F.O.O. and the Adjutant observing from Maison Allongée observed enemy fire two blind rockets, which did not explode.

No enemy machine-gun fired, and the only artillery action was a few 77mm. rounds on to Havelock.

Enemy opened a very weak rifle-fire, of not more than 8 or 10 men, when party were coming back.

Two men were hit by shell-splinters on the way back.

10. A cap of the Bavarian Jaeger Regiment was brought back, and has been sent to you. The return of it is requested.

It is regretted that no other documents or prisoners were brought back, but the few short rounds which occurred happened at the most unfortunate time, and rather confused the only party which met with the enemy.

11. The work of the artillery in wire-cutting was excellent, and the barrage put up by them, with the exception of the few short rounds mentioned, was very good.

The Stokes mortar barrage on the Ronville-Beaurains Road was also excellent, and the work of the Brigade machine-guns in keeping the wire open and assisting the barrage was very good. The two-inch mortar fired a few rounds in the afternoon, removing two knife-rests blocking the gap.

12. The enemy trench was of the same type as ours, about 8 feet deep, hurdle-revetted, wooden fire-steps. It was considerably damaged by shell and mortar fire.

The sand-bag barricade between two dug-out entrances has been met with before in raids. This was evidently newly erected with a view to covering the gap in the wire and possible raid.

13. Enemy casualties.—7 or 8, exclusive of casualties caused by barrages.

Our Casualties.—2 killed, 3 wounded.

14. Recommended for reward :—

2nd Lieut. H. WESTON-WEBB.
Sergeant C. BIGNELL.
Private A. HALL.

W. F. R. WEBB, Lieut.-Colonel,
Comdg. 5th Oxf. and Bucks Lt. Infty.

30*th June* 1916.

Digitized by Google

Composition of the Raiding Party.

2nd Lieut. A. WESTON-WEBB.

No. 1 *Squad.*—Sergeant C. Bignell, Lance-Corporal R. Ward (wounded); Privates E. Mundy (slightly wounded), S. Hassell, A. Hall (wounded), E. Fox (slightly wounded), W. EDKINS (killed).

No. 2 *Squad.*—Sergeant W. Wheeler, Lance-Corporal F. Dennis, Lance-Corporal J. ROOTE (killed), Lance-Corporal P. Perkins (wounded); Privates J. Saunders, T. Goode, A. Rymer.

No. 3 *Squad.*—Corporal A. H. Duester, Lance-Corporals G. Salter, G. Lunnon, W. Bradley; Privates A. Webb, W. Carvell.

No. 4 *Squad.*—Lance-Corporal E. Jenkins; Privates T. Goodman, W. Woolridge, S. Zimmerman.

Lewis-gunners.—2nd Lieut. Tompkins.

Sergeant S. G. Sabin, Lance-Corporal R. G. Cox; Privates A. Prentice and Megson.

The following messages were received during the 30th :—

"Corps Commander wishes you to convey to 5th Oxf. and Bucks Lt. Infty. his congratulations on their successful raid last night. VITH CORPS.

"Please convey to the officers, N.C.O.'s, and men of the raiding party the G.O.C.'s congratulations on the very successful operation carried out by them last night.

"The success of the raid reflects great credit on the Battalion, on the arrangements made, and on the soldierly qualities of the officers, N.C.O.'s, and men who actually took part in it."—14TH (LIGHT) DIVISION.

"Officers, N.C.O.'s, and men send hearty congratulations on your fine show last night."—9TH K.R.R.C.

HONOURS AND AWARDS.

1ST AUGUST 1915—30TH JUNE 1916.

Mentioned in Dispatches, "London Gazette," 30th November 1915.

Lieut.-Colonel C. H. COBB.
Captain W. F. R. WEBB.
Lieut. N. F. BARWELL.
Lieut. W. R. BIRCH.
2nd Lieut. L. S. LEE.
2nd Lieut. J. H. CUPPER.

Digitized by Google

Promoted Brevet-Major.

Captain W. F. R. WEBB (19th February 1916).

Awarded the MILITARY CROSS.

Captain BERNARD CHARLES TOLVER PAGET.

"For conspicuous coolness and energy throughout the campaign in France.

"At Railway Wood, during a bomb attack by the enemy, following on the explosion of a mine, he rendered invaluable service in getting up bombs and organizing working and wiring parties.

"His good services as Adjutant have previously been brought to notice."— ("*Gazette*," 18*th November* 1915.)

2nd Lieut. THEODORE EMMANUEL RODOCANACHI.

"For conspicuous gallantry at Railway Wood on 17th October 1915.

"When a mine had been exploded under one of the trenches, he went forward under rifle-fire to reconnoitre the crater, one bullet going through his cap. Later, when the Germans fired some shells on a working party in the crater, 2nd Lieut. Rodocanachi, by his personal example and coolness, kept the men at work, although several were hit, until a satisfactory trench had been made."— ("*Gazette*," 18*th November* 1915.)

Captain NOEL FREDERICK BARWELL.
("*Gazette*," 14*th January* 1916.)

Lieut. CHARLES ARTHUR FREER FOWKE.
("*Gazette*," 14*th January* 1916.)

Awarded the DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL.

Corporal H. A. DUESTER.
C.-S.-M. R. ADAMS.
Corporal A. SMART.
Lance-Corporal F. H. TIMMS.
Private A. PRENTICE.

RECORD OF ACT OF GALLANTRY.
("*London Gazette*," *November* 1915.)

No. 10464 Private (Acting Corporal) H. A. DUESTER.

For conspicuous bravery and resource on 25th September 1915 during the attack on Bellewaarde, Private Duester was one of a

Digitized by Google

party of ten, the survivors of the left column which had been destroyed by shell-fire. With great bravery he led this party into the German line, showing great determination and power of leadership. When the line fell back his party was nearly cut off, but by judicious bombing and the use of German bombs he successfully extricated them. He was recommended for reward by his surviving comrades.

This was the first D.C.M. gained by the 5th Battalion.

CASUALTIES BETWEEN 1ST AUGUST 1915 AND 30TH JUNE 1916.

—	Killed, or Died of Wounds.	Wounded.	Missing.	Total.	Remarks.
Officers ...	13	16	—	29	One officer also died of disease in a hospital in France.
Other Ranks ...	123	550	161	834	Of the missing men, a few are known to be prisoners of war; the remainder believed killed.
Total ...	136	566*	161	863	

NAMES OF THE OFFICERS.

Killed or Died of Wounds.

Captain R. O. LOGAN.
Captain C. F. K. CARFRAE.
2nd Lieut. L. W. SWEET-ESCOTT.
2nd Lieut. H. F. CLARKE.
2nd Lieut. J. DE H. JACKSON.
2nd Lieut. L. S. LEE.
2nd Lieut. T. F. H. FREMANTLE.
2nd Lieut. J. N. G. MITCHELL.
2nd Lieut. A. W. WOOD.
2nd Lieut. A. D. J. MELLISS
2nd Lieut. J. BOWMAN.
2nd Lieut. A. W. SMITH.
2nd Lieut. S. E. BURROWS.

Died of Disease.

2nd Lieut. L. FARRAR.

Digitized by Google

Wounded.

Lieut. N. F. Barwell.
Lieut. H. H. Cobb.
2nd Lieut. W. T. Beckingham
2nd Lieut. J. S. Fenwick.
Lieut. E. W. Maude.
Lieut. W. R. Birch.
2nd Lieut. C. H. Walter.
2nd Lieut. J. Bleeck.
2nd Lieut. K. V. Carter.
2nd Lieut. S. H. Bird.
Lieut. L. S. M. Newman.
2nd Lieut. H. W. Robinson.
2nd Lieut. G. G. Gray.
Captain C. A. F. Fowke, M.C.
2nd Lieut. Farmer (accidentally).
Captain D. J. Tuck (mortally).

Invalided to England on account of Ill-health.

Major R. D. Keyworth.
Captain A. E. Sanderson.
Captain A. W. F. Webb.
Lieut. A. Ridge-Jones.
2nd Lieut. S. E. Prodger.
2nd Lieut. H. A. Le Messurier.

REINFORCEMENTS (INCLUDING REJOINED ON RECOVERY FROM WOUNDS) 1ST AUGUST 1915 TO 30TH JUNE 1916.

Officers, 47 ; *Other Ranks*, 651.

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS WHO SERVED WITH THE 5TH (SERVICE) BATTALION BETWEEN 1ST AUGUST 1915 AND 30TH JUNE 1916.

I.

Serving with the Battalion on the 1st August 1915.

Lieut.-Colonel C. H. COBB (1st Battalion), Commanding the 5th Battalion; in temporary command of the 42nd Infantry Brigade, 12th–16th August; invalided to England, 24th August; mentioned in Dispatches, 30th November 1915.

Captain W. F. R .WEBB (temp. Major), Second in Command; mentioned in Dispatches, 30th November 1915; temp. Lieut.-Colonel, commanding the Battalion, 1st October 1915; Brevet-Major, 19th February 1916.

Captain A. E. SANDERSON (1st Battalion), invalided to England, 18th August 1915.

Captain C. F. K. CARFRAE (2nd Battalion), *killed*, 25th September 1915.

Captain (temp.) A. W. T. WEBB, invalided to England, 24th August 1915.

Captain G. F. PLOWDEN (1st Battalion), to 42nd Brigade Machine Gun Company, 16th February 1916; awarded MILITARY CROSS.

Captain (temp.) N. F. BARWELL, *wounded*, 25th September 1915; to England; mentioned in Dispatches, 30th November 1915; awarded the MILITARY CROSS, 14th January 1916.

Captain (temp.) H. H. COBB, Signalling Officer; *wounded*, 25th September 1915; to England; transferred to General List, for duty with Signal Service, 23rd February 1916.

Lieut. E. W. MAUDE, *wounded*, 25th September 1915; to England; rejoined, 14th February 1916.

Lieut. B. K. COOKE, temp. Captain, 18th October 1915; Battalion Transport Officer.

Lieut. W. R. BIRCH, *wounded*, 2nd August 1915; mentioned in Dispatches, 30th November 1915.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. A. RIDGE-JONES, invalided, 28th September 1915.

Lieut. L. W. SWEET-ESCOTT, *killed*, 25th September 1915.

Lieut. H. F. CLARKE, *killed*, 25th September 1915.

Lieut. L. S. M. NEWMAN, *wounded*, 24th September 1915; rejoined, 11th February 1916; temp. Captain.

2nd Lieut. J. S. FENWICK, *wounded*, 1st August 1915; to England.

CAPTAIN H. H. COBB.

2nd Lieut. S. H. BIRD, *wounded*, 6th August 1915; to England.

2nd Lieut. L. S. LEE, *killed*, 25th September 1915; mentioned in Dispatches, 30th November 1915.

2nd Lieut. W. T. BECKINGHAM, *wounded*, 25th September 1915; to England.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. T. F. H. FREMANTLE, *wounded*, 25th September; *died of his wounds*, 17th October 1915.

2nd Lieut. C. H. WALTER, *wounded*, 25th September 1915; to England; rejoined, 13th March 1916.

2nd Lieut. J. BLEECK, *wounded*, 23rd August 1915; to England; rejoined, 26th September 1915; acting Adjutant, 28th October–13th November 1915.

2nd Lieut. H. A. LE MESSURIER, invalided to England, 30th August 1915.

2nd Lieut. K. V. CARTER, *wounded*, 2nd January 1916.

2nd Lieut. J. H. CUPPER, mentioned in Dispatches, 30th November 1915.

Captain B. C. T. PAGET, Adjutant of the Battalion since August 1914; awarded the MILITARY CROSS, 18th November 1915; to Brigade-Major, 42nd Infantry Brigade, 26th November 1915.

Hon. Lieut. F. M. ROBERTS, Quartermaster.

Lieut. H. A. GILLESPIE (R.A.M.C.), Medical Officer.

II.

Joined or rejoined the Battalion between the 1st August 1915 and 30th June 1916.

2nd Lieut. J. N. G. MITCHELL, joined, 20th August 1915; *killed*, 25th September 1915.

2nd Lieut. A. W. WOOD, joined, 10th September 1915; *wounded*, 25th September 1915, and *died of his wounds* on the following day.

Lieut. D. J. TUCK (3rd Battalion), joined, 26th September 1915; promoted Captain, 6th November 1915; *mortally wounded*, 17th June 1916.

2nd Lieut. H. W. ROBINSON, joined, 26th September 1915; *wounded*, 2nd December 1915.

2nd Lieut. T. W. C. FORESHEW, joined, 26th September 1915.

2nd Lieut. C. E. P. FORESHEW, joined, 26th September 1915; to 42nd Trench Mortar Battery.

2nd Lieut. S. R. SEBASTIAN (3rd Hants), joined, 1st October 1915; promoted Lieutenant, and appointed Adjutant, 27th November 1915.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. T. RODOCANACHI (3rd Hants), joined, 1st October 1915; awarded MILITARY CROSS, 18th November 1915.

Lieut. H. V. SMITH, joined, 4th October 1915; invalided to England.

2nd Lieut. A. D. J. MELLISS, joined, 4th October 1915; *killed*, 17th October 1915.

2ND LIEUT. LE MESSURIER USING A PERISCOPE.

2nd Lieut. J. BOWMAN, joined, 4th October 1915; *missing, believed killed*, 23rd November 1915.

2nd Lieut. C. C. STATT, joined, 4th October 1915.

2nd Lieut. L. FARRER, joined, 4th October 1915; *died* in hospital in France, 28th October 1915.

2nd Lieut. G. G. GRAY, joined, 4th October 1915; *wounded*, 22nd November 1915; to England.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. H. A. BEAVER, joined, 4th October 1915.

2nd Lieut. E. G. BARRELL, joined, 4th October 1915; to 42nd Machine-gun Company, 16th February 1916.

Major R. D. KEYWORTH (2nd Battalion), joined, 5th October 1915; acting Second in Command; invalided to England, December 1915. *See* Services of Officers extra-regimentally employed.

Captain R. O. LOGAN (1st Battalion), rejoined, from being *wounded*, 5th October 1915; *killed*, 17th October 1915.

Lieut. J. W. QUINN (3rd Battalion), joined, 7th October 1915; invalided to England, December 1915.

2nd Lieut. C. A. CLUTSOM, joined, 9th October 1915.

2nd Lieut. A. W. SMITH, joined, 9th October 1915; *killed*, 4th February 1916.

2nd Lieut. S. E. PRODGER, joined, 9th October 1915; invalided to England in the following month.

2nd Lieut. B. H. FARMER, joined, 30th October 1915; Battalion Bombing Officer; accidentally *wounded*, May 1916.

2nd Lieut. A. H. ROBERTSON, joined 30th October 1915.

2nd Lieut. W. MCMILLAN, joined, 9th December 1915; to England, March 1916.

2nd Lieut. A. J. SHAWE (from Artists' Rifles), joined, 9th December 1915.

2nd Lieut. E. A. PACKE (Dorsets), joined, 14th December 1915; transferred to R.F.C., February 1916.

2nd Lieut. S. E. BURROWS (9th Battalion), joined, 24th December 1915; *killed*, 30th December 1915.

2nd Lieut. R. G. WILSDON (9th Battalion), joined, 24th December 1915; transferred to Machine Gun Corps, 16th February 1916.

Captain C. A. F. FOWKE (3rd Battalion), transferred from 2nd Battalion, and joined 5th Battalion, 24th December 1915; awarded MILITARY CROSS, January 1916; acting Second in Command, and in temporary command of the Battalion, January 1916; *wounded*, 10th March 1916; to England. For previous services, *see* 2nd Battalion.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. A. G. TURNER (9th Battalion), joined, 25th December 1915.

2nd Lieut. D. S. HIGGINS (9th Battalion), joined, 26th December 1915.

2nd Lieut. G. BRADLEY, joined, 14th February 1916.

2nd Lieut. W. A. FORD, joined, 10th February 1916.

2nd Lieut. H. WESTON-WEBB, joined, 14th February 1916; Battalion Bombing Officer, May 1916.

2nd Lieut. O. L. JACKS, joined, 10th March 1916.

2nd Lieut. F. H. WALROND, joined, 10th March 1916; D Company.

2nd Lieut. A. L. TOMPKINS, joined, 13th March 1916; C Company.

2nd Lieut. E. L. D. ROBINSON, joined, 13th March 1916; A Company.

2nd Lieut. S. ASHMAN, joined, 21st April 1916; D Company.

Lieut. G. S. GREENE, joined, 24th April 1916; B Company.

2nd Lieut. G. P. DE PASS, joined, 24th April 1916; A Company

2nd Lieut. H. G. STYLES, joined, 29th April 1916; A Company

2nd Lieut. A. L. THOMAS, joined, 22nd May 1916.

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 6TH (SERVICE) BATTALION 1ST AUGUST 1915 TO 30TH JUNE 1916.

(*See Maps* 6 *and* 8.)

Heavy and often dangerous duties were performed by the Battalion during these eleven months at a cost of nearly 300 casualties, yet without the satisfaction of taking part in any important engagement. The principal work which fell to its lot was holding various parts of the line in France and in Flanders, besides spending a very disagreeable winter in the wet and muddy trenches.

Throughout this period the Battalion was commanded by Lieut.-Colonel E. D. White (late 1st Battalion).

LIEUT.-COLONEL E. D. WHITE.

FROM THE REGIMENTAL DIARY.

August 1*st*, 1915.—The 6th Battalion, forming part of the 60th (Light) Brigade of the 20th (Light) Division, was in billets near Bailleul, and was inspected by General Pulteney, Commanding the IIIrd Corps.

August 2*nd*–8*th*.—Route marching, training, etc. Lieut. Lack and 1 Sergeant to Machine Gun Course at Wisques; 2nd Lieut. Goodwyn and 1 Corporal to Bombing Class; Lieut. Middleditch and 32 N.C.O.'s and men to Brigade Bombing School, Lieut. Middleditch being appointed Brigade Bombing Officer.

August 9*th*.—Left billets at 12 midnight, marched to Sailly Railway Station, arriving at 4 a.m. (10th). Here we were met by guides of the 2nd Scottish Rifles, who conducted companies to billets in the Rue de Quesnes. The Battalion was attached to the Scottish Rifles for instruction in trench duties, and to the 2nd Devons, actually in trenches.

Digitized by Google

August 10*th*.—Companies were instructed by officers and N.C.O.'s of the Scottish Rifles. Platoons went into the trenches, to be attached to platoons of the 2nd Devons for individual instruction, one man of ours to one man of theirs. Working parties of 1 officer and 60 N.C.O.'s and men also went up for work in the trenches at 9 p.m.

August 11*th*.—Same as yesterday. Platoons in the trenches relieved by 5 other platoons. Working parties morning and evening.

August 12*th*.—As yesterday.

August 13*th*.—One platoon from each company went into trenches to work as a platoon. Working parties (1 officer and 75 men) at 9 a.m.

August 14*th*.—As yesterday. One man was wounded by a rifle bullet in the wrist.

August 15*th*.—As yesterday. Working party (1 officer and 50 men) at 5 p.m. A man was injured in the back by a pick.

August 16*th*.—As yesterday. Corporal LUDLOW was killed whilst at a listening-post, and was buried in the graveyard by Devon H.Q. Another man was wounded in the eye at the same time.

August 17*th*.—As yesterday; 1 man wounded in the head.

At 6.30 p.m. the Battalion paraded at Sailly Station, and moved back to Reserve billets at Oultersteen, arriving in billets at 11.45 p.m.; 3 men were conveyed in the ambulance, but no one fell out on the march.

August 18*th*.—Rest and cleaning up.

August 19*th*.—The Battalion employed in clearing drains, ditches, etc. Training of bombers, signallers, range-finders.

August 20*th*–21*st*.—The whole Battalion had baths at Bailleul, 50 men at a time, at intervals of 20 minutes.

August 22*nd*.—Church Parade, and rest.

August 23*rd*.—Brigade alarm test. Captain H. E. Stephens proceeded to the Base, for instructing recruits.

August 24*th*.—The C.O., Second in Command, Adjutant, and 4 Company Commanders proceeded, by motor, to Laventie, to reconnoitre the trenches of the 39th Garhwal Rifles and 2nd Leicesters, with a view to taking over.

Lieut. Lack returned from Machine Gun School. Captain Bryant and billeting party proceeded to Estaires.

Digitized by Google

August 25th.—Marched at 1.30 p.m. to billets at Estaires, arriving at 4.15 p.m. Billets on the Estaires Neuf-Berquin road.

August 26th.—Estaires. Companies sent advanced parties of 1 officer, C.-S.-M., 4 N.C.O.'s, and 2 company signallers to accompany Major Childers, the R.S.M., and 6 regimental signallers, to the trenches of the 2nd Leicesters in the afternoon, and took over stores, telephones, etc.

Companies paraded at 6.10, 6.15, 6.20, and 6.30 p.m., to march to the trenches. Enemy shelled Laventie Village just as C Company was approaching. Companies moved on by platoons. The last company had one G.S. limbered wagon with them, to take up stores, rations, and tools. These were unloaded at A and B Companies at La Flinque Cross-roads (M.16, B.7.7, Sheet 36), and at C and D at M.18 A.2.9. The companies then marched on to the trenches, carrying everything. Trenches taken over at 10.30 p.m.; A, B, and C Companies in front line; D in reserve; H.Q. in farmhouse at M.17.d.3.8; transport in Rue de Paradis (M.4.C). The transport moved two carts together with 10 minutes' interval between carts. Captain Pears, whilst riding with the column, was hit by a piece of shell near Laventie Church, and severely wounded.

August 27th.—Companies working on parapet, etc.

A reinforcement of 30 N.C.O.'s and men arrived.

August 28th.—Usual work on trenches.

August 29th.—In the morning information was received from a deserter that the enemy intended to attack next day. The Brigadier held a conference of C.O.'s at 10 a.m., after which the Brigade took up fighting positions. Battalion H.Q. moved to C Company H.Q., D Company holding Elgin Post to Eglise Post, and Fauquissart Post. Brigade H.Q. moved to our original Battalion H.Q.

At 3.15 p.m. information received that an enemy mine was under our left section. The left platoon of C Company was ordered to the support trench, and instructed that, on the mine exploding, they were to rush forward and hold the crater. At 4.15 p.m. our artillery bombarded the enemy lines. Our companies in the front line sent 75 per cent. of their men into the support line, while the remainder held the front line. At 5.30 p.m. orders were received from Brigade H.Q. that the left section was to re-occupy the line. This was carried out by 7 p.m. At 6.15 p.m. the transport was ordered to be ready to move at half an hour's notice.

September 1st.—Still in the trenches. Situation normal.

Digitized by Google

September 2nd.—Relieved by the 6th King's Shropshire Light Infantry at 8 p.m. Relief complete by 11.50 p.m.

September 3rd.—Battalion in billets, with orders to be ready to move at half an hour's notice. One company on Inlying Piquet, ready to move at 10 minutes' notice. Wet day; no working parties. Companies cleaning up, kit inspections, etc.

September 4th.—Working parties under R.E., 3 officers and 150 men by day (8 a.m.), and by night (7 p.m.).

Casualties.—2 men killed, and 4 wounded.

September 5th.—Working parties as before.

September 6th.—Usual working parties; 1 man died of wounds.

September 7th–8th.—Daily and nightly working parties.

September 9th.—Tube Helmets against gas were issued.

The Battalion relieved the 6th K.S.L.I. in the trenches, companies moving in independently, half an hour between companies and 200 yards between platoons. The leading Company (B) was at the head of the communication trench at 7 p.m. Relief complete at 9 p.m. One man was wounded.

September 10th.—4 platoons of the 12th Durham Light Infantry were attached for individual instruction yesterday, and another 4 to-day.

September 12th.—Lieut. Lack admitted to hospital.

Casualties.—2 men killed, 1 man wounded.

September 13th.—More officers and men of 12th Durhams attached for instruction.

One man was killed.

September 16th.—One man wounded. The Battalion was relieved by the 6th K.S.L.I., the relief starting at 7 p.m. and complete by 9.50 p.m.

A and D Companies moved to the following posts: Winchester, Lonely, Road Bend, Masselot, and Wangerig. B and C Companies and H.Q. to L'Épinette Farm.

September 17th–20th.—Resting in billets, bathing at Estaires, and furnishing working parties at night.

On the 20th Lieut. and Quartermaster A. C. Baker, from the 9th Battalion, joined for duty.

September 21st.—Furnishing working parties. Orders for attack received, but date not fixed. Our artillery bombarded the enemy's trenches.

Digitized by Google

September 22nd.—The Battalion went into the trenches again, in relief of the 6th K.S.L.I. Bombardment continued.

September 23rd–24th.—One man wounded. Bombardment continued.

A draft of 30 men arrived.

September 25th.—At 5.30 a.m. we exploded a mine on our right. The troops on our right launched the attack, while we threw smoke-balls to form a screen, and opened fire to support the attack. The bombardment on both sides was very heavy for threequarters of an hour, but the enemy's shells did little damage. For the remainder of the day we stood ready in the trenches, but our rôle was to hold on to our line.[1]

September 26th–27th.—Wet days, which we spent in repairing damage and cleaning up the trenches.

September 28th.—The Battalion was relieved in the trenches by the 11th K.R.R.C. and 11th R.B., and went into billets, A Company at La Flinque; B, La Bassée Road; C and D, Le Drumez; H.Q., Rue de Paradis.

September 29th.—A Company stood fast, while the remainder of the Battalion moved into billets on the La Bassée Road.

September 30th–October 2nd.—In billets, furnishing working parties.

October 3rd.—Relieved 6th K.S.L.I. in the trenches. Wet and muddy.

October 4th.—Wet. Cleaning up trenches and salving material. Rations dumped at Pump House. One man accidentally wounded.

October 5th.—The enemy commenced shelling about 2 a.m.; threw rifle-grenades from the Crater into Duck's Bill. We had 3 men killed and 5 wounded. The remainder of the day was quiet. The Trench Mortar Battery was put with C Company.

October 6th–7th.—Quiet. One man killed.

October 8th.—Enemy shelled our front line from 7 a.m. to 9 a.m., especially around Duck's Bill. Damaged parapet. One man wounded.

Relieved in trenches by 6th K.S.L.I., starting at 5 p.m.

October 9th–13th.—In billets, working parties, etc.

Captain Bryant took over command of D Company on the 12th.

[1] This was in connexion with the Battle of Loos. 2nd Lieut. WHITLOCK was killed this day.

Digitized by Google

October 14*th*–19*th*.—In trenches, as before. Generally quiet.

Casualties.—On 16th, 2 men killed; on 17th, 1 man killed; on 19th, 2 men wounded.

Lieut. A. B. Baines to be temp. Captain; 2nd Lieut. R. B. Rogers to be temp. Lieut. (17th Oct.).

October 20*th*–25*th*.—In billets on La Bassée Road; working parties, etc.; 1 man killed and 1 wounded on 21st.

October 26*th*–30*th*.—In trenches.

Casualties.—On 27th, 1 man killed, 4 men wounded; on 28th, 3 men were killed and 17 wounded (A Company) by the explosion of a mine blown by the enemy outside Duck's Bill.

October 31*st*.—Work begun on making new line in front of left section by Duck's Bill. Parties from all battalions of the Brigade at work. Enemy did not fire at working parties. Men worked very well.

A patrol of 2 men lost, one man (shot), and the other, after being out all night, came in in the morning.

We had 6 men wounded to-day.

October 31*st*–*November* 1*st*.—Work on Duck's Bill continued; 1 man killed, and 1 wounded.

November 2*nd*–5*th*.—In billets, as before. Working parties, etc.

Casualties.—1 man killed and 1 died of wounds on the 2nd.

November 6*th*–9*th*.—In trenches. Laying trench-boards, working on new line near Duck's Bill, etc. Heavy bombardment by both sides on 8th and 9th, otherwise enemy quiet.

Casualties.—2 men wounded on 7th, 1 man wounded on 8th.

November 10*th*–13*th*.—In billets on La Bassée Road. Cleaning up, fitting new clothing, furnishing working parties.

On the 13th a draft of 30 N.C.O.'s and men joined.

Casualties.—1 man wounded on the 10th, and 1 on the 12th.

November 14*th*.—Our billets were taken over by the 1st Grenadier Guards, and the Battalion moved to rest billets at Estaires.

November 15*th*.—Kit inspection, etc. Colonel White took over temporary command of the 60th Brigade. 2nd Lieuts. W. B. Long and L. G. Squire joined for duty.

November 16*th*.—At Estaires. Training according to programme commenced. Classes of all kinds—Machine-gun, Bombing (under Lieut. Middleditch), Signalling, etc., and companies engaged in route marching, physical training, drill, etc.

Digitized by Google

November 17th–22nd.—Training similar to the above was continued during this period. Colonel White returned to the Battalion on the 22nd. The following appeared in the "London Gazette" of this date: "Captain J. E. Osborne to be temp. Major; Lieut. J. S. Boissier to be temp. Captain; 2nd Lieut. B. W. Fagan to be temp. Lieutenant."

November 23rd.—The Battalion left Estaires, and proceeded to Fleurbaix, to relieve the 7th Middlesex and 2nd Devons in the trenches. Companies marched independently. Dispositions: A Company on right of the line, C centre, D left, B reserve, H.Q. at Foray House. The men went into the trenches in gum boots. Relief completed by 6.30 p.m.

November 24th–27th.—A quiet period in the trenches, though considerable artillery activity on the 25th.

Casualties.—1 man wounded on the 25th, and 1 killed on the 26th.

November 28th–30th.—In billets at Fleurbaix. Training and various classes.

December 1st–5th.—In the trenches. Quiet. 1 man was wounded on the 4th.

December 6th–9th.—In billets at Fleurbaix and vicinity. H.Q. at Ferrets Post. Training, etc. Furnished small working parties. On the 7th Fleurbaix was shelled by the enemy.

Casualties.—1 man killed and 2 men wounded on the 7th; 1 man died of wounds on the 9th.

December 10th–11th.—In the trenches.

December 12th–23rd.—In billets, as before, until the 14th, and afterwards in the vicinity of Cul de Sac Farm (reserve billets). The period was spent in training, with occasional working parties. On the 15th new clothing was issued to companies.

Casualties.—1 man wounded on the 12th, 1 man wounded on the 13th, and 1 man wounded on the 19th.

2nd Lieuts. Thomas and Clarke joined for duty, and were posted to B and D Companies respectively on the 13th December.

December 24th–27th.—In trenches. Considerable artillery activity. Casualties during the period, 1 man killed and 3 men wounded.

December 28th–31st.—In billets at Fleurbaix and neighbourhood. Firing on the range, sniping, bombing, smoke-helmet drill, etc. The Battalion found working parties of 3 officers and 150 men for carrying purposes.

Digitized by Google

1916.

January 1st–4th.—In trenches at Rue Pettilon.

Casualties.—1 man wounded on the 1st, and 1 on the 3rd.

January 5th–7th.—In billets. Usual training routine. One man was wounded on the 7th.

January 8th.—Advance party proceeded to new reserve area, to take over stores, etc. The Battalion relieved the 6th K.S.L.I. in the trenches.

Casualties.—4 men wounded.

January 9th.—A gas attack was delivered by our troops. Operations commenced at 2 a.m., our artillery co-operating by heavily shelling the enemy trenches. The enemy replied by shelling our front-line trenches and by keeping up a heavy rifle and machine-gun fire. By 4 a.m. the situation was normal, but later the enemy's artillery resumed activity, shelling our front-line and support trenches, and particularly Cellar Farm Post.

January 10th.—In the trenches; 1 man died of wounds, and 1 man wounded.

January 11th.—Relieved by the 9th York and Lancaster, and marched to billets at Bac St. Maur.

January 12th.—The Battalion proceeded to reserve area billets in the vicinity of Doulieu for the night.

January 13th.—To reserve billets at Morbecque.

2nd Lieuts. T. N. C. Harris and C. H. Green joined for duty, and were posted to B and A Companies respectively.

January 14th–21st.—In billets, training, etc.

The following appeared in Regimental Orders, 20th January: "The names of No. 12584 Private White and No. 12744 Private Smith, of D Company, were sent into H.Q. for special notice under the following circumstances: On the 8th instant, when in billets at Weathercock House, the billets were shelled. One of the shells fell in the shed in which the Company cooker was, and where Privates White and Smith were working. A man of the Tunnelling Company, who was also there, was wounded. Though the shed was being subjected to heavy shell-fire, Private White, on his own initiative, fetched a stretcher, and, assisted by Private Smith, removed the wounded man. These men's names have been noted in the exploit books kept at Brigade and Divisional H.Q. The Commanding Officer congratulates Private White and Private Smith on their courageous action."

Digitized by Google

January 22nd.—Moved to billets near Saint Sylvestre Cappel.

January 23rd–February 4th.—In billets, training. On the 1st February the Battalion was inspected by General Sir Herbert Plumer, Commanding the 2nd Army.

February 5th.—At 9.15 a.m. the Battalion paraded, and proceeded to Rest Camp near Waton, marching viâ Steenvoorde, and thence to Poperinghe and Waton. The 20th Division now forms part of the XIVth Corps.

February 6th–10th.—At Waton, training. Several platoons were inoculated.

February 11th.—The Battalion proceeded to reserve billets at Elverdinghe Château, and took over from the 5th (Service) Battalion of the Regiment.

February 12th.—At 4 p.m. the Battalion was ordered to stand-to, owing to unusual activity on the part of the enemy. At 5.15 p.m. the Battalion moved forward, to support the 6th K.S.L.I., as the enemy was making bombing attacks.

The enemy heavily shelled the roads and bridges leading to the front line.

February 13th.—The situation having become normal at 2 a.m. the Battalion returned to billets. Casualties yesterday amounted to 3 killed, 2 died of wounds, and 20 wounded. The Battalion rested for the day.

February 14th.—1 man killed.

February 15th.—Relieved 6th K.S.L.I. in the trenches (E.24 to E.28); 1 man wounded; 2 companies in support; H.Q. on the canal bank north of Ypres.

February 16th–18th.—In trenches; fairly quiet.

Casualties.—On 16th, 1 man killed and 2 men wounded; on 17th, 1 man died of wounds, 2 men wounded; on 18th, 1 man killed.

February 19th.—At 4.35 p.m. received S.O.S. (F.34), the Battalion stood-to; 1 platoon of A Company and 1 section of Bombers were despatched to Pilkem Road Trench between Colne Valley and Skipton.

Enemy's artillery put a barrage on Bridge 6.B.

At 5.30 p.m. there was heavy artillery fire; reinforcements sent to Skipton Post and Butt 17.

Bridge 6.W. was broken by shell-fire.

Digitized by Google

At 6 p.m. the Battalion received "gas alert" orders, but the situation became normal.

Casualties.—1 man killed, 3 men wounded.

February 20th.—Enemy quiet until 11.30 a.m., when he commenced shelling canal bank and Bridge 6.W. with heavies. The telephone wires to the front line were cut by shell-fire.

February 21st.—Quiet; 1 man killed, 4 men wounded.

February 22nd.—At 2 p.m. heavy bombardment of enemy trenches by our artillery. Enemy retaliated by shelling canal bank.

At 5.31 p.m. bombardment still heavy. S.O.S. received from E.23, and reinforcements were at once dispatched to Butt 17, Skipton Post, and Pilkem Road Post.

At 6 p.m. the telephone wires to front line were cut by shell-fire. At 6.37 p.m. artillery fire ceased, and by 6.45 p.m. the situation had become normal.

Casualties.—3 killed and 5 wounded.

February 23rd.—At 12.30 p.m. about 20 of the enemy came over bombing, but were driven off by rifle-fire; 1 man died of wounds.

February 24th.—Quiet. The Battalion was relieved by the 7th Somersets at 10.30 p.m. 2nd Lieut. L. G. Squire was wounded, and 1 man died of wounds. The following appeared in Regimental Orders to-day :—

"*Act of Gallantry.*—At 9.30 a.m. on the 21st February 1916 the enemy were bombarding the parapet of the company to which No. 9895 Lance-Corporal T. COOMBES belongs with trench mortars. A trench mortar burst just behind a parados and blew No. 12229 Private Pithers four yards over the parapet, in front of the enemy, breaking both his legs. Lance-Corporal Coombes, of his own initiative, at once climbed over the parapet, in full view of the enemy, only about 150 yards distant, and lifted Private Pithers back to the front trench. The enemy snipers were active at the time, and had been all the morning. The Commanding Officer congratulates Lance-Corporal Coombes on his gallant conduct, and has recommended him for a reward. The Brigadier-General wishes his high appreciation of Lance-Corporal Coombes's conduct to be conveyed to him."[1]

[1] Lance-Corporal Coombes was awarded the DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL on 8th March 1916.

Digitized by Google

February 25th.—The Battalion proceeded by train to Rest Camp "B" at 4 a.m., arriving at 4. 30. a.m.

February 26th–March 1st.—Training, bathing, various classes of instruction. The Commanding Officer took over temporary command of the 60th Brigade.

March 2nd–6th.—In trenches. The first three days were fairly quiet. On the 5th and 6th the enemy shelled The Willows and Hill Top Farm heavily.

Casualties.—On the 4th, 1 man wounded; on the 5th, Captain Stephens and Lieut. Lack wounded, 4 other ranks killed, and 13 wounded; on the 6th, 2 men killed, 3 wounded, 1 died of wounds.

March 7th–9th.—At "A" Camp, on the canal bank, finding working parties for working in the front line. The Battalion held in readiness to move at 20 minutes' notice.

March 10th.—Moved to "B" Camp, the 11th R.B. taking over "A" Camp.

March 11th–13th.—Remained at "B" Camp, cleaning up, bathing at Poperinghe, etc. One man died of wounds on the 12th, and another on the 13th.

Brigadier-General W. D. Smith took over the command of the 20th Division from Major-General R. H. Davies, C.B., on the 11th.

March 14th.—Proceeded from Brandhoek Station to relieve the 7th Somerset Light Infantry in the trenches. Companies detrained at point H.12.b.2.0, and marched to Essex Farm.

March 15th–17th.—In trenches. A quiet period.

Casualties.—2 killed, 10 wounded, 1 died of wounds.

March 18th.—On relief, companies moved back to the canal bank.

Casualties.—2 died of wounds, 4 wounded.

March 19th–21st.—Working parties found each night for communication trenches and front line; 1 man wounded.

March 22nd.—Relieved on canal bank by 7th Somersets, and marched to camps, A and C Companies to Elverdinghe, B and D Companies and H.Q. to "G" Camp (A.16.b.0.4).

The C.O. rejoined the Battalion from commanding the 60th Brigade.

Digitized by Google

March 23rd–30th.—[1] Companies training and firing on the range.

March 31st–April 3rd.—In the trenches. There was some heavy shelling by the enemy on the first two days, when we had 5 men killed and 2 wounded. The enemy also showed considerable activity throughout this period with aeroplanes, guns of various calibre, machine-guns, and trench mortars. With the latter he hit a machine-gun emplacement on the 3rd April and damaged a gun.

April 3rd.—We were relieved in the trenches about midnight 3rd/4th, when A, B, and C Companies marched to billets at Trois Tour Château, while D Company was in close support on the canal bank. One man wounded.

April 4th.—Inspection parades, etc. Found working parties of about 50 men per company, for work on front line and support trenches; 1 man wounded.

April 5th–6th.—Working, etc., as before.

April 7th.—Relieved by the 10th R.B., and marched to Camp "H." (A.10.C).

April 8th–10th.—At Camp "H." Training, bathing, fitting new clothing, etc.

April 11th.—Relieved the 7th D.C.L.I. in the trenches. While the relief was in progress the enemy opened a heavy bombardment on Dawson's City and E.28 and E.27 Posts, as well as on the communication trenches. He then made an attack on the two posts with some 70 men, who were, however, repulsed by rifle and machine-gun fire from the 7th D.C.L.I. The enemy left his dead and wounded on our wire and near our parapet.

Our artillery shelled the German front-line trenches.

The trenches taken over were in a very damaged condition, Skipton Post being practically levelled.

The enemy machine-guns were active throughout the night.

Casualties.—Lieut. R. E. G. Hunt and 5 men wounded, and 2 men killed.

April 12th.—Our artillery bombarded the German trenches from 10 to 10.20 a.m. The enemy retaliated by shelling Headingley and

[1] The following appeared in Regimental Orders of the 24th March: Major J. E. Osborne is appointed Second in Command *vice* Major E. M. Childers, transferred to the General List, to command the 20th Div. School of Instruction. Dated 11th March 1916.

Digitized by Google

Dawson's City, and trench-mortaring E.25 Post. No damage done.

We sent out patrol parties from E.24 to bring in, from the front of E.28, Germans killed last night. Four bodies were recovered. Two of our men were wounded.

April 13th.—Situation quiet; 1 man wounded.

April 14th.—At 6 p.m. our artillery bombarded enemy trenches for half an hour. We had 1 man killed and 2 men wounded.

April 15th.—Battalion H.Q. on the canal bank were shelled with about 20 rounds of shrapnel at 12.30 p.m. No damage.

At 2.30 p.m. the enemy trench-mortared E.25 and E.26. Our artillery retaliated.

At 9 p.m. we were relieved by the 6th K.S.L.I., when companies moved to the canal bank and Pelliser Farm.

Casualties.—5 men wounded.

April 16th.—On the canal bank. Quiet. Extract from Regimental Orders of to-day: "The Commanding Officer has much pleasure in notifying to No. 12354 Private J. ALLEN and No. 16584 Private P. WALKER, and to the Battalion, that the following act of gallant conduct by these two men was brought to the notice of the Major-General Commanding the Division. On the 3rd March 1916 the part of the trench in which Private Allen and Private Walker were posted was heavily bombarded by trench-mortars. Their platoon was withdrawn to cover in rear, the trench being practically untenable. Private Walker was left as sentry, and Private Allen remained voluntarily with him. Both these men stuck to their posts and kept a good look-out throughout a very heavy bombardment.

"The following letters of appreciation have been received:—

"'The Major-General commanding wishes you to convey to Private J. Allen and Private P. Walker his appreciation of their gallant conduct on the 3rd March, and inform them that their names are entered in the Divisional Exploit Book for further recognition in due course.'

"'The Brigadier-General wishes to add his appreciation of the gallant conduct of these men to that of the Divisional Commander.'"

April 17th.—At 10 p.m. the Battalion was relieved by the 2nd Durham Light Infantry, and proceeded by train to Poperinghe, where companies went into billets.

Digitized by Google

April 18*th*.—Found working party of 200 men for work on new railway. At 9.30 a.m. the Battalion proceeded to new billets at "M" Camp.

April 19*th*–25*th*.—At "M" Camp, training, etc.

April 26*th*.—At 6.45 a.m. the Battalion paraded, and proceeded to Poperinghe Station, where it entrained for Calais, arriving at Fontinetts Station at 1 p.m. Thence the Battalion marched to No. 6 Large Rest, Beaumaris, Calais.

April 27*th*–30*th*.—The Battalion remained at Calais Rest Camp, training, bathing in the sea, etc.

The following officers joined the Battalion for duty during April, and were posted to companies as stated: 2nd Lieuts. E. C. J. Allday (D), G. W. Phillips (C), B. J. Henry (A), J. W. Shaw (B), A. T. W. Allsopp (C), H. G. H. Copeman (A), T. G. R. Makeig-Jones (D), V. Harris (D).

Summary of Events.

On the 1*st May* Lieut. E. J. Anderson was appointed Acting Adjutant, *vice* Major C. R. C. Boyle; and Lieut. Henry, Signalling Officer, in place of Anderson. On the 2nd, 2nd Lieut. W. E. Brookes was appointed to command the 6th T.M. Battery.

On the 5*th May* Brigadier-General the Hon. L. J. P. Butler took over the command of the 60th Infantry Brigade, *vice* Brigadier-General W. G. Roy, to England.

On the 8*th May* the following were awarded the Military Medal (20th Divisional Order, No. 281. Sec. 1):—

12354 Private Joseph Allen.

16584 Private Percy Thomas Walker.

On this day Lieut. B. W. Fagan was appointed Brigade Sniping Officer, and 2nd Lieut. K. I. T. Morland joined the Battalion for duty, and was posted to A Company.

On the 11*th May* B Company's Bayonet Fighting Team won the Divisional Bayonet Fighting Competition at Wormhoudt.

Major C. R. C. Boyle took over the command of A Company on the 12th; 2nd Lieut. H. J. Best joined for duty on the 15th, and was posted to B Company.

On the 19*th May* the Battalion moved to Poperinghe, and on the 21st resumed trench life in the neighbourhood of Ypres. The events

Digitized by Google

which followed are described in the Battalion Diary, extracts from which are given below :—

From the Battalion Diary (supplemented by extracts from Battalion Orders) :—

May 21st.—The Battalion paraded at 7 p.m., and marched to Poperinghe Station; entrained, and proceeded to Asylum, Ypres. Detrained, and marched through Ypres to Zillebeke trenches, to relieve the 2nd Irish Guards. Battalion H.Q. at Railway Farm.

May 22nd.—Day quiet, but at night the enemy's machine-guns were active. Patrols out.

Lieut. G. E. Middleditch was wounded.

May 23rd–24th.—In the trenches. Considerable activity on both sides.

Casualties.—8 men wounded on the 23rd, and 8 men wounded on the 24th.

May 25th.—The Battalion was relieved by the 6th K.S.L.I., and marched, by platoons, to Asylum, Ypres, and entrained for Brandhoek, thence marching to "A" Camp, Vlamertinghe; 2 men wounded.

May 26th–June 1st.—At "A" Camp, Vlamertinghe, training, etc. H.R.H. the Prince of Wales visited the Camp on the 26th May.

Intimation received that the following appeared in the "London Gazette" of 21st and 23rd May 1916 :—

Captain C. R. C. Boyle to be temp. Major, *vice* Major E. M. Childers, transferred to General List (11.3.16).

2nd Lieut. A. C. V. Gosset, to be temp. Lieut. (20.11.15). Temp. Lieut. A. B. Baines to be temp. Captain, *vice* temp. Captain A. J. Vines (1.10.15).

Temp. 2nd Lieut. R. B. Rogers to be temp. Lieut., *vice* Baines (1.10.15). Temp. Lieut. J. S. Boissier to be temp. Captain, *vice* Major J. D. W. Davy (Res. of Off.), dated 12th October 1915.

Temp. 2nd Lieut. B. W. Fagan to be temp. Lieut. *vice* Boissier (12.10.15).

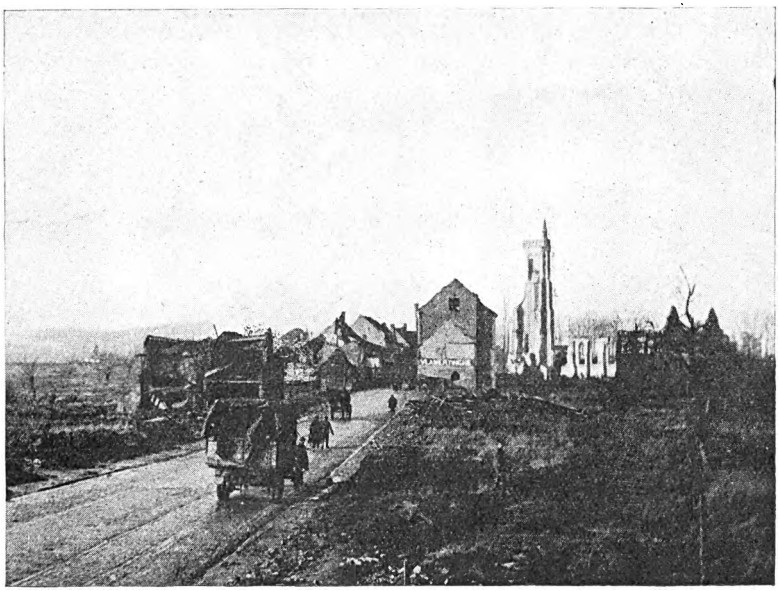
Temp. Lieut. E. A. Shaw to be temp. Captain, *vice* Captain J. E. Osborne, promoted (19.11.15).

Temp. 2nd Lieut. H. J. Sutherland to be temp. Lieut., *vice* Shaw (19.11.15).

Digitized by Google

The following appeared in Orders : "The signal whistle to be used by aeroplane sentries is as follows : 3 blasts, *hostile aeroplane over*. On this signal all men will get under cover, or if there is no cover, stand still, and *not look up* until the *All Clear* (1 blast) sounds."

June 2nd.—At 7 p.m. A Company proceeded to billets at Convent, Ypres, and at 9 p.m. the remainder of the Battalion to billets at Ramparts, Ypres. The enemy shelled the Ypres-Vlamertinghe Road with shrapnel, whilst the Battalion was marching to Ypres.



VLAMERTINGHE.

After arrival (10.30 p.m.) there was a very heavy bombardment on both sides until about 2 a.m. (3rd June).

Casualties.—2nd Lieut. A. C. THOMAS and 1 man killed; 1 man wounded.

June 3rd.—At 10.30 p.m. the Battalion proceeded to the trenches, in relief of the 6th K.S.L.I.; whilst the relief was in progress the enemy opened a bombardment on our right, to which our artillery retaliated heavily. By 1.30 a.m. (4th June) all was quiet, and the relief completed.

We had one man wounded.

Digitized by Google

June 4th.—Fairly quiet day, but between 7 p.m. and 8.15 p.m. the enemy put up a heavy bombardment, and then attacked the Canadians on our right.

June 5th.—Railway Wood was shelled at intervals during the day, and enemy artillery was very active in the afternoon and during the night.

Casualties.—4 men wounded.

June 6th.—Enemy quiet until 12.45 p.m., when he opened a heavy bombardment, especially on Railway Wood, and followed with an attack on the Division on our right. Our Lewis-guns and rifles several times fired into parties of Germans, moving from German line towards Hooge and Outpost Farm, with good effect. At 2.50 p.m. the enemy blew up a mine about Gully Farm in the left battalion area, and at 3.10 p.m. another in front of junction of 15 and 16, i.e., about 50 yards in front of our line. No damage.

Companies stood down at 6 p.m., and the night was quiet.

Two Germans of the 22nd Reserve Infantry Regiment, 177th Division, strayed into our lines and were made prisoners.

Casualties.—1 man died of wounds; 20 men wounded.

June 7th.—Still in Zillebeke trenches. Quiet, but our artillery kept up a slow rate of fire on new German line at Hooge. Lieut. E. J. Anderson was confirmed in the appointment of Adjutant (1.5.16).

June 8th.—Day quiet. At 6 p.m. our artillery bombarded the German front line in front of the Battalion area with 12-inch howitzers. Enemy parapet considerably damaged.

At 10 p.m. the Battalion was relieved by the 7th Somerset Light Infantry, and proceeded to Asylum, Ypres, where it entrained for Poperinghe, thence marching to billets (Rue de Boeschepe).

Casualties.—1 man killed; 5 men wounded.

June 9th–15th.—In billets at Poperinghe; training, bathing, etc.

At 11 p.m. on the 14th time was advanced sixty minutes by decree of the French Government.

June 16th.—To billets in Ypres, as before, for the night. Much artillery activity on both sides.

June 17th.—At 9.30 p.m. commenced to relieve the 7th D.C.L.I. in Zillebeke trenches. Enemy shelled the Menin Road as we were going in.

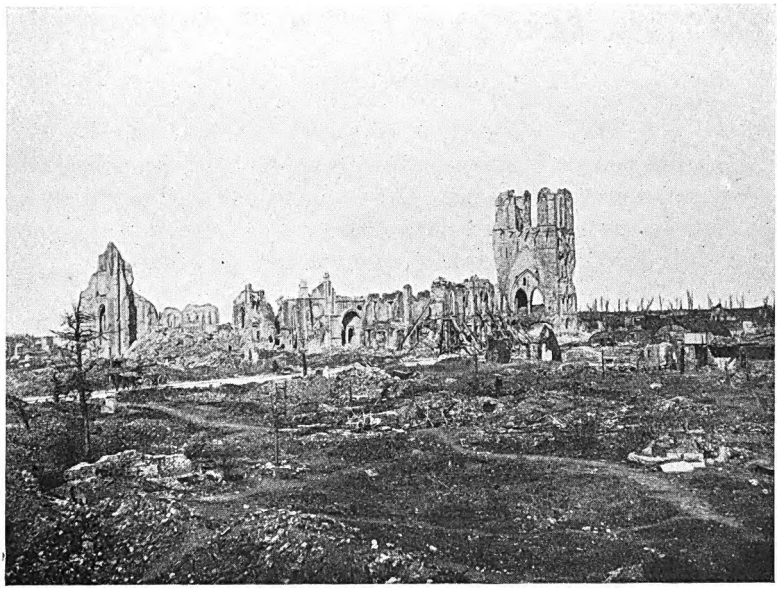
Digitized by Google

June 18th–23rd.—In trenches. Enemy fairly quiet, and evidently very busy throwing up new trenches, etc., between the Beek and Hooge.

Casualties.—1 killed and 5 wounded on the 21st; 4 wounded on the 23rd.

June 23rd–30th.—In billets in Ypres (Ramparts, Horn Cellars, Convent). Working parties at night for work on trenches. Occasional shelling.

Casualties.—3 wounded on the 28th; 1 killed and 2 wounded on the 29th; 1 killed and 1 wounded on the 30th.



RUINS OF YPRES.

6TH (SERVICE) BATTALION CASUALTIES 1ST AUGUST 1915 TO 30TH JUNE 1916.

Killed.

2nd Lieut. F. W. WHITLOCK.
2nd Lieut. A. C. THOMAS.
And 71 other Ranks.

Digitized by Google

Wounded.

Captain T. Pears.
Captain H. E. Stephens.
Lieut. V. J. F. Lack.
Lieut R. L. G. Hunt.
2nd Lieut. L. G. Squire.
Lieut. G. E. Middleditch.
And about 214 Other Ranks.

HONOURS AND AWARDS.

(AUGUST 1915—JUNE 1916.)

DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL.

No. 11322 Private J. R. CROXALL (attached to 181st Company, R.E.).

For conspicuous bravery on 2nd October 1915, near Laventie, when he voluntarily assisted a non-commissioned officer to rescue an unconscious man from a mine gallery which was full of poisonous gas. His bravery and devotion to duty were very marked.

No. 9895 Lance-Corporal T. COOMBES.[1]

MILITARY MEDAL.

No. 11354 Private JOSEPH ALLEN.[2]
No. 16584 Private PERCY THOMAS WALKER.[2]

[1] His gallant action is described on page 411.
[2] *See* page 414.

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 7TH (SERVICE) BATTALION IN FRANCE, FLANDERS, AND SALONIKA, 1915–1916.

(*See Map* 7.)

On the 1st August 1915 the Battalion was at Sandhill Camp, Longbridge Deveril, Salisbury Plain, undergoing Divisional Training and preparing to proceed overseas in the near future.

EXTRACTS FROM MAJOR C. WHEELER'S DIARY.

August 29th–7th September.—Between these dates the men of the Battalion (50 per cent. at a time) were granted 4 clear days' leave prior to embarkation, which removed the staleness that had been caused by the uncertainty as to whether the Battalion was really going overseas.

Officers taking the Field.

Lieut.-Colonel F. J. NEWTON-KING, Commanding Battalion.
Major C. WHEELER, Second in Command.
Captain L. J. ELLIS, Adjutant.
Lieut. T. POWELL, D.C.M., Quartermaster.
Lieut. R. B. PEMBERTON, Transport Officer.
Lieut. C. L. WICKS, Commanding Grenadier Company.
Lieut. G. C. MILLER, Machine-gun Officer.
Lieut. A. H. DITCHBURN, Signalling Officer.
Lieut. G. H. C. KEBLE, Reserve Machine-gun Officer.
[Lieut. D. A. EVANS, R.A.M.C., Medical Officer, attached.]

Company Officers.

Company.	Commander.	Second in Command.	Platoon Commanders.
A	Capt. H. A. Henry	Lt. N. J. Pierson (acting)	Lt. C. P. Baker; 2nd Lts. C. P. Ker, W. A. Young, C. A. W. Manning.
B	Capt. J. Guise ...	Capt. B. L. Simpson	Lt. T. Bowman; 2nd Lt. J. T. S. Hoey.
C	Capt. G. B. Martin	Capt. M. G. Arnett	Lt. F. A. Durno-Steele; 2nd Lts. W. Garland, E. Riley.
D	Maj. F. Debenham	Capt. C. A. Salvesen	2nd Lts. S. L. Symonds, A. P. Boor, P. L. Molyneux.

Digitized by Google

Strength of the Battalion proceeding overseas.—29 officers, 990 other ranks.

Left behind.—9 officers, 29 other ranks.

Horses.—76 (including 12 of the 26th Divisional Train).

Vehicles.—25 (including 6 wagons of the 26th Divisional Train).

With regard to the personnel of the Battalion the following may be of interest: There was one officer who had had previous service as a regular officer; three officers with previous war service when in the ranks; eighteen officers connected with the Regiment, the two counties, or Oxford University; Major Debenham, Captain Henry, and 2nd Lieut. Boor came from Australia; Lieut. Miller from Canada; Captain Simpson and 2nd Lieut. Manning from South Africa; and 2nd Lieut. Molyneux from Ceylon. Practically all the officers had served in the T.F. or in the O.T.C. before the war.

Of the other ranks about 20 were ex-regulars (mostly of the Regiment), and a third of these had seen active service. Most, if not all, of the 20 became Warrant or Non-commissioned Officers, and no praise can be too high for the splendid work they did. They gave of their best ungrudgingly, were ever loyal to their officers, and were instrumental in building up for the Battalion a body of excellent N.C.O.'s out of men whose outlook on life and whose intellectual capacity was very different from their own. They also did much to foster in the 7th Battalion a love of the Regiment, the honour of belonging to which all ranks most jealously guarded. I may say here that all of us started campaigning with the feeling that we had glorious traditions to live up to, and *esprit de corps* came much more naturally and easily to us than if we had been the *n*th battalion of the *n*th brigade of the *n*th division of the New Army.

About 75 per cent. of the men came from the two counties, Wolverton Railway Works contributing a magnificent contingent of some 150, who had enlisted together. Among the others were about 100 Welsh miners, most useful men as fighters, diggers, and glee-singers, who, though always proud of their nationality, rapidly became infected with loyalty to the Regiment, and never asked for transfer to a Welsh regiment.

Lastly, there was our mascot "Jack," a wire-haired terrier, possessed of all the dignity of a regimental sergeant-major, and

Digitized by Google

LIEUT.-COLONEL F. J. NEWTON-KING.

Digitized by Google

wearing a collar inscribed, "I am Jack, of the 7th Oxford and Bucks Lt. Infantry. Whose dog are you ?"[1]

September 19th.—I left Longbridge Deveril at 1 a.m. in charge of the advanced party, consisting of all the Regimental Transport, Lewis-gun Section, Signallers, and 109 other ranks under Lieuts. R. B. Pemberton and G. C. Miller. Entrained at Warminster, and spent a dreary day in the docks at Southampton. Formed part of a large convoy. Astonishing amount of shipping about.

September 20th.—After helping to clean our ship, we marched to No. 8 Rest Camp, on the outskirts of Havre. Much struck by the absence of able-bodied Frenchmen among the civilian population. The whole place suggested war, and was a great contrast to England.

September 21st.—Entrained at 4 p.m. for our Divisional concentration area, where we hoped to rejoin the Battalion. Left Havre at 8.45 p.m. Very tedious journey and very uncomfortable for the men.

September 22nd.—Detrained at Longueau at 8 a.m. Marched 14 miles to Briquesmesnil and Saisseval, where I had been told to arrange billets for the Battalion, which was due to arrive from Boulogne about midnight. This took a long time, as the villages were three miles apart, and I found my bicycle most useful. The Battalion arrived at 3 a.m. by an unexpected route. Every one was dead tired, so all slept where they halted in Briquesmesnil.

September 23rd.—After breakfast the Battalion took up its allotted billets and got comfortably settled in. Most of the day spent in censoring the men's letters.

September 24th.—Marched to Ferrières (4 miles), where our Brigade (78th) was inspected by General Sir C. C. Monro, commanding the Third New Army. Heavy rain. Poor billets.

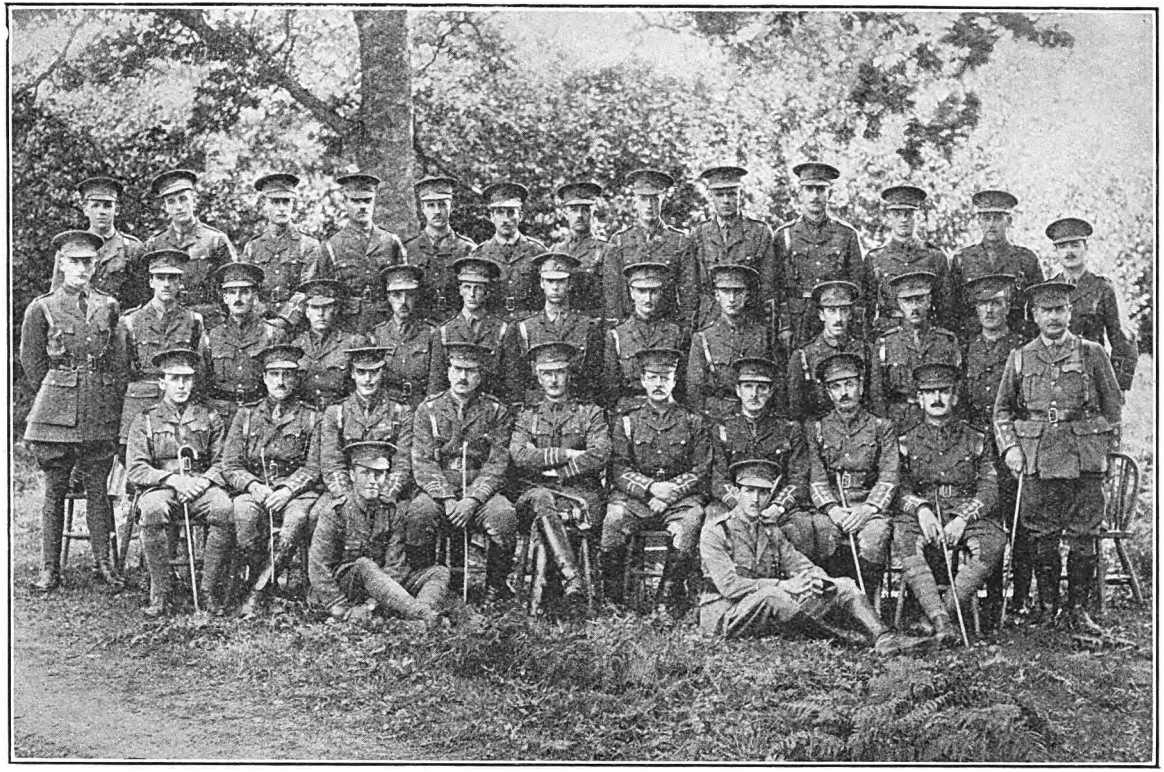
September 25th.—Marched out from Ferrières at 7.30 a.m., passing through southern outskirts of Amiens. The Brigade marched past Lieut.-General H. H. Wilson, commanding the XIIth Army Corps. Billeted at Fouilloy, after a hard march of 18 miles in the wet.

September 26th.—Sunday. Brigade Church Parade at 10 a.m. Billets very fair. One old woman was very pleased to see us, as she said she had billeted Germans in 1870 and 1914. Here we reduced

[1] "Jack" had many adventures and was frequently missing. He got on shore at Alexandria and was absent when the ship sailed, but rejoined at Salonika. He died in Greece in January 1916.

Digitized by Google

Top Row:—Lt. J. H. C. Keble, 2nd Lt. C. P. Ker, 2nd Lt. A. L. Thomas, 2nd Lt. W. A. Young, 2nd Lt. E. Riley, Lt. A. H. Ditchburn, 2nd Lt. J. T. S. Hocy, Lt. N. J. Peirson, Lt. C. P. Baker, 2nd Lt. J. W. Shaw, 2nd Lt. R. C. Streatfeild, 2nd Lt. P. L. Molyneux, Lt. D. A. Evans (R.A.M.C.).
Middle Row:—Lt. F. A. Durno-Steele, 2nd Lt. C. A. W. Manning, Lt. H. A. Henry, 2nd Lt. A. P. Boor, 2nd Lt. D. S. Northcote, 2nd Lt. W. Garland, 2nd Lt. S. L. Symonds, Lt. C. L. Wicks, 2nd Lt. T. W. Walding, Lt. P. E. Andrews, 2nd Lt. T. Bowman, 2nd Lt. C. H. Green, Lt. T. Powell (Qr.-Mr.).



Front Row:—Capt. C. A. Salvesen, Capt. O. S. Royal-Dawson, Maj. F. Debenham, Maj. C. Wheeler, Lt.-Col. F. J. Newton-King, Capt. L. J. Ellis (Adj.), Capt. G. B. Martin, Capt. J. Guise, Capt. B. L. Simpson.
On the Ground:—Capt. M. G. Arnett, Lt. R. B. Pemberton.

OFFICERS OF THE 7TH BATTALION.
(Before going overseas, 1916.)

Digitized by Google

our kit as much as possible, making a big dump in the school (where we had our H.Q.), with the object of increasing our mobility, in case we were required to assist in the operations at Loos.

September 27th–28th.—Improved our billets. Company training, chiefly rapid loading and open order work.

September 29th.—Marched to billets at Méaulte and Bécordel (10 miles). Attached to the 54th Infantry Brigade for instruction in trench warfare. Under fire for the first time, Bécordel being lightly shelled during the night. The Battalion got poor billets here, as the villages round about are crowded with other troops and the civil population. Battalion H.Q. at Méaulte.

September 30th.—At 3 p.m. Officers and N.C.O.'s of two platoons of each company went to the trenches for 24 hours' instruction in trench routine, being attached to the 6th Northamptonshire Regiment and 15th Middlesex Regiment.

From the Battalion Diary.

October 1st.—The platoons (whose Officers and N.C.O.'s were in the trenches yesterday), together with the Service Section Machine-gunners under Lieut. Miller, went into the trenches for 48 hours' duty, being attached to the two regiments mentioned above. The remainder of the Battalion at drill.

Casualties.—2 men wounded (Privates Cude and Wootton, D Company).

October 2nd.—The two platoons still in the trenches.

Casualties.—1 man killed (Corporal Hobbs, A Company, who had volunteered for wiring), and 1 man gassed (Private Mopley—the result of the explosion of a German mine).

October 3rd.—Other platoons went into the trenches for 24 hours' instruction.

October 4th.—The remaining platoons, and the Reserve Machine-gun Sections, under Lieut. Keble and 2nd Lieut. Ker, went into the trenches for 48 hours' instruction.

Casualties.—1 man wounded (Private Tooley, D Company).

October 5th.—Trench instruction continued.

Casualties.—1 man wounded (Private Davis, B Company).

October 6th.—Two platoons of B Company and two of D Company evacuated the trenches at 3 p.m. The two remaining platoons of A

Digitized by Google

and C Companies entered the trenches at 2 p.m. for 24 hours' instruction *as companies*. The Machine-gun Section, under Lieut. Miller, also went into the trenches at 2 p.m.

Casualties.—10 men killed; 2nd Lieut. C. A. W. Manning and 25 men wounded.

These men all belonged to No. 1 Platoon, A Company. They were shelled by German trench-mortars while occupying a shelter. 2nd Lieut. Manning was wounded whilst directing the rescue party engaged in excavating the men who had been buried in the débris of the shelter.

The following letter, dealing with the above incident, was received by Lieut.-Colonel Newton-King from Brigadier-General J. W. Heneker, commanding the 54th Brigade, to which the Battalion was at the time attached for instruction :—

I am very grieved to learn the number of casualties which your Battalion sustained. The real reason, I am informed, why so many of your men were hurt, was owing to the gallant manner in which those who were not touched by the first few torpedoes went into the danger area and laboured to extricate their comrades, being themselves knocked out in turn by the German fire.

Please tell all your officers and men how sorry I am that they have suffered so while being attached to my Brigade.

As soon as I could get the howitzers under my command going the Germans ceased their fire, but, unfortunately, owing to the fact that the howitzer wire was found to be cut, it took some time to get them into action.

BATTALION DIARY CONTINUED.

October 7th.—A and C Companies, with the Machine-gun Section, evacuated the trenches at 3 p.m. B and D Companies, and the Reserve Machine-gun Section under Lieut. Keble, went into the trenches at 2 p.m. for 24 hours' instruction.

October 8th.—At 2 p.m. B and D Companies (and the Reserve Machine-gun Section) evacuated the trenches.

Casualties.—1 man wounded (Private Beasley, B Company, hit by shrapnel in his billet during the night).

October 9th.—The trench instruction having concluded, the Battalion paraded at 9.30 a.m. and marched from Méaulte and

Digitized by Google

Bécordel to billets at Fouilloy, rejoining the 78th Infantry Brigade 26th Division (10 miles).

Official Report on the General Standard of Training and Efficiency displayed during Attachment for Instruction, forwarded by the Brigadier-General, 54th Infantry Brigade, to the Brigadier-General, 78th Infantry Brigade :—

"An excellent Battalion. Officers, N.C.O.'s, and men keen. Some companies very short of N.C.O.'s. While in the trenches the Battalion unfortunately sustained several casualties. On the afternoon of October 6th the enemy bombarded some of their trenches with aerial torpedoes. The roof of a cellar was destroyed, and several men of A Company were buried. In spite of the terrific explosions, many of the Oxford and Bucks Light Infantry, with great gallantry, went to the rescue of their comrades, and were themselves struck down and buried. Good work was done by Captain Henry (O.C. Company), Lieut. Pierson, and Lieut. Manning in connexion with this episode."

October 10th.—(Fouilloy.) The Battalion attended Divine Service. Afterwards there was a lecture on the use of smoke-helmets, and all ranks walked through gas waves wearing smoke-helmets.

October 11th–17th.—Battalion training in the vicinity of Fouilloy.

October 18th.—At 9.30 a.m. the Battalion paraded, and marched from Fouilloy to camp at Laneuville (15 miles).

The Service and 1st and 2nd Sections Machine-guns remained at Fouilloy for instruction.

The Battalion was attached to the 80th Brigade (27th Division).

October 19th.—Battalion training in the vicinity of Laneuville. Painted the tents green, to make them invisible to enemy aircraft.

October 20th.—Furnished digging parties for R.E. near Cappy.

October 21st.—Marched back to Fouilloy (15 miles).

October 22nd.—Marched to Bertangles, where the 78th Brigade was concentrated.

October 23rd–November 9th.—During this period the Battalion remained at Bertangles, carrying out Battalion training with an occasional Brigade route-march.

Between the 1st and 9th November reinforcements of 21 other ranks arrived from the Base, and 3 privates were sent to the Base. The Battalion received 18 mules in lieu of 9 heavy draught horses,

Digitized by Google

nal

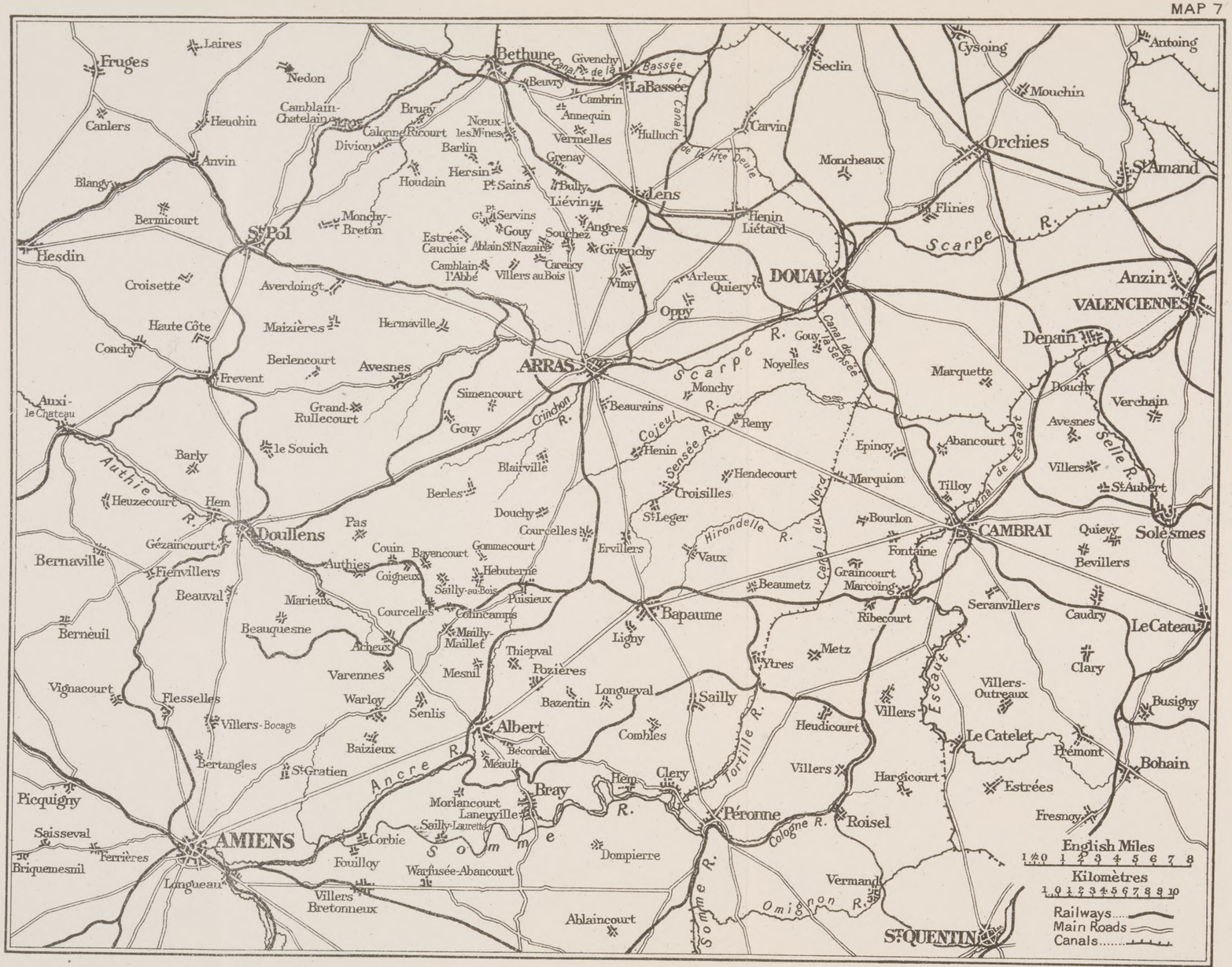
he
le-
en

n-
ad
th
n-
ce
ng

er,
ler
les
ns.
on)
ka.
ito
on
he
to

eir
gh
he
be
ay.
ish
he
rd.
out
be

Digitized by Google



Stanford's Geog.l Estabt, London.

Digitized by Google

and 10 mules in lieu of 2 pack cobs, handed over to the Divisional Ammunition Column.

Orders had now been received for the Battalion to proceed to the Mediterranean. Its seven weeks' service in France had been devoted entirely to training and instruction; but it had lost 11 men killed, and 1 officer and 31 men wounded.

MEDITERRANEAN.

When it became known, towards the end of September, that the Germans, Austrians, and Bulgarians had made up their minds to invade and crush Serbia, with a view to opening the through railway route to Constantinople, the Allies decided to go to the assistance of Serbia and endeavour to prevent the enemy making use of the railway.

France declared war on Bulgaria on the 5th October, and on that date the 1st French Division, under General Sarrail, was transferred from the Dardanelles to Salonika, and was followed by two other Divisions. Shortly afterwards the British 10th Division (Mahon) was dispatched from the Dardanelles to Salonika. On the 10th October the French moved north into Serbia, with the object of getting into communication with the Serbian army. Two Battalions of the British Division moved forward, on the 27th, to support the French.

The Serbians were being driven south and their country over-run by the enemy, and, although the French succeeded in gaining touch with the Serbians, it soon became evident that it would not be possible to extricate the whole of the Serbian army. Early in November the remainder of the British Division advanced into Serbia and took over the French front, when General Sarrail moved forward. Desultory fighting took place during the month, but on the 27th the French, finding that they could be

Digitized by Google

of no help to the Serbian army, retired southwards, in accordance with their original instructions. On the 3rd December they were back in line with the position taken up by the British.

On the 5th and 6th December the Bulgarians delivered heavy attacks on the British, who withdrew to their second position, and on the 8th to their third position, the French retiring level with the British on the 11th. By the 12th the enemy had pushed forward as far south as the Greek frontier, thus cutting off the Serbian army, who were now forced to retreat south-westward through Albania. Meanwhile the French and British forces retired on Salonika.

Such, in brief, were the events which had taken place prior to the arrival of the reinforcing British troops from France, or were in progress at the time of their arrival. All immediate prospect of military operations was at an end, and the first four months of 1916 were spent in throwing up defences to cover Salonika against a possible attack from the north and east by the Bulgarians. The diary extracts which follow show that the Battalion, with the rest of the British force at Salonika, had plenty of hard work, little excitement, and a minimum of recreation.

MAJOR C. WHEELER'S DIARY CONTINUED.

November 9th.—Paraded at 2.30 p.m. and marched to Longueau (8 miles) for entrainment to Marseilles. Transport animals and riding-horses were left behind at Bertangles, in charge of Lieut. Pemberton, to follow later. Lieut. and Quartermaster T. Powell and 10 other ranks, being medically unfit, did not proceed with the Battalion.

Entrained at Longueau at 7.30 p.m. Very wet. The men travelled in horse-boxes, the floors of which were scantily covered with straw.

November 10th.—En route to Marseilles. Halted at Goussainville and Villeneuve, the men getting excellent coffee made by French

Digitized by Google

soldiers. The people of Southern France were very pleased with us; khaki was a novelty to them.

November 11*th*.—Journey continued. Halted at Montereau, Macon, and Pierrelatte. Arrived at Marseilles at 6.30 p.m., marched to the Docks, and embarked on H.M.S. "Terrible" (strength, 27 officers and 899 other ranks). Transport vehicles were loaded on H.M.S. "Invernin."

November 12*th*.—Other troops embarked.

November 13*th*.—H.M.S. "Terrible" (Captain C. H. Hughes-Onslow) sailed from Marseilles at 6 a.m., having on board :—

7th Oxford and Bucks Light Infantry, 27 officers, 899 other ranks.
12th Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders, 20 officers, 558 other ranks.
11th Scottish Rifles, 11 officers, 120 other ranks.
H.Q. 77th Infantry Brigade, 14 other ranks.

Total : 58 officers and 1,591 other ranks.

We form part of a convoy—all bound for Salonika. Enemy submarines have been active recently, so we are continually changing our course. We have no escort, and rely on ourselves for protection. The "Terrible" has been rescued from the scrap-heap, and has been trooping for some time. The crew is not at full complement, so we have to supply look-outs, and Lewis-gunners help to man the light guns, while some 40 others assist as stokers.

All the omens are against us : sailing on a Friday and on the 13th day of the month ! Moreover, we remember that detachments of our Regiment and of the A. and S. Highlanders were on board the ill-fated "Birkenhead" half a century ago.

November 18*th*.—Reached Alexandria at 3 p.m. after a very pleasant voyage. The decks were too crowded to organize games. As we have not enough coal to reach Salonika, we go to Port Said for coal to-morrow. A few officers went on shore.

November 19*th*.—Sailed at 5 p.m.

November 20*th*.—Reached Port Said at 1.30 p.m. All troops disembarked and marched to a rest camp near the docks while coal was being taken on board.

November 21*st*.—Re-embarked at 5 p.m.

November 22*nd*.—Sailed from Port Said at 1.30 a.m.

Digitized by Google

November 26th.—Entered Salonika boom at dawn; transferred to lighters, and disembarked at 2.30 p.m.

We marched through part of the town to the Lembet Rest Camp, on the Salonika-Seres road. Very cold, with frost and snow. The men have only one blanket apiece, and the camp is on a wind-swept ridge. We should have fared badly, arriving as we did in the dark and unable to find fuel or water, had not an enterprising Greek got a canteen ready for our arrival.

November 27th.—Wind and snow. Every one feeling very cold after the warmth of Egypt. Much handicapped by the absence of our transport with kits, etc. Sheepskin coats issued.

November 28th.—Hearing rumours that our transport was in Salonika we sent a party to investigate. In a big pound near the docks we found odd half limbers, and eventually, with the aid of the A.S.C., we got twelve out of our sixteen vehicles. Many things were lost. We should have been allowed to send a guard with the transport.

November 29th.—All our vehicles were taken away from us in order to complete the establishment of the 22nd Division, which is beginning to go north to reinforce our 10th Division (from Gallipoli).

November 30th.—Snow melted, and weather quite warm at times. It looks as if we shall be here some time, as we are now without transport. Every one is restless, as we are more or less surrounded by Greek troops. Even in Salonika officers have to go about armed by day. Rumour says that the Bulgarian Consul has representatives at the docks who count our troops as they land. This is quite probable, as we are in neutral Greece. Any day we may find ourselves fighting our unwilling hosts. But our position here is justified by the fact that Greece was under obligation to help Serbia in case of attack, and so we, as allies of Serbia, are here to help Greece redeem her pledge, and we intend to use the Serbian right of way through Greece to accomplish our purpose.

December 5th.—Our Division cannot do much, as we are still refitting after our voyage, but we have plenty to do, road-making and making the camp habitable.

December 10th.—Weather very foggy for the last few days.

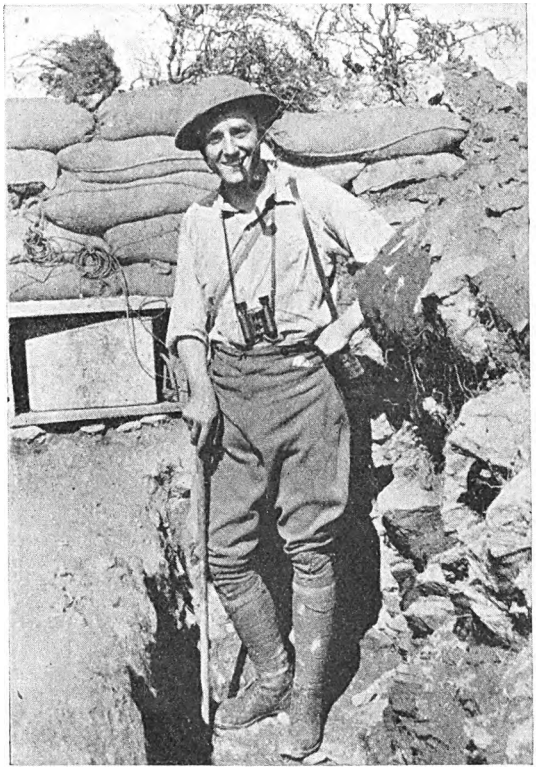
December 12th.—Road-making. Marched out about five miles, and commenced making a road through the mountains. The Welsh miners very useful. Back to camp at 8.30 p.m. very tired.

Digitized by Google

FROM THE BATTALION DIARY.

December 13*th*.—Out from 8 a.m. to 9 p.m., digging trenches at Tumba. Hard day's work. Marched altogether 22 miles. Roads through the mountains bad.

December 14*th*.—Paraded at 8 a.m. and marched to Lajna, 10 miles, there to encamp. Arrived at 12.30 p.m. Digging trenches



CAPTAIN C. P. KER.

near Tumba. No tents arrived, so the Battalion bivouacked. Weather dry and cold.

December 15*th*.—Digging trenches from 8 a.m. to 6.30 p.m. Some tents arrived, but part of the Battalion bivouacked for the night. The camp is on a spur about 3 miles north-east of Langaza Lake.

Digitized by Google

December 16th–23rd.—In camp at Lajna, trench-digging each day.

December 24th.—Moved camp to Watercress Gully, a little nearer the digging area.

December 25th.—Digging trenches until 11 a.m., after which Christmas Day was kept. Bread was issued for the first time since the 14th instant, and the men were provided with plum pudding, fresh meat, oranges, nuts, a pint of beer, and a rum ration. A heavy mail of parcels and letters arrived, and every one was very cheerful.

December 26th – 31st.—Trench-digging continued. One man (Private F. G. MILES, B Company) died in hospital. The transport, which had been left behind in France, had now rejoined the Battalion.

1916.

January 1st–20th.—At Lajna Camp, digging trenches. Occasionally German aeroplanes came over, and some bombs were dropped. The weather was at times bitterly cold, blizzards blowing from the north, and the transport animals had to be protected with hoods made out of sacks.

January 21st.—Moved camp to Jajladzik.

January 22nd–February 15th.—Camp at Jajladzik. The daily routine consisted of work on the defence line, improving the camping area, and bombing and machine-gun classes.

During January two men died of dysentery: Private W. C. BENNETT (D Company) at Salonika on the 2nd January, and Private E. O. HOMANS (D Company) at Malta on the 20th January.

February 16th.—A Company manning trenches; B Company road-making; the remainder at various forms of training.

The following officers joined for duty from the Base, and were posted to companies :—

2nd Lieut. L. J. Collier (13th R. Warwick) to A Company.
2nd Lieut. L. A. Gibson (10th E. Surrey) to C Company.
2nd Lieut. H. T. Bonner (3rd Australian) to D Company.

February 17th–March 7th.—At Jajladzik Camp. During this period the Battalion worked on the defence line and carried out training of different kinds.

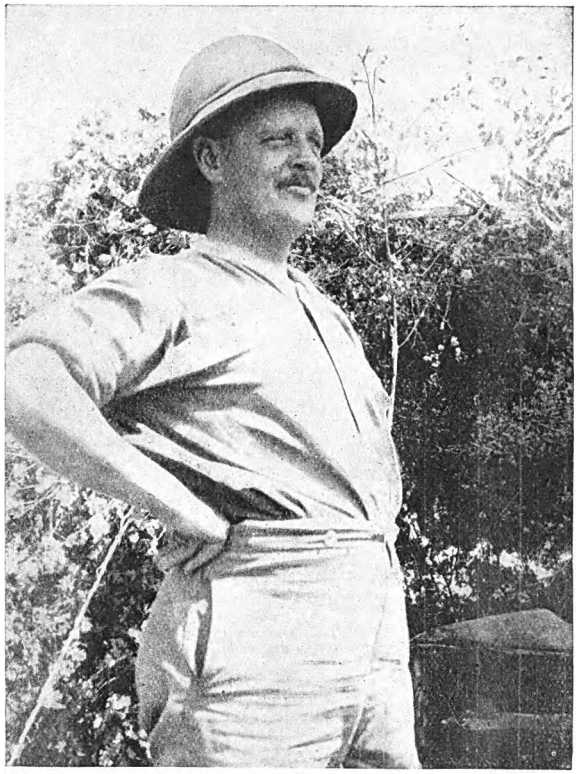
March 8th.—Information received that 2nd Lieut. W. A. Young, who had been in hospital at Malta, was invalided to England on the 15th February.

Digitized by Google

March 9*th*–12*th*.—Very heavy rain. Difficult to carry out training.

March 13*th*–18*th*.—At Jajladzik Camp. Every available man employed on the defence line, making good the damage done by the rain.

On the 18th the Battalion took part in the 78th Brigade Machine-



CAPTAIN AND ADJUTANT L. J. ELLIS.
Formerly Sergeant-Major of the Depôt, Cowley.

gun Competitions, and out of seven events won four and was second in two.

March 19*th*–*April* 30*th*.—Throughout the whole of this period the Battalion was encamped at Jajladzik, and occupied on defence work, or carrying out training. A few days were devoted to Brigade Training, and great attention was paid to the training of specialists

Digitized by Google

in machine-gun, signalling, bombing, loading mules, etc., while Battalion and Company training and musketry went on continuously.

Winter ended officially in the last week of March, when fur coats, leather jerkins, and fur gloves were handed in to Ordnance Stores, and the summer time-table came into force. The daily routine was then as follows: Reveille, 5 a.m.; breakfasts, 6 a.m.; work, 7 a.m. to 3 p.m. (with a break for lunch from 11 to 11.30 a.m.); dinners, 3 p.m.; teas, 6.30 p.m.; retreat, 6.30 p.m.

From Major Wheeler's Diary.

April 26th.—We have been very busy lately, as a new order concerning health and age of senior officers has come out, and a more or less clean sweep has been made of Brigadiers and Commanding Officers. Our Brigadier (Thomas) has had to go, as well as our C.O. (Newton-King). The latter was succeeded by Lieut.-Colonel Sir E. Grogan, of the Rifle Brigade, on the 21st.

May 2nd–9th.—During these days we took part in an eight days' trek with the rest of the 78th Brigade over new ground. Divisions and brigades are carrying out these treks as a form of training now that the defences are well developed. The first day we marched to Sarijar (10 miles) and bivouacked; the next day to Hadzi Mah (6 miles); then to Kara Omerli, Cernik, Vulajli, Kurfali, and Langaza, bivouacking a night at each place, and returning to camp at Jajladzik on the 9th. The march was entirely in the hills; there were no roads, and everything was carried on pack mules; water was scarce, and, as we were manœuvring all day, we had a strenuous time.

May 30th–June 3rd.—At a camp 3 miles north of Langaza undergoing Brigade training.

June 8th.—This has been our hottest day so far. Most of us are unfamiliar with hot climates, and we are feeling the heat a good deal. The worst of it is we cannot sleep during the middle of the day, as flies abound in spite of all our devices. We have now moved to a camp in the hills in another part of the line, with very little water.

June 16th.—Major A. T. Robinson (2nd East Surrey Regiment) took over the command of the Battalion from Lieut.-Colonel Sir E. Grogan, who has gone on the Staff.

June 20th.—Moved to a camp half a mile west of Dremiglava.

Digitized by Google

June 30th.—(Dremiglava.) Our camp here is one of the pleasantest we have been in, although down in the plain. We have a splendid spring within a hundred yards, and there are vineyards and fig-trees, which break the monotony of the otherwise treeless and parched landscape. But it is hotter than ever, and the flies are a perpetual worry.

CASUALTIES (IN FRANCE).

11 men killed.

2nd Lieut. C. A. W. Manning and 33 men wounded.

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 8TH (SERVICE) BATTALION (PIONEERS).

AUGUST 1915 TO JUNE 1916.[1]

EMBARKATION FOR FRANCE.

(*See Map* 7.)

18*th September* 1915.

OFFICERS OF THE BATTALION.

Colonel C. LE G. JUSTICE, Commanding.
Major F. LLEWELLYN, Second in Command.
Lieut. W. L. GIFFARD, Adjutant.
Hon. Lieut. W. WOOLLEN, Quartermaster.
Lieut. R. DONALD, R.A.M.C., Medical Officer.
Lieut. H. W. A. THOMPSON, Transport Officer.
Lieut. F. S. STRAIGHT, Signal Officer.
Lieut. A. R. EDWARDS, Lewis-gun Officer.

A Company.

Captain T. F. J. EALES.
Captain G. BARTRUM.
2nd Lieut. T. N. WATTS-WATTS.
2nd Lieut. P. Y. BRIMBLECOMBE.
2nd Lieut. G. S. ROSE.

B Company.

Captain A. H. LOWE.
Captain R. G. DUNTHORNE.
Lieut. E. F. MEDCALF.
2nd Lieut. A. F. BENJAMIN.
2nd Lieut. G. L. HAGGEN.
2nd Lieut. J. E. POGSON-SMITH.

C Company.

Captain C. G. TARDREW.
Lieut. E. H. PAYNE.
Lieut. C. S. W. RAYNER.
2nd Lieut. A. CALDER.
2nd Lieut. C. W. SHEPPARD.

D Company.

Captain A. E. BURT.
Lieut. S. C. LEMAN.
Lieut. G. P. MORRIS.
Lieut. G. B. MAUL.
2nd Lieut. N. W. ELLIOTT.
2nd Lieut. H. E. CURTIS.

[1] Diary supplied by Lieut. T. N. Watts-Watts.

Digitized by Google

Total strength complete to establishment on marching out of No. 1 Camp, Sutton Veny, Warminster, Wilts :—

30 Officers.	4 G.S. Wagons.
1,008 Other Ranks.	4 G.S.L. Wagons (R.E.).
12 Riding Horses.	10 G.S.L. Wagons.
60 Draught Horses.	1 Maltese Cart (M.O.).
9 Heavy Draught Horses.	1 Officers' Mess Cart.
17 Pack Mules.	2 Water Carts.
9 Bicycles.	4 Travelling Kitchens.
4 Lewis-guns.	

The Battalion left Warminster Station in three train-loads at midnight on 18th/19th September, arriving at Southampton (at intervals of 2 hours between each train) from 4 a.m. onwards. Embarkation took place the same evening on the 2 boats "City of Chester" and "Queen Alexandra," the former boat carrying all the transport.

September 19th.—Disembarkation at Havre 8 a.m. Marched to Havre Rest Camp.

September 20th.—Battalion entrained from Gare des Voyageurs at noon, and detrained at Longueau 10 p.m.

After assembling transport, Battalion marched off at midnight for the village of Clery-Saulchoix, arriving there 3 a.m., and bivouacking in the open. After the confinement of the trucks, in which practically all ranks of the Battalion had been travelling, this march in full kit proved exceptionally trying to the men, who found no difficulty in sleeping in the open on this their first night of active service. At this village the first German aeroplane was seen flying high in the early dawn; to a newly arrived unit this proved itself of great interest, aeroplanes at that period of the war not being an object of every day.

September 21st.—The Battalion moved into billets in the village, where it stayed until 25th, the interim being spent in organization, inspections, and route marches.

September 25th.—Marched from Clery to Villers-Brettonneux, distance about 16 miles, passing through the outskirts of Amiens. This was the first long march of the Battalion in France, and was accomplished in a manner worthy of the reputation of the Regiment, not one man being left behind on the march. Arrived at

Digitized by Google

Villers-Brettonneux, accommodation was provided for the men in the stabling of a large cavalry depôt, the officers being provided with billets in the town.

October 2nd.—Battalion (less one platoon under 2nd Lieut. P. Y. Brimblecombe) marched to Warfusée-Abancourt, and went into tents in the village orchards. Work was commenced upon the third-line system of trenches near Morcourt, to which place companies marched each day.

October 4th.—A Company returned to Villers-Brettonneux to fell timber in the wood near the town (1 mile N.); this occupied 2 days only, A Company on 6th leaving V.B. and marching to a new camp, under canvas, in a large wood ½ mile S.W. of Morcourt, where D Company were already in occupation. The remaining companies and the H.Q. of the Battalion joined A and D Companies here in the following 3 days, and the whole Battalion was employed in improving and rebuilding the trench system at Morcourt, which formed a part of the defence system of Amiens. Large quantities of timber were obtained locally for revetting work on these trenches, and all ranks worked with the greatest keenness on this their first real task of construction on active service. The weather at this time was often very wet, and marching to and from work became trying at times. The camp in the wood, however, was one of the best the Battalion has made, and all ranks lived, off duty, in a degree of comfort. Occasional shelling was experienced during this period, but no casualties occurred therefrom.

October 21st.—Battalion moved back to billets at Villers-Brettonneux, the men being housed in a bonnet factory, and the officers in the same quarters as previously.

October 22nd.—Battalion marched to Vignacourt, a distance of 25 miles, in full kit. The day was fine, and it had been intended to stay the night at Flescelles, but on arrival there no billets were available; after a long halt for tea the march was resumed, and the Battalion arrived at Vignacourt about 8 p.m., only 6 men having fallen out. No finer march than this can be recorded in the history of the Battalion; it was accomplished in 12 hours, including halts for meals, and the last 3 miles into Vignacourt were taken with a swinging stride and the whole Battalion in song.

On the following morning the G.O.C. of the Division (General Mackenzie-Kennedy) congratulated the Colonel on the fine performance of the Battalion.

Digitized by Google

October 26th.—Battalion moved to St. Gratien and billeted the night, marching on the following morning to Morlancourt, where C, D, and H.Q. billeted. A and B Companies marched on to Bois des Tailles in pouring rain to a hut camp in the woods. The approach to this camp was across half a mile of water-logged ploughed clay-land, and the difficulties for both men and transport at the end of a long march were disheartening and trying to a degree.

The hut sides were of green waterproof (?) canvas, and, being placed under trees, afforded little or no shelter from the heavy weather. An extremely cold wind at this time added to the general discomfort. Meanwhile the other half of the Battalion was attached at this period to the 18th Division, and A and B Companies to the 5th Division. The whole Battalion worked on a system of reserve-line trenches, marching to and from the work daily. The works overlooked our own trench line and that of the Germans; shelling was visible all day.

October 31st.—A and B Companies moved from Bois des Tailles to Sailly Laurette; here billets were taken, but work was continued upon the same trench system, these 2 companies having an additional march of 5 miles daily in consequence. The weather, however, was so continuously wet that to remain longer in the huts in the wood was an invitation to disaster in the matter of health.

November 2nd.—The concentration of the Division (which was the cause of the long march to Vignacourt on October 22nd, the cancellation of this order being responsible for our return to Morlancourt on October 27th) was again decided upon. The Battalion accordingly marched in 2 bodies, from Morlancourt and Sailly Laurette respectively, meeting at Corbie, and proceeding together from that town to St. Gratien again. Here was spent a pleasant fortnight, during which we knew orders were impending for a move to another front, possibly another country, but no definite information being to hand for several days. The Battalion was accommodated in the same billets as on its previous visit, but the weather continuing wet and cold, parades of any kind were difficult to hold. Route marches were resorted to in the fine intervals; Lieut. J. E. Pogson-Smith took classes of instruction for officers and N.C.O.'s in the use of the Bar and Stroud Range-finder. Lieut. C. S. W. Rayner, an officer of considerable ability as a lecturer, gave lectures on the Balkans, life in Serbia, and Balkan politics. At this time, towards the end of the second stay at St. Gratien, maps of the

Digitized by Google

Balkans were distributed to all officers, but no definite information was obtainable as to our movements in the near future, the issue of the maps confirming the "wise" in their opinion that the Balkans was *not* the destination of the Battalion.

November 15th.—At 11.40 a.m. orders arrived for the entrainment of the Battalion that night at Longueau (Amiens). At the time of the receipt of the order all companies were out on route marches; at 2 p.m. the Battalion, with all transport, marched out of St. Gratien, and, with only one halt on the way, arrived at Longueau at 6.0 p.m. This was a very trying forced march, and proved very exhausting to all ranks. In 40 minutes the whole Battalion, with vehicles (but less the animals, who returned to St. Gratien under 2nd Lieut. Curtis), was entrained. At 7.25 p.m. the train steamed out of Longueau; all officers, except H.Q. and the Company Commanders, were in 2 trucks, the men being allotted 40 to each truck, and 3 days' rations being carried on the train. The journey, viâ Paris, Dijon, and Lyon to Marseilles, was completed in 44 hours, halts being arranged on the way, where coffee was distributed by the French authorities to all ranks.

November 17th.—Battalion arrived at Marseilles at 2.30 p.m., detrained immediately, marched through the city to the quay, and embarked on H.M.T. "Alaunia" (Cunard Line) at 6 p.m. The 4th Battalion Rifle Brigade was also on board for the voyage. Colonel Justice was in command of the troops on board; Lieut. Gifford, Adjutant; and Lieut. and Quartermaster Woollen, Ship's Quartermaster. No incident of note occurred on the voyage, with the exception that for 3 days the sea was rough and much indisposition resulted. The boat was escorted until we reached the Aegean Sea, and our sole means of defence against submarines consisted of Lewis-guns mounted fore and aft.

November 24th.—The "Alaunia" arrived in Salonika Harbour at 4 p.m. on November 24th, but disembarkation did not take place until 5.30 p.m. 25th, when the boat was berthed alongside the quay. The Battalion marched out to camp under canvas at Lembet, 3½ miles N. of the town. The following day a blizzard began, and an exceedingly cold wind with rain blew until the 30th, when a thaw set in, and the whole camp area became a bog. During this first week parades were impossible; no regimental transport being available, all rations had to be carried about a mile by hand daily.

Digitized by Google

December 1*st*.—Colonel Justice admitted to F.A. and subsequently invalided to England. Major F. Llewellyn assumed command.

December 1*st*–16*th*.—From December 1st to 16th several officers were engaged on reconnaissance work in the neighbourhood of Lajna, Tumba, Jajladzik, for reporting on tracks and grading of same with a view to their use for wheel transport.

The Battalion generally was employed upon roads through camps in the Divisional area.

December 16*th*–17*th*.—B Company, under Captain A. H. Lowe, went to Galeku Bridge by rail to repair damage to line by railway collision. A detachment of 60 O.R. proceeded to R.F.A. camp on Monastir Road on 8th instant under Lieut. A. Calder for well-sinking.

December 17*th*–31*st*.—Battalion engaged on improving the old mule track from Lembet to Jajladzik with a view to providing a means of transport for supplies to the positions to be occupied by the Division on the range of hills N. of the town, which later became a part of the defensive position of the town of Salonika. At this time only two made roads existed in the country, viz., the road to Monastir and the road to Seres. Everywhere roads had to be made for transport of supplies and guns. The track to Jajladzik (commonly called Yellow Jack) was of prime importance, and on its completion as a passable mule track (width about 5 feet) it was immediately decided to rebuild it as a metalled limber road.

Meanwhile one company at a time was employed cutting a track from Jajladzik to Lajna, and then from Kireckeui to Stanovan. For all of this work, with the exception of the latter track, the Battalion continued in its camp at Lembet, companies marching out daily to work, and frequently doing 16 miles, in addition to the time spent actually working. Tools and rifles were always carried, and much of the route lay through the rain-soaked Lembet plain, the remainder being over very hilly country. The work was exceedingly hard, but it is probably on this account that every-one kept so fit, and that sickness was uncommon. In order to be nearer the work the Battalion moved to a camp near Lembet Village on December 20th, and in this camp was spent the first Christmas Day in Macedonia, a day of glorious sunshine, like an English summer. On December 21st the transport vehicles of the Battalion arrived

Digitized by Google

(in a very bad condition); these had been left behind at Marseilles, and thoroughly rifled during their six weeks' stay on the quay there. No animals, however, came with the vehicles, so they were of little use, and had to be man-handled when required for work of any kind.

As the Battalion had little experience of serious road work, the construction of the Lembet-Jajladzik road was put into the hands of 2nd Lieut. T. N. Watts-Watts (A Company), a municipal engineer and surveyor in private life, under the direction of the C.R.E. (Lieut.-Colonel Hunter).

Six hundred men daily for five weeks worked on this, every available man being on parade to secure an early completion of the work. On January 20th the last bridge (below Jajladzik) was completed, the G.O.C. Division driving there in his car to celebrate the occasion, and, incidentally, to be an occupant of the first car in history to visit this remote hill village of Macedonia. As the road progressed nearer to the village the Battalion moved camp, by companies, to a site S. of Jajladzik.

1916.

January 19th.—Lieut. Curtis arrived from Marseilles with the transport animals of the Battalion.

January 21st.—About this date companies moved independently to a new camp site near the peak known as Gil Tepe, close to Kireckeui Village (position of camp about 4 miles S.E. of Jajladzik, and 1 mile N.E. of Kireckeui), to work on small defensive positions; this work involved a good deal of marching each day over very hilly country. As an indication, however, of the health of the Battalion during bad weather, under the worst conditions, and with exceedingly hard work, at the end of the first six weeks in Macedonia only 5 evacuations to hospital had taken place.

During the last few days of the stay at Jajladzik Camp very severe weather was experienced. Snow walls were built on the Battalion transport lines to protect the animals from the bitter wind. When the first Company (D) moved to Gil Tepe Camp it was isolated and cut off from the remainder of the Battalion for 24 hours owing to snow-drifts on the track. A relief party with improvised sledge succeeded in getting through with an issue of rum, and in marking out the track with snow heaps and flags for the guidance of the transport on the following day.

Digitized by Google

February 1st.—In order to be nearer the work on the Langaza Plain C and D Companies moved to a new camp site, 1½ miles S. of the village of Tumba; A Company joined C and D on 4th, and E Company, with Battalion H.Q., on 9th. The camp was situated on the side of a gorse-covered ravine, and much work had to be done to render the site suitable for a battalion. As sufficient water was not available for all purposes, the whole of the transport remained in the camp at Gil Tepe under the Transport Officer, Lieut. S. C. Leman, and communication was established by telephone, the distance being about 1½ miles.

February 4th.—Major F. Llewellyn, who had been in command since December 1st, was recalled to England, and Captain A. E. Burt (D Company) assumed temporary command.

Since the completion of the Lembet-Jajladzik Road (afterwards named officially Oxford Road) the whole Battalion was employed daily upon the new defence lines. These consisted of front-trench lines, strong points, machine-gun emplacements, barbed wire entanglements, support-trench lines, communication trenches, bombing-posts, and 2 reserve lines of defence, one at the foot of the hills and one on the crest, the latter consisting of groups of independent strong points, termed officially "forts." This work occupied the Battalion for several months, and was finally completed in June (1916).

February 19th.—Major B. Cruddas, 2nd Northumberland Fusiliers, assumed command, with rank of temporary Lieut.-Colonel.

About this time work was relaxed in the plain, Sundays were observed as a day of rest (so far as routine would allow), and 2 days' training each week were allotted. One day was for Battalion training and one for Brigade training; being in the 78th Brigade area the Battalion was attached to that Brigade for this purpose, and for several weeks represented "the enemy" on the Brigade day.

March 27th.—German aeroplanes raided Salonika and dropped one bomb near the Battalion camp on their way back, but no damage was done. One of the planes was damaged by aircraft fire, and was forced down at Guvezne, on the Seres Road (25th kilo).

March 28th.—78th Brigade relieved by 79th Brigade, and Battalion attached to latter Brigade from this date.

April 6th.—The trench line on Langaza Plain was occupied by the Battalion and by units of 79th Brigade, detachments from the 7th Oxfords (78th Brigade) operating as enemy.

Digitized by Google

This "practice occupation" was for 24 hours only, but was made as realistic as possible by the use of snipers, Véry lights, patrols, etc., and proved useful as an instruction to all ranks.

At this period night training operations were practised, including night wiring and reconnaissance.

April 16th.—2nd Lieut. T. N. Watts-Watts appointed Adjutant, with acting rank of Lieutenant, *vice* Lieut. W .L. Giffard, promoted Captain.

Climate and Dress.—The very cold and wet weather which was experienced at intervals throughout the winter of 1915–16 changed to exceedingly warm days and cold nights about this time, and felt slouch hats of Colonial pattern, with puggarees, were issued to all ranks. These hats were not a success, and a few weeks later were replaced by khaki helmets, with puggarees; shorts (drill) were also issued, but serge jackets remained the regulation summer wear until the summer of 1918, when drill jackets were issued in lieu. Other standard articles of clothing were waterproof capes and leather jerkins for winter use.

April 20th.—The Battalion, less C Company, joined 79th Brigade in a 6 days' trek on pack transport. (Wheeled transport was replaced by pack in March 1916. Establishment: 14 riding horses, 208 mules; of the latter, 18 mules per company were allotted for pioneer tools, remainder for water, Lewis-guns, baggage, etc.) (C Company moved to Corps H.Q. at Lembet to construct shelters, dug-outs, and transport lines on this date.)

The Battalion marched out (leaving a few details in camp) at 08.45 hours, and camped at Sarijar that night, having marched about 12 miles.

This being the first trial of pack transport the troubles encountered on the march were many. Mules not yet trained in carrying pack loads gave endless trouble throughout the march, kicking off their loads, and greatly delaying progress.

April 21st.—Battalion marched all day over exceedingly difficult and quite trackless country, as part of the advanced guard of the Brigade, unloading tools at various spots en route, and clearing a track suitable for the passage of Brigade transport. This involved hard digging in addition to the marching, and proved so arduous that a halt was made for the night at a point 3 miles S. of Visoka, at which village the Battalion should have bivouacked.

April 22nd.—In order to arrive at Visoka in time to move off with the Brigade, an early start was made; a long day's march, in which

Digitized by Google

the Battalion acted as Brigade reserve, brought the force to the village of Zarova, where the night was spent.

The country around this village was noticeably more agricultural than any previously passed through, and a number of recently erected brick houses (also a school), presumably provided by the Greek Government since the last Balkan War, were objects of general interest. This was the first village of civilized aspect encountered in Macedonia, all those previously passed through being composed of small groups of irregularly placed mud, or mud and stone, huts, and nothing which could be called a street or road.

April 23rd.—The Brigade retired S.W. to the village of Janik, passing en route close to the town of Likovan, on the Seres Road. The Battalion bivouacked for the night at Janik, nothing of interest having occurred during the day. Certain Battalions of the Brigade formed the rearguard, but the Pioneers were not called on. The heat was excessive, and great difficulty was experienced in the matter of water supply. Rigid march discipline was enforced to prevent the men from drinking polluted or doubtful water.

April 24th.—The Battalion acted as rearguard of the advance guard by day, marching in great heat over difficult country; at night the Battalion did outpost for the Brigade, on the heights above Arakli.

April 25th.—The Brigade marched viâ the town of Langaza and the village of Lajna back to their various camps, being inspected by the Corps Commander, Lieut.-General Sir H. F. M. Wilson, K.C.B., at the latter village. This march proved extremely trying to the Battalion, and a long halt had to be called after the march past before completing the journey. The total mileage for the day was 16, and the shade temperature about 100° F.

The Battalion returned to its original camp above Tumba, where the comforts of a fixed camp were more thoroughly appreciated than they had been a week previously.

April 26th, 27th, 28th were spent in rest and recuperation, and were marked by heavy and continuous rain.

April 29th.—Work resumed upon the fortifications on the plains and hills, and continued daily, training days excepted, until June 2nd. During this period Battalion training was carried out one day each week, Company training one day, and Brigade training one day. The latter exercises were usually performed about the *k* in Orendzi*k*, and on the high ground between Kireckeui and Jajladzik.

Digitized by Google

June 4th.—Work on the Salonika defence system being now completed, the Division was ordered to advance N. towards Serbia to relieve a French Division which had established a line of defence S. of Doiran. The Battalion accordingly struck camp on the night of June 3/4th, and sent all tents and heavy baggage on by regimental transport to the new camp site, 4 miles N.W. of Dremiglava, and adjoining the village of Rahmanli (point 1445/1462 Salonika 1/100,000 sheet). For this move wagons had to be obtained on loan from the A.S.C., as pack transport could not deal with the heavier baggage, such as tents, etc. The transport made three journeys between the two camps before all baggage was cleared.

On the night of June 4/5th the Battalion marched as far as a point about half-way between Stanovan and Lajna in order to shorten the next day's journey, bivouacking on the Langaza plain. An early start was made the following morning, and the new camp reached before midday; total distance between camps about 12 miles.

At Rahmanli the Battalion stayed one month doing road work, quarry work, Battalion training, and a good deal of work also in camp providing sun-shelters for the men. These were constructed of reeds, from the marshes of the River Galiko, supported on rough poles and wire. Great heat was experienced here, no work could be done between the hours of 09.00 and 16.00, and diarrhœa and malaria became common complaints. A rifle-range was constructed in the vicinity of the camp, and musketry practices were gone through by the Battalion; special classes in Lewis-gunnery were commenced to train men to complete the new establishment for Lewis-guns, which had now been increased to 2 per company.

June 30th.—The camp narrowly escaped being destroyed in the middle of the night by a gigantic grass fire with a front of ½ mile, which swept towards the camp at a rapid pace. The whole Battalion was turned out to deal with it, when a sudden change of wind diverted the course of the fire, and a disaster was thus narrowly averted. The mountain known as Deve Kran (generally known as "Gibraltar"), a razor-backed peak 1,600 feet high, rising sheer from the surrounding plain, was blazing throughout its length with burning grass at the time, and the combination of the burning mountain, the burning plain, and a terrific hurricane and thunderstorm, was an awe-inspiring spectacle which will remain long in the memory of those who witnessed it.

Digitized by Google

Part of Sheet 28, Ypres, by permission of the War Office.

Stanford's Geog! Estab!. London.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

R L

Digitized by Google

THE

OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY

ROLL OF HONOUR

1st August 1915 to 30th June 1916

Digitized by Google

CAPTAIN C. F. K. CARFRAE.

Digitized by Google

ROLL OF HONOUR.

OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY.

1st August 1915 to 30th June 1916.

Captain JOHN WILLIAM BACKHOUSE (*Bucks Battalion*) was killed in action in France on the 10th February 1916. Previous to the war he had been chief steward of the Turvey House Estate, Bedfordshire, and he was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant Bucks Battalion 1st September 1914. Proceeding with the 1/1st Bucks Battalion to France in March 1915, he became temporary Captain on the 10th June.

CAPTAIN J. W. BACKHOUSE.

2nd Lieut. JOHN BOWMAN (*9th Battalion, attached to 5th*), son of Mr. J. W. Bowman, of 46 Minories, E.C., was missing (afterwards reported killed) when on patrol duty on the 23rd November 1915.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant 22nd September 1914, posted from the 9th Battalion to the 5th Battalion, and proceeded with it to France.

2nd Lieut. E. BROWN (*1st Battalion*) was killed during the siege of Kut on the 11th December 1915.

He was promoted 2nd Lieut. (from Lance-Corporal, 14th Hussars), 7th November 1914, and, accompanying the Battalion to Mesopotamia, took part in the operations on the Tigris, including the battles of Es Sinn and Ctesiphon, and the withdrawal to Kut.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. STANLEY ERIC BURROWS (*9th, attached 5th Battalion*), son of Mr. G. Burrows, of 34 Woolstone Road, Forest Hill, S.E., was killed on the 30th December 1915, five days after joining the 5th Battalion in France.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 9th Battalion, 2nd September 1915.

Captain CHARLES FRANCIS KIRKPATRICK CARFRAE (*2nd Battalion, attached to 5th Battalion*) was born on the 15th January 1885, and was educated at Wellington, where he was Captain of the Football XV.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant in the Regiment (from the Militia), 29th November 1905; Lieutenant, 4th November 1908; Captain, 5th August 1914. He served with the 2nd Battalion until 1912, when he was posted to the Depôt for a tour of duty with the 3rd (Special Reserve) Battalion, with which Battalion he mobilized at the outbreak of war. Soon afterwards he was posted to the 5th (Service) Battalion, trained with it, and accompanied it to France in 1915. He saw much fighting in the neighbourhood of Ypres, and carried out independent intelligence duties of an important and valuable nature, for the performance of which he would have been awarded the MILITARY CROSS had he lived. He was slightly wounded on the 16th June 1915, but remained at duty. He was killed in the attack on Bellewaarde Farm on the 25th September.

Captain Carfrae was a member of the Alpine Club, and had made several important climbs. In the REGIMENTAL CHRONICLE, 1909, he described one of these in an article entitled "High Alps in October"; while in 1913 he contributed an interesting account of his visit to the French manœuvres of that year.

Lieut. HAROLD FRANK CLARKE (*5th Battalion*), who was killed in action on the 25th September 1915, was the son of Mr. W. J. Clarke, of St. Catherine's, Hill Top Road, Oxford, and was educated at Oxford High School, whence in 1910 he became a non-collegiate student of the University, taking his degree just before the outbreak of war. He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 22nd August 1914, joined the 5th Battalion, and was promoted Lieutenant, 20th May 1915.

During the relief of the trenches on the 20th June 1915 he was wounded by a shell, but was able to return to duty on the 3rd July, from which date he served with the Battalion until his death.

Digitized by Google

Captain JOHN HAROLD COURTIS (*1st Battalion*), killed at the battle of Ctesiphon, was the eldest son of Sir John Courtis, of Llandaff.

Born on the 25th July 1888, and educated at Repton, he joined the Regiment (from Sandhurst) as 2nd Lieutenant on the 6th February 1909; Lieutenant, 27th November 1912; Captain, 10th June 1915.

When war broke out he was with the 1st Battalion in India, and proceeded with it to Mesopotamia as Machine-gun Officer. In August 1915 he was appointed Machine-gun Officer of the 17th Brigade, and was in command of the Brigade Machine-guns at the battles of Es Sinn and Ctesiphon.

CAPTAIN J. H. COURTIS.

CAPTAIN F. M. DAVENPORT.

2nd Lieut. E. F. COULTHARD (*9th, attached to 1st Battalion*) was killed in the attack on Sannaiyat on the 6th April 1916. He was gazetted temp. 2nd Lieutenant, 13th May 1915; left England with a draft for Mesopotamia early in December 1915, and joined the Provisional Battalion of the Regiment in February 1916.

Captain FRANK MATURIN DAVENPORT (*1st Battalion*), killed at the battle of Ctesiphon, was the only son of Alfred Davenport, of 43 Evelyn Gardens, S.W., and was born on the 30th August 1888.

Digitized by Google

Educated at Rugby and Sandhurst, he joined the Regiment as 2nd Lieutenant, 6th February 1909; Lieutenant, 20th November 1912; Captain, 10th June 1915.

Accompanying the Battalion to Mesopotamia, he served with it throughout the operations on the Tigris, 1914–1915, including the battle of Es Sinn and subsequent advance.

2nd Lieut. ANTHONY HUGH DAVIS (*3rd Battalion, attached to 1st*) was killed on the 6th April 1916 at Sannaiyat, aged 31. He was the youngest son of the late Lawrence Davis and of Mrs. Davis, of Twyford, Berks. Educated at Cheltenham, he enlisted on the outbreak of war in the Public Schools Battalion, and was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 3rd Oxford and Bucks Light Infantry, on the 11th June 1915, proceeding to Mesopotamia at the end of the year, and joined the Provisional Battalion of the Regiment, in the Kut Relief Force, in March 1916.

Lieut. PHILIP DENYS DOYNE (*1/4th Battalion*), who was killed in France on the 29th December 1915, was the eldest son of the Rev. P. V. Doyne, of the Vicarage, Beckley. He was educated at Lancing and Keble College, Oxford, taking his degree in 1913, and for a year afterwards held a mastership at Winchester House, Deal, whence, at the outbreak of war, he was proceeding to Ely Theological College.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieut. in the 4th Battalion, 14th September 1914, and was promoted temp. Captain 2/4th Battalion, 9th December 1914. In August 1915 he joined the 1/4th in France as 2nd Lieutenant, and served with it until the date of his death, having been promoted temp. Lieutenant on the 10th September 1915.

Colonel ROBERT ECCLES (*Ret. pay, late 2nd Battalion*) died in London on the 30th October 1915, whilst in command of the 9th Battalion Liverpool Regiment.

Born on the 15th November 1852, he joined the 14th Foot as Sub-Lieutenant, 28th February 1874, and was transferred to the 43rd, 11th September 1875; Lieutenant in the Army, 28th February 1874; Lieutenant in the 43rd, 11th September 1875; Captain, 26th March 1884; Major, 27th September 1893; Lieut.-Colonel, 2nd September 1900; Brevet-Colonel, 10th February 1904; half-pay, 2nd September 1904; retired, 12th March 1907, but was retained in command of a Volunteer Infantry Brigade.

Digitized by Google

He was Adjutant of Militia (Durham Light Infantry), 1892–1896; commanded the 52nd Light Infantry from 1900 to 1904; and commanded the Tees Volunteer Infantry Brigade from 1906 to 1910.

On the 21st September 1914 he was re-employed to command the 14th (Service) Battalion Durham Light Infantry, and was transferred on the 18th June 1915 to the command of the 9th (T.F.) Battalion King's Liverpool Regiment.

Colonel Eccles served with the 52nd (as Major) in the Mohmand and Tirah Expeditions, on the N.W. Frontier of India, in 1897–8, and received the Medal with 2 clasps. He was also in possession of the Royal Humane Society's Medal, and was a Commander of the Portuguese Order of St. Bento d'Aviz.

A portrait of him will be found in the CHRONICLE, 1903.

2nd Lieut. LYONEL HENRY ST. GEORGE FARRER (*9th Battalion, attached to the 5th Battalion, from the 6th*), who died in hospital at Boulogne on the 28th October 1915, was the son of the late Captain Frederick Farrer and of Mrs. Farrer, of 25 Bath Road, Bournemouth. He was a B.A. of Hertford College, Oxford, which he entered in 1907, and he was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 13th November 1914.

Captain and Brevet-Major THE HON. JOSCELINE CHARLES WILLIAM SAVILE FOLJAMBE (*1st Battalion*), who was killed at Sannaiyat on the 6th April 1916, when serving with the Provisional Battalion of the Regiment, forming part of the force for the Relief of Kut, was the 3rd son of the 1st Earl of Liverpool, and was born on the 16th February 1882.

He was educated at Eton, and was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, Northumberland Fusiliers, 18th January 1902; Lieutenant, 15th December 1905; transferred to the Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire Light Infantry, 20th May 1908; appointed

MAJOR THE HON.
J. C. W. S. FOLJAMBE.

Digitized by Google

Adjutant, 1st Battalion, 6th May 1913; promoted Captain, 14th March 1914.

As Adjutant, Captain Foljambe accompanied the Regiment to Mesopotamia, and was present with it in the several engagements on the Tigris up to and including the Battle of Ctesiphon, when he was wounded. He returned to duty in Mesopotamia, and took up the appointment of Adjutant of the Provisional Battalion in February 1916, and served with it throughout the subsequent relief operations.

He was three times mentioned in Dispatches, and was gazetted Brevet-Major, 17th April 1916.

His brother, Captain the Hon G. W. F. S. Foljambe, also served in the Regiment.

Major CHARLES EVELYN FORREST, D.S.O. (*1st Battalion*), who was killed at the battle of Ctesiphon, was the son of the late John Forrest, of Grymsdyke, Bucks, and was born on the 21st August 1876. He joined the Regiment as 2nd Lieutenant (from the Militia), 1st December 1897; Lieutenant, 25th October 1898; Captain, 22nd February 1903; Major, 1st September 1915.

He served in the South African War, 1899–1902, being employed with the Mounted Infantry, and being slightly wounded. His services are officially described thus: Operations in the Orange Free State, February to May 1900, including actions at Vet River, 5th and 6th May, and Zand River. Operations in the Transvaal in May and June 1900, including the action near Johannesburg. Operations in Cape Colony, south of the Orange River, 1899–1900. Operations in the Transvaal in May to July 1901, and October 1901 to 21st May 1902. Operations in the Orange River Colony, July to October 1901. Dispatches, *London Gazette*, 10th September 1901. Queen's Medal with 3 clasps. King's Medal with 2 clasps, D.S.O.

MAJOR C. E. FORREST, D.S.O.

Major Forrest was Adjutant of a Territorial Force Battalion in 1910–11, but he was essentially a 43rd officer, and was with the Regiment in India at the outbreak of war. Proceeding to Mesopotamia, in command of

Digitized by Google

S Company, he served continuously with the Regiment throughout the operations on the Tigris up to the date of his death.

He was a good all-round sportsman, a good shot, a keen and bold rider to hounds, and played polo for the Regiment in India.

2ND LIEUT. T. F. H. FREMANTLE.

2nd Lieut. THOMAS FRANCIS HALFORD FREMANTLE (*5th Battalion*) was the only son of Colonel the Hon. T. F. Fremantle,[1] of Swanbourne, Winslow, Bucks. Born on the 20th January 1897, he went to Eton in 1910, having won a scholarship, and whilst there gained several school prizes, and shot in the eight at Bisley in 1913 and 1914.

He left Eton on the outbreak of war, and was appointed 2nd Lieutenant in the 5th Battalion in September 1914, proceeding with it to France in May 1915 when a few months over 18 years of age.

With the Battalion he saw much service during the next four months, but was severely wounded on the 25th September, and died of his wounds on the 17th October 1915.

2nd Lieut. ROBERT BASIL FURLEY (*Bucks Battalion*), killed in France on 25th January 1916, aged 27, was the younger son of the Rev. H. Furley, Mount Sandford, Southborough, Kent, formerly Rector of Kingsnorth.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieut. Bucks Battalion, from the ranks of the 16th London Regiment, 23rd July 1915.

Captain THOMAS GERALD GRICE (*4th Battalion, attached from Scottish Rifles*) died, on the 15th June 1916, from wounds received two days previously, aged 33.

He joined the 1/4th Battalion, from the 2nd Scottish Rifles, for duty as Senior Major, on the 10th June 1916. He had previously

[1] Lord Cottesloe, 1918.

Digitized by Google

served in the regular army, joining the King's Royal Rifles, as 2nd Lieutenant, in 1902. He subsequently retired, and joined the 3rd Scottish Rifles (Special Reserve), from which he was attached to the 2nd Battalion of that Regiment in France.

Major EUSTACE WALKER RUSSELL HADDEN (*4th Battalion*), who died after an operation for appendicitis in hospital in France, on 10th June 1916, was the younger son of the late Reverend R. H. Hadden, vicar of St. Mark's, North Audley Street, Chaplain in Ordinary to Queen Victoria, and Hon. Chaplain to King Edward VII, and of Mrs. Hadden, of Hazel Hatch, Addlestone, Surrey.

He was educated at Westminster and Christ Church, Oxford, and was called to the Bar, at the Inner Temple, in 1912. In the following year he went to Siam in a legal capacity under the Siamese Government, and returned to England a month before war was declared.

While an undergraduate at Oxford in 1908 he was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant in the 4th Battalion; was attached to the 52nd at Aldershot for a year from February 1910; promoted Lieutenant, 4th Battalion, September 1911; Captain, September 1914; temp. Major, April 1916; and was for a short time in temporary command of the Battalion.

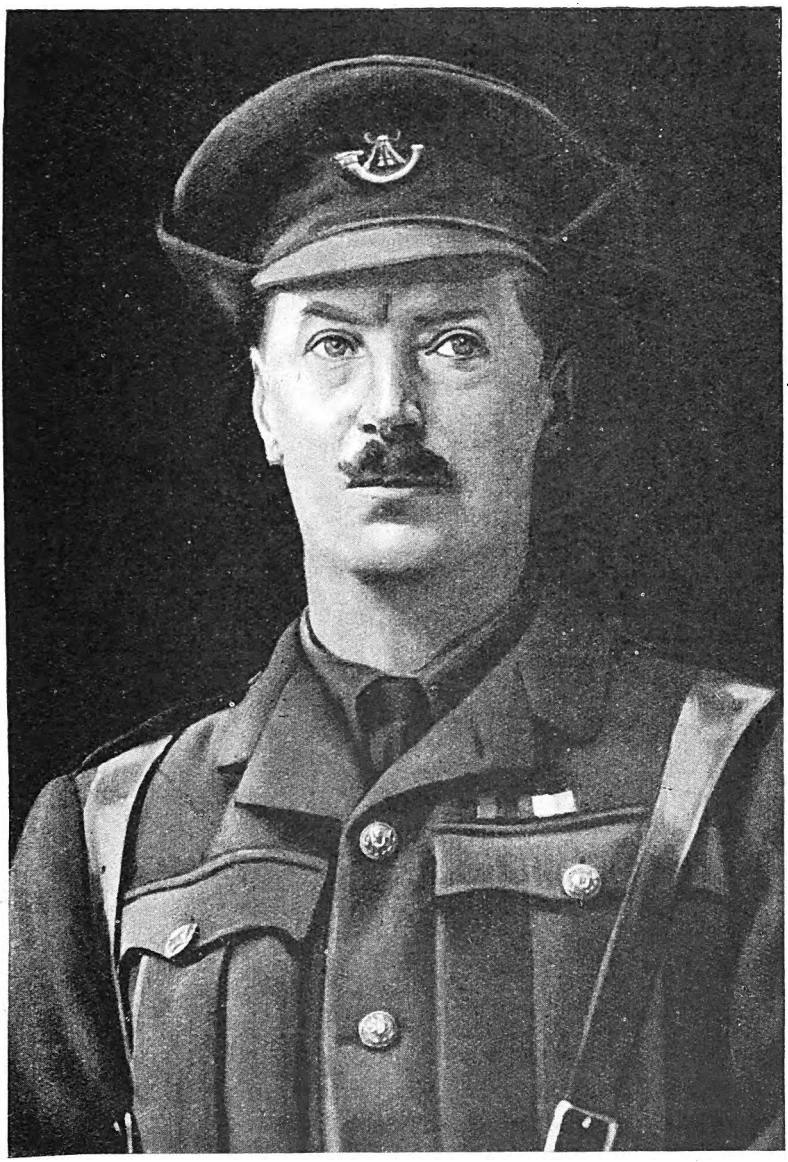
Captain Hadden accompanied the Battalion to France in March 1915, and served with it continuously until his death.

Captain STEPHEN FREDERICK HAMMICK (*Res. of Off., late 1st Battalion*) died at Basra on the 18th April 1916 of wounds received at the battle of Sannaiyat on the 6th April.

He was the only son of Colonel Sir St. V. A. Hammick, Bart., late 43rd Light Infantry, and was born on the 2nd February 1871. Educated at Marlborough and Brasenose College, Oxford, he joined the Regiment, as 2nd Lieutenant, 24th January 1894; Lieutenant, 5th June 1897; Captain, 11th December 1900; retired (Res. of Off.), 2nd November 1909.

His war services were as follows; South African War, 1899–1902—Relief of Kimberley; operations in the Orange Free State, February to May 1900, including operations at Paardeberg, 17th–26th February (slightly wounded); operations in the Orange River Colony, May to November 1900; operations in the Transvaal, March to July 1901, and October 1901 to 31st May 1902; operations in the Orange River Colony, December 1900 to March 1901, and July

Digitized by Google



CAPTAIN STEPHEN FREDERICK HAMMICK.

Digitized by Google

1901 to March 1902. Employed with Mounted Infantry. Queen's Medal with 3 clasps; King's Medal with 2 clasps.

Called up on the outbreak of war in 1914, Captain Hammick joined the 2nd Battalion in France, 30th November 1914, and served with it until the 16th May 1915, when he was wounded at Richebourg, and invalided to England. In December 1915 he left England with a draft for the 1st Battalion in Mesopotamia, and eventually joined the Provisional Battalion of the Regiment, forming part of the force fighting its way for the relief of Kut. He was present at the several attacks on the Turkish positions during March and April 1916, and was fatally wounded at Sannaiyat on April 6th.

He was mentioned in Sir P. Lake's dispatch dated 24th August 1916 (*London Gazette*, 21st September 1917) for Gallant and Distinguished Service in the Field.

Lieut. HENRY BASIL LINDESAY HINDE (*1st Battalion, attached from the 3rd Somerset Light Infantry*) was killed at the battle of Ctesiphon, at the age of 25.

He was the only son of Captain W. F. H. Hinde, late 12th Lancers, and joined the Regiment, on attachment, in Mesopotamia in June 1915, taking part in the battle of Es Sinn and occupation of Kut-el-Amara.

2ND LIEUT. E. R. G. HUGHES.

2nd Lieut. EDWARD REGINALD GRAHAM HUGHES (*2nd Battalion*), elder son of Lieut.-Colonel R. G. H. Hughes (who commanded the 52nd from 1904 to 1907, and the 7th (Service) Battalion at the beginning of the present war), was killed in action on the 25th September 1915.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieut. from the R.M. College, Sandhurst, 23rd December 1914, and joined the 2nd Battalion in France on the 10th June 1915, serving with it in various operations up to the time of his death.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. THOMAS DERRY HUGHES (*4th Battalion*), who was killed in the trenches at Hebuterne on the 3rd May 1916, was the elder son of Mrs. Owen Hughes, of Pendref, Llanfyllin. He was educated at Llanfyllin County School, and for three years in succession won the silver cup offered by Colonel David Davies, M.P., to Montgomeryshire students for essay writing. When war broke out he was a member of the laboratory staff of Messrs. Lever Brothers, at Port Sunlight, and joined the London Welsh, from which he received his commission in the 4th Oxford and Bucks Light Infantry, 3rd Oct. 1915.

CAPTAIN A. N. CAREW HUNT.

Captain AUBREY NOEL CAREW HUNT (*3rd, attached to 2nd Battalion*), who was killed on the 5th June 1916, was the son of the Rev. R. W. Carew Hunt, Rector of Albury, Oxon, and the late Mrs. M. H. Carew Hunt, and was born in 1892. He was educated at St. Edward's School, Oxford, and went from there as an Exhibitioner to Merton College, Oxford, where he obtained a second class in the Honour School of Modern History, and rowed for two years in the college eight. He was also the President of the Stubbs Society.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieut. (from the O.T.C.), 3rd Battalion (Spec. Res.), on the 15th August 1914, and was promoted Lieutenant 17th August 1915. Joining the 2nd Battalion in France on the 28th May 1915, he was severely wounded on the 25th September of that year and invalided to England, where, after his recovery, he did duty with the 3rd Battalion for some months. He returned to the 2nd Battalion in France on the 2nd June 1916, and was killed three days later by a stray bullet.

2nd Lieut. CECIL HURST-BROWN (*2nd Battalion*), who died on 26th September 1915, aged 21, from wounds received on the previous day, was the youngest surviving son of Mr. and Mrs. W. Hurst-

Digitized by Google

2ND LIEUT. C. HURST-BROWN.

Brown, of 62 Oxford Gardens, W., and was educated at Westminster and Christ Church, Oxford, going from the latter in the autumn of 1914 to the R.M. College, Sandhurst.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant in the Regiment 16th December 1914, and was posted to the 2nd Battalion, which he joined in France on the 7th June 1915.

He was buried in Bethune Cemetery.

Major ARTHUR CLARENDON HYDE (*1st Battalion*), who was killed at the battle of Ctesiphon, was born on the 1st January 1870.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, West India Regiment, 25th July 1891; Lieutenant, 19th July 1893; Captain, West India Regiment, 24th February 1898; transferred to the Oxfordshire Light Infantry, 22nd February 1908; Major, 16th December 1908.

From 1900 to 1902 he was A.D.C. to the Governor and Commander-in-Chief, Bermuda, and was Adjutant of Militia, 1907–1908. He took part in the Operations in Sierra Leone, 1898–1899. Kareen Expedition. Medal with clasp.

Major Hyde proceeded to Mesopotamia with the Regiment as Second in Command, and was present with it throughout the operations on the Tigris, 1914–1915, being in command of it at the battle of Es Sinn.

Lieut. JOHN MONTAGUE HAMMICK JACKSON (*5th Battalion*), who died in London on the 18th August 1915 of wounds received in action near Ypres on the 22nd June, was the son of Colonel M. B. C. Jackson, Royal Artillery, of Exmouth, and grandson of Colonel Sir St. V. A. Hammick, Bart., formerly of the 43rd (Oxfordshire) Light Infantry. Born on the 28th May 1895, he was educated at Oundle and Armstrong College, Durham University.

Digitized by Google

LIEUT. J. M. H. JACKSON.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

He took part in the advance up the Tigris, including the battle of Es Sinn.

2nd Lieut. JOHN SKELTON CLARKE KING (*1/4th Battalion*) was killed on the 3rd May 1916 by the same shell as killed 2nd Lieut. T. D. Hughes. He was a solicitor, formerly of Arundel House, Worthing, and of Beachhaven, Shoreham, and he served in the ranks of the Battalion prior to receiving his commission in November 1915. In January 1916 he was awarded the Distinguished Conduct Medal, which he won as a Sergeant "for conspicuous good work, notably when in charge of wiring parties, when the enemy were only 120 yards distant." At the time of his death, he was 28 years of age, and married.

2nd Lieut. WILLIAM GEORGE LAWRENCE (*3rd Battalion, attached R.F.C.*) was killed in action on the 23rd October 1915.

He was educated at the Oxford High School and St. John's College (Casherd Scholar), taking his B.A. degree in 1913. He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant 20th April 1915.

2nd Lieut. LIONEL SHAW LEE (*5th Battalion*), who was killed in action during the attack of the 25th September 1915, was the son of Mr. E. H. S. Lee, of Kitnocks, Botley, Hants, and was appointed 2nd Lieutenant, 26th August 1915; joined the 5th Battalion, and proceeded with it to France.

Subsequent to his death he was mentioned in Dispatches of 30th November 1915.

He was educated at Wellington and at Merton College, Oxford (1910–13), where he took his B.A. degree. He represented Oxford in the Inter-University lawn-tennis matches (singles and doubles) in 1913.

Captain RONALD OCTAVIUS LOGAN (*1st, attached to 5th Battalion*), was born on the 30th May 1882, and was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, unattached, 8th January 1901. Appointed to the Oxfordshire Light Infantry, 9th March 1901, he joined the 1st Battalion in South Africa in May, and served with it until the end of the war, receiving the Queen's Medal with 4 clasps.

He returned to England with the Battalion, and proceeded with it to India in the autumn of 1903; was promoted Lieutenant, 3rd October 1904; and Captain, 19th November 1910. In January 1913 he joined the Depôt (Cowley Barracks) for duty there and

Digitized by Google

CAPTAIN R. O. LOGAN.

with the 3rd (Special Reserve) Battalion, and on the outbreak of war in August 1914 mobilized with that Battalion.

On the formation of the 5th (Service) Battalion, Captain Logan was posted to it as Captain, and accompanied it to France in May 1915. Wounded on the 29th July 1915, he was invalided to England, but rejoined the Battalion on the 5th October 1915, and was killed in action on the 17th of the same month during a bombing attack following the explosion of a mine.

2nd Lieut. ANDREW DOUGLAS JOHN MELLISS (*9th, attached 5th Battalion*), who was killed while serving with the 5th Battalion on the 17th October 1915, was the elder son of the Rev. A. Melliss, Vicar of Gawcott, Buckingham.

Born at Messina, Sicily, he was educated at Christ's Hospital, and received his commission as 2nd Lieutenant, 22nd September 1914.

He was in his 19th year.

2nd Lieut. ARNOLD WARDEN MIDDLEDITCH (*9th, attached 2nd Battalion*) died on the 19th June 1916, as the result of injuries received while on duty some months previously, aged 23.

He was the eldest son of Mr. B. Middleditch, solicitor, and was educated at Merchant Taylors School.

Gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 10th June 1915, he was posted to the 2nd Battalion (from the 9th), and joined it in France on the 8th January 1916.

2nd Lieut. J. N. G. MITCHELL (*5th Battalion*) was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 5th Battalion, 15th August 1915, and was killed in action on the 25th September 1915, having joined the Battalion only the day before. He had previously served in the ranks of the 4th Battalion (T.F.).

Digitized by Google

LIEUT. P. F. NEWTON-KING.

Lieut. PIERCE FRANCIS NEWTON-KING (*2nd Battalion*), who was killed on the 25th September 1915, was the elder son of Lieut.-Colonel F. J. Newton-King, who served in the Regiment for twelve years, and during the present war commanded the 7th Battalion.

He was born in 1894, and was educated at Pau and the R.M. College, Sandhurst. Obtaining his commission as 2nd Lieutenant in the Regiment, 25th February 1914, he joined the 2nd Battalion at Aldershot, and accompanied it to France in August, taking part in the retreat from Mons, the battles of the Marne and the Aisne, and subsequent operations in Flanders and the North of France. He was wounded at Langemarck (Poelcappelle) on the 21st October 1914, and was invalided to England. Rejoining the Battalion in France in May 1915, he was posted to the command of D Company, and was in command of it at the time of his death.

Lieut. Newton-King was a 1st Class Interpreter in French.

CAPTAIN A. W. N. PONSONBY.

Captain ASHLEY WILLIAM NEVILLE PONSONBY (*2nd Battalion*), who was killed on the 8th September 1915, was the third son of the Hon. Edwin Ponsonby, of Woodleys, Woodstock, and was born on the 1st March 1882.

He was educated at Eton and Sandhurst, and was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant on

Digitized by Google

the Unattached List, 8th January 1901; Oxfordshire Light Infantry, 9th March 1901; Lieutenant, 24th August 1904; Captain, 22nd January 1910. From 1907 to 1910 he was A.D.C. to the Governor and Commander-in-Chief of Natal, and from 1912 to 1914 Adjutant of the 4th (T.F.) Battalion of the Regiment. On 25th July 1914 he was appointed Assistant Military Secretary to the Governor and Commander-in-Chief, South Africa, but did not take up the appointment, and applied to return to the Regiment at the outbreak of war. Joining the 2nd Battalion in France on the 27th September 1914, he served with it until the 23rd October, when he was wounded and invalided to England. He rejoined the Battalion in July 1915, and was killed in the trenches two months later.

2nd Lieut. CHARLES PHILIP QUAYLE (*Bucks Battalion*) was killed on the 15th June 1916 while on patrol duty, aged 23 years.

He was the younger son of Mr. and Mrs. J. E. Quayle, of Kerrowmoor, Green Walk, Chingford, and had formerly served in the Queen's Westminsters. His commission as 2nd Lieutenant in the Bucks Battalion was dated 22nd August 1915.

2nd Lieut. A. H. RAMSAY (*9th, attached 2nd Battalion*) was killed on the 13th October 1915, a week after he joined the 2nd Battalion in France. He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 12th May 1915.

Major RUPERT VICTOR SIMPSON (*1st Battalion*), killed at the battle of Es Sinn, September 1915, was the seventh son of the late C. H. Simpson, of Ackworth and Rugby. Born on the 16th February 1880, he was educated at Eton and Sandhurst, and entered the Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire Light Infantry as 2nd Lieutenant, 20th January 1900; Lieutenant, 15th March 1902; Captain, 28th December 1908; Adjutant, 1st Battalion, 1910–1913; Major, 1st September 1915.

MAJOR R. V. SIMPSON.

He accompanied the 1st Battalion to Mesopotamia, and served with it throughout the advance up the Tigris.

Digitized by Google

Major Simpson joined the Regiment on active service in South Africa. Operations in the Orange River Colony, May to November 1900. Operations in Orange River Colony, December 1900 to January 1902. Queen's Medal with 3 clasps; King's Medal with 2 clasps.

At Eton Simpson distinguished himself as an athlete, and won the Victor Ludorum Medal. He also won the silver medal as champion athlete at Sandhurst, and at all times took the keenest interest in Regimental athletic sports.

2nd Lieut. AUGUSTUS WILLIAM SMITH (*5th Battalion*) was the son of Mrs. Warner (formerly Smith), of 10 Padstock Road, Reading.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 6th Battalion, 26th December 1914; joined the 5th Battalion in France, 4th October 1915, and was killed on the 4th February 1916.

2nd Lieut. REGINALD STRICKLAND (*3rd, attached 2nd Battalion*) died in hospital at Bethune on the 25th December 1915.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 9th April 1915, and joined the 2nd Battalion in France on the 5th October 1915.

Lieut. F. C. STALEY (*1st Battalion, attached from Somerset T.F.*) was killed in the attack on Dujailah Redoubt, Mesopotamia, 9th March 1916. He joined the Provisional Battalion from India, and was Machine-gun Officer.

Lieut. LESLIE WINKFIELD SWEET-ESCOTT (*5th Battalion*), youngest son of Sir E. B. Sweet-Escott, K.C.M.G., Governor of Fiji, was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 22nd August 1914, posted to the 5th Battalion, and was promoted Lieutenant, 13th May 1915. He was wounded on the 10th July 1915, but recovered sufficiently to return to duty on the 19th. Killed in action on the 25th September 1915 while leading bombers.

He was educated at Bromsgrove School and Worcester College, Oxford, but had only been in residence a year when war broke out.

2nd Lieut. ARTHUR COKE THOMAS (*6th Battalion*), sixth son of the late Rev. David Thomas, of Garsington, was killed on the 2nd June 1916.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant on the 5th December 1915

Captain J. M. TREBLE (*1/4th Battalion*), who, previous to the war, was a student and tutor at Culham College, was killed on the 18th October 1915. He had belonged to the 4th Battalion for some years, and was promoted Captain, 28th October 1914.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. ALFRED HOLLOWAY TRUMAN (*3rd, attached to 1st Battalion*), was killed in the attack on Sannaiyat on the 6th April 1916.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 3rd Battalion, 4th May 1915; left England with a draft for Mesopotamia, December 1915; and joined the Provisional Battalion with the Kut Relief Force in February 1916, being appointed Bombing Officer.

2nd Lieut. LANCELOT ANDREWES VIDAL (*3rd, attached 2nd Battalion*), who was killed on 25th September 1915, aged 28, was the third son of the late Rev. R. W. Vidal, Vicar of Bayford, and of Mrs. Vidal, of Windrush, Foxcombe Hill, Oxford.

He was educated at Malvern (Scholar) and at Brasenose College, Oxford; and became a master at Radley in 1909, and a tutor in 1914. He belonged to the O.T.C. for some years before the war, and was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 3rd Oxford and Bucks Light Infantry, 15th August 1914. After serving for some months with that Battalion at Portsmouth, he went to France and was attached to the 2nd D.C.L.I., serving with that regiment during the heavy fighting about Ypres during April and May 1915. On the 24th August he joined the 52nd, was appointed Machine-gun Officer, and was killed in the attack of the 25th September.

A good all-round athlete, he was an enthusiastic cricket and football player, and toured with the Corinthians in Canada and South America. He was also a keen botanist. *See* illustration, page 273.

Lieut. C. J. S. VYNER (*1/4th Battalion*) died on the 24th July 1915 of wounds received in a bombing accident on the 12th July.

He joined the 4th Battalion at the outbreak of war, and was promoted Lieutenant on the 2nd September 1914.

2nd Lieut. FRED. W. WHITLOCK (*6th Battalion*), who was killed in action on the 25th September 1915, aged 24, was the elder son of Mr. F. W. Whitlock, of 59 East Avenue, Cowley Road, Oxford.

In August 1914 he concluded his university career as a non-collegiate student, taking honours in History and his B.A. degree. On the 2nd December 1914 he was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, joined the 6th Battalion, and accompanied it to France in 1915.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. CHARLES INGLETON WIDCOMBE (*3rd, attached 1st Battalion*) was killed at the battle of Sannaiyat on the 6th April 1916 at the age of 21.

He was the only son of Mr. and Mrs. Harris Widcombe, of Datchet, Bucks, and was educated at the Imperial Service College, Windsor. When war broke out he was a student at the Surveyors' Institute, but, joining the Public Schools Battalion, he obtained his commission as 2nd Lieutenant in April 1915. Appointed to the 3rd Battalion, he left England for Mesopotamia at the end of the year, and joined the Provisional Battalion of the Regiment with the Kut Relief Force in February 1916.

2nd Lieut. ALMERIC WATKINS WOOD (*3rd, attached 6th Battalion*), who died of wounds received on the 25th September 1915, was the younger son of Mr. R. S. Wood. He was educated at Beaumont College, where he was captain of the school and of the boats, and at Merton College, Oxford, where he was placed in the second class in the Honour History School, and rowed in the Merton eight at Henley in 1912 and 1913.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 3rd Battalion (from the O.T.C.), 15th August 1914, and joined the 5th (Service) Battalion in France, 10th September 1915. At the time of his death he was 23 years of age.

Captain FRANCIS CONSTANTINE WILLIAM WYNTER (*1st Battalion*), who was killed at the battle of Ctesiphon, November 1915, was the youngest son of the late P. H. M. Wynter, of the Hays, Ramsden, Oxon, and was born on the 25th April 1888. Educated at Harrow and Hertford College, Oxford, he received his commission as 2nd Lieutenant in the Regiment direct from the University on the 7th February 1912 (ante-dated to 18th May 1911); promoted Lieutenant, 22nd March 1914; temp. Captain, 1st September 1915; Captain, 27th October 1915.

He accompanied the 1st Battalion to Mesopotamia, and was for some months employed on the Staff as Military Landing Officer at Basra.

CAPTAIN F. C. W. WYNTER

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. JOSEPH HERBERT ZEDER (*4th Battalion*), reported missing on 29th June 1916, and subsequently reported died as a prisoner of war, was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 1st May 1915, in the 4th Battalion.

He had previously served as a trooper in Kitchener's Fighting Scouts in the South African War, for which he received the D.C.M., the Queen's Medal with 4 clasps, and the King's Medal with 2 clasps. He also served in the Natal Rebellion (1906), and received the African General Service Medal.

Digitized by Google

OBITUARY.

1st August 1915 to 30th June 1916.

CAPTAIN EUSTACE GAMBIER MANSEL.

Late 52nd Light Infantry. Died on the 31st December 1915.

The second son of the late Colonel G. P. Mansel, of Smedmore, Dorset, he was born on the 31st October 1853, and was educated at Marlborough. He entered the 52nd as Sub-Lieutenant, 4th October 1873; Lieutenant, 4th October 1875; Captain, 8th July 1885; retired, 29th May 1894.

He was A.D.C. to Major-General Sir C. Keyes in India from 1882 to 1884. In the latter year he was on the voyage home in charge of a party of time-expired men, when, on reaching Suez, he heard of the Soudan Campaign then about to commence, and succeeded in becoming attached to the Royal Irish Fusiliers. He took part in the battles of El Teb and Tamai, for which he received the Medal with Clasp, and the Bronze Star. From 1888 to 1893 he was Adjutant of the Bucks Volunteers, and on retirement resided at Chinnor Hill. In 1900 (during the Boer War) he served with the Royal Irish Fusiliers (Reserve) at Belfast, and during the present war he interested himself in the Volunteer Defence movement.

Captain Mansel was buried at North Kilworth, Leicestershire.

MAJOR FRANCIS ARTHUR BOUVERIE TALBOT,

who died in London on the 29th May 1916, was born on the 7th September 1851.

He entered the 43rd Light Infantry as Lieutenant, 12th November 1873; Captain, 15th November 1883; Major, 19th May 1893; Adjutant, 1877–1886; Adjutant of Volunteers, 1886–1891; retired, 27th September 1893.

Holding the appointment of Adjutant of the 43rd and 1st Battalion for a continuous period of nine years, a great number of young officers received their initial training at his hands, and his

Digitized by Google

zeal for his profession, his tact, and constant good temper endeared him to all. He was equally respected and beloved by the N.C.O.'s and men; and to his keen sense of duty, coupled with untiring energy, was due the fact that during the last six years of its tour of service in India, terminating in 1887, the reputation of the Regiment never stood higher.

A good bat and wicket-keeper, Frank Talbot captained the Regimental cricket team for many years; and he took an active part in 43rd amateur theatricals.

On his retirement he became Secretary of the Sports Club (St. James's Square, S.W.), and filled the post with much popularity up to the time of his death.

Digitized by Google

SUBSCRIBERS TO THE CHRONICLE.

VOLUME XXV.

The late Major H. A. Adair.
Lieut. W. A. R. Ames.
Captain E. J. Anderson, M.C.
Captain Hon. C. A. J. Annesley.
The late Major-General T. M. Bailie.
Captain C. W. H. Bailie.
Captain C. S. Baines, D.S.O.
Major J. A. Ballard.
Lieut. W. L. Barnard.
Captain D. T. Barnes, D.S.O.
Major A. J. N. Bartlett, D.S.O.
Captain Bartlett.
Colonel A. G. Bayley, D.S.O.
Lieut. C. J. Beckett.
Major C. B. Benson, D.S.O.
Captain H. T. Birch-Reynardson.
Lieut. R. Blackwell.
Major G. Blewitt, D.S.O., M.C.
Lieut. E. K. Blyth.
Miss P. Boardman.
The Misses Boardman.
Captain P. A. Bobby, M.C.
Lieut. P. Booth.
Major U. J. D. Bourke.
Captain E. T. C. Bower.
J. Bowman, Esq.
Major C. J. Boyle.[1]
Major R. J. Brett.
Major A. A. Bridgewater.
Colonel H. R. M. Brooke Popham, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O. A.F.C.
Lieut. J. R. Brown.
J. A. Carfrae, Esq.
Colonel J. Colebrooke Carter.[1]
Major L. J. Carter, D.S.O.
Lieut. Challenger.
Major C. O. Chichester.
Major E. M. Childers.
Captain G. Christie-Miller, D.S.O., M.C.
Colonel W. Clark.
Colonel P. T. Clark.
Lieut.-Colonel E. R. Clayton, D.S.O.
Lieut. R. H. Coad.
Lieut.-Colonel C. H. Cobb.
Lieut. T. A. Coffin.
Lieut. J. F. Collinge.
The late Lieut.-General Sir F. M. Colvile, K.C.B.
Brigadier-General G. N. Colvile, D.S.O.
Lieut. D. J. Colvill.
Lieut.-Colonel Lord Cottesloe.
Lady Courtis.
Lieut. F. H. Cowell.
Lieut. P. E. Craddock.
Lieut. C. B. Crawford.
Lieut. L. M. Crosfield.

[1] Member of CHRONICLE Committee.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. L. R. Crosley.
Captain A. T. Crosse.
Major R. B. Crosse, D.S.O.[1]
Lieut. W. C. M. Cubbage.
Lieut.-Colonel W. H. Cunliffe.
Lieut. J. C. Cunningham.
The late Lieut.-Colonel Sir C. Cuyler, Bart., O.B.E.
Lieut. R. H. Dalbriac.
Brigadier-General Hon. A. E. Dalzell, C.B.
Major H. F. Darell-Brown.
A. Davenport, Esq.
Miss Davenport.
Major-General H. R. Davies, C.B.
Major J. D. W. Davy.
Captain C. Dean.
The late Lieut.-Colonel H. M. Dillon, D.S.O.
Lt.-Colonel H. M. S. Douglas.
Lieut. L. S. Dowson.
Lieut.-Colonel G. Drage, D.S.O
Lieut. H. S. Eagle.
W. Eccles, Esq.
Colonel A. J. F. Eden, C.M.G., D.S.O.[1]
Mrs. Evelegh.
The late Major C. E. G. M. Fairtlough.
Captain H. G. Fane
Major-Gen. Sir R. Fanshawe, K.C.B., D.S.O.
Major R. M. Feilden.
Captain G. Field, M.C.
Captain M. G. Fielding, M.C.
Major C. Fitzgerald.
Lieut. R. A. Fitzgerald.
Lieut.-Colonel Earl Fitzwilliam, K.C.V.O., D.S.O.
Major Hon. G. W. F. S. Foljambe.
Lieut. C. E. P. Foreshew, M.C.
Captain C. A. Fowke, M.C.
Lieut.-Colonel C. H. Frith.
Lieut. L. E. W. O. Fullbrook-Leggatt, M.C.
Colonel J. F. C. Fuller, D.S.O.
Lieut. L. W. Giles, M.C.
Major P. T. Godsal.
Captain L. J. Goodwyn.
Captain B. Green, M.C.
Captain W. H Green.
Lieut. A B. Hamilton.
Colonel Sir St. V. A. Hammick, Bart.[2]
Major-General Sir J. Hanbury-Williams, K.C.B., K.C.V.O., C.M.G.[3]
J. N. Hardcastle, Esq
Mrs. Harden.
Lieut. R. M. Harman.
Lieut. D. E. Haymen.
Captain A. Henley.
Major C. F. Henley.
Major F. J. Henley.
Lieut.-Colonel C. G. Higgins, D.S.O.
The late Colonel H. N. Holden, D.S.O.
Lieut. F. C. Holland.
Major F. V. Holt, C.M.G., D.S.O.
Lieut. E. Holt.
Follet Holt, Esq.
Captain K. Horan.
Lieut. C. R. Horley.

[1] Member of CHRONICLE Executive Committee.
[2] Member of CHRONICLE Committee. [3] President of CHRONICLE Committee.

Digitized by Google

Lieut.-Colonel R. G. H. Hughes.
G. H. Hulm, Esq.
Lieut.-Colonel W. C. Hunter.
Captain C. A. Hutchins.
Lieut. J. B. Jarvis.
Lieut. K. S. Jefferson.
Lieut.-Colonel J. Johnstone.
Major R. D. Keyworth.
Mrs. Kite.
V. J. Lack, Esq.
Brigadier-General F. G. L. Lamotte, C.M.G.
A. R. M. Langhorne, Esq.
Lieut.-Colonel E. A. E. Lethbridge, C.M.G., D.S.O.
W. A. Littledale, Esq.
Mrs. E. Logan.
Lieut. F. C. Loundes, M.C.
Lieut. R. C. Loverock.
Lieut.-Colonel R. C. Luard.
Brigadier-General W. Marriott-Dodington, C.M.G.
Captain A. E. Mason.
Captain E. W. Maude
The late Captain J. P. Meade.
The late Major C. J. Mitchell, D.S.O.
Major G. F. Mockler.
Lieut.-Colonel A. F. Mockler-Ferryman.[1]
Lieut.-Colonel A. C. Money.
Captain H. Money, M.C.
Major W. E. T. Morland, D.S.O., M.C.[2]
Captain S. C. B. Mundey.
Lieut. D. Murphy.
Lieut. J. B. Murray.
Lieut.-Colonel G. S. F. Napier
Lieut. Naylor.
Captain G. Naylor, M.C.
Lieut. J. E. Neville, M.C.
Lieut.-Colonel F. J. Newton-King.
Lieut. D. S. Newton-King.
Captain H. C. Nisbet.
Lieut. R. E. Norman.
Miss Odell.
Lieut.-Colonel R. L. Ovey, D.S.O.
The late Major R. M. Owen.
Lieut.-Colonel W. Owen.
Captain R. C. R. Owen, C.M.G.
Major B. C. T. Paget, D.S.O., M.C.
Major A. C. Paris, M.C.
Lieut.-Colonel C. Parr, C.B.E.
Major C. C. Pearson.
Lieut. G. E. Pearson.
Captain T. H. Pearson.
Captain J. H. Peel, M.C.
Captain H. V. Pendavis, D.S.O.
D. H. J. Peploe, Esq.
Lieut. F. H. Plaistowe.
Major G. F. Plowden, M.C.
Major J. A. Pollock, D.S.O.
The Hon. E. Ponsonby.
Colonel L. H. R. Pope-Hennessy, D.S.O.
Captain J. L. Portal, D.S.O.
Captain J. J. Powell.
The late Colonel H. L. Powys.
Lieut. W. A. Ramsay.
Captain V. W. H. Ranger, M.C.
Captain N. S. Reid, D.S.O., M.C.
Colonel L. L. C. Reynolds, D.S.O.
Lieut. B. F. Roberts.
Mrs. Royal-Dawson.
Lieut.-Colonel H. L. Ruck-Keene, D.S.O., O.B.E.
Lieut.-Colonel R. E. Salkeld.

[1] Hon. Editor. [2] Member of CHRONICLE Executive Committee.

Digitized by Google

Captain C. A. Salvesen, M.C.
Major A. E. Sanderson, D.S.O.
Lieut. R. W. Sawers.
Lieut. C. A. Sawyer.
F. W. M. D. Scott, Esq.
Major L. F. Scott.[1]
L. B. Sebastian, Esq.
Captain D. A. D. Sewell, O.B.E.
Captain A. J. Shaw.
Lieut. G. W. Shaw.
Lieut. J. W. Shaw.
Lieut. E. C. Simmons.
Lieut. S. Slattery.
The late Lieut. C. H. B. Slocock.
Lieut. H. A. Smith, M.C.
Lieut. H. E. F. Smyth, M.C.
Captain E. L. Somers-Cocks.
Captain J. A. Southey.
Lieut. Stall.
Lieut.-Colonel E. A. Stanton, C.M.G.
Lieut.-Colonel F. H. Stapleton, C.M.G.
Major R. Stephens.
Mrs. Stokes.
Colonel J. A. Strachan.
Captain A. T. W. Stukeley, M.C.
Lieut. O. H. M. Sturges.
Lieut.-Colonel G. A. Sullivan, D.S.O.
Captain S. L. Symonds.
The late Major F. A. B. Talbot.
Captain R. H. Tatton.
Lieut. H. Taylor.
Captain W. H. Taylor.
Major H. A. Terry.
Captain W. E. C. Terry.
Lieut. W. E. Thompson.
Lieut. J. Thorne.
Major G. W. Titherington.
Captain W. G. Tolson, M.C.
Major S. John Tombs.
Lieut. W. T. Trengrouse.
Major L. Tunnard.
Lieut. T. Tyrwhitt-Drake, M.C.
Lieut. H. Vernon.
Lieut. E. H. Vigars, D.C.M.
Colonel E. Villiers, A.D.C.
F. Ward, Esq.
Lieut.-Colonel L. E. S. Ward, C.M.G., D.S.O.
Sir Courtenay Warner, Bart.
Lieut. R. C. Warren.
Lieut.-Colonel R. E. Watt.
Lieut. J. P. Wayte, M.C.
Lieut.-Colonel J. T. Weatherby, D.S.O.
Major W. Webb.
Captain R. E. Webster.
Lieut. H. E. Wells.
Colonel E. D. White, C.M.G.
Lieut. P. H. R. Whitehead.
Captain E. H. Whitfeld, M.C.
Major G. E. Whittall, M.C.
Lieut. F. J. Wilcox, M.C.
Major C. H. Williams.
Lieut.-Colonel H. M. Williams.
Lieut. R. G. Wilsdon.
The late Lieut.-Colonel Hon. G. H. Windsor-Clive.
Major H. L. Wood.
Major P. L. Wright, M.C.
Captain J. W. G. Wyld, D.S.O., M.C.
G. B. Young, Esq.
The Superintendent of Publications, H. M. Stationery Office.

[1] Hon. Treasurer.

A few extra copies of this Volume are for sale at £1 1s.; application should be made to Major L. F. Scott, 4 Rawlinson Road, Oxford.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google